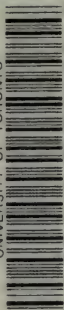


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00886355 7







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



## Prof. Mandeville's Reading Books.

\*\*\* The annexed series of Reading Books are very extensively introduced and commended by hundreds of the most experienced teachers in the country. "Prof. Mandeville's system is eminently original, scientific and practical, and destined wherever it is introduced to supersede at once all others.

I. PRIMARY, or FIRST READER. Price 10 cents.

II. SECOND READER. Price 16 cents.

These two Readers are formed substantially on the same plan; and the second is a continuation of the first. The design of both is, to combine a knowledge of the meaning and pronunciation of words, with a knowledge of their grammatical functions. The parts of speech are introduced successively, beginning with the articles, these are followed by the demonstrative pronouns; and these again by others, class after class, until all that are requisite to form a sentence have been separately considered; when the common reading lessons begin.

The Second Reader reviews the ground passed over in the Primary, but adds largely to the amount of information. The child is here also taught to read writing as well as printed matter; and in the reading lessons, attention is constantly directed to the different ways in which sentences are formed and connected, and of the peculiar manner in which each of them is delivered. All who have examined these books, have pronounced them a decided and important advance on every other of the same class in use.

III. THIRD READER. Price 25 cents.

IV. FOURTH READER. Price 33 cents.

In the first two Readers, the main object is to make the pupil acquainted with the meaning and functions of words, and to impart facility in pronouncing them in sentential connection: the leading design of these is to form a natural, flexible, and varied delivery. Accordingly, the Third Reader opens with a series of exercises on articulation and modulation, containing numerous examples for practice on the elementary sounds (including errors to be corrected) and on the different movements of the voice, produced by sentential structure, by emphasis, and by the passions. The habits formed by these exercises, which should be thoroughly, as they can be easily mastered, under intelligent instruction, find scope for improvement and confirmation in the reading lessons which follow, in the same book and that which succeeds.

These lessons have been selected with special reference to the following peculiarities: 1st. Colloquial character; 2d. Variety of sentential structure; 3d. Variety of subject matter; 4th. Adaptation to the Progressive development of the pupil's mind; and, as far as possible, 5th. Tendency to excite moral and religious emotions. Great pains have been taken to make the books in these respects, which are, in fact, characteristic of the whole series, superior to any others in use; with what success, a brief comparison will readily show.

V. THE FIFTH READER; or, COURSE OF READING. Price 75 cents.

VI. THE ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY. Price \$1.

These books are designed to cultivate the literary taste, as well as the understanding and vocal powers of the pupil.

THE COURSE OF READING comprises three parts; the *first part* containing a more elaborate description of elementary sounds and the parts of speech grammatically considered, than was deemed necessary in the preceding works; here indispensable; *part second*, a complete classification and description of every sentence to be found in the English, or any other language; examples of which in every degree of expansion, from few words to the half of an octavo page in length, are adduced, and arranged to be read; and as each species has its peculiar delivery as well as structure, both are learned at the same time; *part third*, paragraphs; or sentences in their connection unfolding general thoughts, as in the common reading books. It may be observed that the selections of sentences in part second, and of paragraphs in part third, comprise some of the finest gems in the language: distinguished alike for beauty of thought and facility of diction. If not found in a school book, they might be appropriately called "elegant extracts."

THE ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY closes the series with an exhibition of the whole theory and art of Elocution exclusive of gesture. It contains, besides the classification of sentences already referred to, but here presented with fuller statement and illustration, the laws of punctuation and delivery deduced from it: the whole followed by carefully selected pieces for sentential analysis and vocal practice.

PROF. EDWARD C. MARSHALL.

## *Book of Oratory;*

A New Collection of Extracts in Prose, Poetry, and Dialogue: containing Selections from Distinguished American and English Orators, Divines, and Poets, of which many are Specimens of the Eloquence of Statesmen of the Present Day. For the Use of Colleges, Academies, and Schools. One vol. 12mo., of 500 pages. \$1.

This work contains a larger number of elegant extracts than any similar one, from the first American and English Authors, among whom are Webster, Clay, Everett, Calhoun, Wirt, Randolph, Prentiss, Channing, Dewey, Burke, Broughton, Shakspeare, Byron, Scott, Hood, Bryant, and Longfellow, together with a complete digest of specimens of the oratory and poetry of all parts of the Union.

### OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"A large and admirable selection of pieces for declamation, copious and varied, and well chosen with reference to speaking. The range of selection is almost universal, at least among modern writers in prose, verse, and drama. They make a spirited collection of thought and rhetoric. The editor is a practical teacher of elocution, and evidently has a wide acquaintance with literature. It is as good a work of the kind as we ever saw."—*Evangelist*.

"It is an admirable collection of pieces for declamation, taken principally from eminent American orators."—*Tribune*.

"This is an exceedingly judicious and tasteful selection of extracts from various kinds of composition, designed for the use of schools, academies, and colleges. A large proportion of the extracts are from our most distinguished statesmen, and may be considered a monument of honor or patriotism, not less than of eloquence. There is a freshness and grace about the work that will render it peculiarly attractive."—*Albany Argus*.

"This is an excellent reading book for public seminaries. The selections are made with good taste, are brief, and of every variety. The entire field of American speeches and publications has been explored to gather them. They include extracts from Channing and Dewey, and Beecher and Dow, Jr., from Webster, Clay, and Cass, from Black Hawk and Red Jacket. They are generally specimens of elegant composition, expressive of patriotic and manly thought, and pure and noble sentiment."—*Journal of Commerce*.

"It contains a copious and excellent selection from the best orators, divines, and poets of England and America, and will be found of great value to the teacher of elocution and rhetoric. It will doubtless become a standard work in schools and colleges."

"It comprises some five hundred pages of the best selections we have ever seen compiled. It is worthy a place in every family library."—*New Haven Register*.

"This work contains a collection of extracts in prose and poetry, with selections from the speeches of the most eminent American and English orators, suitable for exercises in public speaking. It is designed for the use of colleges, academies, and schools, and is the best compilation for that purpose we have ever seen. The selections are very judiciously made, and are calculated to interest the scholar, as well as to furnish him with models after which to form his style."—*Evening Post*.

"This compilation for the use of students in elocution has been prepared with great judgment by the author, who has had much experience in this branch of education, having been for many years a professor of elocution at West Point. A principal feature in this work is that the selections have been mostly made from the speeches of great orators of the present century, and many of them are specimens of the eloquence of distinguished statesmen of our Union."—*Phil. Advertiser*.

"This work is a complete cyclopedia of specimens of English and American oratory and poetry, for the use of colleges and schools, selected and arranged with skill and good taste. The plan of the work, which is quite original, and will commend itself to every mind, is to present the best specimens which can be obtained of the oratory and poetry of all parts of the Union, and of living authors. This has not been attempted so thoroughly in any similar work, and as this is decidedly the Book of Oratory of the Union, we doubt not that it will be eminently successful."—*Home Journal*.

PROF. EDWARD C. MARSHALL.

## *The First Book of Oratory.*

One volume 12mo. Price 62 cents.

**HISTORICAL**

AND

**MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS.**

BY

**RICHMAL MANGNALL.**

FROM THE EIGHTY-FOURTH LONDON EDITION.

WITH LARGE ADDITIONS, EMBRACING THE  
ELEMENTS OF MYTHOLOGY, ASTRONOMY, ARCHITECTURE,  
HERALDRY, ETC. ETC.

ADAPTED FOR SCHOOLS IN THE UNITED STATES BY

**MRS. JULIA LAWRENCE.**

EMBELLISHED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS ON WOOD.

THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND CORRECTED,

WITH A CHAPTER ON THE AMERICAN CONSTITUTION.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & COMPANY, 200 BROADWAY.

1853.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1848 -

By D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.



197877

D  
21  
M3  
1853



## PREFACE

TO THE AMERICAN EDITION OF MANGNALL'S QUESTIONS.

---

HAVING for many years made use of "Mangnall's Questions" in the education of my own children, I was tempted to introduce them into my school; although they were not in general use, it being an expensive book, and at that time (seven years since) difficult to be obtained. I then discovered many deficiencies, which I had not before thought of, particularly in having no portion allotted to the history of the United States, so necessary in the education of all Americans; and too much space appropriated to the English Constitution, together with many sentences, the application of which are entirely local. These considerations have tempted me, feeling the value of the work in its original form, and being convinced that no book of the kind has ever been compiled so well calculated—to use the words of the author's preface—"to awaken a spirit of laudable curiosity in young minds," and satisfy that curiosity when awakened in a manner the most concise and clear; to rearrange the work, adapting it more particularly for the use of schools in this country, by adding what has been entirely omitted, and curtailing those portions which, from their diffuseness on matters not particularly interesting to young Americans, are unnecessary. I claim no merit for this effort, even should it prove successful, as the portions of American history I have added have been compiled from standard works—those of Prescott, Bancroft, and Wooster—simplified as much as possible, and arranged according to the plan pursued in the English work.

The chronological table has been arranged on Mrs. Willard's plan, in her excellent "History." The "Common Subjects" have been enlarged, and many errors corrected. As a knowledge of Mythology is necessary to the understanding and enjoyment of the Classics, and as I know of none, *in English*, adapted to ladies' schools, I have added to this book a translation of Noel and Chapsal's well-known work, with some slight alterations and additions. In the English book there is only an alphabetical list of the deities, etc. A taste for Architecture is so rapidly increasing in this country, that it becomes necessary for every young person to understand the different orders, and terms made use of, to discriminate between the pure and mixed styles, and give to different portions of sacred edifices particularly, their proper names; I have therefore devoted a few pages to this subject, taken from a little English book called the "Hand-book of Architecture," which I hope will be found useful.

I have endeavored, in the few pages on the subject of Heraldry, to give as concise an account of it as possible to convey a clear idea of the terms made use of, the orders of knighthood, titles, etc., which are constantly met with in reading history, and which it is difficult to explain to the pupil totally unacquainted with the subject. I have confined myself to that portion relating to England, as our ideas on the subject are entirely taken from that *mother country*. The plates will give a correct idea of the appearance of the escutcheons, etc. I trust this short explanation will not be thought out of place in our republican country.

Trusting that it may meet the approval of teachers in general, I commend to them and to the public the American edition of "Mangnall's Questions."

JULIA LAWRENCE.

NEW YORK, *July* 10, 1848.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
A Short View of Scripture History, from the Creation to the Return of the Jews .....	9
Questions from the Early Ages to the Time of Julius Cæsar....	40
Miscellaneous Questions in Grecian History .....	47
Miscellaneous Questions in General History, chiefly ancient....	60
Questions containing a Sketch of the most remarkable Events from the Christian Era to the close of the Eighteenth Century.....	72
Miscellaneous Questions in Roman History.....	80
Questions in English History, from the Invasion of Cæsar to the Reformation .....	94
Continuation of Questions in English History, from the Reformation to the Present Time.....	109
Abstract of Early British History.....	123
Abstract of English Reigns from the Conquest .....	130
Abstract of the Scottish Reigns.....	140
Abstract of the French Reigns, from Pharamond to Philip I....	146
Continuation of the French Reigns, from Louis VI. to Louis Philippe .....	151
Questions Relating to the History of America from its Discovery to the Present Time .....	161
Abstract of Roman Kings and most distinguished Heroes .....	219
Abstract of the most celebrated Grecians .....	222
Of Heathen Mythology in general.....	225
Abstract of the Heathen Mythology.....	316
The Elements of Astronomy .....	322
Explanation of a few Astronomical Terms.....	325

List of Constellations .....	328
Questions on Common Subjects .....	330
Questions on Architecture.....	346
Questions on Heraldry .....	364
Explanation of such Latin Words and Phrases as are seldom Englished .....	386
Questions on the History of the Middle Ages .....	388



9

HISTORICAL  
AND  
MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS.

---

A SHORT VIEW OF SCRIPTURE HISTORY,  
FROM THE CREATION TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS.

*(Abridged from Watts' Scripture History.)*

When darkness ruled with universal sway,  
He spoke, and kindled up the blaze of day ;  
First, fairest offspring of th' omnific word !  
Which, like a garment, clothed its sovereign Lord.  
On liquid air he bade the columns rise  
That prop the starry concave of the skies :  
Diffused the blue expanse from pole to pole,  
And spread circumfluent ether round the whole.

BLACKLOCK.

How came this world into being ? In the beginning the great God made heaven and earth, and all things that are in them. How did God make all things ? By his powerful word, for he commanded, and it was done. What time did God spend in making the world ? God, who could have made all things at once by his perfect wisdom and almighty power, chose rather to do it by degrees, and spend six days in making the world, with the creatures that are in it. Who were the first man and woman that God made ? Adam and Eve. In what manner did God make Adam ? He framed his body out of the dust of the ground, and then put a living soul within him. How did God make Eve ? He cast Adam into a deep sleep, and formed Eve out of one of his ribs, and then brought her to him to be his wife. In what state did God create them ? God created them both in his own likeness, in a holy and happy state, which is called the state of innocence. Where did God put Adam and Eve, when he made them ? Into the garden of Eden, to keep it, and take care of it, that even in the state of innocency and happiness they might have some work to be

employed in. What was their food in that garden? God gave them leave to eat of any of the herbs, plants, or fruits, that grew there, except the fruit of one tree, which he forbade them to taste, on pain of death. What was the name of that tree? It was called *the tree of knowledge of good and evil*, because as soon as man ate of it, he would know evil to his sorrow, as well as he knew good before to his comfort. As there was one tree so dangerous that it exposed him to death if he ate of it, was there not also a tree that would secure him from death? Yes, there was a tree called *the tree of life*, placed in the midst of the garden, whose fruit was able to have preserved him in life, if he had continued to obey God; and it is reasonably supposed to have been designed as a pledge or seal of eternal life to him, if he had continued in his innocency. What was the religion of Adam in the state of innocency? The practice of all the duties towards God, and towards his creatures, which the light of nature or reason could teach him, together with his observance of this one positive precept, of abstaining from the fruit of *the tree of knowledge*; and this was given him as a special test or trial of his obedience to his Maker. This is called *the dispensation of innocence*. How did Adam behave himself in this time of his trial? He ate of the fruit of *the tree of knowledge*, which God had forbidden him on pain of death. How came Adam to disobey God, and eat of this forbidden tree? Eve first was persuaded to eat of that deadly fruit, and then she persuaded Adam to eat of it too. Who tempted Eve to eat of it? The evil spirit, that is, the devil, which lay hid in the serpent; and for this reason he is called *the old serpent* in the Revelation. What mischief followed from hence? As Adam sinned against God, so he brought in sin and death among all mankind, who were his children, and they have spread through all generations. Did God put Adam and Eve to death as soon as they had sinned? No; but they were condemned to die, and became liable to sickness and death: they were driven out of the garden of paradise, that they might not taste of *the tree of life*, and they were appointed to labor hard for their food all their days. Did God who spared their life show them any further pity? Yes; he gave them a kind promise, and clothed them with the skins of beasts, because they were naked. What was the kind promise that he gave them? That "the seed of the woman should bruise the head of the serpent" who tempted them to sin. Who is this *seed of the woman*? The Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who "in due time was born of a woman." What is meant by "bruising the serpent's head?"

That Christ should destroy the wicked works and designs of the devil, and thereby save mankind from the sin and death which were brought in among them by his temptation. What was the religion of man after the fall or sin of Adam? All the duties of the light of nature which were required before: and besides these, he was now called to repentance for sin, faith or trust in the mercy of God, expectation of the promised Saviour, and offering of sacrifices. This is called the *Adamical Dispensation* of the covenant of grace, and it reached to Noah's flood. Who were Adam's first children? Cain and Abel. What was Cain? Adam's eldest son, and he was "a tiller of the ground." But what mischief did Cain do? He killed his brother Abel, who was "a keeper of sheep." Why did Cain kill him? Because his own works were evil, and God did not accept his sacrifices; but his brother's works were righteous, and God gave some token that he accepted him. Whither went Cain when God reproved him for his murder? He went out, and departed from the presence of the Lord, and from his father's family, where God was worshipped. What were the posterity of Cain? Some of them are famous for inventions of music, and handicraft-trades, but they are supposed to have neglected religion. What other son had Adam? Seth, who was born soon after the death of Abel, and several others born after him. Did the children of Seth neglect religion too? Religion was publicly maintained for some generations in Seth's family, for they distinguished themselves from the wicked *sons of men*; they prayed to God, and were called *the sons of God*. Did they grow degenerate afterwards? All mankind grew so wicked except a few, that God saw it proper to manifest his righteous judgment, and his anger against sin, by destroying them. Who were some of the chief persons of Seth's posterity mentioned in scripture in those early times? Enoch and Methuselah, Lamech and Noah, were the most remarkable. Who was Enoch? The man who walked with God, and pleased him in the midst of a wicked world, and foretold the judgment of God on sinners. What became of Enoch? God took him to heaven without dying, as a peculiar favor and honor done to him. Who was Methuselah? The son of Enoch, and the oldest man that we ever read of. How long did he live? Nine hundred and sixty-nine years. Who was Lamech? Noah's father, who prophesied of the blessing the earth, which had been laid under a curse for the sin of Adam, should find in his son.

Who was Noah? The righteous man who was saved when the world was drowned by a flood. How did God drown the



world? When mankind had provoked him by their sins, which were exceeding great, he broke up the fountains of the great deep under ground, and caused it to rain forty days and forty nights. How was Noah saved? In an ark, or great ship or vessel, which God taught him to build. Who was saved with him? All his family, and some living creatures of every kind, namely, two of every unclean beast and bird, which were neither fit for food nor sacrifice; and seven of every clean creature, which were fit for one or both uses. How long did Noah tarry in the ark? At nine months' end he sent forth a dove, which brought in an olive-branch, to show him that the waters were abated; and at the end of twelve months and ten days he came forth, and the creatures which were with him. What commands did God give Noah? The offering of sacrifices was continued; flesh was given to man for food, as herbs were before; blood was forbidden to be eaten; the blood of man was expressly forbidden to be shed, and murder was to be punished with death. What promise did God make to Noah? That the world should never be drowned again; and it pleased God to appoint the rainbow to be a token of it. Was there no rainbow before the flood? It is probable that there was no rain before the flood, for the earth was watered daily by a thick mist, and then there could be naturally no rainbow, for this is made by the sunbeams shining upon falling rain. Who were Noah's three sons? Shem, Ham, and Japheth; and they were the fathers of all mankind after the flood. Who were the offspring or posterity of Shem? The Persians, who came from Elam their father; the Syrians from Aram; the Hebrews from Eber, as is supposed; and particularly the Jews, with other inhabitants of Asia. Who were the posterity of Ham? The Canaanites, the Philistines, and others in Asia, and the Egyptians, with other inhabitants of Africa. Who were the posterity of Japheth? Gomer, supposed to be the father of the Germans, Javan of the Greeks, Meshech of the Muscovites, and other families that dwelt in Europe. Did mankind freely divide themselves after the flood into several nations? No; but, being all of one language, they agreed rather to build a chief city with a tower, that all men might be joined in one nation or kingdom. How did God scatter them abroad into different nations? By making them speak different languages, and then they ceased to build the tower; which was called *Babel*, or *Confusion*. Did God preserve the true religion in any of their families? It is supposed to have been chiefly preserved in the family of Shem, for God is called "the Lord God of Shem."

Who was the most famous man of Shem's posterity in these early ages? Abraham, the son of Terah, of the posterity of Eber. What is the first remarkable thing recorded of Abraham? He left his own native country to go whithersoever God called him. Whence did Abraham come, and whither did he go? He came first from Chaldea, then from Haran; and he went to dwell among strangers in the land of Canaan. Who came with Abraham into Canaan? Lot, his brother's son; and they brought with them all their substance and their household. Did they continue to dwell together? Their cattle and servants grew so numerous that they parted for fear of quarrelling, and Abraham gave Lot his choice to go to the east or the west. Where did Lot sojourn? He chose the east, and pitched his tent towards Sodom, because it was a well-watered and fruitful country. What calamity befell Lot here? He was carried away captive together with other inhabitants of Sodom, when the king of Sodom was routed in battle by his enemies. What did Abraham do on this occasion? He armed his own servants, three hundred and eighteen men, who pursued the conquerors and routed them, and brought back Lot and the other captives with their goods. When Abraham returned from the slaughter of the kings, what honor was done him? Melchisedek, the king of Salem, and the priest of the most high God, met him, and pronounced a blessing upon him. What civility did the king of Sodom show Abraham? He offered him all the goods that Abraham had recovered from the former conquerors, but Abraham refused to accept them. What became of Sodom afterwards? It was burnt by fire and brimstone from heaven, together with Gomorrah, and other cities, because of the wickedness of its inhabitants. Abraham pleaded with God to spare Sodom, and God would have done it, had there been but ten righteous men in all the city. How did Lot escape? The two angels which were sent to destroy Sodom persuaded him to flee away with his family first. How many of his family escaped this judgment? Only himself and his two daughters, for his two sons-in-law refused to remove. What became of Lot's wife? She went with him part of the way, but when she looked back, hankering after Sodom, she was struck dead immediately, perhaps with a blast of that lightning which burnt Sodom, and she stood like a pillar of salt.

In what part of the country did Abraham dwell? When he removed from Lot he went towards the west, and travelling on towards the southwest, he sojourned in the land of Abimelech, king of Gerar, in the country of the Philistines. What sons had

Abraham? The two chief were Ishmael and Isaac. Who was Ishmael? He was the son of Abraham, by Hagar his hand-maid. What became of Ishmael? Abraham, by the command of God, turned Ishmael and his mother out of his house into the wilderness, because they mocked and abused his younger son Isaac. Did Ishmael perish in the wilderness? The angel of God appeared to Hagar, and showed her a spring of water when they were dying with thirst: and Ishmael grew up to be a great man, and the father of a large nation. Who was Isaac's mother? Isaac was the son of Abraham, by Sarah his wife, according to the promise of God, when they were both grown old. Why is Abraham called the father of the faithful, i. e. of the believers? Because he believed the promises of God against all probable appearance, and was a pattern to other believers in all ages. What were the three chief promises which God gave Abraham? 1. That he should have a son when he was a hundred years old. 2. That his children should possess the land of Canaan, when he had not ground enough to set his foot on there. And 3. That all the families of the earth should be blessed in him and his offspring, when he was but a private person. What did this last promise mean? That Jesus Christ, the Saviour of men, should come from his family. X What was the religion of Abraham? The same with the religion of Adam after the fall, and the religion of Noah, with the addition of circumcision, and the expectation of Canaan, to be given to his seed, as a type of heaven; and a trust in the promise of a Saviour who should spring from him, and bless all nations. How did Abraham most eminently show his obedience to God? In his readiness to offer up his son Isaac in sacrifice at God's command. And did he offer him in sacrifice? No; God withheld his hand, and sent a ram to be sacrificed in his stead. What further favors did Abraham receive from God? God visited him, and conversed with him several times in a visible manner, and changed his name from Abram to Abraham. What is written concerning Sarah, Abraham's wife? She believed God's promise, and had a son when she was ninety years old, and her name was also changed from Sarai to Sarah. What is recorded concerning Isaac their son? He feared the God of his father Abraham; he had frequent visions of God, and went out into the fields to meditate or pray, and offered sacrifices to God. Who was Isaac's wife? His father Abraham sent afar, and took a wife for him, even Rebecca, out of his own family in Mesopotamia, because he was unwilling he should marry among the wicked Canaanites, whom God had



doomed to destruction. What children had Isaac? Two sons, Esau and Jacob.

Who was Esau? He was Isaac's eldest son, bred up to hunting rather than husbandry, who sold his birthright to his brother for a mess of pottage when he was faint with hunting. Who was Jacob? The youngest son of Isaac, who, by his mother's contrivance, obtained his father's blessing, though not in a right way. By what treachery did he obtain the blessing? When his father was old, and his eyes dim, by order of his mother he put on Esau's clothes, and told his father he was Esau, his eldest son. How did Esau take this? Esau threatened to kill him, and therefore he left his father's house. Whither did Jacob go? To Laban the Syrian, who was his mother's brother. What did he meet with in going thither? He lay down to sleep on a stone at Beth-el, and had a holy dream of God, and of angels there ascending and descending between heaven and earth. How long did he live there? Twenty years, till he had got a large family of children and servants, much cattle and great riches. What did Jacob meet with in his return to Canaan? He had a vision of God, as of a man wrestling with him. Why was Jacob called Israel? Because he prayed and prevailed with God for a blessing, while he wrestled with him in the form of a man. How did his brother Esau meet him? God turned Esau's heart, so that he met him with great civility, though he came out with four hundred men (as Jacob feared) to destroy him. What posterity had Esau? A large posterity, who chiefly inhabited Mount Seir, and were called Edomites from their father's other name, Edom. How many sons had Jacob? Twelve, and they were called the twelve Patriarchs, because they were the fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel. What are their names? Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun, the sons of his wife Leah; Joseph and Benjamin, the sons of his wife Rachel; Dan and Naphtali, the sons of Bilhah his concubine; and Gad and Asher, the sons of Zilpah his concubine. Who were the most famous of all these in sacred history? Levi, Judah, and Joseph. What is there remarkable concerning Levi? The priesthood, and other things relating to the worship of God, were committed to Levi's family in following times. What is there remarkable relating to Judah? He dealt very basely with his daughter-in-law Tamar, and committed shameful wickedness. Did God forgive this sin? Yes, God forgave it so far as not to punish his posterity for it: for the kingdom and government in future ages was promised chiefly to his family.

What is there remarkable said of Joseph? His brethren sold him for a slave into Egypt, where he became ruler of the land. Why did they sell him? For envy, because his father loved him, and made him a coat of many colors, and because he dreamed that they should bow down to him. What was his first station in the land of Egypt? He was servant in the house of Potiphar, a captain of the guard, and by a false accusation of his master's wife he was cast into prison, though he was entirely innocent. What was the occasion of his advancement? He interpreted the dreams of some of his fellow-prisoners, and when the interpretation proved true, he was sent for to court to interpret the king's dream. And did this raise Joseph to be the ruler of Egypt? Yes; he was thus advanced, because he foretold the seven years of plenty and seven years of famine, which Pharaoh the king dreamed of under two different emblems, of good and bad ears of corn, and of seven fat kine and seven lean ones. How did Joseph carry himself towards his brethren in his advancement? In the famine they came to buy corn in Egypt, and bowed down to him, according to his dreams; but he treated them roughly at first, as a great lord and a stranger, till their consciences smote them for their former cruelty to him. Did he revenge himself upon them? No, but he made himself known to them with much affection and tenderness. How did he manifest his forgiveness of them? He sent for his father, and bade his brethren bring all their families into Egypt, and he maintained them all during the famine. Did Jacob die in Egypt? Yes; but according to his desire his body was carried up to the land of Canaan, and was buried there in faith of the promise, that his seed should possess the land. What became of the families of Israel after Joseph's death? They were made slaves in Egypt, and a new king, who knew not Joseph, sorely oppressed them, and endeavored to destroy them. Did Joseph, as well as his father, profess any hope of his family and kindred returning from Egypt in following times? Yes, he died in faith of the promise made to his fathers, that they should go and possess the land of Canaan; and therefore he required them, when they went, to carry up his bones, and bury them in the promised land.

Who delivered the Israelites from the slavery of Egypt? God heard their cry, and delivered them by the hand of Moses and Aaron. Who was Moses? He was one of the family of Levi among the people of Israel, who was wonderfully saved from drowning when he was an infant. How was he in danger of drowning? Pharaoh, the king of Egypt had commanded



every male child to be slain; and when Moses' parents could hide him no longer, they laid him by the bank of the river, in an ark or box of bulrushes. How was he saved? The king of Egypt's daughter found him by the river, pitied the child, and brought him up for her own son. Did he continue a courtier in Egypt? No, for when he was grown a man he showed pity to his kindred in their slavery, and slew an Egyptian; which being known, he fled from the court of Pharaoh. Whither did he fly? To the land of Midian, where he kept the sheep of Jethro, a priest or prince of the country, and married his daughter. How did God appoint him to deliver Israel? God appeared to him in a burning bush, as he was keeping Jethro's sheep, and sent him to Pharaoh to require the release of Israel, his people. What was his office afterwards? God made him the leader and lawgiver of the people of Israel. Who was Aaron? He was brother to Moses, and sent by God to meet him, as he was returning to Egypt, and appointed to assist him in his dealing with Pharaoh. What was Aaron's office afterwards? He was made the first high-priest of Israel. How did Moses and Aaron prove to Pharaoh, and to the people, that God had sent them upon this errand? They had power given them from God himself to work several miracles, or signs and wonders, to convince the people of Israel, as well as Pharaoh, that they had a commission from God. What was the first miracle? Aaron cast down his rod, and it became a serpent; and when Pharaoh's conjurors did so too, Aaron's rod swallowed theirs all up. What did Moses and Aaron do further to deliver that people? Upon Pharaoh's refusal to let the people of Israel go, they brought ten miraculous plagues upon the king, and upon all the land, by the authority and power of God. What were these ten plagues? 1. Water turned into blood. 2. Frogs. 3. Lice. 4. Flies. 5. Murrain among cattle. 6. Boils and blisters on man and beast. 7. Thunder, lightning, and hail. 8. Locusts. 9. Thick darkness. 10. The first-born slain. Were Pharaoh and his people willing to release the Israelites at last? Yes, when they saw they were all like to be destroyed, for there was not a house wherein there was not one dead, then they hastened them out, and lent them jewels and gold to adorn their sacrifices and worship. How great was the number of the Israelites that went out of Egypt? Six hundred thousand men, besides children; and all went on foot. Which way did the Israelites bend their journey? Towards the wilderness of the Red Sea, as they were guided by God himself, marching before them in a pillar of cloud by day, and

a pillar of fire by night. But did not Pharaoh and his army pursue them after they were gone? Yes, they repented that they had let them go, and pursued them to the Red Sea, resolving to destroy them. How did the people of Israel, who came out of Egypt, get over the Red Sea? When they were in distress, with the Red Sea before them, and Pharaoh's army behind them, they cried unto God, whereon Moses bade them stand still, and see the salvation of the Lord. Then, at the command of God, Moses struck the sea with his rod, and divided the waters asunder, and the children of Israel went through upon dry land. What became of the Egyptians that followed them? God troubled their army, retarded their march, and when Moses stretched out his hand over the sea again, the waters returned upon them, and they were drowned. Whither did the children of Israel go then? They went whithersoever God guided them by the pillar of cloud and the pillar of fire; and they moved and they rested according to the rest or the motion of this cloud. How did the people of Israel, who had seen all these wonders, behave themselves in their travels? At every new difficulty, when they wanted meat or water, or met with enemies, they murmured against God and Moses. How long was it before they came to the place that God had promised them? They wandered forty years in the wilderness, for their sins. What did they eat all the time? God fed them with manna, or bread that came down every night from heaven, and lay all round the camp. What did they drink in the wilderness? Moses smote the rock with his rod, and water gushed out in a river, which attended them in their journey. What did they do for clothes during these forty years? Their raiment waxed not old, nor did their shoes wear out. Did Moses govern all these people himself? By his father-in-law Jethro's advice, and by God's approbation, he appointed officers and judges over the people for common cases, but every harder cause was brought to Moses. You told me that Moses was a lawgiver to the Jews, or people of Israel; pray how came he by those wise and holy laws which he gave them? He conversed with God fourscore days and nights on Mount Sinai, and there he learned them. What token was there that Moses had been with God? The face of Moses shone so that the people could not converse with him till he put a veil on his face. What sort of laws were those which Moses gave the Jews? Moral laws, ceremonial laws, and judicial laws, and all by God's appointment. What was the religion of the Jews or Israelites? The same with the religion of Adam after his fall, of Noah, and Abraham, with

those additions given by Moses. That is called the *Jewish*, or *Mosaical*, or *Levitical Dispensation*.

Which was the moral law given to the Jews? All those commands which relate to their behavior, considered as men, and which lie scattered up and down in the books of Moses: but they are as it were reduced into a small compass in the ten commandments. How were these ten commandments first given them? By the voice of God on Mount Sinai, three months after their coming out of Egypt; and it was attended with thunder, and fire, and smoke, and the sound of a trumpet. Where was this moral law more especially written? In the two tables of stone which God wrote with his own hand, and gave to Moses. What did the first table contain? Their duty towards God in the first four commandments. What did the second table contain? Their duty towards man in the last six commandments.

What was the ceremonial law? All those commandments which seem to have some religious design in them, especially such as related to their cleansing from any defilement, and their peculiar forms of worship.

What were the chief rites or ceremonies appointed for *purification* or *cleansing* among the Jews? Washing with water, sprinkling with water or blood, anointing with holy oil, shaving the head of man or woman, together with various sorts of sacrifices, and some other appointments. What were those things or persons among the Jews which here required to be purified? All persons, houses, buildings, garments, or other things which were set apart for the service of God; and all such as had been defiled by leprosy, by touching human dead bodies, or the carcass of any unclean animals, or by other ceremonial pollutions. Were there any crimes of real impiety which could be taken away by these outward ceremonies? The blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth no farther than to the purifying of the flesh. How then were the sins of the Jews cleansed or pardoned? They obtained pardon of God according to the discovery of grace and forgiveness scattered up and down through all the five books of Moses, and especially according to the promises made and the encouragements given to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Is it not said, "He shall bring his trespass-offering to the Lord, and the priest shall make an atonement for him before the Lord, and it shall be forgiven him?" This *trespass-offering* would set him right indeed in the sight of God, as king of the nation against whose political laws the man had committed this tres-



pass ; but it never was designed to free him from the guilt of his sin in the sight of God, as the Lord of conscience, unless he repented of this sin in his heart, and trusted in the mercy of God so far as it was revealed in that day ; for it is certain truth that “the blood of beasts cannot take away sins.”

What were the most remarkable sins of the Jews against God in the wilderness ? Besides their murmuring at some difficulties in the beginning of their journey, the first remarkable and notorious crime was their making a golden calf, and worshipping it at the foot of Mount Sinai. What temptation or what pretence could they have for such a crime ? Moses was gone up into Mount Sinai, and tarried there so many days longer than they expected, that they wanted some visible token of God's presence among them ; and so they constrained Aaron to make this golden image, to be a representation of the presence of God, but without God's appointment. How did God punish them for the golden calf ? The children of Levi were commanded to slay their brethren, and they slew 3,000 of the children of Israel. What was another of their remarkable sins ? In the next stage, after Sinai, they loathed the manna which God sent them, and murmured for want of flesh. How was the murmuring punished ? God gave them the flesh of quails in abundance, and sent the plague with it. What was their third remarkable sin ? Being discouraged by the spies, who searched out the land of Canaan, and brought an ill report of that promised land, they were for making a captain, to return to Egypt. How was this rebellion chastised ? Ten of the spies died immediately of a plague, and all the people were condemned to wander forty years in the wilderness, till all those who were above twenty years old should die by degrees in their travels. Who of the spies were saved ? None but Caleb and Joshua, who followed the Lord fully, and gave a good account of the land of promise. What was their fourth remarkable sin ? When Korah, Dathan, and Abiram stirred up a rebellion against Moses and Aaron. What was the occasion of this rebellion of Korah and his companions ? They pretended that all Israel were holy, and that Aaron and his family had no more right to the priesthood than they ; and that Moses took too much upon him to determine every thing among them. How were Korah, Dathan, and Abiram punished ? They and their families (the sons of Korah excepted) were swallowed up by an earthquake, and their two hundred and fifty companions were burnt by a fire which came out from God ; and when the congregation murmured against Moses and Aaron for the death of

these sinners, God smote above fourteen thousand of them, and they died of the plague. What miracle did God work to show that he had chosen Aaron's family to the priesthood? He bid the heads of the people choose twelve rods for the twelve tribes of Israel, and write Aaron's name upon Levi's rod, and lay them up in the tabernacle till the morrow: at which time they took each man his rod, and Aaron's rod blossomed and yielded almonds. What was done with this rod of Aaron? It was laid up in the ark to be a lasting testimony against these rebels, and to confirm Aaron's right to the priesthood. What was the fifth remarkable sin of the people? They murmured because of the length of the way, and for want of better food than manna. How was this new murmuring punished? God sent fiery serpents amongst them, which destroyed many of them. How were the people healed who were bitten by the serpents? By looking up to a serpent of brass, which Moses put upon a high pole at God's command. What was the sixth remarkable sin of Israel? Profligacy and idolatry. Who tempted them to this idolatry? Balaam the wicked prophet and soothsayer. What became of Balaam at last? He was slain among the Midianites by the men of Israel under the conduct of Moses, before they came to the river Jordan.

What became of the people of Israel after all their wanderings in the wilderness? Though their sins and punishments were many and great, yet they were not destroyed; but God brought them at last into Canaan, the land which he promised to their fathers. Did Moses lead them into that land? No; he was only permitted to see it from Mount Pisgah, and there he died, and God buried him. Did Aaron go with them into Canaan? Aaron died before Moses, and Eleazar his son was made high-priest in his room. Why were not Moses, the law-giver, and Aaron, the high-priest, suffered to bring the people into the land of promise? Because they had both sinned, and offended God in the wilderness, and God would show his displeasure against sin. Who was appointed to lead the people of Israel into the promised land? Joshua, whose name is the same with Jesus, and who came to be the governor and captain of Israel after Moses died. How did they get over the river Jordan? As soon as the priests who bore the ark dipped their feet in the brink of the river, the waters which were above rose up in a heap, and the channel was left dry, while all the people passed over. What memorial did they leave of their passing over Jordan on foot? By God's appointment they took up twelve stones out of the midst of Jordan, where the priests

stood with the ark while the tribes passed over, and set them up as a monument in the place wherein they lodged the first night. How were they commanded to deal with the Canaanites when they took their land? They were required to destroy them utterly, lest if they should live, they might teach Israel their idolatries, and their wicked customs. What was the first city they took in Canaan? Jericho, whose walls fell down when by God's appointment they sounded trumpets made of rams' horns. What did they do when they took the city? By God's command they devoted it as the first-fruits, to be a sacrifice to the Lord, and therefore they burnt all the goods in it, together with the city, as well as destroyed all the inhabitants, except Rahab the harlot, and her kindred. Why was Rahab spared? Because she believed that God would give Israel the land of Canaan, and she hid and saved the spies whom Joshua sent. How did they take the city of Ai? By counterfeiting a flight; and when the men of Ai were drawn out of the city, the Israelites, who lay in ambush, entered and burnt it. How did Israel conquer the king of Jerusalem with his four allies? God helped Israel, by casting great hailstones from heaven upon their enemies. What remarkable things did Joshua do that day? He bade the sun and moon stand still to lengthen out the day for his victory, and they obeyed him. What did Joshua do with the five kings when he took them? He called the captains of Israel to set their feet on their necks, and then he slew them, and hanged them upon five trees before the Lord. Where was the tabernacle first set up after they came to Canaan? In Shiloh, in the tribe of Ephraim, at some distance from Jerusalem, and there it tarried above three hundred years, even to the days of Samuel. How came it to be set up there? By the appointment of God; for it is said, "He set his name first in Shiloh." How was the land of Canaan divided among the people? Reuben and Gad, and half the tribe of Manasseh, had their inheritance given them by Moses on the other side of Jordan, and Joshua cast lots for the rest of the tribes before the Lord in Shiloh. Did not the tribes of Reuben and Gad, and half Manasseh, go to help their brethren in destroying the Canaanites? By the appointment of Moses, they went over Jordan to assist their brethren, till they were settled in the land. What memorial did these two tribes and a half leave in the land of Canaan, that they belonged to the nation of Israel? They built a great altar upon the borders of Jordan, not for a sacrifice, but merely as a memorial of their interest in the God of Israel, in the tabernacle, and in the worship thereof. Where



was the tribe of Levi disposed of? Being devoted to the service of the tabernacle and religion, they were not fixed in one spot of ground, but had a share in the inheritance of every tribe, that they might teach every city the laws of God and their duty. What did Joshua do just before his death? He summoned the people together, and made a most solemn covenant with them, that they should serve the Lord. Did the Israelites drive all the Canaanites out of the land? No, for there were some left for several hundred years after Joshua's death: the Jebusites and the Philistines continued till the days of David. What were the most common sins that Israel was guilty of after their settlement in Canaan? They fell into idolatry, or worshipping the gods of the nations round about them, after Joshua was dead, and the elders of the people of that age who outlived Joshua.

Who governed the people of Israel after Joshua's death? God was always the king and ruler of Israel, and under him the several tribes probably chose their own magistrates and officers, according to the appointment of Moses. Was not the high-priest the ruler under God? The high-priest seems to have been appointed by God and Moses to be the chief counsellor in declaring the laws and statutes of God, as the other priests were also counsellors; but the executive power of government was rather vested in those who were called *judges*, whether they were ordinary or extraordinary. Did these ordinary officers do justice, and maintain good order in the land after the days of Joshua? We have very little account of them; but it is certain they did not fulfil their duty, because there was sometimes great wickedness among the people without restraint; much idolatry and mischief, both public and private, and that for want of government. Why did God, the king of Israel, leave his people under these inconveniences? As they had forsaken God and his laws, so God seemed sometimes to have forsaken the care of them, and given them up for a season to the confusions and miseries which arise from the want of government, and also suffered their enemies, on every side, to make inroads upon them, and bring them into slavery. But did not the great God interpose for their deliverance? Sometimes in the course of his providence, and by special inspiration, he raised up extraordinary judges to rescue them from the hand of their enemies, and to restore government among them. Who were some of the most remarkable of the extraordinary judges raised up to rescue the people of Israel? Ehud and Shamgar, Deborah and Gideon, Jephthah, Samson, and Samuel. Who was Ehud?

A man of Benjamin, who delivered Israel from the oppression of Eglon, king of Moab. How did he deliver them? By bringing a present to Eglon, and then stabbing him with a dagger. What did Shamgar do towards their deliverance? He rescued Israel from the oppressions of the Philistines, and slew six hundred of them with an ox-goad. Who was Deborah? She was a woman, a prophetess, who delivered Israel from the tyranny of Jabin, king of Canaan, who had nine hundred chariots of iron. How did she deliver Israel from his hand? She sent forth Barak to battle against him, who routed his army, which was commanded by Sisera his general. How was Sisera slain? By the hand of Jael, a woman, who, when he came to rest himself in her tent, drove a nail into his temples. Who was Gideon? The son of Joash: he was called by an angel, or by God himself, to destroy the worship of Baal, and to deliver Israel from the hands of the Midianites. How did he begin his work? He first threw down the altar of Baal, the idol, by night, and cut down the idolatrous grove, and then offered a sacrifice to the Lord, according to the order he had received from God. What further sign did God give him of success? At his request God made a fleece of wool wet, when the ground all around it was dry; and again he made a fleece of wool dry, when the ground was wet. How many men did God appoint for Gideon's army? Out of thirty-two thousand he appointed but three hundred men. How did the three hundred men conquer Midian? Each of them, by Gideon's order, took a trumpet, and a pitcher with a lamp in it, and coming at midnight on the camp of the Midianites, they broke their pitchers, and frightened them with a sudden blaze of lamps, the sound of the trumpets, and loud shouting. Did Gideon reign over Israel after this great victory? No: he refused to reign, for he said God was their king. Did Gideon's sons govern Israel afterwards? None of Gideon's threescore and ten sons set up themselves, but Abimelech; the son of his concubine, made himself king. How did Abimelech advance himself to the kingdom? He slew all his threescore and ten brothers, except the youngest, who escaped. How was Abimelech slain? When he was besieging a city, a woman cast a piece of millstone upon his head. Who was Jephthah? A mighty man of valor, who delivered Israel from the power of the Ammonites. What was remarkable concerning him? He made a rash vow to sacrifice to God the first thing that came to meet him after his victory, and that happened to be his daughter and only child. Who was Samson? The son of Manoah, and he delivered Israel



from the hands of the Philistines. What was his character? He was the strongest of men, but he does not seem to have been the wisest or the best. What instances did he give of his great strength? He tore a lion asunder; he broke all the cords with which he was bound; he slew a thousand Philistines with the jaw-bone of an ass; and when the Philistines beset the gates of Gaza, he carried away the gate and gate-posts of the city with him, when he made his way out and escaped. What befell him afterwards? Delilah, a Philistine woman, cut off his hair, and then betrayed him to the Philistines, who put out his eyes, and made him grind in a mill. What was Samson's end? Thousands of the Philistines were gathered together to make sport with Samson; and in order to revenge himself of the Philistines, and to destroy the enemies of Israel, he pulled the house down upon their heads and his own. Who judged Israel after Samson? Eli the high-priest is said to have judged Israel forty years; but he is not supposed to be one of the extraordinary judges who delivered them, but rather to have been made an ordinary magistrate, perhaps over some part of the land. Who was the last of these extraordinary judges? Samuel the prophet, the son of Hannah, a pious woman. Where was Samuel brought up? As he was requested of the Lord, so he was given to the Lord, and was brought up at the tabernacle in Shiloh, under the care of Eli, the high-priest. What was Samuel's office? He waited on the service of the tabernacle as a Levite, being the first-born, and being given to God. Was he not also a prophet? Yes; God called him three times in one night when he was a child, and made a prophet of him, and told him what calamities should befall the house of Eli the high-priest. What was the great crime of Eli? Though he loved and honored God himself, yet he did not restrain his sons from wickedness. In what manner did God show his displeasure against the house of Eli? His two sons were slain by the Philistines in battle, and the high-priesthood went into another branch of Aaron's family. What became of Eli himself? When he heard that the ark of God was taken by the Philistines, he fainted for grief, and falling down backward he broke his neck. What did the Philistines do with the ark of God? They brought it into the house of their idol, Dagon, and the idol fell down and broke off his head and his hands upon the threshold. What punishment did the Philistines suffer for keeping the ark? In several places where they placed it, God destroyed many of the inhabitants, and smote the rest with sore diseases. What became of the ark then? The Philistines put it into a new cart

drawn by two milch-kine, whose calves were shut up at home, and yet they carried it directly into the land of Israel to Bethshemesh. What did the men of Bethshemesh do? They looked into the ark, which was utterly forbidden, and God smote many of them with a great slaughter, and they sent the ark away to Kirjath-jearim. How did Samuel deliver Israel from the Philistines when they made a new war upon them? He offered a burnt-offering, and prayed to the Lord, and God fought against the Philistines with thunder from heaven, and scattered and destroyed them. How did Samuel govern the people? He travelled through the land every year; he judged Israel with great honor and justice for many years; but in his old age he made his sons judges, and they oppressed and abused the people. What was the request of the people on this occasion? That they might have a king like the rest of the nations. What did Samuel do in this case? He would have advised them against it, because God was their king, but they still persisted in desiring a man for a king. Did Samuel gratify them in this desire? Being admonished of God, he complied with their desire, and appointed a king over them.

Who was the first king of Israel? Saul, a very tall young man, the son of Kish, a Benjamite. How did Samuel first meet with him? Saul was sent by his father to seek some asses that he had lost, and asking Samuel about them, Samuel took him aside privately, and anointed him king of Israel. But how was he made king publicly? God chose and determined Saul to be king by casting lots among the tribes and families of Israel. How did Saul behave himself in his kingdom? He governed well at first for a little time, but afterwards he disobeyed the word of God in several instances, and God rejected him. Whom did God choose in his room? David, of the tribe of Judah, who is called *the man after God's own heart*. Who were the forefathers of David? He was the youngest son of Jesse, who was the son of Obed, who was the son of Boaz by Ruth his wife. How did God anoint him to be king? He sent Samuel secretly to anoint him with oil at Bethlehem, in the midst of his brethren. How did David make his first appearance at court? David understood music, and when the evil spirit of melancholy came upon Saul, hearing of David's skill in music, he sent for him to play on the harp to refresh him. What remarkable action made him more publicly known? When Goliath the giant challenged the men of Israel, David undertook the combat, and slew him with a sling and a stone. What became of Saul at last? The Philistines invaded Israel, and Saul was in great

distress, because God gave him no directions, nor answered him by dreams, nor by the priests, nor prophets: he then inquired of a woman who had a familiar spirit, and was informed that he and his sons should die on the morrow, which came to pass. Where was David all this while? He was fled a second time to Achish, king of Gath, and he had been just then employed in destroying the Amalekites, who had plundered the city of Ziklag, where he dwelt. What did David do upon the death of Saul? He made an elegy upon him and Jonathan his son, and went up to Hebron, a city of Judah, by God's direction, where the men of Judah made him their king. How long did David reign at Hebron? Seven years and a half; and then all Israel came to him and chose him for their king, and brought him up to Jerusalem. How did David govern Israel? He executed judgment and justice among all the people. What were the chief blemishes of David's life? His adultery with Bathsheba, the wife of Uriah, and his pride in numbering the people of Israel. What were some of the chief troubles that actually came on David's family on account of his sins? The rebellion and death of his children, except only Solomon. What was the other remarkable crime of David, besides his abuse and murder of Uriah? The pride of his heart in numbering all the people of the tribes of Israel, that he might know how great a king he was. How was he punished for this sin? God gave him leave to choose one of these three punishments, either seven years' famine, or three months of war, or three days' pestilence. Which did David choose? The famine, or the pestilence, rather than war; for he chose rather to fall into the hands of God than of man. What was the trouble that David met with from his son Adonijah? When David was old, Adonijah set himself up for king. How came Adonijah to be so insolent? His father humored him too much all his life, and never displeased him. What did David do under this trouble? He proclaimed Solomon, the son of Bathsheba, king, in his own lifetime; and Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, anointed him king of Israel. How long did David reign in all? Forty years, and then he died in his bed in peace. What did David do towards the building of the Temple before his death? He made a vast preparation of gold, silver, and jewels, and other materials, and gave the pattern of every thing to his son Solomon, as he received it of God.

What was the general character of Solomon? That he was the wisest of men. Wherein did his wisdom towards God appear? In that he asked not long life, nor riches, nor honors,



but understanding and knowledge, to govern so great a people. What special care did Solomon take for the worship of God? He built that temple for which David had made so large a preparation. It was a most glorious palace, built of cedar, and fir, and olive-wood, and hewn stone, with most amazing expense of gold, and silver, and brass, and precious stones, both for the adorning of the house itself, and for the holy vessels thereof. He built also two distinct courts about it, one for the people of Israel, and one for the priests, all of which were called "the Temple." In what form did he build it? In imitation of the tabernacle of Moses and the court thereof, but with vast and universal improvement in the grandeur, riches, and magnificence of it, by the pattern that David his father received from God, and gave to him. Wherein did God bless the reign of Solomon? By giving him prodigious treasures and magnificent state, and spreading the fame of his greatness and wisdom over all nations. How long did Solomon reign? Forty years; and though he had many wives, he left but one son behind him, Rehoboam, to succeed him in the kingdom of Israel. What was the character of Rehoboam? Though Solomon had written so many excellent lessons of morality and piety for his son in the book of Proverbs, and given him so many warnings, yet he followed evil courses; and Solomon himself seems to intimate it in the book of Ecclesiastes, chap. ii. 19: "Who knoweth whether his son will be a wise man or a fool?" What further occasion did Rehoboam give for the revolt of the tribes of Israel from him? Upon the death of his father, and his accession to the throne, he despised the counsel of the old men, and hearkened to the advice of rash young men; he threatened the nation of Israel to "make their yoke heavier" than his father had done, that is, to lay heavier taxes on them. What followed upon this threatening of king Rehoboam? All the tribes of Israel, except Judah and Benjamin, made Jeroboam their king; and thus the nation was divided into two kingdoms, which were afterwards called the kingdom of Judah and the kingdom of Israel.

How many kings reigned over Israel after they were separated from Judah? These nineteen, and not one of them was good: Jeroboam I., Nadab, Baasha, Elah, Zimri, Omri, Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, Joash, Jeroboam II., Zachariah, Shal-lum, Menahem, Pekahiah, Pekah, and Hoshea. Who were the most remarkable among these kings of Israel? Jeroboam I., Omri, Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehu, Joash, Pekah, and Hoshea. What was the chief character and crime of Jeroboam? Instead of

worshipping God, who dwelt between the cherubim in the temple of Jerusalem, he made two golden images which are called calves, and set them up in two distant parts of Israel, namely, Dan and Bethel, and taught the people to worship before them. What was the worship he appointed? Something like the worship which God appointed at Jerusalem, with an altar, and priests, and sacrifices, and incense. For what end did Jeroboam do this? He feared, if the people went up frequently to sacrifice at Jerusalem, they would be tempted to return again to Rehoboam king of Judah. What visible token of displeasure did God manifest against this worship which Jeroboam set up? He sent a prophet to the altar at Bethel, who foretold that a son of the house of David, Josiah by name, should burn the bones of Jeroboam's priests upon the altar. What sign did the prophet give that this prophecy should be fulfilled? The prophet foretold that the altar should be rent asunder, and the ashes poured out, both of which were fulfilled immediately: and Jeroboam's hand withered when he stretched it out to lay hold of the prophet, though at the prayer of the prophet God restored it again. Who was Omri? The captain of the host of Israel, who was made king by the people when Zimri set up himself. Who was Ahab, and what was his character? Ahab was the son of Omri, who followed the wicked ways of his predecessors: he sinned against God and man grievously, and provoked God beyond all who were before him. How did God signify his displeasure against Ahab? He sent Elijah the prophet to reprove him, and to foretell that there should be neither dew nor rain for several years, which accordingly came to pass. How was Elijah himself fed during this famine? He was appointed to hide himself by the brook Cherith, and the ravens brought him bread and flesh in the morning and the evening, and he drank of the water of the brook. Whither did the prophet go when the brook was dried up? God sent him to a woman of Sarepta near Sidon, to be maintained by her, when she had only a handful of meal in a barrel, and a little oil in a cruse. How could this maintain the woman, her son, and the prophet? God wonderfully increased the oil and the meal, so that the barrel of meal wasted not, neither did the cruse of oil fail, till God sent rain upon the land. What further miracles did Elijah work in this woman's family, to prove that he was sent from God? When her son died, the prophet raised him to life again. What special deliverance did God give Israel in the time of Ahab? Though Ahab was so great a sinner, yet God made Israel victorious over the Syrians who invaded them, be-

cause Benhadad the king of Syria boasted and blasphemed God. What were some of the special sins of Ahab against God? Besides the idolatry of the calves, he also set up the idol Baal, he caused Israel to worship it, and by the influence of his wife Jezebel, slew a great number of the prophets of the Lord. Were any of the prophets of the Lord saved? Obadiah, the governor of Ahab's house, hid a hundred of them in two caves, and fed them with bread and water, while Elijah fled wheresoever he could find a hiding-place. How did Elijah bring about the destruction of Baal's prophets? He boldly met Ahab, and bid him summon all Israel together, and the four hundred and fifty prophets of Baal, that a sacrifice might be offered to Baal and to Jehovah, to make an experiment which was the true God. How did he convince the people that Jehovah was the true God? Fire came down from heaven and consumed Elijah's sacrifice, after he had poured great quantities of water upon it; which the prophets attempted in vain to procure on their altar though they cut themselves with knives, and cried aloud to their God. What influence had this upon the people? They fell upon their faces, and acknowledged Jehovah to be the true God; and then, at the command of Elijah, the people slew all the prophets of Baal. How did God further manifest his approbation of this conduct of Elijah? He immediately sent rain, and put an end to the famine. What was one of the most remarkable sins of Ahab against man? He coveted the vineyard of Naboth, and by the help of false witnesses stoned Naboth to death for blasphemy, and took possession of his land. What was the manner of Ahab's death after so wicked a life? In opposition to the prophecy of Micaiah, he went to fight with the king of Syria, and received a mortal wound. Wherein did the judgment of God against Ahab appear in his death? The dogs licked up his blood, on that spot of ground where Naboth's blood was shed, according to the prophecy of Elijah. What sort of a man was Ahaziah? Ahaziah was the son of Ahab, who succeeded him in his kingdom, and followed his wicked ways. What particular crimes of Ahaziah are recorded? When he was sick, he sent to inquire of Baalzebub, the god of Ekron, about his recovery; and because Elijah reproved him for it, he sent out three captains, each with fifty men, to make Elijah their prisoner. What did Elijah do on this occasion? He brought down fire from heaven, which consumed the first two of them with their troops, but he spared the third upon his entreaty, and then went down with him to king Ahaziah, and told him he should surely die. How did Elijah leave the world?



He was taken up to heaven in a whirlwind, by a chariot and horses of fire, and left his mantle behind him. Who succeeded Elijah in the office of prophet? Elisha, who was with him when he was taken up to heaven, and had a double portion of the spirit of Elijah given him. What were some of the chief miracles and prophecies of Elisha? 1. He smote the waters of Jordan with Elisha's mantle, saying, *Where is the Lord God of Elijah?* and the waters divided for him to pass over. 2. He cured the unwholesome water near Jericho, by casting salt into it. 3. He cursed some children that mocked and reproached him, and there came two she-bears out of the wood, and tore to pieces forty-two of them. 4. He brought water in a time of drought to supply three armies, namely, those of Edom, Judah, and Israel. 5. He increased the widow's pot of oil, that it was sufficient to pay her debts and maintain her. 6. He promised a son to the Shunamite woman who entertained him, who was before barren; and raised this son to life again when he died. 7. He healed Naaman the Syrian of his leprosy, by bidding him wash in Jordan. 8. He pronounced the plague of leprosy on Gehazi, his own servant, for his covetousness and lying. 9. He made the iron head of an axe float on the water, that it might be restored to its owner. 10. He discovered the king of Syria's private counsels to the king of Israel, and smote his army with blindness. 11. He foretold vast plenty on the morrow, in the midst of a siege and famine in Samaria. 12. He foretold the death of Benhadad the king of Syria: and that Hazael should succeed him, and treat Israel with cruelty. Who was Jehu, and how came he to the kingdom? Jehu was a captain, who was anointed king by the prophet whom Elisha sent for that purpose, according to the appointment of God and Elijah. What was the great work for which God raised up Jehu to the kingdom? To destroy the worship of Baal, and to bring the threatened judgments on the house of Ahab for their wickedness. How did Jehu execute this bloody work upon the house of Ahab? These three ways: He shot Jehoram, the son of Ahab, who was then king, with an arrow, and cast him upon the land of Naboth, whom Ahab slew. 2. He commanded Jezebel, the wicked and idolatrous queen-mother, to be thrown out of the window, and the dogs ate her up. 3. He ordered the seventy remaining sons of Ahab to be slain in Samaria, and their heads to be brought him in baskets. How did he destroy the worship of Baal? He gathered the prophets of Baal, and his priests, and his worshippers, together into the temple, under a pretence of a great sacrifice to Baal; and then commanded them all to be

slain with the sword, and the image to be burnt, and the temple to be destroyed. Did Jehu continue to obey God in all things? No; for though he executed the vengeance of God against Ahab, and the worshippers of Baal, yet he maintained the idolatry of Jeroboam, namely, the calves of Dan and Bethel. Who was Joash? He was the son of Jehoahaz, the son of Jehu, and he reigned over Israel. What is there remarkable in his conduct? When Elisha was upon his death-bed, he came down to see him, and wept over him, yet he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam. What did he do for the good of Israel? According to the prophecy of dying Elisha, he smote the Syrians thrice, who had oppressed Israel in the days of his father. Is there any thing of moment recorded concerning Elisha after his death? They buried a man the year following in the sepulchre of Elisha, and as soon as he touched the bones of Elisha, he revived, and stood upon his feet. What did Joash do against Judah? When Amaziah king of Judah provoked him to war, he routed the army of Judah, and took the king prisoner: he brake down the walls of Jerusalem, and plundered the house of the Lord, and the king's house, of all the gold and silver vessels. Did any remarkable thing happen in the reign of Pekah? This Pekah joined with the king of Syria to invade Judah, but he was repulsed. In his days Tiglath Pileser, king of Assyria, took many cities in Galilee, and carried many of the people captive to Assyria. Who was Hoshea, and what is recorded of him? He was the last king of Israel; he slew Pekah, and made himself king. How came the kingdom to end in him? In his days Shalmaneser, king of Assyria, took the city of Samaria, bound Hoshea the king in prison, carried multitudes of Israel captive into Assyria, and distributed them into several distant countries, from which they have never returned to this day. What provoked Shalmaneser to do this? Hoshea had submitted to him, and afterwards plotted and rebelled against him. What provoked God to punish Israel thus? The people of Israel, with all their kings, after their separation from the house of David, had been guilty of continual idolatry, in opposition to the many precepts and warnings of God, by the writings of Moses, and the voice of all the prophets. What became of Samaria, and the other cities of Israel, when the people were driven out of them? Several of the heathen nations were placed there, and each worshipped their own gods and idols; wherefore the Lord sent lions amongst them, and destroyed many of them. What was done on this occasion to appease the anger of God, and save the people from the lions? The king of



Assyria sent a Jewish priest thither, to teach them the worship of the God of Israel. What was the effect of this conduct of the king of Assyria? These nations feared the God of Israel, and yet they could not lay aside their own idolatries, for they continued to serve their own graven images also in many following generations. But did they always continue in this mixed kind of religion? In process of time they forsook their idols, worshipped the true God only, and submitted themselves to the Jewish religion, so as to receive the five books of Moses; they had a temple of their own built on mount Gerizim, and in the New Testament are called Samaritans.

How many kings and rulers reigned over Judah? Twenty; namely, Rehoboam, Abijah, Asa, Jehoshaphat, Jehoram, Ahaziah, Athaliah, the queen, Joash, Amaziah, Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, Hezekiah, Manasseh, Amon, Josiah, Jehoahaz, Jehoiakim, Jehoiachin, and Zedekiah. Were all these rulers of Judah also great sinners as well as the kings of Israel? A few of them were very religious, some very wicked, and others of an indifferent or mixed character. What fell out in Rehoboam's reign, after the ten tribes had made Jeroboam their king? When Rehoboam raised a great army out of Judah and Benjamin to recover the ten tribes, God, by his prophet, forbade them to proceed. Were there no wars then between Judah and Israel? Yes: in the following times there were bloody wars between them. How did the people of Judah behave themselves under the government of Rehoboam? They fell into idolatry and shameful sins, whereupon God was angry, and Shishak, king of Egypt, plundered the temple and the king's house of their treasures, in the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign. So short-lived was the supreme grandeur and glory of the Jewish church and state! Did Abijah, the son of Rehoboam, do any thing remarkable in his reign? He made a speech and pleaded against Israel, when Jeroboam led them to war against him; he reproved them for their departure from the true worship of God, and from the house of David; and when they would not hearken, but set upon him in battle, he and his army cried unto the Lord, and shouted, and slew five hundred thousand men. A striking example of divine success! What is recorded concerning Asa, the son of Abijah, the king of Judah? That he did what was right in the eyes of the Lord, and destroyed the idols which had been set up in the land. What token of favor did God show him? When he called upon the Lord, and trusted to him, he defeated the army of the Ethiopians, who came against him, though they were a thousand thousand. Did

Asa continue all his days to fear the Lord? In his old age he fell into distrust of God, and he gave the treasure that remained in the house of God, and in the king's house, to the king of Syria, to guard and help him against Baasha, the king of Israel; and he imprisoned the prophet who reproved him for it. What is remarkable in Asa's death? That in the disease of his feet (which is supposed to be the gout) he sought not the Lord, but only to the physicians; "and he slept with his fathers." How did his son Jehoshaphat behave himself in the kingdom? He walked in the first and best ways of his father David, and God was with him. Wherein did Jehoshaphat particularly discover his piety and goodness? He appointed Levites and priests throughout all the cities of Judah, to teach the law of the Lord; and he set judges in the land, with a solemn charge to do justice without bribery. Wherein did God manifest his special favor to Jehoshaphat? God gave him very great treasures, and the fear of the Lord fell upon all the kingdoms round about Judah, so that for many years they made no war upon him. Did Jehoram, the son of Jehoshaphat, imitate his father's government in piety? By no means; for he slew all his own brethren, he walked in the ways of Ahab, king of Israel, and took his daughter Athaliah to wife. How did God testify his displeasure against Jehoram? He smote Jehoram with such an incurable distemper that his bowels fell out, and he died of sore diseases. Who succeeded Jehoram in the kingdom? Ahaziah, his youngest son, for all his eldest were slain in the camp by the Arabians. Who succeeded to the throne of Judah when Ahaziah was dead? Athaliah his mother seized the kingdom, and destroyed all the seed-royal of the house of Judah, except Joash, the son of Ahaziah, an infant of a year old, who was hid in the temple. How did Athaliah reign? As she counselled her son Ahaziah before, so she herself practised the idolatry of the house of Ahab. What was the conduct of Joash in his government? He did that which was right in the sight of the Lord all the days of Jehoiada the priest, who was his uncle; he repaired the temple, and the vessels thereof, and restored the worship of God. How did Joash behave after Jehoiada's death? He was persuaded to change the worship of God for idols, and most ungratefully slew Zechariah the son of Jehoiada, because he reproved the idolatry of the people. In what manner did God punish him for his crime? He sent an army of the Syrians against him, who pillaged the country; he smote him with sore diseases, and at last his own servants slew him on his bed. How did Amaziah the son of Joash reign?

At first he seemed to work righteousness, and hearkened to the voice of God and his prophets; but afterwards, gaining a victory over the Edomites, he learned to worship the gods of Edom. What were the character and reign of Uzziah the king? He was made king at sixteen years old, in the room of his father Amaziah; he sought after God in the days of Zechariah the prophet, and God prospered his arms against all his enemies, and made his name great. Is there any thing very remarkable in the reign of Jotham the son of Uzziah? He was a good king, and God blessed his arms, so that he brought the Ammonites under tribute. How did Ahaz, the son of Jotham, behave himself? He walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, made images for Baal, and offered his children in sacrifice by fire, after the abominations of the heathen. How did God show his displeasure against Ahaz? His land was invaded by the king of Syria, and by the king of Israel: multitudes of his people were slain, and many captives were carried to Damascus and to Samaria, though the Israelites restored their captives again at the word of the prophet Oded. What further iniquities of Ahaz are recorded? That he set aside the brazen altar which was before the Lord, and set up another in the court of the temple, according to the pattern of an altar he had seen at Damascus, and at last fell in with the idolatry of the heathen nations. Did Hezekiah, the son of Ahaz, continue in the sins of his father? No; but he made a great reformation, not only in Judah, but also in Ephraim and Manasseh; he brake the images, cut down their groves, destroyed their altars, repaired the temple, and restored the worship of the true God there. What peculiar instance did he give of his zeal against all manner of idolatry? He broke in pieces the brazen serpent that Moses had made in the wilderness, because the people burnt incense to it. In what manner did he keep the passover? He sent to all Israel, as well as to Judah, to invite them to keep the passover at Jerusalem, according to the appointment of God. Did the other tribes of Israel come at his invitation? Some mocked the message, but many out of several tribes came to the passover, so that there was not the like since the time of Solomon. Were all these people sufficiently purified to keep the passover? No; but at the prayer of Hezekiah, the Lord pardoned and accepted them, though several things in this passover were not exactly conformable to the holy institution. Wherein did God show his acceptance of Hezekiah's zeal and piety? God prospered him in his wars against his enemies, and enabled him to cast off the yoke of the king of Assyria while he trusted in him. What



weakness was Hezekiah guilty of afterwards, when Sennacherib, king of Assyria, invaded Judah? He bribed him to depart with gold and silver taken from the house of God. What success had this conduct of Hezekiah? Very ill success; for, some years after, Sennacherib sent an army to take Jerusalem. What did Hezekiah do in this distress? When Sennacherib sent Rabshakeh with blasphemies against God and threatenings against the people, Hezekiah humbled himself greatly, and spread the railing letter before the Lord in the temple, and prayed earnestly to God for deliverance. What was the success of Hezekiah's prayer? Isaiah the prophet assured him of deliverance: and the angel of the Lord slew in the camp of the Assyrians one hundred and fourscore and five thousand men at once. Wherein did Hezekiah misbehave himself after he had received all this mercy? In the vanity and pride of his heart, he showed the messengers of the king of Babylon all his treasures. How was Hezekiah's pride punished? God told him by the prophet Isaiah, that all these treasures should be carried into Babylon: but because Hezekiah humbled himself, God deferred the execution of it till after his death. What was the character and the government of his son Manasseh? He forsook the good ways of his father Hezekiah; he brought in idolatry of many kinds; he worshipped the sun, moon, and stars; he made his son pass through the fire, he used enchantments, and shed much innocent blood. How were his transgressions punished? The captains of the host of Assyria came up against Manasseh, took him among the thorns, bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon. How did Manasseh behave in his affliction? He humbled himself greatly before God in prayer, whereupon God restored him to his kingdom, where he wrought a great reformation. What is written concerning Amon the son of Manasseh? Amon restored the idolatry which Manasseh had once set up, but he never repented or returned to God as his father had done, and he was slain by his own servants. What is worthy of notice in the reign of Josiah the son of Amon? At eight years old he began his reign; at sixteen he sought after God; and at twenty he destroyed the altar and idols which his father Amon, the son of Manasseh, had set up. How did he carry on this work of reformation? He repaired the temple, and restored the worship of God; and finding a book of the law of the Lord by Moses, he rent his clothes, and mourned to think how little this law had been observed. What further use did he make of this book? He read the words of it in the ears of all the elders of



Judah, and the people, the priests, and the prophets, and made a covenant with the people of Judah to perform what was written in this book. How came Josiah by his death? He went out to fight with the king of Egypt, without the direction of God, and he was slain, and great lamentation was made for him. Who succeeded Josiah? Eliakim, sometimes also called Jehoiakim. Who succeeded Jehoiakim? His son Jehoiachin. Was there any king in Judah after Jehoiachin? Yes; the last king was Zedekiah. What fell out in the days of Zedekiah? He rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar, to whom he had sworn subjection by the name of the true God, whereupon Nebuchadnezzar came up and took the city of Jerusalem again, after a siege of two years. What became of the city and temple at this time? The king of Babylon burnt the temple of the Lord, the palace of the kings, and all the houses of Jerusalem: he broke down the walls of the city, and carried away the rest of the people captive; together with all the vessels of gold, and silver, and brass, great and small, that belonged to the temple. Was there any ruler of the scattered people that remained in the land of Israel? Gedaliah was made governor by the king of Babylon, but he was slain in a little time by a faction under Ishmael, one of the seed-royal; and there was nothing but confusion and disorder in the land. What became of the people afterwards? Johanan, the son of Kareah, one of the captains under Gedaliah, routed Ishmael and drove him out of the land; yet being afraid of the anger of the king of Babylon, and his resentment of the murder of Gedaliah, his governor, he was tempted to fly into Egypt, and to carry most of the people thither with him, where they were dispersed into several cities. Did the Jews behave themselves better in Egypt after all their afflictions and distress? They practised idolatry in Egypt with insolence, in opposition to the reproofs of Jeremiah the prophet, who foretold the return of only a small portion of them to the land of Judah, though he predicted the return of their brethren from their captivity in Babylon.

How long did the nation of the Jews continue in their captivity, and their land lie desolate? Though the land lay not utterly destitute till the final destruction of Jerusalem in the days of Zedekiah, which was between fifty and sixty years before their first release; yet, from their first captivity by Nebuchadnezzar in former reigns, their land was in some measure desolate seventy years, according to the prophecy of Jeremiah. Who released them from their captivity in Babylon? When Babylon was taken by Cyrus, the general of the army under Darius the

king of the Medes, the Assyrian or Babylonish empire was finished. After Darius's death, Cyrus became king of Persia, and he not only gave the Jews a release, but gave them also a commission to rebuild the temple, and restored to them the vessels of gold and silver; and this he did by the hand of Sheshbazzar, a prince of Judah. Which of the tribes accepted of this commission, and returned to their own land? Many persons and families of several tribes of Israel took this opportunity of returning; yet it was chiefly those of Judah and Benjamin, with the priests and several of the Levites, who returned, and were now all united under the name of Jews. Who were the first leaders and directors? Zerubbabel, a prince of Judah, of the seed-royal, whose Chaldaic or Babylonish name was Sheshbazzar; he was their prince or captain, and Jeshua or Joshua was their high-priest. What was the first thing they did after their return? They made a large contribution towards the rebuilding of the temple; they gathered themselves together to Jerusalem; they set up the altar of the God of Israel, and offered sacrifices upon it. In what manner did they lay the foundation of the temple? While the builders laid the foundation, the priests and the Levites sang and praised the Lord with trumpets and other instruments, after the ordinance of David. What remarkable occurrences attended the laying the foundation of the temple? While the younger part of the people shouted for joy, many of the ancient fathers wept with a loud voice, when they remembered how much more glorious the first temple had been than the second was likely to be. What was the first hinderance they found in the building of the temple? The Samaritans desired to join with them in their building, and because the Jews forbade them, they gave them continual trouble in the days of Cyrus. What was the second hinderance they met with? When Artaxerxes I. came to the throne of Persia, these people wrote an accusation against the Jews that the city of Jerusalem had been rebellious in former times: whereupon Artaxerxes caused the work to cease till the second year of Darius. Who persuaded the Jews to go on with their work under the reign of this Darius? The prophets of God which were with them encouraged and required them in the name of the Lord to go on with the work of the temple; for several of them were too negligent, and God punished them for it with scarcity of corn and wine. When was the temple finished? Through many delays, arising partly from the negligence of the Jews, and partly from the opposition of their enemies, it was twenty years in building: nor was it finished till the sixth year

of the reign of Darius, at which time they dedicated it with many sacrifices, and kept the passover with joy. What did Ezra do in his journey to Jerusalem? He proclaimed a day of fasting and prayer, to seek the assistance of God; for he was ashamed to ask the king for soldiers to be their guard, because he had told the king of the power and the mercy of their God. What did Ezra do when he came to Jerusalem? He delivered the orders of the king to the governors of the provinces, and the gold and silver to those who had the care of the building, and so promoted the work. What reformation did Ezra work among the people? When he was informed that many of the Jews had mingled themselves in marriages with the heathen, he, together with the more religious part of the Jews, humbled themselves before God for all their former iniquities, in an excellent prayer, and brought them into a covenant and an oath to put away their strange wives. Did the Jews rebuild the city of Jerusalem? Yes, for the Babylonian army had broken down the walls and burnt the gates of it. Whom did God raise up to carry on the rebuilding of the city? Nehemiah the Jew, who was cup-bearer to Artaxerxes the king of Persia. How was Nehemiah engaged herein? When he heard of the continuance of the desolation made by the enemies, he fasted and prayed to God, and then he obtained leave of Artaxerxes the king, to go up to Jerusalem, and rebuild the city of the sepulchres of his fathers. What further encouragement did Nehemiah receive from the king? He received an order for the governors of the provinces to assist him, and to give timber out of the king's forest. How did Nehemiah begin his work? He rode round the city by night, and took a private survey of the ruins thereof, and appointed a particular part of the walls and gates to be repaired by particular persons and their companies. What opposition did the Jews meet with in this part of their work? Sanballat the Samaritan, and Tobiah the Ammonite, and their accomplices, at first laughed the Jews to scorn, and then conspired to fight against them while they were at work. How did Nehemiah prevent the mischief they designed? He encouraged the Jews to trust in their God, and appointed every man that labored in the work to have a weapon to defend himself. What reformation did Nehemiah work among them? He reproved those that took usury, and oppressed their brethren; and he set himself for an example, who, though he was governor twelve years, took no salary, but maintained himself and one hundred and fifty Jews at his own charge. How did they keep the *feast of tabernacles*? By dwelling in booths made



of branches of trees seven days together, as God had commanded by Moses, and they read and explained the book of the law every day of the seven. How were the people disposed of in their habitations? The rulers dwelt at Jerusalem, the rest of the priests and people cast lots to bring one in ten to dwell at Jerusalem, and nine parts in the other cities, that the land might be peopled. How was the wall of Jerusalem the holy city dedicated? The Levites came from all places to Jerusalem, and joined with the priests and the rulers in two large companies, and gave thanks, and offered sacrifices, and sang the praises of God, so that the joy of Jerusalem was heard afar off. Had Nehemiah no prophet to assist him in this difficult work? It is supposed that Malachi, the last of the prophets, prophesied about this time, for he doth not reprove them for neglect of building as Haggai did, nor does he speak of the finishing of the temple as Zechariah did. But supposing that already done, he reproved them about their marriage with strangers, and of several wives, or of taking concubines; their robbing God of their tithes; their polluting the altar and neglect of offering God the best; which were the very things which Nehemiah corrected in his last reformation.

Thus far the holy scripture has delivered down to us the history of the transactions of God with men, and particularly with his own people, the nation of Israel, in a long and continued succession of events, from the creation of the world to the return of the Jews from the captivity of Babylon, and the settling of the church and state under Nehemiah, whom the king of Persia made governor over the land.

---

## QUESTIONS,

FROM THE EARLIEST TIME TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE IMPERIAL POWER IN ROME, COMPREHENDING A SKETCH OF GENERAL HISTORY.

And oft conducted by Historic Truth,  
We tread the long extent of backward Time.

THOMSON'S SPRING.

NAME some of the most ancient kingdoms. Chaldea, Babylon, Assyria, China in Asia, and Egypt in Africa. Nimrod, the grandson of Ham, is supposed to have founded the first of these, B. C. 2221, as well as the famous cities of Babylon and Nineveh; his kingdom being within the fertile plains of Chaldea,



Chalonitis, and Assyria, was of small extent compared with the vast empires that afterwards arose from it, but included several large cities. In the district called Babylonia were the cities of Babylon, Barsita, Idicarra, and Vologsia. When Ninus conquered Babylon the Chaldean monarchy was united to the Assyrian. For what were the Chaldeans remarkable? They were the first people who worked in metals, and were acquainted with astronomy: their priesthood practised medicine, interpreted dreams, and professed magic and astrology. What is the present state of Chaldea and Babylon? Those once fertile plains are now sterile, and the remains of the famous city consists of great fragments and piles of brickwork, that serve as quarries for the construction of other cities. When does the authentic history of the Chinese commence? About 3000 years before Christ. The reign of Fohi commenced B. C. 2207. It describes that people as a wandering horde, living in the forests of Shen-see, at the foot of the Tartar mountains, upon the spoils of the chase; one of their chiefs, *Swee-gin-shee*, discovered, accidentally, the production of fire by the friction of two pieces of dry wood, and taught them to look up to *Tien*, the creating and destroying power. What nation introduced regular government? The Egyptians, in the time of Jacob; they first gave mankind the principles of civil order, and to them we are indebted for the useful and elegant arts. To whom did the Egyptians communicate their discoveries? To the Greeks; the Greeks to the Romans, from whom the other European nations received their first ideas of civilization and refinement. What people introduced the arts of commerce? The Egyptians; they also were first acquainted with the implements of husbandry. Who improved the state of commerce? The Phœnicians, who lived in Palestine, (the Holy Land,) and were, even in the time of Abraham, considered as a powerful nation. What were the extent and character of their country? It contained 4,232 square miles, was intersected by the woody ridges of Lebanon and Anti-Libanus, and, although possessing many large cities, never formed a single state. Its most ancient city, Sidon, now Saida, was famous for its manufacture of glass; and, Old Tyre, a colony from Sidon, for its purple dye: a later Tyre was built upon an island, which Alexander, when he besieged it, converted into a peninsula. In what state was Europe at this early period? The inhabitants were savage, wild, and barbarous; totally uninstructed and uninformed, having little or no intercourse with the civilized part of mankind. What king improved the civil and military establishments of the Egyptians?

Sesostris: he succeeded that Amenophis (or Pharaoh) who was drowned in the Red Sea; and, by the wisdom of his laws and government, his kingdom became the most powerful then known.

What part of Europe was first civilized? Athens, where Cecrops landed with an Egyptian colony, about 1550 B. C., and introduced order and harmony among the original inhabitants. Who was Amphictyon? The third king of Athens; endowed with uncommon genius and strength of mind; he lived about 1496 years before Christ, and contrived to unite, in one common system of politics, the states of Greece. How did he effect this? By engaging twelve of the Grecian cities to join for their mutual advantage, sending each two deputies to Thermopylæ twice a year, who debated there, and were called the Amphictyonic council. What was the end effected by this council? Its determinations answered the best purposes, as every thing, relative to the general interests of the cities represented, was there discussed; by these means the Greeks were able to preserve their liberty and independence from the attacks of the Persian empire. What other employments had the Amphictyons? They took care of the treasures, amassed by the voluntary contributions of those who consulted the oracle, in the temple of Delphos. Which of the Grecian cities first acquired superior power? Athens; for Theseus, king of that place, invited strangers to reside there, instituted new religious rites, and promised protection and friendship to such as should prefer his dominions to the neighboring states. How did Theseus further promote his country's benefit? He divided the Athenians into three classes; nobility, tradesmen, and husbandmen: the two latter, from the encouragement given to arts and agriculture, had great weight in the state, and soon became opulent and considerable. Erechtheus, an Athenian king, the first of the name, raised an image of Minerva, of olive-wood, in Cecropia, and instituted festivals called Athenæa, in honor of the goddess, to be celebrated by the twelve Attic cities. How long were the Athenians governed by kings? Till the death of the self-devoted Codrus, in the year B. C. 1070, when they proclaimed that Jupiter alone should be king of Athens; about the same time the Thebans established a republic; and the Jews, weary of a theocracy, petitioned to be governed by kings. How did the Athenians conduct their republic? For more than 300 years their supreme magistrate was called an archon, whose office continued for life; at length, thinking the power of these archons too great, they chose nine of these magistrates, who

were elected annually: Medon, the son of Codrus, was the first archon. Who first gave the Athenians written laws? Draco, one of their archons; but these laws were afterwards revised by Solon. What did Solon for his country? He revived the Areopagus, (a court of justice instituted by Cecrops;) restored and augmented its authority; and its reputation was so extensive, that even the Romans referred causes, too intricate for their own decision, to the determination of this tribunal. Who were honored with a place in this court of justice? In the time of Cecrops, such citizens as were eminently famed for virtue were constituted judges there; but Solon ordained that none should preside in the Arēōpāgus who had not passed the office of archon.

How was Sparta then governed? By two kings, who reigned jointly; their power was very limited, and their chief use was to head the army in military expeditions. When were the Spartan laws new-modelled? 884 years B. C., by Lycurgus. What was remarkable in his laws? He effected an equal division of lands among the Spartans, dispensed with the use of gold and silver, trained the youth in perfect obedience and military discipline, and ordered "that particular respect should be paid to the aged." In what light were the Spartans considered? Entirely as a warlike nation; but they were forbidden to attack or oppress their neighbors without provocation, and were only allowed to defend themselves against the inroads of other states. What was the great defect in the Spartan laws? Lycurgus directed his attention to form a nation of soldiers, wholly neglecting the culture of the mind: thus the sciences were banished, and the Spartans, owing to their roughness and austerity, were little esteemed by their more polished neighbors. How long did the laws of Lycurgus subsist? More than 500 years. How were the Egyptians then governed? By a succession of weak kings, till the monarchy was quite overthrown by Cambyzes, king of Persia, (this happened 300 years after the death of Lycurgus;) it continued annexed to the Persian dominions for 200 years more, when Alexander made it part of the Macedonian empire. How did the Egyptians become such an easy prey to the Persians? They had long been accustomed to a polished life; had neglected to fortify their cities sufficiently, so as to stop the progress of an enemy; their manners were effeminate, and their courage doubtful; while the Persians, just emerging from barbarism, brave and warlike, pushed on their conquests with ardor and rapidity.



What remarkable events befell the kingdom of Babylon about this period? Nebuchadnezzar had overthrown the Jewish monarchy, and led the Jews into captivity. Cyrus the Great, in the reign of Belshazzar, grandson of Nebuchadnezzar, besieged Babylon with a powerful army; the city, as the prophets had foretold, was taken, and Belshazzar killed in his palace. What happened to the Grecian states upon the death of Cyrus? The succeeding Persian monarchs continued the war with the Greeks, who, in many hard-fought battles, had opportunities for the exercise of those virtues which the freedom of their government inspired. Which side proved victorious? During the reigns of Xerxes and Darius the contest was doubtful, but the Greeks at length established their ascendancy over the Persians. Did the Greeks improve these victories? No; they had many divisions among themselves, and the famous Peloponnesian war weakened both their virtue and military force; then Philip, king of Macedon, an artful and enterprising prince, embraced this favorable opportunity for enlarging his own power, and, by bribery and promises, gained such numbers to his interest, that, after the battle of Cheronea, fought against him by the Greeks, (as the last effort of expiring liberty,) they fell entirely into his hands. What put an end to Philip's ambitious schemes? His sudden death; being assassinated by Pausanias, whom the Persians hired to commit the act. Who succeeded Philip? His son Alexander, whom all the Grecian states, but Thebes and Athens, had chosen general of their united forces, against Darius; in three pitched battles, Granicus, Issus, and Arbela, he conquered the Persian monarch, and established the Macedonian empire upon the ruins of the Persian. What became of Alexander? He died in the prime of life, in the midst of a rapid career of glory, at Babylon, in the year B. C. 323.

What progress did the Greeks make in the arts? From the time of Cyrus to that of Alexander they were gradually improving: warriors, statesmen, philosophers, poets, historians, painters, architects, and sculptors, form a glorious phalanx in this golden age of literature; and the history of the Greeks at this period is equally important and instructive.

When was Rome founded? About 752 years before Christ, by Romulus: this city, the fame of which extended through the known world, was at first only a mile in circumference, and inhabited by those who sought a refuge there from other places, driven by their necessities or their crimes. What was the character of Romulus? He had great military talents; and, as he and his followers drew their subsistence from war, his plan was,



after conquering the surrounding states, to unite them to Rome, adopting their improvements in arts or arms; thus, from every successful war his city gained fresh strength, power, and reputation. How long did the regal power subsist in Rome? 243 years, when Tarquin the Proud incurred the hatred of the Romans for his vices, and was ignominiously expelled. How were the Romans then governed? By two annual magistrates, called consuls; their power being of such short duration, each endeavored to distinguish himself by some warlike action, and the people were perpetually led out against some new enemy. What powerful state contended with Rome? Carthage; which had been settled by a colony of Phœnicians some time before the building of Rome; and, animated by the spirit of its founders, was now become of the first commercial importance. When did the famous Punic wars begin? 264 years before Christ: after long and frequent struggles Carthage acknowledged the superior power of her rival, and her own as rapidly declined. B. C. 146 Carthage was razed to the ground.

How were the principal parts of the known world occupied at that time? While Rome and Carthage were contending for empire, Greece, Egypt, and Asia were agitated by the quarrels of Alexander's successors, at whose death the extensive dominions acquired by him were portioned into four shares, and the proper way of dividing them was an affair occasioning continual disputes. From the sanguinary conflicts for the vacant throne three mighty empires arose: the Egyptian, founded by Ptolemy, from whom sprung a race of wise and learned monarchs; the Syrian, established by Seleucus, and ruled after him by his descendants; and the Macedonian, over which Antigonus and his posterity reigned until the Roman intrusion. How did the Romans acquire dominion in Greece? The Ætolians (a Grecian state) called them over to assist in lessening the power of Philip, one of the Macedonian kings; the Romans compelled him, to resign the forts he had erected, and the Grecian cities were again declared free. Were the Greeks really free? No; their liberty was no more than a name; for Philip becoming tributary to the Romans, the Grecian states dependent upon him were so too. What were the terms of this kind of subjective alliance? Rome allowed them the possession of their own territories and form of government; and, under the specious name of allies, they were obliged to comply with the most humiliating conditions. When were Macedonia and Greece first considered as Roman provinces? Macedonia, in the year B. C. 148 Greece, two years after, by the name of Achaia.

What monarch yielded last to the Romans? Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor; he was vanquished successively by Sylla, Lucullus, and Pompey; and at length bereft of his dominions and his life. What general extended the Roman empire? Caius Marius; he vanquished Jugurtha, king of Numidia, in Africa; released Italy, and made the barbarians in the north of Europe tributary to his power. Who stretched the Roman power to its utmost limits? Julius Cæsar; he conquered Egypt, Asia, Spain, France, and invaded Britain. What befell Cæsar? Owing to the constant divisions of the senate and people, and his own excessive thirst of power, he was assassinated, B. C. 44, by those who called themselves the friends of the people; and Octavius Cæsar, his kinsman, by a train of fortunate events, obtained the diadem which Julius had so earnestly desired and bled for. When was Octavius Cæsar declared emperor? In the year of the republic 724: the Carthaginian, Persian, Macedonian, and Grecian glory, was now no more; all nations courted his alliance; and, conqueror both by sea and land, he extended the olive-branch, and closed the temple of Janus, for the third time since its erection by Numa Pompilius.

What is the present state of Egypt? It was taken by the Saracens, in the sixth century, and afterwards by the Turks, under whose government it now remains; the Pacha, Mehemet Ali, rendered himself independent of the Sultan, and the pachalic is now hereditary in his family. He pays a tribute to the Porte. What is the Porte? The government of the Sultan of Constantinople is called the "Sublime Porte." What is the present state of Athens? After the Romans, the Venetians possessed it; it next became subject to the Turks, who exercised so much cruelty and injustice in their administration, that the inhabitants, although not without a sanguinary struggle, threw off the Turkish yoke in 1828, and set up a provisional government, which was finally succeeded by a monarchy under Otho, a Bavarian prince, in 1832. Sparta has also experienced the same revolutions. What is the present state of Macedon and Thebes? After their conquest by the Romans they fell into the hands of the Turks, who still keep possession of these territories. Persia became first a prey to the Saracens, then to the Tartars. What revolutions has Rome experienced? From the time of Augustus Cæsar it was governed by a succession of emperors till the year of our Lord 410; it was then plundered by the Goths, afterwards by the Vandals; at length Charlemagne, king of France and emperor of Germany, having

given this city to the Popes, they fixed upon it as the seat of their power; but it has been entered and despoiled by the modern French, who compelled Pius VI. to abandon it: it was occupied by the French in 1798, who caused its annexation to the Roman republic; carried pope Pius VI. to France, where he died, and obliterated his temporal kingdom. The presence of the victorious armies of Russia and Austria in Italy favored the election of Pius VII. to the papal chair, in 1800; but he resigned a great part of his temporal authority by the terms of a concordat which he concluded with Napoleon, first consul of France, the following year, and the remainder was added to France in 1808; a pension of 2,000,000 francs was settled on the pope for the maintenance of his ecclesiastical dignity: by a decree of the French government even the ecclesiastical state of the papal kingdom was terminated, and Pius VII. detained in France until 1814, when he was restored to his ancient dignity by the downfall of Napoleon and overthrow of the French empire. Rome once more became the asylum of fallen princes, of proscribed families, and the seat of the fine arts, and Gregory XVI., who succeeded Pius VII., has not abridged the liberties of its inhabitants. The present pope, who succeeded to the popedom in 1846, is still more liberal in his views, and has increased the liberties of the people.

---

## MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS

IN

## GRECIAN HISTORY.

Here studious let me sit,  
And hold high converse with the mighty dead,  
Sages of ancient time, as gods revered;  
As gods beneficent, who blessed mankind  
With arts, with arms, and humanized a world.

THOMSON'S WINTER.

How may the Grecian history be divided? Into four ages. The first extends 1000 years, from the building of Sicyon to the siege of Troy; the second, from the demolition of Troy to the reign of Darius, (when the Grecian and Persian history mingle,) containing six hundred years; the third, from the



beginning of the reign of Darius to the death of Alexander, comprehending the most important part of Grecian history ; and the fourth begins at the death of Alexander, and continues through the gradual declension of the Grecian power till totally reduced by the Romans. Which were the most considerable states in Greece ? Sicyon was the most ancient, its first king, Agialeus, being contemporary with Noah ; Argos, whose king, Inachus, was contemporary with Abraham and Nimrod ; Athens, founded by Cecrops, an Egyptian ; Sparta, or Lacedemon, so called from a son of Jupiter and Taygeta ; Corinth, Thebes, founded by Cadmus, a Phœnician, 1500 years before Christ ; Macedon, which subsisted as a kingdom from its foundation till the defeat of Perseus, by the Romans, 162 years before Christ, a space of 626 years ; Thrace, and Epirus. How many dialects were used among the Greeks ? Four ; the Attic, Ionic, Doric, and Æolic. Which was the most elegant ? The Attic, spoken in Athens and its vicinity ; Thucydides, Isocrates, Xenophon, Plato, Aristophanes, and Demosthenes, wrote in it. Which was the dialect next esteemed ? The Ionic, spoken chiefly in Asia Minor : Herodotus and Hippocrates wrote in it. What nations spoke the Doric dialect ? The Spartans, Sicilians, Dorians, Rhodians, and Cretans : Theocritus, Pindar, and Archimedes, wrote in it. What states used the Æolic dialect ? First, the Beotians ; afterwards the Æolians, who lived in Asia Minor. Why was the Grecian expedition against Troy undertaken ? To recover Helen, the beautiful queen of Sparta, who had been carried off by Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy. Who commanded this expedition ? Agamemnon, a Grecian king, brother of Menelaus, king of Sparta : Nestor and Ulysses, who both served in his army, are said to have assisted him by their wise counsels : Achilles, Ajax, and Diomedes, are represented as the bravest of his generals. Troy, after a siege of ten years, was taken by the Greeks. What was the Areōpāgus ? The place where the Areōpagites, or Athenian judges, assembled to debate in : it was for many years after its first institution famed for the justice of its decrees : Cecrops, king of Athens, instituted this court ; he also regulated marriage ceremonies among the Greeks, making them binding for life. Who was the first king of Thebes ? Cadmus, its founder : Thebes afterwards became a republic, and the city was at length dismantled by the Romans. What was meant by the term Beotarch ? All magistrates and generals, who had supreme command in Thebes, were called Beotarchs, or governors of Beotia. For what were the Beotians noted ? For their heaviness and stupid



ity : Plutarch, Epaminondas, and Pindar, are however great exceptions to this rule. Who was Lycurgus ? The Spartan lawgiver : to his exertions and useful decrees the Spartans were indebted for their discipline, and much of their valor. What effects did his laws produce ? The Spartans became brave, active, and noble-minded ; and were inspired with a peculiar readiness to defend their lives and liberties. What great example did Lycurgus give of patience and ready forgiveness of injuries ? That of pardoning Alcander, a Spartan youth, who in a tumult struck out one of his eyes : Lycurgus even took him into his house, and treated him with the greatest kindness. Where did iron pass as current coin ? In Sparta : Lycurgus established this regulation to check any improper desire which the Lacedemonians might show for riches. Who were the Helots ? Lacedemonian slaves, who tilled the ground and did all servile drudgery : the severe treatment of their masters frequently urged them to revolt ; and their lives were then at the disposal of those whom they served. The Spartans, to show their children the enormity of drunkenness, used to expose their slaves to them in that condition. What were the Gymnasia ? Academies, in which the Athenians were taught the use of arms, and all manly exercises. Which was the most polished city in Greece ? Athens. What was the character of the Athenians ? Glory, liberty, and interest were their darling passions ; but their liberty frequently degenerated into licentiousness : they were capricious and ambitious ; excelled in the art of navigation ; and were the general patrons of the liberal arts. What was the Neomenia ? A feast solemnized in honor of the new moon, among the Hebrews, Egyptians, Persians, Greeks, Romans, and Gauls. What was the Io Pean ? A hymn of triumph, celebrated in honor of Apollo. Who was Homer ? The earliest and best Grecian poet ; he wrote the Iliad, which gives an account of the last year's siege of Troy ; and the Odyssey, which relates the adventures of Ulysses. What were the Olympic games ? They are said to have been instituted by Hercules, among the Greeks, in honor of Jupiter, upon the plains of Elis, now called *Antilala*, near the city of Olympia ; they were revived by Iphitus, of Elis, before Christ. 884 years, and by Choræbus, 776, from which date the Olympiads are reckoned ; they consisted of boxing, running, chariot-races, wrestling, and quoiting, and were celebrated at the commencement of every fifth year. At first, no women were permitted to be present, but this law was repealed. What were the Isthmian games ? They were celebrated every third (some

say every fourth) year, in honor of Palæmon, or, as others say, of Neptune, by the Greeks, upon the Isthmus of Corinth. What were the Pythian and Nemæan games? The Pythian were celebrated in the Crissean fields, at first every nine years, in honor of Apollo, after he had slain the serpent Python; but afterwards, every five years, by command of the assembly of Amphictyons; and the Nemæan derived their name from Nemæ, a small town of Argolis, in Peloponnesus; they were probably instituted by Adrastus, in honor of Hercules, who is said to have destroyed the lion of the Nemæan forest, and were solemnized every two years. What were originally the rewards of the victors in all these games? A simple wreath. In the Olympic games, which were accounted the most honorable, because sacred to Jupiter, and instituted by the first of their heroes, this wreath was composed of wild olive; in the Pythian, of laurel; and in the Isthmian and Nemæan games, of parsley; honor, not interest, being the best reward of great exertions. What influenced the Greeks to keep up the commemoration of these games? As each of them was dedicated to the memory of some god, or hero, they were considered both in a religious and political light; and these frequent assemblies of the Grecian states united them more closely, and strengthened their mutual interests. Who was Thales? An ancient geographer, and founder of the Ionic sect of philosophers, so named from Ionia, where he was born; they held many singular opinions, one of which was, that water was the principle of being, and that God formed all things by water: Thales fixed the term and duration of the solar year among the Grecians. Who was Draco? The first rigid legislator of Athens. Who was Solon? One of the seven sages of Greece; the reformer of Draco's code: his laws were held in high estimation. Name the Grecian sages. Thales, Solon, Chilo, (a Lacedæmonian,) Pittacus, Bias, Cleobulus, Periander: Anacharsis (the Scythian) has also been classed by some among the sages, and he appears to merit the distinction. Who was Pythagoras? A native of Samos, and a heathen philosopher; he taught the transmigration of souls, and was the founder of the Pythagorean sect. Who was Pisistratus? An aspiring Athenian, who usurped the government of Athens, during the absence of Solon. Who built and destroyed the famous temple of Diana, at Ephesus? Ctesiphon, the celebrated architect, built, and Erostratus burnt it. When was the battle of Marathon? 490 years before Christ, between the Persians and Athenians; the Greeks gained a signal victory. This was the first great battle in which the Greeks were ever

engaged: they were familiar with civil contests, often terminated by an easy accommodation; this was with an army of 120,000 men, and with the greatest monarch in the world. Why did the Persians invade the Grecian states? The Athenians having, 500 years before Christ, taken and burnt the city of Sardis, Darius, king of Persia, led his subjects on to revenge the affront. How did the Athenians honor Miltiades, who commanded their forces at Marathon? Polygnotus, a famous painter, some time after the battle, presented the Athenian state with a picture representing this celebrated action; the most conspicuous figure was Miltiades, at the head of the ten commanders, exhorting them to victory or death: this picture was preserved for many ages, and hung in the porch where the Stoic philosophers assembled. Was this the only recompense awarded Miltiades? Yes: in those times glorious actions obtained no higher reward than the fame attending them. Did the Athenians retain their sense of gratitude to Miltiades? No: this fickle people threw him into prison, upon a false accusation of treachery to his country, and he was condemned to lose his life in the most ignominious manner, but this sentence was mitigated to paying a fine of 50,000 crowns: not being able to pay this, he was never liberated from prison, but died there of the wounds he received in his country's service. How did his son Cimon signalize his filial piety on this occasion? By raising the money among his friends and relations, and thus purchasing permission to inter his father's body: Cimon afterwards distinguished himself at the battle of Eurymedon. What marks of esteem did Polygnotus receive from Greece? Having painted many pictures at Delphos, and presented the Athenians with some excellent ones representing the Trojan war, he was honored with the solemn thanks of all Greece, conveyed to him by the Amphictyonic council; apartments free of expense were destined him in all the Grecian cities; and he was presented with crowns of gold. What was the Ostracism? A law introduced into Athens by Clisthenes, one of its chief magistrates; its original intention was to prevent the excesses of ambition, by banishing, for the space of ten years, those citizens whose distinguished talents led them to wish for pre-eminence over their countrymen: the sentence of the law ran thus, "If any one aim at obtaining superiority over his fellow-citizens, let him go, and excel elsewhere." Why was this law termed the ostracism? From the custom which prevailed of writing the name of the person they wished to exile upon an oyster-shell; and he whose name was most frequently inscribed upon these shells, was



adjudged to suffer this punishment; but, as many of the best citizens were exiled by this law, its impolicy and bad tendency were at last perceived, and it was repealed. What was the petalism? A sentence of much the same nature as the ostracism; it took its name from the decree being written upon an olive leaf; was in force among the Sicilians; and this banishment lasted twelve years. Where ran the river Eurotas? Through Peloponnesus and the Lacedemonian states; it washed the walls of Sparta, whose inhabitants, from frequently plunging into its waves, acquired much of their strength and vigor. What were the peculiarities of Spartan conversation? Brevity and conciseness: a laconic answer is a proverb. What ancient states had their meals in public? The Spartans and the Cretans. Which of the Spartan kings made the bravest defence against the enemies of his country? Leonidas, at the straits of Thermopylæ; he, with 300 Spartans, engaged the Persians, under the conduct of Xerxes, with 100,000 men: Leonidas and his brave fellow-soldiers were all killed, except one man, who fled back to Sparta, where he was treated with deserved contempt, till he made amends for his cowardice at the battle of Platea. What were the words on the monument erected to the memory of Leonidas and his brave companions? "Go, passenger, and tell at Sparta, that we died here, in obedience to her sacred laws." Between whom was the battle of Artemisium? This naval engagement was between the Persians and the Greeks, on the very day that the Spartans and Persians were engaged at the straits of Thermopylæ; the success was doubtful. What was Athos? A famous peninsular mountain in Macedonia; Xerxes, in his expedition against the Grecian states, ordered a passage to be cut through it. Which of the Athenians have best contributed to their country's glory? Theseus, Miltiades, Cimon, Themistocles, Aristides, and Pericles: Aristides was famed particularly for his justice. What testimony did Plato give to his merit? This: "Themistocles, Cimon, and Pericles," said Plato, "have enriched Athens with statues, edifices, and public ornaments, but Aristides with VIRTUE." Where did Themistocles acquire the greatest honors? At Salamis: this was the most signal victory gained by the Greeks over the Persians. What was the prevailing custom among the Athenians after a battle? The commanders declared who had distinguished themselves most, and best deserved the prize of victory, (a laurel crown,) by writing their names upon a slip of paper: after the battle of Salamis, each general adjudged the first prize to himself, the second to Themistocles, thus tacitly giving him a



decided preference to all. What honors did Themistocles receive? The prize of wisdom was decreed him; the Spartans presented to him the best chariot in their city, and commanded 300 of their young men to attend him to the frontiers of their state; when he appeared at the Olympic games, the whole assembly rose in compliment to him; all eyes were directed to Themistocles, and this involuntary homage from a countless multitude must have been infinitely more flattering to a great mind than the most eloquent orations in his favor. What privileges were granted, in the last ages of the Athenian republic, to those who had deserved well of their country? They were made free of the city, and exempted from giving public feasts and shows, which often amounted to great sums: these immunities in some cases were extended to their posterity; and they were frequently honored by the erection of statues to their memory. What funeral ceremonies were observed by the Athenians? The bones of those citizens who had fallen in battle, after being strewed with perfumes and flowers, were exposed three days in an open tent; they were then enclosed in coffins, and carried round the city. Where were these bones finally laid? In a public monument called the Ceramicus: here were deposited in all ages those who had fallen in battle, except the warriors of Marathon, who, to immortalize their uncommon valor, were buried there. What were the trophies so frequently mentioned in ancient history? They were, among the Greeks, wooden monuments, erected in the place where some signal victory had been obtained, and either were adorned with real arms, and colors taken from the enemy, or had warlike instruments carved upon them: the block of white marble which the Persians brought into the field, to erect as a trophy should they prove victorious at Marathon, was converted by Phidias into a Nemesis, or goddess of revenge. Why did the Greeks choose wood for their trophies? From this noble motive; they were unwilling to eternize the memory of feuds and state quarrels, and therefore preferred wood to a more durable substance, that as national animosities in time decayed, the remembrance of them might do so too.

How long did the first war between the Persians and Greeks continue? Fifty-one years. Who was Pericles? A celebrated Athenian general and orator. How did Pericles show his public spirit in Athens? By improving and beautifying the city considerably, under the direction of the celebrated Phidias: Pericles, hearing that the Athenians murmured at this disposal of the public money, offered himself to defray all necessary expenses,

provided his name were recorded upon the public edifices. Did the Athenians suffer this? No: they felt the intended rebuke, and afterwards allowed him whatever sums he thought proper. What were the last words of Pericles? "I am surprised," said he, speaking to the friends who surrounded his bed, and were relating his great exploits to each other, "that you should forget the most meritorious circumstance of my life: I never caused any one citizen to mourn on my account." It cannot, however, be forgotten, that it was he who procured the revival of an obsolete law, declaring no person a citizen of Athens whose parents, both father and mother, had not been Athenian citizens also; in consequence of which, 5,000 individuals, who had before been free, were sold as slaves. Which were the chief works of Phidias? A Minerva, erected in the city of Athens, and a Jupiter Olympius, sixty feet high, made of gold and ivory: Phidias, exasperated at his countrymen's ingratitude to him, presented his Jupiter to the Eleans, a neighboring nation. What was the Peloponnesian war, and its cause? A contest carried on between the Spartans and Peloponnesian states (the Argives and Achæans excepted) on one side, and the Athenians and Grecian cities of Asia on the other. It was excited by the conduct of the Athenians in aiding the Corcyreans against the Corinthians, broke out 431 years before Christ, lasted for twenty-seven years, and ended in the most complete overthrow of the Athenian power: the history of this war is related by Thucydides and Xenophon. What particular calamity befell the Athenians at this period? A terrible plague raged in Athens, 430 years before Christ: the famous physician, Hippocrates, then distinguished himself by his care of the sick, and greatly increased his reputation. What was the Odeon? A musical theatre, erected in Athens, by command of Pericles: it was ornamented by the celebrated Phidias: the Greeks considered music as one of the essentials in the education of their children. How was the style of the historian Herodotus distinguished? By its elegance and simplicity. What honors did Herodotus receive from the Greeks? When he read his history at the Olympic games, the Greeks, after bestowing upon this celebrated work unbounded applause, gave to each separate book the name of one of the nine muses. Who was Lysander? A Lacedæmonian general, and the conqueror of Athens: towards the conclusion of the Peloponnesian war, he established thirty magistrates, known by the appellation of the thirty tyrants: wealth in their eyes was the greatest crime; they seized wherever they found it, and are said to have put more to death

in eight months than the enemies of Athens had done during the continuance of a long war. Who was Thrasybulus? A noble Athenian, who after attacking and defeating the thirty tyrants who then usurped the government of Athens, and restoring freedom, passed an act of amnesty, (or general pardon,) by which the citizens engaged, upon oath, to bury all past transactions in oblivion. Which of the Grecian philosophers was most famed for his virtues and liberal opinions? Socrates: history records an action of his, truly heroic. When unjustly sentenced to death by the Athenians, he refused to escape from prison, although an opportunity presented itself, since it was contrary to the standing laws of his country. Why was the Isle of Delos famed? The common treasures of Greece were there deposited, and the Athenians were accustomed to send a ship, every year, to offer sacrifices at Delos: the laws forbade any person being put to death in Athens, from the time of this ship's departure till its return. What great man was once sentenced to die at Athens, before these sacrifices left the city? Socrates: the execution of his sentence was suspended for thirty days, after which he was compelled to drink hemlock. Were the Athenians ever sensible of his merit? Yes: the Delphic oracle had before declared him the wisest of mankind; and, after his decease, great honors were paid him; a statue (the work of Lysippus) was erected to his memory; and, at length, Socrates was worshipped as a demigod. Who was Xenophon? A famous historian, philosopher, and warrior, who commanded the 10,000 Greeks, in their celebrated retreat to their own country from Asia, after the battle of Cunaxa. What was the favorite diversion of the Athenians? Hunting: it was so highly esteemed at Athens, that Xenophon wrote a treatise purposely to display the advantages resulting from an exercise which enables its followers to suffer hunger, cold, heat, and thirst, with equal indifference. Who was Agesilaus? A valiant king of Sparta, who defeated the Persian army near Sardis, and the Thebans in the plains of Cunaxa; he was assassinated on the coast of Lydia, in the eighty-fourth year of his age, returning from the conquest of Egypt. Who were the Ephōri? Spartan magistrates: nine were elected, but five had the power of acting collectively; all, even kings, were compelled to appear before them upon any charge of mal-administration; they regulated religious rites, made peace and war, and had the custody of all the public treasures. What celebrated action is recorded of these Ephōri? They were such strict disciplinarians, that they fined one of their valiant soldiers for gaining a victory un-



armed ; the youth was bathing, when he heard the sound of the trumpet, and rushed from the bath to head the troops under his command : after gaining the victory, the magistrates decreed him a crown of laurel for the courage he had shown, but fined him for not staying to put on his armor. What superstitious rites had the Athenians ? Feasts celebrated in honor of Adonis ; the whole city then appeared in mourning, and funeral processions of images, representing dead persons, were carried about the streets. To what amusement were the Athenians most partial ? To theatrical entertainments, in the representation of which they excelled. What were the Anthesteria ? Festivals, in which the slaves were entertained. What was the Barathrum ? A public pit in Athens, into which those condemned to die were thrown.

What was the Lyceum ? Anciently a temple dedicated to Apollo ; afterwards converted into a public school, in Athens, where the orators declaimed. Who was Epaminondas ? A celebrated Theban general, the contemporary and friend of Pelopidas ; they jointly gained the battle of Leuctra ; Epaminondas commanded at Mantinea alone, where he bravely fell, in his last moments breathing an ardent wish for the glory and safety of his country. Where stood Pella ? This city, famed as the birthplace of King Philip, and Alexander his son, was anciently the capital of Macedonia. What Grecians distinguished themselves against Philip of Macedon, by their speeches and writings ? Lycurgus, the orator, Demades, and the celebrated Demosthenes, whose orations were called philippics, from Philip, king of Macedon, against whom they were directed. Who rivalled Demosthenes in eloquence ? Eschines, the orator ; but being in the interest of the Macedonian king, he was compelled to withdraw to Rhodes and Samos, and opened a school of rhetoric, in which he had the magnanimity to recite the orations of his rival for the instruction of his scholars. When was the social war, or war of the allies ? 358 years before Christ, carried on by several Grecian nations, for the purpose of throwing off the Athenian yoke, and re-establishing independent states. What occasioned the sacred war ? The Phocceans, who inhabited those territories near Delphos, had ploughed up some land consecrated to Apollo ; for this supposed sacrilege they were sentenced by the Amphictyonic council to pay a heavy fine ; and upon their refusal a war broke out, in which most of the Grecian states were engaged, called the sacred war. What sides did the Greeks take in this quarrel ? The Spartans and Athenians assisted the Phocceans ; the Boeotians, Locrians, and



Thessalians, sided with the Amphictyons. When was the battle of Cheronæa? In the reign of Philip of Macedon; by the event of this battle Philip became master of Greece. Where was the philosopher Aristotle born? At Stagyra, a city in Macedon, which was destroyed by King Philip, but rebuilt by his son Alexander, the pupil of Aristotle. Which were the first battles gained by Alexander against the Persians? Those of Granicus, Issus, and Arbēla. Where stood Tyre? It was a city of Phœnicia, besieged and taken by Alexander. How did Alexander dishonor his character in respect to the Tyrians? By inhumanly putting them all to the sword, except 2,000, whom he reserved for crucifixion; and he actually had crosses erected along the sea-shore, where this barbarous sentence was rigidly executed. What particular instance did Alexander give of his pride and folly? Suffering his subjects to pay him adoration as the reputed son of Jupiter Ammon, (the god of the Egyptians.) Where stood the temple of Jupiter Ammon? In Africa, in the midst of the Libyan desert, in a fertile spot called the Northern *Oasis*, or Oasis of Siwah; the god worshipped there was by the Greeks called Jupiter, by the Egyptians Ammon; at length both these names became one: Bacchus is thought to have built the temple. In what battle did Alexander completely triumph over the Persians? In that of Arbēla; the defeat and death of the Persian monarch Darius gave Alexander another empire. Where stood Persepolis? This city was anciently the capital of the Persian empire, now called Cilminar, or the Forty Columns; besieged by Alexander, who, in a fit of intemperance, burnt its palace. Who was Calanus? An Indian philosopher, who attended the court of Alexander of Macedon. What was his end? Although he professed to follow a most severe philosophy, yet, being attacked by a painful disorder, he had not patience to bear its repeated approaches, but resolved to burn himself upon a funeral pile. Did he effect his purpose? Yes; against the earnest entreaties of Alexander: it is generally supposed that he was prompted to this action chiefly by vain-glory, and the desire of making himself conspicuous to after ages. What story does Josephus relate of some Jewish soldiers in the service of Alexander? When commanded by that prince to assist in rebuilding the temple of Belus, (which Xerxes had destroyed,) they absolutely refused, alleging that as idolatry was forbidden by their law, the respect due to that and their conscience would not allow them to assist in the erection of a temple designed for idolatrous purposes. How did Alexander act upon this? He gave orders for their

immediate punishment ; but, upon reflection, their conduct appeared in a more favorable light, and he discharged and sent them home. How did Alexander in one day evince the extremes of generosity and passion ? In the morning he gave his friend Clytus the government of Maracanda, one of his most important cities ; and in the evening killed him, in a hasty fit of resentment, at a banquet. Who was Porus ? An Indian prince, who was taken prisoner by Alexander ; and when brought before him in chains, showed equal fortitude and presence of mind : the Macedonian monarch asked how he would be treated ; As a king, replied Porus : Do you then wish for nothing more ? said Alexander. No : all things are comprehended in that sentence. Alexander, touched by his greatness of soul, restored him his kingdom. Who were the Theti ? This was a name given to the lower class of people among the Athenians, including all artisans and laboring men. How did the Athenians honor those who fell in their country's defence ? Their most celebrated orators were appointed to pronounce funeral orations in their praise : this was done to inspire the Athenians with an ardent desire of glory and military fame. How were the children of those Athenians who died in battle treated ? At the time of their solemn festivals a herald, producing these children dressed in complete armor, proclaimed in words to this effect : " These orphans, whom a sudden and glorious death has deprived of their illustrious fathers, have found in the people a parent, whose care was extended to them during infancy ; and now, armed at all points, their country invites them to follow the bent of their own genius, and to emulate each other in deserving the chief employments of the state." How did the Greeks excel the Romans in humanity ? They could never be persuaded to have public exhibitions of gladiators in their cities ; and the speech of an Athenian upon this subject well deserves to be remembered. " First," said he, " before we permit these barbarous shows, let us throw down the altar which our ancestors have erected to mercy." What story is recorded of the Hellespont ? This strait, which lies between Europe and Asia, has been famed as the place where Leander met an untimely fate : he was attached to Hero, a priestess of Venus ; and is said to have swam over the Hellespont, nightly, to visit her ; but was at length unfortunately drowned ; and she, in despair, threw herself into the sea. Why was Agis, king of Sparta, executed ? This prince, who lived in the time of Alexander's successors, wished to revive the ancient laws of Lycurgus, but his people, dead to all sense of justice or virtue, rose against, and condemned him to this igno-

minious end. What forms of government have at different periods prevailed in Athens? It was first governed by kings; then by archons; they gave place to the tyrannical power of the Pisistratides; this was destroyed, and freedom again restored, till the city was taken by the Lacedemonians; the thirty tyrants then assumed absolute power, and after their expulsion the democratical form of government was again established, till the Romans made Greece a tributary province. What forms of government have prevailed in Sparta? For the space of 900 years it was governed by kings; then Lycurgus established a republic, which continued 700 years longer, under the most promising auspices; but the Spartans having subdued the neighboring states, particularly the Athenians, the tide of victory began to turn, and the Thebans, headed by Epaminondas and Pelopidas, compelled them, after the battle of Leuctra, to sue for peace. Philip of Macedon, and finally the Romans, completed the conquest of this famous state. What was meant by Great Greece? The colonies settled by the Grecians in the southern parts of Italy and Sicily. Where stood the city of Sybaris? In Great Greece: its inhabitants were noted for their luxurious and effeminate lives; they were enervated by the mildness of the climate, the richness of the soil, and their great wealth. How did the Sybarites betray the weakness of their character? They are said to have decreed marks of distinction to such as excelled in giving magnificent entertainments; they removed from their city those citizens and artisans whose work was noisy; and even the cocks were expelled, lest their shrill cries should disturb the peaceful slumbers of the inhabitants: in the war with Crotona 300,000 Sybarites were defeated by 100,000 of their enemies, which terminated their existence as a distinct nation. Name the most famous oracles consulted by the Pagan world. That of Apollo, at Delphos; of Trophonius, in Beotia; the temple and oracle of the Branchidæ, in the neighborhood of Miletus; and one at Dodona, a city of the Molossians. What happened to the temple of Delphos? It was destroyed by fire eighty-three years before Christ; from that time the famous oracle there ceased to answer the questions proposed to it. What were the Macedonian Phalanx, and the Roman Legion? The Phalanx was a body of heavy-armed infantry, consisting of 16,000 men, placed always in the centre of the battle; and the Legion was a body of the Roman army, consisting of ten companies, placed always in the van, or rear, containing from 3 to 6,000 men. Four legions, the standing army, were placed under the control of the



two consuls, in equal commands,—on the approach of war this force was increased, and on some occasions there were eighteen legions armed and on duty.

---

## MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS

IN

## GENERAL HISTORY,

CHIEFLY ANCIENT.

The sage historic muse  
 Shall next conduct us through the deeps of Time,  
 Show us how empire grew, declined, and fell  
 In scattered states ; as thus we talked  
 Our hearts would burn within us, would inhale  
 That portion of Divinity, that ray  
 Of purest heaven, which lights the public soul  
 Of patriots, and of heroes.

THOMSON'S WINTER.

NAME the four great ancient monarchies. The Assyrian or Babylonian, the Persian, the Grecian, and the Roman. Name the four earliest Assyrian monarchs. Nimrod, Belus, afterwards worshipped, Ninus, and Semiramis ; this queen finished building the city of Babylon, in a style of superior magnificence ; the city consisted of an immense square, divided by the Euphrates into two nearly equal parts ; Herodotus states, that the palace and tower stood in opposite divisions ; and modern travellers seem confident that the ruins of the palace are on the eastern side, from which it follows that the stupendous pile, called the "*Birs of Nimrod*," is all that remains of the famous Tower of Belus. For what was Babylon famed ? For its hanging gardens, and great walls ; its inhabitants were peculiarly luxurious and effeminate. Who was Sardanapalus ? The last king of the first Assyrian empire ; his luxury and effeminacy were notorious ; he reigned twenty-three years, and being besieged by the Bactrians in his city of Nineveh, he defended it for two years ; but, an inundation of the Euphrates having destroyed part of the walls and rendered the city untenable, he burnt himself in his palace with his domestics, B. C. 717 ; from the



ruins of his kingdom were founded the three separate ones of Nineveh, Babylon, and Media. Which ancient nation had the clearest ideas of religion? The Jewish nation; they being then the only people who adored the one true God: Moses was their lawgiver. How were the Jews anciently governed? First, by judges; during that period they fell frequently into idolatry and slavery: then by kings; till Nebuchadnezzar carried the tribes of Benjamin and Judah into captivity: after their return to their native land they were ruled by high-priests and the Sanhedrim, or council of experienced Jews: the Maccabean race then governed Judea as high-priests and kings: the famous Herod was their first Idumean prince; he is said to have commanded the slaughter of the innocents: some years before his reign the Jews had acknowledged themselves tributary to the Romans.

What great feast and fast do the Jews commemorate? The feast is that of the passover, which they keep annually, in memory of the destroying angel passing the door of the Israelites, and slaying the first-born of the Egyptians; and they observe the fifth month in every year as a fast, in remembrance of the seventy years' captivity. For what were the Chaldeans famed? For their knowledge of astronomy, and pretended divination by dreams. Which ancient nation was the most ridiculously superstitious? The Egyptians; they worshipped as deities, leeks, onions, cats, dogs, worms, and serpents; their religion was gloomy, and even their acquirements in natural philosophy mystical: every thing was ascribed by them to the immediate influence of their gods; Osiris, Isis, and Hermes, were gods of separate diseases; their system of magic rested on this notion.

What custom was peculiar to the Egyptians? That of judging people after their death: if upon examination they were found to have acquitted themselves with credit, their bodies were decreed honorable funeral ceremonies; if otherwise, they were thrown to the dogs. By what virtue were the Egyptians distinguished? By gratitude. Where stood the celebrated city of Heliopolis? In Lower Egypt; there was erected in it a magnificent temple, dedicated to the sun. What ancient nation first instituted libraries? The Egyptians: they were called offices or treasuries for the diseases of the soul. What law had the Egyptians with respect to debtors and creditors? No man was permitted to borrow money without pawning to the creditor the dead body of his father, or nearest ancestor, which every man kept embalmed in his house; it was thought infamous, and

impious, not to redeem so precious a pledge; and he who died without having discharged that duty, was deprived of the customary honors of burial. Who was Sesostris? Son of that Pharaoh, king of Egypt, who was drowned in the Red Sea; he conquered Asia; made Ethiopia and Scythia tributary; obtained the surname of Egyptus; and, after a long reign, killed himself. Who built the Pyramids? Cheops, Cephrenus, and Asychis, all kings of Egypt, and chiefly noted for their oppression: after their reigns, few among the Egyptian princes are worth recording, till in the year B. C. 685 twelve of the chief lords, during a state of anarchy, seized the kingdom, and shared it into twelve parts, each governing with equal authority: this government was called a dodecarchy, and lasted fifteen years. Which of these lords most distinguished himself? Psammeticus, who defeated the eleven, and became sole monarch of Egypt; he was distinguished for valor and prudence. What did the Egyptians use as a substitute for paper? The bark of trees, and a species of reed grass called papȳrus, that grows in the stagnant places of the Nile. For what were the ancient Persians famed? For learning, hospitality, and love of magnificence. To what god did they direct their supreme adoration? To Oromasdes. Who were the Satraps? Governors of provinces among the Persians. What punishment was peculiar to the Persians? Smothering in ashes; Darius Nothus inflicted it upon his own brother. Which of the ancient nations paid the greatest attention to the education of their children? The Persians; but they were at length inspired by the Medes with a taste for luxury and effeminacy, which afterwards became conspicuous in them. Which is the most ancient kind of idolatry? That which the Persians adopted; the worship of the sun and moon. Who were the Magi? An order of Persian priests, founded by Zoroaster, who worshipped fire. What were the principal tenets of the Magi? They professed an utter aversion to images, for which reason they worshipped their god under the form of fire: the Sabeans, another order of priests, who allowed the worship of images, derived their ideas of religion, in some degree, from their knowledge of astronomy; for they considered each planet as inhabited by some superior being, and thus image worship spread from the Persians to the Greeks.

What rank did the priests hold in ancient Egypt? They were considered as next in dignity to the king; their land paid no taxes, and they were consulted as oracles, both in religion and literature. What opinions had the eastern nations concern-

ing guardian angels? They thought that every man at his birth had his good genius given, to attend him through life, as his guide and director. What ideas had the ancients of a future life? As they entertained some confused notions of a future state and the resurrection of the body, their first care after a battle was to demand a suspension of arms till the sacred rites of sepulture were performed; on these duties they imagined the happiness of a future state would depend. What nation paid particular respect to old age? The Egyptians and the Spartans, ever ready to engraft in their laws any thing which tended to the preservation of good order in society, adopted this rule, and obliged their youth to rise up in the presence of the aged, and offer them the most honorable seats. What story is related of the Spartans as to this law? At a theatrical representation, when an old man, an Athenian, came too late to be able to procure a good seat, the young Athenians unanimously endeavored to sit close, and keep him out. Abashed at this, he hastily made his way to the seats appointed for the Lacedemonians: they all immediately rose and received him in the most honorable manner. The Athenians, struck with a sudden sense of virtue, gave a thunder of applause; and the old man exclaimed, "The Athenians know what is right, but the Lacedemonians practise it!" How were false accusers punished in Egypt? They were sentenced to undergo the same punishment which those they accused would have merited, had the accusation been just. What was a libation? Pouring out upon the ground either milk, wine, or any other liquor, after the priests had tasted it: this ceremony was performed by the ancients in honor of their deities. What opinions, employments, and manner of living, had the ancient Bramins? They believed in the transmigration of souls, and on this account abstained from meat; they studied astrology and astronomy, assisted at the public sacrifices, and the only tribute which they paid to the king of their country was their advice. Did all hold the same opinions? No; they were divided into many sects: some of these thought self-murder not only defensible but virtuous; and when oppressed by age, or sickness, deemed it meritorious to burn themselves alive: another order spent great part of the day in chanting hymns to their deities; their lives were passed in solitude, and they thought it wrong to marry. Who was Confucius? A celebrated Chinese philosopher, who flourished about 550 B. C.; he was of royal descent, a Mandarin in the province of Lu; was famed for his wisdom and virtue, and the reformer of the Chinese religion. Who



fought the battle of Thymbria? Cræsus, king of Lydia, celebrated for his riches, and Cyrus king of Persia; the former being defeated and taken prisoner, Sardis, the capital of his dominions, became subject to the Persians.

What kings in ancient history afford the most striking proof of the vicissitudes to which human life is subject? The rich Cræsus, king of Lydia, who, according to Herodotus, was condemned to be burnt alive by Cyrus, but was afterwards pardoned; and Dionysius the Younger, tyrant of Sicily, who from a powerful monarch became a schoolmaster at Corinth. How did Damocles, the Sicilian, learn that the life of a tyrant is not as happy as it appears to be? Damocles, who was one of the courtiers of Dionysius the Elder, frequently extolled the happiness of his master, thus surrounded by wealth and power: Will you then, said Dionysius, make trial of my felicity? The offer was accepted, and Damocles ushered into a room where the most magnificent repast was prepared; incense, perfumes, and slaves of the highest beauty appeared in profusion. What followed? In the midst of all his pleasures he cast his eyes towards the ceiling, and perceived the point of a sword hanging by a single horse-hair over his head; all his joy now vanished, anxiety took possession of his mind, and he learned this useful lesson—that even in the highest stations there is always a something which corrodes our bliss, and renders us in happiness upon an equality with others. When was Agrigentum founded? This city, anciently one of the most famous in Sicily, was founded by the Greeks in the 38th Olympiad; it was first subject to the Carthaginians, then to the Romans. Name the tutelary divinities of the Sicilians. Ceres and Proserpine: the foundations of the temples dedicated to them are now the basis of a Christian church: luxury, and a taste for magnificent expense, not even exceeded by Asiatic splendor, form the striking characteristics of the Agrigentines. For what building was ancient Agrigentum famed? For a celebrated temple, dedicated to Juno, which, at the siege of the city by the Carthaginians, was burnt down; and a picture of Juno, by Zeuxis, exquisitely finished, shared the same fate. Who was Empedocles? A native of Agrigentum, who flourished 400 years before Christ; he shone as a philosopher, but was noted for his vanity, which led him to throw himself into the gulf of Mount Etna, in hopes that the Sicilians would regard him as some divinity suddenly removed to his proper sphere; but the mountain, in a subsequent eruption, threw out his slippers, and discovered the real fate of the pretended deity.



What barbarous punishment was used by Phalaris, one of the Sicilian tyrants? A brass-founder of Athens, named Perillos, knowing the cruel disposition of Phalaris, cast a brazen bull larger than life and capable of containing a human victim, so contrived, that a fire being placed beneath the bull, the unhappy man was burnt to death: Phalaris, having admired it, caused the inventor to make the first trial of it himself. What became of Phalaris? Zeno, the philosopher, while at the court of this prince, advised his resignation; and Phalaris, suspecting Zeno of designs inimical to his crown, immediately ordered him to the torture; Zeno refused to submit to this outrage upon justice and humanity, reproached the assembled citizens for criminal weakness in witnessing the execution of such a decree, and incited them to open resistance; animated by his harangue, they flew to arms, defeated the tyrant's guards, and Phalaris was stoned to death by his exasperated people. What were Scylla and Charybdis? A rock and gulf which form the Straits of Messina: the poetical fiction recorded of them is, that Scylla was formerly a beautiful woman, changed by the envy of the enchantress Circe into a monster; Scylla, in despair, threw herself into the sea, and was turned into a rock. Charybdis was said to be a ravenous woman, changed by Jupiter into a gulf, beneath the rock. Where was ancient Carthage situated, and about what time was it founded? It stood on a peninsula in the Mediterranean, thirty-six miles northwest of the site of Tunis, and 352 miles east of Algiers, directly opposite to Rome: the Phœnicians were its founders, but at what date is uncertain, perhaps 100 years before the foundation of Rome. Which were the principal deities of Carthage? The Moon and Saturn: they frequently sacrificed human victims to the latter; and when Agathocles threatened to besiege the city of Carthage, its inhabitants, to appease the anger of Saturn, sacrificed 200 children of the first rank: the worship of fire was common also to the Persians and Babylonians, though not attended with such circumstances of horrid barbarity. To what did the Carthaginians owe their riches? Partly to their trade, and partly to their discovery of the silver mines in Spain: this flourishing republic existed 700 years. Name the chief curiosities and antiquities in Egypt. The Pyramids, the Labyrinth, the Mummy Pits, Pompey's Pillar, erected at Alexandria, the Sphynx, and the lake of Mœris, dug to receive the inundations of the Nile.

How did the successors of Alexander divide his dominions? Into four separate kingdoms; the Macedonian, the Asiatic, the

Syrian, and the Egyptian. Antipater succeeded Alexander of Macedon in the Macedonian empire, and Perseus, its last king, about 150 years afterwards, was taken prisoner by the Roman Paulus Æmilius, and Macedonia reduced to a Roman province. Who claimed the Asiatic kingdom? Antigonus: it comprehended Natolia, and some districts beyond Mount Taurus; this kingdom was at length divided into those of Pergamus, Pontus, and Armenia: Pergamus became a Roman province by the express will of its last king, who appointed the Romans his heirs: Pontus and Armenia fell into their hands in the time of Mithridates.

Who first, upon the death of Alexander the Great, possessed the Syrian kingdom? Seleucus Nicanor: it flourished long under his successors, and those of Antiochus, till the victorious Pompey added the Syrian monarchy to the list of conquered provinces. Who, upon Alexander's death, claimed Egypt? Ptolemy Lagus, one of his generals; twelve princes, his successors, called after him Ptolemies, governed Egypt. Cleopatra, its last monarch, was subdued by Augustus Cæsar. Who was Ptolemy Philadelphus? One of those kings of Egypt, who employed seventy-two linguists to translate the Old Testament into the Greek language: a translation frequently called the Septuagint, from the number of those employed in it; Ptolemy Philadelphus also founded the Alexandrian library. When was this library burnt? Forty-seven years before the birth of Christ; it contained 400,000 valuable books. Name the most famous battles of antiquity. Marathon, Thermopylæ, Artemisium, Salamin, or Salamis, Platea, Eurymedon, Arginusa, Leuctra, Granicus, Arbëla, Issus, Ticinus, Trebia, Thrasymene, Cannæ, Zama, Pharsalia, Philippi, and Actium. Name the most famous sieges of antiquity. That of Babylon, by Cyrus and Darius; of Carthage, by the Romans; of Platea, by the Lacedemonians: of Syracuse, by the Athenians; of Tyre, by Alexander the Great; and of Athens, by Sylla, the Roman dictator. Name the great examples of mutual friendship, in ancient history. David and Jonathan, Jews; Damon and Pythias, Sicilians—they lived under Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse; Pylades and Orestes, natives of Argos; Epaminondas and Pelopidas, Thebans; Cicero and Atticus, the Scipios, and the Lælii, Romans. What ancient queens have been most celebrated? Didc, said to be the founder and queen of Carthage, (Virgil makes Æneas her lover and contemporary, though this is certainly an anachronism;) Artemisia, queen of Caria, and widow of Mausoleus, to whose memory she erected a noble

monument ; it was 411 feet in compass, 130 feet high, and the principal front adorned with thirty-six columns ; it was reckoned one of the seven wonders of the world, and Praxiteles is supposed to have been employed on it ; Thalestris, queen of the Amazons, in the time of Alexander the Great ; Cleopatra, queen of Egypt ; and Zenobia, queen of Palmyra. What was remarkable in Cleopatra ? She was equally beautiful and luxurious ; yet, in the midst of her excesses, she preserved a taste for polite learning and the arts ; her ambition was unbounded ; Julius Cæsar and Marc Antony were successively enslaved by her charms : her empire over Antony was such as to make him insensible to the claims of conjugal affection, patriotism, and glory. How was Zenobia styled ? Empress of the East : she was besieged in her capital by the Roman Emperor Aurelian, who carried her captive to Rome : Longinus, the celebrated critic and orator, was her secretary.

What custom was long prevalent among the Gentoo women ? That of burning themselves upon the funeral pile of their husbands : the horrid custom was founded upon a passage in their Bedas, or sacred writings : “ She who dies with her husband, shall live with him forever in heaven.” What are the Arundelian marbles ? They are ancient marble tablets, found in the isle of Paros, about the beginning of the seventeenth century, and supposed to be sculptured in the year B. C. 264 ; they contain the chronology of ancient history ; were bought for the celebrated Earl of Arundel, and afterwards presented to the Oxford University. Over what parts of the known world has Christianity extended ? Those who embraced the gospel were first termed Christians at Antioch ; its doctrines prevailed in the southern parts of Europe as early as the year 50 ; in Britain it was the general religion about A. D. 156 ; Christianity extended over the north of Europe from the fifth to the twelfth century ; at the opening of the fifteenth century it was extensively promulgated in Asia, Africa, and America, but many corruptions crept into the system ; and, in the sixteenth century, the reformed or Protestant doctrine spread through the greatest part of Christendom. Who was Mahomet : what nations acknowledge his doctrines ? A native of Mecca, in Arabia, who, about the year of our Lord 622, declared himself a greater prophet than Jesus, and the last whom God would send : he promised his followers the speedy conquest and undisturbed possession of this world ; and a paradise of every delight in another. His doctrines are received in Arabia, Turkey in Europe, and in Asia, Barbary, Persia, Egypt, India, and Nubia. How do the Mahometans reckon



time? From the Hegira, or flight of Mahomet from his persecutors, A. D. 622; they also reverence Mecca, as the birth-place of Mahomet; and Medina as that of his interment. Which were termed expressively the dark ages? From the close of the sixth to the dawning of the fourteenth century. During this dreary night, Alfred and Charlemagne aimed at the revival and restoration of literature in their dominions, but with little success. The Arabians, in the ninth century, were the great patrons of the arts and learning, while the mists of superstition and ignorance enveloped Europe. Who are the Cardinals? The word cardinal was applied originally to the presbyters and deacons in great churches; but in the eleventh century, to the presbyters and deacons of Rome only: in imitation of Christ's disciples, their number was limited to seventy. How did they rise into such estimation with the Catholic church? Gradually; their exclusive power of electing the popes was acquired in the time of Edward the Confessor: they first wore the red hat (a token that they were to shed their blood for religion if necessary) towards the middle of Henry III.'s reign: they received from pope Urban VIII. the title of Eminence, in the time of Charles I. of England: their power is, however, at present much diminished, having little influence in the Christian world. What is the Conclave? An assembly of the cardinals, after the pope's decease, to elect his successor: the distinguished family of Medici gave two popes to the ecclesiastical state, viz. Leo X., son of Lorenzo the Magnificent, and Clement VII., natural son of Julian, the brother of Lorenzo; Julius II. and Leo X. were patronizers of the fine arts: Julius began St. Peter's church at Rome; the architect was Michael Angelo. What is meant by Christian or General Councils? They were meetings of the pope, cardinals, and clergy, for the suppression of what were termed heresies; and to fix the doctrines of the Roman church. By whom was the first Christian council held? By the Apostles, in the year 50; the first general one was held at Nice in 325, for the express purpose of censuring the doctrines of Arius, at which the emperor Constantine presided. How many general councils have been held? Twenty: the four most noted were as follow: the seventh general council, which was held towards the end of the Saxon heptarchy, to restore the worship of images: the tenth, to preserve to the church its revenues and temporalities, which was called in Stephen's reign, 1000 fathers attending: the fifteenth, in the reign of Edward II., to suppress the order of Knights Templars; and the twentieth, in the reign of Edward VI., to



condemn the doctrines of the celebrated reformers, Luther and Calvin. The name pope, derived from the Greek *papas*, father, was given to the Bishop of Rome long before he possessed the authority that is now connected with his name. From the close of the fourth century he was the first amongst the five Patriarchs of Christendom, because Rome was the ancient capital of the kingdom, and, according to tradition, the last dwelling-place of the apostle Peter; his jurisdiction over foreign kingdoms was obtained by the pretence of being the successor of Saint Peter, by the wealth of the Roman Catholic church, and by a decree of the Emperor Valentinian III. in 445. The advantages gained at this date were extended in the eighth century by the establishment of churches in Germany, subject to Rome; by the political confusion in Italy and France; the decretals of the pretended Isidore; the schism between the Eastern and Western empires, and the individual superiority of some popes over their contemporaries. Name some of the most famous popes. Leo the Great, the first pope whose writings have been preserved: Hyginus, who established the form of consecrating churches, and ordained that godfathers and godmothers should stand for children; he lived in the early ages of the church: Sylvester, in whose popedom was the council of Nice: Gregory, first called the Great, who, at the close of the sixth century, introduced many new doctrines, processions, &c.: Boniface V., who, at the commencement of the seventh century, made churches sanctuaries for criminals: Leo III., who crowned Charlemagne: Sergius, who, from a swine-driver became a pope; and Benedict IX., whose scandalous life has frequently disgraced the historian's pen; he lived about the middle of the eleventh century; was several times deposed and restored; and once sold his pretensions to the papacy, but resumed them again. Name some famous popes since the Norman conquest. Gregory VII., whose power was once excessive; he excommunicated the emperor of Germany, but afterwards died himself in exile: Adrian IV., whose former name was Nicholas Brakespeare, the only Englishman who ever reached that dignity: Innocent III., who appointed auricular confession, and established the infamous inquisition: Clement V., who removed the seat of power from Rome to Avignon: Leo X., noted for granting indulgences; he was pope when Luther preached against them: Clement VII., who excommunicated Henry VIII., king of England: Gregory XIII., the reformer of the calendar: Sixtus V., and Clement XIV., (or Ganganelli,) both excellent popes. What gave rise to tournaments? They took their rise from the suppression of the

gladiators in the fifth century ; at their first institution, a knight, who was superior to a rich lord in single combat, set what price he pleased upon the liberty of the vanquished, and many, after they had killed their adversary, obliged his friends or relations to purchase the mangled body and spoils, left in possession of the victor ; but at length these tournaments assumed the appearance of mock fights, the combatants taking the precaution to blunt the points of their swords and lances. "Impartial taste," says Gibbon, "must prefer a Gothic tournament to the Olympic games of classic antiquity. Instead of the naked spectacles which corrupted the manners of the Greeks, the pompous decoration of the lists was crowned with the presence of chaste and high-born beauty, from whose hands the conqueror received the prize of his dexterity and courage. The tournaments as they were invented in France, and adopted in the east and west, presented a lively image of the business of the field. The single combat, the general skirmish, the defence of a pass or castle, were rehearsed as in actual service ; and the contest, both in real and in mimic war, was decided by the superior management of horse and lance."

Name some famous Peruvian emperors. Manco Capac, founder of the empire : Huana Capac, and Atahualpa, who was emperor when Pizarro conquered the country. Name the most celebrated Mexican emperors. Montezuma and Guatimozin. Name a few of the most remarkable Turkish emperors. The Emir *Osman*, (bone-breaker,) a bold and successful captain, unobstructed by the weak and divided Byzantines, founded upon the ruins of the Saracen, Seljook, and Mongol power, the empire of the Osman or Ottoman Turks in Asia, in the year 1300, i. e. 700 of the Hegira, or from the flight of Mahomet. He forced the passes of Olympus with his Tartan horde, proclaimed himself sultan, and reigned till his death in 1326. To him succeeded eight great princes, whom the dignity of caliph placed in possession of the standard of the prophet ; they were animated by religious fanaticism, and a passion for military glory. Orchan, the son of Osman, organized a valiant infantry, composed of Christian slaves brought up in the Mohammedan faith ; styled himself Padishah ; and the entrance to his palace at Bursa was called the *Porte*. Under his son and successor, the brave Soliman I., the Ottoman army spread over Europe and Asia. In 1360, Amurath I. took Adrianople and made it the capital of his empire in Europe, subdued Macedonia, Albania, and Serviá ; but after the battle of Caschare, in 1380, was stabbed by his rival, who lay wounded on the ground. The fero-

cious Bajazet, surnamed the *Lightning*, conquered Sigismund, and imposed a tribute upon the Greek empire; but was defeated and taken prisoner by Tamerlane, in 1402, at Ancyra, where more than a million warriors contested the empire of the world. Amurath II. was wise and valiant; having concluded a peace, he laid down the reins of government, but the perjury of his enemies caused him to gird on the sword of Osman again, beneath which the Christians fell at Varna; Ladislaus and Julian, legates of the pope, were amongst the slain. The son of this great prince, Mohammed II., set up Alexander for his model; he took Constantinople 29th May, 1453, when the last Palæologus, Constantine XI., buried himself under the ruins of his throne; and from that period *Stamboul*, or *Constantinople*, has been the residence of the Sublime Porte. During fifty years the Ottoman arms were the terror of Europe and Asia, especially under Soliman II., called the Magnificent and the Lawgiver, who reigned between 1519 and 1566. This prince united the priestly dignity of the caliph to that of the Ottoman Porte. From Soliman's decease nineteen sultans have reigned, amongst whom neither a brave warrior nor victorious prince has appeared. Mohammed II. reformed Turkish manners, and annihilated the Janisaries. He was succeeded by Abdul Medjid.

Name the Roman emperors who flourished in the first century. Augustus Cæsar, Tiberius, Caligula, Claudius, Nero, Galba, Otho, Vitellius, Vespasian, Titus, Domitian, Nerva, Trajan. Name those of the second century. Adrian, Antoninus Pius, Marcus Aurelius, and Verus: Commodus, Pertinax, Didius, Severus. Name those of the third century. Caracalla and Geta, Macrinus, Heliogabalus, Alexander Severus, Maximinus, Gordian I., Pupienus and Balbinus, Gordian II., Gordian III., Philip the Arabian and his son Decius, Gallus, Æmilian, Valerius and Gallienus, Claudius II., Aurelian, Tacitus, Probus, Carus, Carinus and Numerian, Dioclesian, Constantius Chlorus, and Galerius. Name the Roman emperors in the fourth century. Constantine the Great, Constantine II., Constantius and Constans, Julian the Apostate, Jovian, Valentinian I. and Valens, Gratian, Valentinian II., Theodosius I., Arcadius, emperor of the East, and Honorius, emperor of the West. Who was the last Roman emperor? Augustulus, who resigned in A. D. 475, being conquered by Odoacer, king of the Heruli.



## QUESTIONS,

CONTAINING A SKETCH OF THE MOST REMARKABLE EVENTS FROM THE CHRISTIAN ERA TO THE CLOSE OF THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

NAME the great events in the first century. The foundation of London, by the Romans; the persecution of the Druids, in Britain; Rome burnt in the reign of Nero, and the Christians first persecuted by him; Jerusalem destroyed by Titus; and the New Testament written. Name the chief events in the second century. The Scots regained those territories wrested from them by the Roman power; and the Romans, under the conduct of Agricola, built many strong forts in Britain, subjugating that nation almost entirely. What was the character of Agricola's civil government? He reformed abuses occasioned by the avarice of his predecessors; put a stop to extortion; caused justice to be administered impartially, and endeavored to soften the rough manners of the Britons by the introduction of those of their conquerors. Name some distinguished characters in the second century. Martial, Pliny the Younger, Suetonius, Plutarch, Juvenal, Ptolemy, Justin, Lucian, and Galen; the five named before Ptolemy wrote chiefly in the first century, but died in the second. Name some events in the third century. The inroads of the Goths upon the Roman empire, to whom the emperors consented to pay tribute; and the professors of Christianity divided into many different sects: in this century Origen and Cyprian distinguished themselves by their theological writings; Dion Cassius and Herodian flourished as historians, and Longinus as a critic and orator. Name the chief events of the fourth century. The tenth and last great persecution of the Christians stopped by Constantine the Great, who became one of the most zealous professors of that faith: a council assembled at Nice to settle the disputes between Arius and Athanasius: the Roman empire divided, and governed by separate emperors; Constantinople being the capital of the eastern, and Rome of the western empire. Name some learned men in the fourth century. At this period, ecclesiastical knowledge was most in request; and Arius, Eusebius, Basil, and Ambrose, are the most distinguished writers; Athanasius, and Apollinarius flourished then; and Ossian, the celebrated



northern poet. What were the remarkable events in the fifth century? Rome was plundered by Alaric, king of the Goths: France erected into a monarchy: the heptarchy established in Britain; the light of science extinguished, and the works of the learned destroyed, by the Goths, and other fierce invaders of the Roman empire. Name the chief events in the sixth century. Time computed by the Christian era: a plague, which extended over Europe, Asia, and Africa, lasting fifty years: and the unlimited temporal, as well as spiritual authority, assumed by the popes. Name the chief events of the seventh century. The successful spread of the Mahometan religion; Jerusalem taken by the Saracens, followers of Mahomet, and the Alexandrian library (that great repository for general learning) supposed to be burnt by their command: the Britons also, after many severe struggles, were expelled their native country by the Saxons, and many of them obliged to retire into Wales. Name the most distinguished characters in the seventh century. Mahomet, Ali, and the general patron of learning, Abubeker. Name the chief events of the eighth century. Disputes respecting image worship harassed the Christian world, and caused many insurrections in the eastern empire; Bagdad became the residence of the caliphs; and the Saracens conquered Spain: Aaron or Haroun al Raschid, "the just," and the "venerable Bede," a monk of Wearmouth, the most authentic of the old British historians, flourished in this century. Name some events in the ninth century. The empire of Germany established under Charlemagne: Britain perpetually harassed and invaded by the Danes: the Scots and Picts united. Name some events in the tenth century. The Saracen power began to totter, having been divided into seven different usurpations; the empire of Germany made elective; and Poland erected into a monarchy.

Name some events in the eleventh century. The Turks conquered Persia, and retook Jerusalem from the Saracens: the Crusades were engaged in; and the Moors settled themselves in Spain: Abelard, so famous for his poetry, divinity, and attachment to Eloisa, flourished in this and the next century. Name some distinguished events in the twelfth century. The order of Knights Templars was instituted: their power speedily became excessive; the Teutonic order of knighthood began in Germany; and Ireland, without conquest, was annexed to the British crown. Name some events in the thirteenth century. The Tartars, who emigrated from the northern parts of Asia, overturned the Saracen empire; the inquisition established by

the Dominicans, under pope Innocent III.; and the English obtained from John, their unamiable monarch, the famous Magna Charta: at this time flourished Dante, the poet; Bacon, the philosopher; and Matthew Paris, the historian. Name some events in the fourteenth century. The popes, for seventy years, Clement V. having removed his throne to Avignon in France, made this place their residence; the Swiss republic was founded; gunpowder and the compass invented; gold coined; and the first symptoms of the reformation appeared in England, under the auspices of Wickliffe. Name the chief authors in the fourteenth century. Chaucer, Boccace, Gower, Petrarch, and Barbour, poets, and Alain Chartier, the historian.

What were the most striking events in the fifteenth century? Printing was introduced, and became general; Constantinople taken by the Turks; civil wars in England between the houses of York and Lancaster, which continued thirty years, and destroyed 100,000 men; the Moors driven by the Spaniards back to Africa, their native country; America discovered by Christopher Columbus; and algebra, originally invented by the Arabs, brought into Europe. Name some great men in the fifteenth century. Leonardo Da Vinci, Raphael, and Michael Angelo, painters; these three flourished also at the beginning of the sixteenth century. Machiavel, the political writer; Caxton, the first English printer; and the celebrated Erasmus of Rotterdam, the great restorer of learning. What were the principal events of the sixteenth century? The reformation was begun in Germany, by Martin Luther, and spread through England, Scotland, Germany, Denmark, and Sweden; the monasteries were dissolved in England and Ireland by Henry VIII., and the persecutions under the Papal See were extended over Spain and Italy; the discoveries of the Portuguese; learning revived and protected by the Medici, a Florentine family; the massacre of the Protestants by command of Charles IX. of France on St. Bartholomew's day; the foundation of the Genevese republic; the defeat of the Spanish Armada; and the Swedish revolution effected by Gustavus Vasa. Name some celebrated characters in the sixteenth century. Luther, Calvin, Melancthon, and John Knox, a Scotchman, reformers; Bartholomew, Gosnold, and Sebastian Cabot, Englishmen, navigators; Tycho Brahe and Copernicus, astronomers; Shakspeare, Spencer, (English,) Tasso, (Italian,) Camoens, (Portuguese,) Bonarelli, poets; Palladio, the Italian architect; Cervantes, the Spanish author of Don Quixotte; Socinus, the theologian; the Scaligers, critics; Titian, the painter; Bentivoglio, De Thou, and Buchanan, historians.

Montaigne and Lord Bacon, philosophers. Name some events in the seventeenth century. Great part of North America settled by the English; massacre of Irish Protestants; civil wars between king Charles and his parliament, who beheaded their sovereign, and abolished royalty and episcopacy: but the tide of duty and allegiance returning, they were both restored; the persecution of the Protestants by Louis XIV. of France; abdication of James II. of England, and subsequent revolution there. Name some great characters of the seventeenth century. Balzac, Corneille, the Daciers, Milton, Dryden, Racine, Moliere, and Boileau, poets; Cassini, Galileo, Gassendi, Newton, and Halley, astronomers; Boyle, Fontenelle, and Locke, philosophers; Puffendorf, Grotius, and Leibnitz, civilians; Bernini, the sculptor; Guido, the painter; Strada, the historian; and Boerhaave, the medical writer and practitioner. What were the chief events in the beginning of the eighteenth century? Peter of Russia, and Charles XII. of Sweden, distinguished themselves by their military exploits; the victorious Marlborough raised the English name; and Kouli Khan, after usurping the Persian throne, conquered the Mogul empire. Name some from the middle to the close of the eighteenth century. The new style introduced in Britain, in the year 1752, (the old style is still used in Russia;) Lisbon destroyed by an earthquake; the order of Jesuits suppressed by the pope; dreadful hurricanes in the West Indies, and earthquakes in Sicily; Gibraltar sustained a siege of three years against the united powers of France and Spain, which the gallant General Elliott (Lord Heathfield) obliged them to raise; the British colonies in North America threw off the British yoke, and declared themselves independent in 1776; the revolution in France, and its attendant horrors; the rebellion in Ireland, and its happy termination. What remarkable man appeared in this century whose biography is identical with the history of Europe? Napoleon Bonaparte, a great statesman and warrior, born 15th August, 1769, at Ajaccio, in Corsica, was the son of a Corsican nobleman, educated for a military life from his boyhood, and entered the French army at an early age: the distracted situation of France was opportune for the display of such talents and fortune as Bonaparte possessed. In his first campaigns, of any importance, he issued proclamations to his soldiers calculated to excite their enthusiasm, pride, and feeling of honor; and, like Frederick the Great, he surprised his enemies by a new system of tactics. In six successive days he obtained as many victories over a veteran Austrian army, took valuable spoils, and strongly



fortified positions, and obliged the Sardinian king to sue for peace. What rewards did France bestow upon him for his brilliant conquests? He was appointed commander-in-chief of the army in Italy; first consul of France, in 1799; president of the Italian republic; and finally elected emperor of the French—the dignity to be hereditary in his family—on the 18th of May, 1804. Name some of the occasions on which the British arms were opposed to those of France, during the government of Napoleon. The battles of Copenhagen, the Nile, and Trafalgar; in the last, which took place in 1805, the combined fleets of France and Spain were defeated by the English, under the conduct of the intrepid Admiral Lord Nelson, to whom fate presented, in the same instant, victory and death. In Egypt also the French were successfully opposed, and Napoleon compelled ultimately to abandon his ambitious speculations on that country, by Sir Ralph Abercromby and Sir Sidney Smith; the former died there of the wounds he received on the field of battle. Mention some of the extraordinary changes made by Napoleon in the dynasties of Europe. He united Bavaria and Wirtemberg, and constituted them a kingdom; his brother Joseph was proclaimed king of the two territories, Louis raised to the throne of Holland, and himself appointed protector of the confederation of the Rhine in 1806. Jerome Bonaparte was placed on the throne of Westphalia, and Joseph on that of Spain in 1808. Having divorced Josephine, and espoused Maria Louisa, daughter of the emperor of Austria, he created his son, by that princess, king of Rome; and, in 1818, Bernadotte, one of his marshals, ascended the Swedish throne. To what circumstances and individuals is the fall of Napoleon attributed? Having invaded Russia with a powerful army, and entered Moscow, which was burned by the inhabitants, the severity of the climate in 1812 effected for his enemies, that to which their vast numbers with such inferior discipline was unequal. From his Russian disasters Napoleon never entirely recovered; and the continued successes of the Duke of Wellington in Spain, in 1811 and 1812, hastened the catastrophe of his life, which was then rapidly approaching. Russia, Prussia, Austria, and England, united in the common cause against the emperor of the French, at length compelled him to sign a formal abdication of his throne, permitted him to retire to the Island of Elba, in 1814, retaining the imperial title, and granting him an income of 2,000,000 francs. How was the throne of France filled, upon the abdication of Napoleon? The family of Bourbon, who had lived in exile since the revolution, re-



turned, and Louis XVIII. entered Paris on the 3d of May, 1814. How long did Napoleon conform to the conditions of his abdication? Until the 1st of March, 1815, when he landed at Cannes, near Frejus, and, assembling a powerful army, entered Paris again on the 20th of the same month, Louis XVIII. and his court having previously fled. This violation of his formal compact led to the coalition of the four great powers before mentioned, for the total extinction of his power. The Prussians, however, early suffered a defeat, and it was reserved for the arms of Great Britain, guided by the genius of Wellington, to strike down the empire of Napoleon forever—which he did by the decisive victory of Waterloo, on the 18th of June, 1815. After the battle of Waterloo, Napoleon a second time abdicated his throne, embarked on board the *Bellerophon*, an English man-of-war, and, being denied the privilege of landing in England, was transmitted to the island of St. Helena, accompanied by a few faithful adherents. His residence at St. Helena commenced on the 15th of October, 1815, and terminated with his death on the 5th of May, 1821; his remains were removed from that island to France just nineteen years after, and entombed in the church of the Invalids, in Paris: he was watched with unsparing rigor by the governor, Sir Hudson Lowe, and maintained his dignity of character in the miseries of exile and imprisonment. What important political changes took place in Europe after the deposition of Napoleon? Louis XVIII. reascended the throne of France, and reigned without interruption till his death in 1824. The independence of Brazil, in South America, was acknowledged in 1821; that vast country was constituted a separate empire. In 1822 the struggle for liberty in Greece terminated happily, in the separation of that ancient country from Turkish despotism; and in 1826 a constitutional monarchy was erected in Portugal; and, in 1828, the Test and Corporation Acts, which abridged the rights of dissenters in England, were repealed. What great public or political events occurred soon after? A revolution in France, which ended in the expulsion of Charles X. for arbitrary conduct, exclusion of his family, and elevation of Louis Philippe, Duke of Orleans, to the throne in 1830; the exiled king died at Goritz, in Illyria, in 1836, at the age of eighty. A revolution among the Belgians, in 1830, who expelled the family of Orange from their government, and elected Leopold of Saxe-Coburg their king, in 1831. Don Miguel usurped the throne of Portugal, to the prejudice of his niece, Donna Maria, but, after a sanguinary conflict, was compelled to abandon it in 1833; in 1830 king

George IV. of England died, and was succeeded by his brother the Duke of Clarence, who took the title of William IV.; the Poles in vain endeavored to release themselves from the power of Russia in 1831; the Reform Bill, which caused an extensive change in the elective franchise, passed the British Lords and Commons in 1832; and the Cholera Morbus devastated Europe during the years 1831 and 1832, carrying off, in Great Britain, France, and Hungary, during its continuance, 300,000 persons. About the same period Algiers was taken by the French, on the plea of abolishing piracy and Christian slavery, but with the secret object of having a port near the entrance of the Mediterranean, to control the trade of that sea. Name some of the most remarkable occurrences of the following years. In 1834, Feth-Ali-Khan, king of Persia, dying at Teheran, left his crown to his favorite son Mohammed, to the mortification of his fifty other sons; three of the number took up arms, and aspired to the throne, but Mohammed, assisted by a loan of £20,000 from the English envoy at his court, maintained himself against his rivals. This latter event took place in 1835, in which year an attempt was made in Paris by Fieschi, a Corsican, to destroy Louis Philippe; the infernal machine discharged a tempest of bullets at the king and his staff, as they passed along the Boulevards, by which forty persons were severely wounded, and fourteen killed; amongst the latter was Marshal Mortier. In 1835 died Francis II., emperor of Austria, whom his son Ferdinand quietly succeeded; and in the same year Mehemet Ali sent an army into Syria, under the command of his son Ibrahim Pacha, who completely reduced that country. For what is the year 1837 particularly remarkable? The ascent of the Princess Victoria, daughter of the Duke of Kent, to the throne of the British empire, on the death of her uncle William IV.; as the Salic law is still in force in Hanover, the princess could not succeed to that government, which devolved upon her uncle, Ernest Augustus, Duke of Cumberland, he being the next in succession to her father, the Duke of Kent, who would have been king of England had he lived. A fatal influenza prevailed in London in this year, and an insurrection occurred in Canada, which was suppressed by the firmness of Sir John Colborne, (Lord Seaton.) Particularize some of the events of 1838. The destruction of the Royal Exchange, London, by fire, on the 10th of January; the coronation of Queen Victoria, in Westminster Abbey, on the 28th of June; the birth of the Duke of Oporto, heir-apparent to the Portuguese throne; rupture between England and China, in consequence of the prohibition against im-

porting opium into the latter country; and a violent riot at Canterbury, headed by one Thom, under the assumed name of William Courtenay, in which Lieutenant Bennett was killed. Were there any very remarkable occurrences in the year 1839? Several;—none, perhaps, more memorable than the decease of the Sultan Mahmoud II.; he had put the janisaries to death, reformed Turkish institutions, and assimilated them to those of France and England. His son and successor Abdul Medjid possesses the reforming predilections of his father. Spain was relieved from the miseries of a civil war by the retirement of Don Carlos from the contest for the crown; he took refuge in France, where he was received as a prisoner on his parole. What public occurrences took place in England in 1840? Queen Victoria was married to Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg, in the Chapel Royal of St. James's, London, on the 10th of February; a few months after her majesty was fired at by Edward Oxford, a pot-boy, as she rode in an open phaeton up Constitution hill; the traitor was brought to trial, and convicted, but either from a suspicion that there was no bullet in the pistol, or a still stronger belief that he was not in his perfect mind, the queen was pleased to spare his life; his sentence was commuted to confinement for life in a lunatic asylum. In the event of any accident befalling the queen, Prince Albert had been named regent. On the 21st of November, 1840, her majesty gave birth to a princess, and on the 9th of November in the following year, to a prince, who is heir-apparent to the throne. The destruction of the Houses of Parliament and of the Royal Exchange, London, by fire, and at brief intervals from each other, have been mentioned in this chapter; the conflagration of the Armory of the Tower of London, on Saturday the 30th of October, 1841, is also to be added;—these three fires were attributed to accident.

## MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS

IN

## ROMAN HISTORY.

Of rougher front a mighty people come,  
 A race of heroes !  
 Fabricius, scorner of all-conquering gold,  
 And Cincinnatus, awful from the plough.

THOMSON'S WINTER.

WHO founded Rome? Romulus, its first king. It was at first only an asylum for outlaws, who brought thither plunder, cattle, fruits, and other produce, and resembled the towns yet existing amongst the Crim Tartars. Romulus was engaged in perpetual predatory excursions, and the triumphs to which Rome afterwards owed its grandeur originated in the joyous reception given to him on his return home loaded with wheaten-sheaves and flocks. Having subdued the Sabines, the Romans laid aside the small buckler of *Argos*, and adopted the large Sabine shield. How did the idolatry of the Romans differ from that of surrounding nations? In this respect: they worshipped their gods originally without statues or images. How many kings had Rome? Seven: of these Numa Pompilius and Servius Tullius are thought the most deserving, and Tarquin the Proud the least so. Who established the difference between the patricians and the plebeians? Romulus: the former were the nobility, the latter the common people. Who appointed lictors and fasces? Romulus: lictors were twelve men who walked before the king, or one consul, within the city; a public servant walked before the other; and fasces were bundles of rods with an axe (*securis*) in the middle, carried by the lictors. What were the *Celeres*? A guard of 300 young men, instituted by Romulus to defend his person. What were the *Ancilia* among the Romans? Twelve sacred bucklers carried by priests called *Salii*, devoted to Mars, symbolical of the perpetuity of the empire, in the reign of Numa Pompilius. Who were the *Duumviri*? Two magistrates appointed by Tullus Hostilius to give judgment in criminal affairs—also the chief magistrates in the colonies. What was the occasion of the battle between the *Horatii* and *Curiatii*? There was a war be-



tween the Albans and the Romans, in the reign of Tullus Hostilius, king of Rome; they agreed to decide it by a combat of three persons on each side; the Albans chose three brothers called Curiatii, the Romans three called Horatii; they fought, and the Horatii gained the victory. What was the Census? A general survey of the Roman people and their estates, instituted by Servius Tullius; it was first made by kings, then by consuls, and at length by magistrates called censors, whose office also extended to taxing estates and reforming the manners of the people. When did the Romans erect their temple to Faith? In the reign of Numa Pompilius; that dedicated to Fortune was built by the command of Servius Tullius. What was the Civic Crown? One made of oak leaves, given by the Romans to him who had saved the life of a fellow-citizen in battle. Why was the orator's pulpit called Rostrum? From the rostra or beaks of ships taken from the Antiates, with which this part of the forum was generally adorned. What was the Adytum? The sanctuary in the pagan temples, into which none but the priests were admitted. What was the ancient naval crown? One made in the form of the ancient ships' beaks, and presented to him who first boarded an enemy. How were the ancient Romans trained up to war? A place was appropriated for exercise in the city, called the Field of Mars; here they ran and leaped in ponderous armor, carried the heaviest weights, and performed all martial exercises; war and agriculture were their only professions; their bodies were kept in continual activity; and to this steady, unrelaxed discipline, they owed much of their fame and military glory. How were the Roman soldiers punished for small deviations from duty? They were always flogged; for as every ancient Roman entertained high ideas of his own prowess, this temporary deprivation of strength was to them the most sensible mortification. What rule was observed inviolably in the Roman armies? This: he who abandoned his post, or quitted his arms in battle, suffered death. When were gladiators first publicly exhibited at Rome? A. U. 490, by two brothers named Bruti, at the funeral of their father; the custom seems to have arisen from the practice of slaying captives at the tombs of those who fell in battle, to appease their spirits or *manes*. Why were the Romans entertained with gladiators? The policy of their rulers accustomed them to these exhibitions, that they might learn to look upon wounds and bloodshed without shrinking; these shows were often prohibited by the merciful emperors, but never totally abolished till the reign of Honorius, who died A. D. 425. Which of the ancient

nations paid the most sacred regard to an oath? The Romans: even during their greatest corruptions, this high sense of honor never entirely forsook them. What was the Mural Crown used by the Romans? One indented at the top like the battlements of a wall, and bestowed upon him who first scaled the wall of an enemy's city.

Into how many parts were the months divided by the Romans? Three: called *calends*, *nones*, and *ides*. The *calends*, so designated because a priest *called* out to the people that it was new moon, was the first day of the month: the *nones* commenced on the fifth day of the month, and were *nine* days from the *ides*, counting inclusively: the *ides* fell on the thirteenth day of every month, except March, May, July, and October, when the *nones* fell on the seventh and the *ides* on the fifteenth. What was a *Lustrum*? A space of five years, at the end of which a general survey was taken of the Romans and their estates. What was an *Indiction*? A space of fifteen years, observed among the Roman people, and established by the emperor Constantine. Name the different forms of government in Rome. The establishment of the regal power; then of the consulship, which continued till the first dictator (T. Lartius) was chosen—nine years after the expulsion of the kings—from fear of a domestic sedition, and of a dangerous war from the Latins: then succeeded the authority of the *decemviri*—ten magistrates selected from amongst the patricians, with supreme power, and from whose decision was no liberty of appeal. By a decree of the senate and order of the people, A. U. 299, three ambassadors were sent to Athens to copy the famous laws of Solon, and examine into the institutions of other Grecian states; the result of whose labors was committed to the *decemviri*, by whom they were embodied into twelve tables, engraven on brass, fixed up in public, and continued ever after to be the foundation of public and private rights throughout the Roman world: after its abolition the perpetual dictatorship prevailed for a short time, till Augustus Cæsar introduced the imperial power.

What were *Consuls*? Chief magistrates among the Romans; two acted together, and their authority continued one year; Brutus and Collatinus were the first appointed to fill this high office. What was a *Dictator*? A magistrate, who was invested with supreme power for six months; never chosen during the earlier ages but when the commonwealth was thought in extreme danger; this office at length was made perpetual; Lartius was the first dictator. What were *Tribunes*? Magistrates,

chosen to preserve the liberties and privileges of the people against the power and encroachments of the nobles ; at first two were appointed, then five ; at length their number was increased to ten ; they were at first chosen indiscriminately from amongst the plebeians, but afterwards none under senatorian rank were elected to the office : a tribune had no external mark of dignity except being preceded in public by a beadle ; he had, however, a right of precedency, and all were obliged to rise in his presence : he possessed a negative power, which proved useful at first, but was in time perverted to the worst purposes. What occasioned the institution of Military Tribunes ? The plebeian Romans being displeased with the consular government, three new magistrates were chosen in the year of the republic 310, called military tribunes, but their power was soon laid aside forever ; and Camillus, the dictator, dedicated a temple to Concord, to perpetuate the union then effected between the patricians and plebeians. When were the Decemviri appointed in Rome ? In the year of the republic 302 ; ten were chosen to write the twelve tables of the Roman law, but only one acted at a time as supreme magistrate ; their office was to continue a year, but they kept themselves in power much longer, under pretence of finishing the tables completely : they acted tyrannically—were at length compelled to resign, and all perished either in prison or in banishment. What were the offices of Quæstor and Ædile ? The Quæstors were two in number, and were to take care of the public money and contributions, sell plunder, &c. ; but in Julius Cæsar's time they amounted to forty : there were also two plebeian Ædiles, who were to assist the tribunes, rectify weights and measures ; and two curule Ædiles, who provided the public games. What rival states showed great antipathy to each other ? Rome and Carthage. What was meant by the Punic wars ? The wars between the Romans and the Carthaginians ; the words Punic Faith were afterwards proverbially applied to the latter people, for their shameful breach of public faith. What gave rise to the Punic wars ? The offence which the Romans took at the assistance granted by the Carthaginians to the southern parts of Italy, then at war with Rome. How long did the Punic wars subsist ? The first, twenty-four years ; the second, seventeen years ; and the third and last, four years and some months. Who was Hannibal ? A famous Carthaginian general, rival of Scipio Africanus : he was the son of Hamilcar Barcas, born 247 years before Christ ; and, at the age of nine years, his father made him swear at the altar eternal hatred to the Romans. Upon



the murder of Asdrubal, the army conferred the chief command upon him by acclamation. At the age of twenty-six years, faithful to his early vow, he commenced a career of military glory by the taking of Saguntum; he next assembled 90,000 infantry, forty elephants, and 12,000 horsemen, and traversing Gaul reached the Alps, in the depth of winter, and crossing either the Little St. Bernard or Genevre, entered Italy, which for sixteen years he held in spite of all the efforts of mighty Rome; being recalled to oppose Scipio Africanus, who was advanced within five days' journey of Carthage, he suffered a defeat, and 20,000 of his soldiers were left dead upon the field. Name the four great battles in which Hannibal defeated the Romans. Ticinus, Trebia, Thrasymene, and Cannæ; but Hannibal was himself defeated at the battle of Zama, in Africa, by Scipio, thence surnamed Africanus. What remarkable commanders fell a sacrifice during these wars? Regulus, Flaminius, and two of the Scipios, on the Roman side; Asdrubal, Hanno, Postar, and Hannibal, on the Carthaginian: Regulus, being defeated under the walls of Carthage, where 20,000 Romans perished, was made prisoner, and was shortly after sent on an embassy to Rome, bound by an oath that he would return to Carthage if the senate should reject the proposed terms of peace—arrived at Rome, he recommended to his countrymen the continuance of the war, and rejecting the prayers of relations, and solicitations of friends, remained faithful to his obligation, and returned to Carthage, where it is asserted he was deprived of life by the most cruel tortures. When did the Romans acquire a taste for the arts? In the 270th year of the republic. For what were the Romans particularly famed? For their perseverance, love of fame, and patriotism. Where did Hannibal and his army, infatuated with the seductions of luxury, forget their character as soldiers? At Capua, in Italy, where they passed a winter.

Who was Coriolanus? A noble Roman, by name Caius Marius, but surnamed Coriolanus for his bravery at the siege of Corioli, the capital of the Volsci. Having placed himself at the head of the patricians, during the famine at Rome, 491 years B. C., and refused to distribute the Sicilian corn to the people unless they agreed to the abolition of the tribuneship, he was brought to trial before the whole people and banished. The more effectually to revenge himself upon his country, he applied to Attius, and those very Volsci whom he had subdued, and readily obtained the command of their forces destined against Rome. Making directly towards his native city, he encamped



before its walls, and thence dismissed the envoys of the senate, until at last a mournful train, led by his mother Veturia, his wife Volumnia, and his children, arrived at his camp, and Veturia prostrating herself at his feet, the hero raised her from the ground, exclaiming, "Mother, thou hast saved Rome, but lost thy son." He then withdrew his army, and returning was assassinated in a tumult of the Volscians, excited by his enemy and rival, Attius. Who was Siccus Dentatus? A Roman who fought 120 battles for his country, and gained fourteen civic and four mural crowns: he was, notwithstanding his services, never properly recompensed, and soon after basely assassinated by command of the decemviri. Who was Camillus? A Roman general and dictator, memorable for taking the town of Veii, after it had been besieged ten years; he then forbade the soldiers to plunder, and they in revenge instigated the tribunes to accuse Camillus of fraudulent practices; he was unjustly banished; but Rome being besieged by the Gauls, he nobly returned, completely defeated them, and once more enjoyed the highest offices: he afterwards fell a sacrifice to the plague which desolated the city. What Roman sacrificed himself to appease the fury of the gods? Decius: Publius Decius Mus, the consul, in a war against the Latins, 340 years B. C., devoted himself for his country, and his example was followed by his son and his grandson. Such acts of self-devotion were not unfrequent at a time when patriotism and piety exerted a powerful influence, and were performed with great solemnity. The willing victim, after performing certain religious rites, rushed into the midst of the enemy, clad in splendid armor, to show how a brave man ought to die for his country. Marcus Curtius, a Roman youth, clad in armor and mounted on horseback, leaped into a gulf in the Forum, which the oracle had declared would never close until what constituted the glory of Rome should be thrown into it—this Curtius interpreted to be valor. Which of the Romans beheaded his son for contempt of his consular authority? Manlius Torquatus. What Roman was most famed for his integrity? Fabricius: king Pyrrhus, his enemy, declared publicly, that it was easier to turn the sun from its course, than Fabricius from the path of honor. Who was Fabius Maximus? A dictator, who led the Roman armies against Hannibal; his caution and experience were such, that without hazarding a battle he continued to keep the troops of Hannibal in perpetual alarm, whilst his own remained in security; on this account he was termed the buckler of Rome and surnamed *Cunctator*. Who was Cato the Censor? A philosopher,

brave, just, and famed for the severity of his manners : he was the inveterate enemy of Carthage, and continually advising its destruction. Name the destroyer of Carthage. Scipio Æmilianus, surnamed the *Younger Africanus* ; after a siege of twenty days, he took the once powerful rival of Rome, his friend Lælius being the first to ascend the walls, 146 years B. C., and by command of the senate, demolished and burnt it : this hero and Julius Cæsar are said to have best united the military and literary talents.

What instance of determined resolution was shown by a Carthaginian at this time ? When Carthage was destroyed, (which continued burning seventeen days,) the wife of Asdrubal, to avoid falling into the hands of the Romans, threw herself into the flames. Who afterwards rebuilt Carthage ? Augustus Cæsar, and in some degree re-established its prosperity ; but the Arabs, in the seventh century, once more demolished it ; and Tunis now stands near its ruins. Name the four most ambitious men in Rome. Marius, Sylla, Pompey, and Cæsar. When happened the first important civil war in Rome ? In the year of the republic 665, between Sylla and Marius. Name some of the most temperate Romans. Cincinnatus, Fabricius, Cato, and Cicero. Name the three most luxurious. Lucullus, Catiline, and Sylla.

What is meant by proscriptions of the people ? Banishing them, confiscating their goods, setting them up for sale, and sometimes putting them to death. Who invented proscriptions ? Sylla, upon his return into the city, after conquering the faction of Marius : *he wrote down* (proscribed) the names of those whom he doomed to die, and ordered them to be fixed up on tablets in public places of the city, with a promise of a reward for the head of each proscribed person ; the first list included the names of forty senators and 1,600 knights. What Roman showed the greatest depravity of heart, and inclination to betray his country ? Catiline : Cicero discovered his conspiracy. Who formed the first Roman Triumvirate ? Crassus, Pompey, and Julius Cæsar. The policy of Cæsar effected this incongruous union, which should rather be termed a coalition than a triumvirate—that he might quietly enjoy the consulship, ingratiate himself with the plebeians, and after crushing the factions of his colleagues, unite them both in his interest. Cæsar was born 10th July, 100 years before Christ, and became an able general, statesman, and historian ; he possessed deep penetration, tenacious memory, a lively imagination, indefatigable in business ; and Pliny says he could read, write, hear, and dictate, at the same time, from four

to seven different letters. He escaped the proscription of Sylla, who declared "he saw many a Marius in the stripling Cæsar." He afterwards defeated, captured, and crucified the Ægean pirates, who robbed him on his voyage to Rhodes to study under Apollonius; he was privy to Catiline's conspiracy, but obtaining a command in Spain, was heard to remark as he passed a wretched village there, "that he would rather be first in it than second in Rome." Upon his return he obtained the consulship, overran Gaul, Germany, Italy, and Britain, and reached the highest degree of popularity. Which of his colleagues became his adversary? Pompey the Great, who feared the increasing power of Cæsar; the senate and consuls followed Pompey's standards, while Julius relied upon the affection of his soldiers, and threatened to march to Rome unless they would grant him justice, or to resign his command in case Pompey would do so too. What decree did the Roman senate pass, when menaced by Cæsar? They enacted, that whoever should pass the river Rubicon, either with a cohort, legion, or army, should be deemed a sacrilegious man and a parricide, and be solemnly devoted to the infernal deities; but decrees of this kind were ineffectual when the republic was convulsed to its centre; and, calling on his soldiers to defend the honor of their leader, he passed the Rubicon, forty-nine years B. C., and made himself master of Italy without striking a blow, as Pompey, destitute of troops, had withdrawn from the city, together with the consuls, senators, and magistrates. When was the battle of Pharsalia fought? Forty-seven years before Christ, between Pompey and Cæsar; when the latter proved victorious, and became master of the Roman liberties. In this decisive conflict Pompey is said to have shown himself unworthy of his renowned and venerated name; perceiving his troops thrown into disorder, he retired to his tent, and remained in a state of stupefaction until the approach of the conquerors obliged him to consult for his safety. Escaping to the island of Lesbos, he took his faithful Cornelia on board—sailed for the court of Ptolemy of Egypt, but he scarcely set foot upon the shore when he was basely assassinated. When Cæsar arrived in Egypt the head of his rival was presented to him, but he turned from the sight with tears—punished the assassins—caused the remains to be interred, and erected a temple to Nemesis over the grave. Where did Cato die? He killed himself at Utica, in Africa, because he scorned to survive the liberties of his country.

What doctrine was introduced at Rome towards the end of the republic? That called the Epicurean; its tenets, evidently



favoring luxury and sensuality, are by many thought to have had a powerful effect in corrupting the minds of the Romans, and extinguishing the noble spirit which once animated them. Epicurus himself made pleasure to consist in virtue; his followers shamefully perverted that doctrine, and were noted for the freedom of their lives. Who conspired the death of Cæsar? Brutus and Cassius; the former had been his intimate friend: he was assassinated on the 15th of March, forty-four years before Christ, in the fifty-sixth year of his age, pierced by twenty-three wounds, which laid him lifeless at the pedestal of Pompey's statue: he was a merciful ruler, had been the victor in 500 battles, and the conqueror of 1000 cities. What caused the most frequent seditions among the Roman soldiers? The great interest paid for money lent; the laws made by the decemviri forbade raising interest above twelve per cent.; but these laws were neglected, and the excessive usury practised at Rome caused most of the calamities which afterwards befell the empire. How were victorious commanders rewarded amongst the Romans? By a triumph or solemn procession, which was the highest military honor, and the most splendid spectacle of ancient Rome. The enemy must have been foreign and free, the war just, and the number slain must have reached 5000 at least, to entitle the general to this honor. How were the superior triumphs conducted? On the day appointed, the general, crowned with laurel, in after ages with gold, pronounced an oration to the soldiery and surrounding multitude, relating his military achievements; then the march began with a long procession, in which were carried inscriptions, containing the names of the nations, provinces, or cities, he had conquered; the priests assisted, leading the beasts used for sacrifice. Who closed the procession? The conqueror, in an ivory car, richly ornamented; he was surrounded by his friends and relations, bearing branches of laurel: the procession stopped at the Capitol, where they sacrificed to Jupiter, and deposited part of the spoils. How was the lustre of the Roman conquests tarnished? By their inhumanity to the conquered; their prisoners, if of high rank, were only reserved to suffer superior mortifications; the captive monarchs and generals were bound in chains, their heads closely shaven, (a mark of peculiar degradation,) and they were thus presented a sad spectacle to the gazing multitude.

What was an Ovation? A kind of inferior triumph among the Romans, conferred upon those whose victories were not very considerable; Posthumius was the first honored with one:



in the Ovation, the general walked on foot in his common habit, and was met by the knights and citizens ; he was not allowed a sceptre, and instead of drums and trumpets, fifes and flutes were carried before him. How long did the custom of triumphing after a battle continue ? From Romulus to Augustus, when they were forbidden, with some few exceptions, till some ages after : then, Belisarius, having, under the Emperor Justinian, subjugated Africa, taken Rome, Carthage, and Ravenna from the hands of the Goths, was permitted by his sovereign to make his triumphal entry into Constantinople. When was the second great Roman Triumvirate formed ? After Julius Cæsar's death, when Octavius Cæsar, Marc Antony, and Lepidus shared the Roman power among them ; but Octavius was afterwards declared emperor by the title of Augustus Cæsar. Between whom was the battle of Philippi ? It was fought by Brutus and Cassius, on one side ; Marc Antony and Octavius Cæsar, on the other ; its issue totally overturned the Roman republic, and established the imperial form of government. In what great battle was Marc Antony finally defeated ? At the battle of Actium, off the coast of Epirus, by Octavius Cæsar. When did Egypt become a Roman province ? In the reign of Augustus : it continued in the hands of the Romans 700 years. What particular change did Augustus effect in the Roman constitution ? When declared emperor, he deprived the people of their ancient privilege to make laws and judge criminals ; but suffered them to retain that of electing magistrates : Tiberius, however, took this power also into his own hands.

How many Roman emperors were there ? Sixty : Augustus was the first, and Augustulus the last. What period of time was called the Augustan age ? Augustus Cæsar's reign : the distinguished writers were Cicero, Livy, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Varro. Vitruvius, the celebrated Roman architect, lived then. Which were the best Roman emperors ? Augustus, Vespasian, Titus, Nerva, Trajan, Adrian, Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius, Pertinax, Alexander Severus, Claudius II., Tacitus, and Constantine the Great. What emperors were noted for their vices ? Tiberius, Caligula, Nero, Otho, Vitellius, Domitian, Commodus, and Heliogabalus. Who was emperor when Christ was born ? Augustus Cæsar. Who was emperor when Christ suffered death ? Tiberius, remarkable for the inconsistency of his character, and his dissolute way of life. When was Christianity introduced in Rome ? Thirty years after the death of Christ. What emperors persecuted the Christians ? Nero, Domitian, Trajan, Adrian, Severus, Maximinus, Decius,

Valerian, Aurelian, Dioclesian, and Julian, surnamed the Apostate; this prince was brought up in the Christian faith, but at the age of twenty-four was induced by the sophist Libanus, at Athens, to renounce the religion of those who had massacred his family, and embrace paganism. What Roman emperor ordered himself to be worshipped as a god? Caligula; but the Jews refused to obey the mandate: this was the monster who wished his people had but one neck, that he might destroy them at a blow. What Roman emperor set fire to his own capital, and afterwards laughed at the calamity he had caused? Nero: this unaccountably cruel prince possessed splendid abilities, and received an accomplished education. He poisoned Britannicus, put his own mother to death, and caused Seneca, Lucan, and others to be assassinated: he appeared publicly as a mountebank, played on the violin, sang, and contended in the chariot-race; he was a persecutor of Christians also; he destroyed himself A. D. 68. When was Jerusalem levelled with the ground? In the reign of Vespasian, emperor of the Romans, by Titus, his son, A. D. 70. Why did God permit the destruction of Jerusalem, his favored city? On account of the great wickedness and repeated acts of impiety shown by the Jews, without the slightest symptoms of repentance. What occasioned the animosities between the Jews and Samaritans? A difference in religious opinions respecting the place where God had appointed an altar to be erected: both Jews and Samaritans contested the point; the Jews declaring that God would be worshipped only in Jerusalem; the Samaritans, who were descended from the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, who had mingled with the Assyrian colonists, that in Samaria also he made his presence known; and they worshipped on Mount Gerizim. When the Jews, on their return from captivity, were about to rebuild the temple, the Samaritans desired permission to aid in the pious labor, but their request was rejected by the Jews, who looked upon their issue as mixed with heathens; and hence also the hatred between the Jews and Samaritans in the time of our Saviour.

What has caused such frequent animosities between religious sects? Their bigotry. What calamities have befallen the ancient Jews? Jerusalem was taken by Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, in the reign of Zedekiah, and the Jews led captive thither; after the expiration of the seventy years' captivity, Cyrus permitted them to rebuild their city, and restore it to its ancient splendor. It was forty years after the death of Christ when Titus destroyed the city; but he endeavored to save the

temple, though without effect. How many Jews are computed to have perished during this siege, and its subsequent events? 1,100,000 : those Jews who had been instrumental in the rebellion were crucified by the emperor's command : 11,000 perished by hunger, 97,000 were taken prisoners, and many of them sent into Egypt as slaves ; some were devoured by wild beasts, in the public diversions ; and it is not possible to conceive greater calamities than those this unfortunate people endured. Who was the last king of the Jews ? Agrippa II., being dethroned by the emperor Claudius ; he served in the army of Titus, against the very people over whom he had reigned. Who rebuilt Jerusalem ? The emperor Adrian ; and, in derision of the Jews, he caused a marble statue of a hog to be placed over the principal gate of the city, this animal being the one they have a particular antipathy to. The modern Jerusalem has fallen successively into the hands of the Persians, the Saracens, the Christian powers engaged in the crusades, and the Turks, who still keep possession of it. Who was the famous Jewish historian ? Josephus. Who was Pliny the elder ? A famous naturalist, killed in an eruption of Mount Vesuvius : he was the friend of the emperor Titus. When were the greatest cruelties inflicted upon the Christians ? In the reigns of Domitian and Dioclesian. Who was Agricola ? The Roman governor of South Britain, in the time of Domitian ; he built a line of forts between the rivers Forth and Clyde, to defend the Britons from the inroads of the Scots, whom he defeated on the Grampian Mountains. Who was Tacitus ? A Roman historian, one of the greatest orators and statesmen of his time. Who was the first Christian emperor ? Constantine the Great ; fifteen emperors, all professing Christianity, succeeded him. What city was anciently called Byzantium ? Constantinople ; the emperor Constantine the Great removed the seat of his government thither, that he might be nearer the Persians, whose power then began to be formidable to the Romans. What nations enslaved the Romans, after the time of the emperor Constantine ? The Goths and Vandals. Were the morals of the Romans better under the imperial, or republican form of government ? Under the latter. When was the imperial power in the most flourishing state ? In the reign of Trajan. Who was Justinian ? A Roman emperor, famed for collecting the Roman laws into one body, called the Code, to which he gave his own name. Who was Belisarius ? A Roman general, who lived in the reign of Justinian, emperor of the east, A. D. 561 ; after performing the greatest services for his country, he was unjustly deprived



of all his dignities, and is said to have had his eyes put out. What occasioned the overthrow of the Roman power? Its fall was owing to the luxury and corruption of the people, when the empire became too extensive. Who first laid the Roman power prostrate? Alaric, king of the Goths, 410 years after Christ. What prince was called the scourge of God, the destroyer of nations? Attila, king of the Huns, because he ravaged and destroyed the Roman empire. Name the chief Italian curiosities, natural and artificial. The amphitheatres, one at Rome, the other at Verona; the triumphal arches of Vespasian, Severus, and Constantine the Great; the pillars of Trajan and Antoninus; the roads made by the consuls Appius, Flaminius, and Æmilius; the Pantheon, anciently a temple, dedicated to the heathen gods; the catacombs; mounts Etna and Vesuvius; the ruins of the city of Herculaneum, almost destroyed in Nero's time by an earthquake, and totally covered by the lava, in the reign of Titus, and the city of Pompeii destroyed at the same time. Why are the fine arts neglected in Italy, which was famous for encouraging them? Because the modern Italians are sunk in ecclesiastical slavery, and weakened by luxury and sensual pleasures.

Name the most distinguished literary characters in the reign of Tiberius. Valerius Maximus, the compiler of memorable stories and events; Velleius Paterculus, the writer of the Grecian and Roman history, from the defeat of Persius, king of Macedon, by the Romans, to the sixth year of Tiberius. What learned men flourished under the reign of Caligula? Few: Caligula declared open war upon the Muses, banished the works of Virgil and Livy from the public libraries, and would scarcely allow Homer better treatment; Seneca, and in short, all men of eminent virtue and learning, were his aversion; Apion, the grammarian, however, lived in his reign; and Philo Judæus, a Jewish writer upon moral philosophy. What great men flourished in the reign of Nero? Seneca; Lucan, the poet; Persius, the satirist; Epictetus, the moralist; and Petronius Arbiter, a Roman writer, whose opinions were openly Epicurean.

Name some authors in the reign of Domitian. Martial, the writer of epigrams; Juvenal, the satirist; Josephus, the Jewish historian and antiquarian; and Quintilian, the celebrated instructor of youth. Name some in the reign of Trajan. Plutarch, the biographer; Pliny the Younger, who was raised to the dignity of consul; Suetonius, who wrote the lives of the twelve Cæsars; and Tacitus, the historian. Name some great



men in the reign of Adrian. Ptolemy, the geographer and astronomer; Arrian, the historian; Aulus Gellius, the learned author of *Attic Nights*. Name some learned men in the reign of Antoninus Pius. Galen, the physician; Justin, the historian; Ælian, the natural philosopher; and Diogenes of Laertes, the Epicurean philosopher and biographer. Who flourished in the reign of Marcus Aurelius? Justin Martyr, the Christian apologist, and Polycarp, bishop of Smyrna; they both suffered martyrdom: Hermogenes, the rhetorician, and Lucian, the celebrated Greek critic and satirist, flourished. Who flourished under the emperor Severus? Clemens Alexandrinus, and Tertullian, celebrated fathers of the primitive Christian church, the latter also an elegant Latin writer; and Minutius Felix, the Roman orator and writer in defence of Christianity. Name some writer in the reign of Heliogabalus. Origen of Alexandria, one of the fathers of the church, who defended the Christian religion against the attacks of Celsus, the Epicurean philosopher. Name some in the reign of the emperor Alexander. Dion Cassius, the historian of the Roman History, written in Greek. Who flourished in the reign of the emperor Decius? Plotinus, the celebrated Platonic philosopher, born in Egypt, but a resident in Rome; and Cyprian, the ornament of the African church. Name some famous characters in the reign of Quintillus. Longinus, the celebrated critic and counsellor of the unhappy Zenobia, queen of Palmyra; he was beheaded by order of the emperor Aurelian, A. D. 275; and Porphyry, the Jewish philosophical writer. Porphyry was originally a Christian convert, but afterwards an apostate: from this period (the latter end of the third century) few writers of note appeared in the Roman empire, excepting the Christian fathers; the continual irruptions of the northern nations introduced new languages, new customs; these turbulent times were little calculated for the cultivation of literary talents, and after the Goths and Vandals had overrun the empire, a night of mental darkness followed, from the tenth to the middle of the fifteenth century.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS,  
 CHRONOLOGICALLY ARRANGED,  
 FROM THE INVASION OF CÆSAR,  
 TO THE PRESENT TIME.

In statesmen thou,  
 And patriots fertile.

THOMSON.

NAME the six grand epochs in the history of England. The introduction of Christianity—the Norman conquest—the signing Magna Charta, (which laid the foundation of English liberty,)—the reformation—the restoration—and the revolution. To this enumeration may be added the enactment of the Reform Bill in 1832, by which the elective franchise was extended, many old boroughs disfranchised, and populous places admitted to a share in the representation. When was Christianity introduced into England? Sixty-three years after the death of Christ? What was the Reformation? A change from the Catholic to the Protestant opinions, first set on foot in Germany, by Luther, but had been previously begun in England by Wickliffe, and completed by Henry VIII., who assumed the title of Head of the Church. When was the reformation begun in Scotland and Ireland? In Ireland, in the reign of Henry VIII.; in Scotland, in that of Mary, queen of Scots, by John Knox, the reformer. What gave rise to the reformation in this and foreign countries? The general sale of indulgences, or pardons for sins, and the abandoned lives of the clergy. What was the Restoration? Restoring the kingly power, in the person of Charles II., after the death of Oliver Cromwell. What was the Revolution? A change in the constitution, which took place on the accession of William III. What two great advantages did England gain by the revolution? The present constitution was firmly established, and the famous bill of rights passed. What is meant by the constitution of England? Its laws and government. What was the Bill of Rights? A bill passed in the reign of William III., to confirm and secure the liberties of the people.

Name the English lines of kings. Saxon, Danish, Norman,

Plantagenet, Tudor, Stuart, Orange or Nassau, and that of Hanover or Brunswick. How many princes were there of each line? Seventeen Saxons, three Danes, four Normans, fourteen Plantagenets, five Tudors, six Stuarts, one Orange or Nassau, and six of the line of Brunswick. What is the ancient name for England? Albion or Britannia. For France? Gallia or Gaul. For Scotland? Caledonia. For Ireland? Hibernia. For Wales? Cambria. For Holland? Batavia or Belgium. For Spain? Iberia. For Portugal? Lusitania. For Sweden and Denmark? Scandinavia. For Poland? Lithuania. For Switzerland? Helvetia. By whom were the Britons first conquered? By the Romans: Julius Cæsar first attempted this conquest, and the succeeding emperors finally achieved it. Who were the Druids? Priests of Britain, whose principal residence was in the Isle of Anglesea, where they performed their idolatrous worship, and were held in great veneration by the people. How were the Druids clothed when they sacrificed? In long white garments; they wore on their heads the tiara or sacred crown, their temples were encircled with a wreath of oak leaves, they waved in their hands a magic wand, and also placed upon their heads a serpent's egg, as an ensign of their order. What plant did the Druids hold in high estimation, and what traces have we of their places of worship? They revered the mistletoe, and their altars or temples called Cromlechs may still be seen, as well as the rude chairs of the arch-druid, the sacred circle, and the sacrificing stones, on which it is probable human victims were immolated. What became of the Druids? Numbers of them were put to death by the emperor Nero's command, when Britain became a Roman province. How were public events transmitted to posterity, when the Britons were ignorant of printing and writing? By their bards or poets, who were the only depositaries of the national events. What Roman emperor projected an invasion of Britain, gathered only shells upon the coast, and then returned to Rome in triumph? Caligula. What British generals distinguished themselves before the Saxon heptarchy was formed? Cassibellaunus, Vortigern, Caractacus, and prince Arthur, renowned in story. What was the exclamation of Caractacus, when led in triumph through Rome? "How is it possible that a people possessed of such magnificence at home, should envy me an humble cottage in Britain?" What queen poisoned herself, to avoid the insults of the Roman conqueror? Boadicea, queen of the Iceni, in Britain. What two Saxon generals assisted in subduing England? Hengist and Horsa; they were

brothers: under their domination the ancient Britons were compelled to retire within Cambria, or escape to Armorica, (Bretagne,) in France. How was the Saxon Heptarchy constituted? By the union and mutual agreement of seven Saxon princes, to divide England into seven different parts, and each take a share. Who was the first Christian king in Britain? Ethelbert, fifth king of Kent. Who raised the first sole monarchy upon the ruins of the Saxon heptarchy? Egbert, king of Wessex, about 800 years after the death of Christ. When did the clergy first collect tithes in England? In the reign of Ethelwolf, successor to Egbert. What Saxon monarch erected a number of monasteries? Ethelbald. What gave rise to monastic institutions in Christendom? The persecutions which attended the first ages of the gospel obliged some Christians to retire into deserts and unfrequented places; their example gave so much reputation and weight to retirement, that the practice was continued when the reason ceased to exist. Name the best Saxon king. Alfred the Great. What were the remarkable events of this reign? He awoke anew the courage of his countrymen—attacked and expelled the Danes—defeated them at sea, and maintained himself in possession of his kingdom; he encouraged learning and learned men, founded the University of Oxford, and divided England into shires or counties: this prince first established a national militia, and put the English navy upon a respectable footing: houses were built of brick in this reign.

What was Peter's Pence? An annual tribute of a penny, (some say of a shilling,) paid by every family in Britain to the popes, on St. Peter's day, from the eighth century down to the reign of Henry VIII.; it was at first granted for the purpose of repairing and preserving the tombs of St. Peter and St. Paul, in the city of Rome; and in the thirteenth century it exceeded the revenue of the kings of England. When was this tribute abolished? At the reformation, in the reign of Henry VIII. What was meant by excommunication? A decree of the popes, by which they deprived the nation or person excommunicated of all religious rites, and solemnly gave them up to the devil's power. What English princes have the popes excommunicated? John, Henry VIII., and Elizabeth. What is meant by laying a kingdom under an interdict? By this the pope deprived the nation of all exterior rites of religion, except baptism and the communion to the dying; the people were forbidden the use of all meats, pleasures, and entertainments. What was the trial by Ordeal? This superstitious custom was anciently very



prevalent in Britain: there were three kinds of Ordeal; that by fire, that by cold water, and that by hot water. Describe them. In that by fire, the accused were to walk blindfolded and barefooted over nine red-hot ploughshares, placed at unequal distances; in that by cold water, the person accused was bound hands and feet, thrown into a pond or river, and was then to clear himself by escaping drowning; in that by hot water, the hands and feet were plunged into scalding water: these ridiculous customs were totally laid aside in the reign of Henry III. Who founded the University of Cambridge? Edward the Elder. When did the famous Guy, Earl of Warwick, live? In the reign of Athelstan: his strength is said to have been matchless. He stood forth in single combat with Colbrand, the grand champion of the Danes, in a contest which was to determine the fate of the kingdom, at Memhill, near the walls of Winchester, when king Athelstan was besieged: many memorials are shown in Warwick castle and elsewhere of this remarkable person, but his history is so disfigured by fable, that it is almost rejected from our national records. What Saxon king was stabbed by an assassin? Edmund, by Leolf the robber. Which of the English princes was stabbed by order of his mother-in-law, at Corfe Castle? Edward, called the Martyr: Elfrida, who commanded the execution of this treacherous deed, was equally beautiful and wicked. When was the general massacre of the Danes? In the reign of Ethelred II. Which of the Saxon monarchs, after Alfred, was the most valiant? Edmund Ironside: on the death of Ethelred he took the field against Canute, the Danish king, and sustained a defeat at Assingham, in Essex, in consequence of the defection of Edric, Duke of Mercia. A compromise was then effected, which gave the midland and northern counties to Canute, while Edmund was to hold the southern. At the instigation of the traitor Edric he was shortly after murdered, by two of his servants, at Oxford, whereby the Danish prince became master of the entire kingdom. Which of the kings, by a memorable speech, reproved the flattery of his courtiers; and what was the substance of it? Canute the Great, first of the Danish line: he ordered his chair to be placed upon the sea-shore, when the tide was coming in, and commanded the sea to retire; he feigned to sit some time, expecting its submission, till the waves began to surround him, and then, turning to his courtiers, he exclaimed, "The titles of lord and master only belong to him whom earth and seas are ready to obey." When was paper first made? In the reign of Harold, successor to Canute.

What is remarkable of Hardicanute? He was a weak and degenerate prince; in him ended the Danish line; and he died by excess of drinking. What laws did Edward the Confessor collect? Those of the Danes, Saxons, and Mercians, which he abridged and amended; and till the twentieth year of the reign of William the Conqueror, they were considered as the common law of England.

Name the principal events in the time of William the Conqueror. The battle of Hastings, fought between William and Harold, when the latter was killed; Doomsday Book compiled; the Curfew Bell established; sheriffs appointed; the New Forest in Hampshire enlarged, to effect which thirty-six parish churches were destroyed; the feudal law introduced; the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of Canterbury over the see of York confirmed at a national synod; Norman French introduced in all pleadings in the supreme courts, a custom continued until the reign of Edward III.; and the foundation of the Tower of London laid by the king, who granted to the city of London their first charter. What was Doomsday Book? An account of the value of every man's estate, the number of cattle and servants upon it: the Down survey in Ireland is analogous in its uses to this ancient record. What was the Curfew Bell? A bell ordered to be rung every night at eight o'clock, when the English were to put out their fire and candle; they were obliged also, in this reign, to give up their arms. What was meant by the Feudal Law? Estates held by this law were occupied by men who were obliged to assist the master of the estate, engage in his quarrels, and do to him other actual services; these men paid no rent: in process of time this law was so much abused, that when a gentleman sold his estate, the farmer who lived upon it, his children, and stock of cattle, were sold also. When was the custom of beheading introduced? By William the Conqueror. Musical notes were also invented in this reign, by a Frenchman. The English were in general at this time illiterate, rude, and barbarous; but in this century began what is commonly termed the age of chivalry in Europe, when anarchy and barbarism were abolished, and civilization and politeness of manners first introduced. When was Westminster Hall built? In the reign of William Rufus; this king was noted for his oppressions and his irreligion. When were the first crusades, or holy wars? In the reign of William Rufus; they were undertaken by the Christian nations of the West, to rescue Jerusalem and the tomb of our Saviour from the hands of the Saracens and Turks, who were infidels; they

were carried on from the end of the eleventh to the end of the thirteenth century. Who was the famous Saladin, or Salaheddin? A sultan of Egypt and Syria, successor of king Noureddin, born at Tecnib, in 1137. He besieged and took Jerusalem, made Guy de Lusignan prisoner, and slew Chatillon with his own hand on the plains of Tiberias; this famous victory, and his subsequent reduction of Jerusalem, were the immediate occasions of the first crusade: Saladin was magnificent in his public undertakings, frugal in his private expenses; he was a fanatic in religion, but faithful to his promises: his hatred of the Christian name arose from the atrocious massacre of Mohammedan pilgrims by the French Lord Du Challon, which Saladin had pledged himself to revenge. At this period was founded the military order of Mamelukes, so called from the Arabic word *memelik*, a slave: at first 12,000 slaves were embodied in a corps, chiefly Turks from Chapchak, who gradually acquired power and influence until the year 1254, when they placed Ibegh, one of their number, on the throne of Egypt: their dominion was terminated by Selim I., in 1517. The whole race was exterminated in one hour, by Mehemet Ali, Pacha of Egypt, in 1835.

Who made the first king's speech upon record? Henry I.; he was surnamed Beau Clerc, on account of his great learning. What was meant by Knights Templars? This was a military order of knighthood, instituted in the time of Henry I., to defend the temple and holy sepulchre at Jerusalem; also Christian strangers from the assaults of infidels. Which of the English kings was Earl of Blois? Stephen, grandson to William the Conqueror, by his daughter Adela; his father Stephen, Earl of Blois, fell in the crusades against the Saracens: Stephen usurped the English throne. Which of them was Earl of Anjou? Henry II., the first of the Plantagenets: the loadstone's attractive power, glass windows, and surnames, were first known in his reign.

Who was prime minister to Henry II.? Thomas à Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury: Becket being murdered by king Henry's instigation, the king consented to perform penance at his tomb, to humor the superstition of the people, who believed him to be a saint, as he had been canonized by the church of Rome: the famous Earl of Pembroke lived in this reign. What king was crowned twice, and taken prisoner in Germany on his return from the Holy Land? Richard I., surnamed Cœur de Lion on account of his valor: Richard first assumed the motto of "God and my right," and affixed it to his arms: a total



eclipse of the sun happened in this reign, when the stars were visible at ten in the morning: wheat was sold at £6 per quarter: two suns appeared, which were only to be distinguished by the aid of instruments: sheriffs or bailiffs were appointed: and companies or societies first established in this reign. When did Robin Hood and Little John live? In the time of Richard I.; Robin Hood was said to be the Earl of Huntingdon, and outlawed for some misdemeanors committed at court, upon which he and his attendant, Little John, concealed themselves in Sherwood Forest, in Nottinghamshire, and lived by plunder. What action of Richard I. does history record most in favor of his noble way of thinking? The pardon of his brother John, after repeated treasons: he then said, "I forgive you, and wish I could as easily forget your injuries, as you will my pardon." Which of the English kings was called Sans Terre, or Lackland? John: he put out the eyes of his nephew, Arthur, duke of Bretagne, who was the nearest in succession to the throne, and afterwards threw him down a precipice: astronomy, chemistry, and distillery, were first common in Europe in this reign. Who signed Magna Charta? John: before he was prevailed upon to sign this he surrendered his crown to the pope, consenting to hold it afterwards tributary to Rome, on condition that the pope should accommodate a quarrel between John and Philip II., king of France. What was Magna Charta? A bill, or act of parliament, granting the barons and citizens greater privileges than they had ever enjoyed before: by this act, which was passed A. D. 1215, the obligation of the feudal law was abolished, and English freedom restored. Who afterwards revoked Magna Charta? John's son, Henry III.; but the people at length obliged him to confirm it in every point. When was the Court of Common Pleas first instituted, and when were aldermen appointed? In the reign of Henry III.: the first regular parliaments were called by Henry; this is one of the longest reigns recorded, extending to fifty-six years, and only exceeded by that of George III., which lasted fifty-nine years.

When was marriage first solemnized in churches? In the reign of Henry III.: magnifying glasses and magic lanterns were also invented by Roger Bacon, the monk. What other improvements were introduced in the reign of Henry III.? Cider, linen, and tapestry were first made in England, and the seaman's compass said to be invented by the French; but there are such various opinions concerning the inventor, and the time of this discovery being made, that nothing conclusive can be

said upon it. When was the Inquisition established? In the time of Henry III. What was the Inquisition? A cruel court, composed of monks and friars, appointed to take cognizance of every thing supposed to be heretical, or contrary to the established religion, and to pronounce its dreadful sentence against the future honor and lives of individuals without appeal; its plan was conceived by Pope Innocent III., and its courts were established in Italy, France, and Spain. In the year 1481, the Dominican monastery at Seville was insufficient to contain the numerous prisoners, and the king removed the court to the spacious castle of Triana. At the first *Auto da fe*, (act of faith,) seven apostate Christians were burnt by order of the Inquisition, and a number of penitents obtained by torture. Spanish writers relate that at one period, to avoid torture 17,000 persons surrendered themselves to the Inquisition, of which number 2,000 were condemned to the flames, and a greater number effected their escape to neighboring countries. This infamous tribunal continued to be a powerful obstacle to the progress of the human intellect, until the moment when it was abolished by Napoleon, 4th Dec., 1808. The total number of victims to the cruelty of the Inquisition, from the year 1481 to 1808, amounted to 341,021; of these, some were burnt, others strangled, the rest imprisoned for life. What best promotes a liberal way of thinking? A thorough knowledge of ourselves, and a candid allowance for the faults of others.

What were the discoveries and improvements in the reign of Edward I.? Geography and the use of the globes were introduced; tallow candles and coals were first common; windmills invented; and it is remarkable that wine was sold only as a cordial, in apothecaries' shops. What accident did Edward I. meet with, while in the Holy Land? He was wounded there by a poisoned arrow; but his faithful queen, Eleanor, is said to have sucked the poison from the wound, and restored him to health: at the death of this queen, many years after, Edward erected stone crosses at every place where her corpse rested on its way to interment; the remains of some of these are still visible—that at Waltham Cross, in Hertford, is the most beautiful as well as most perfect: this prince was surnamed Longshanks, on account of the great length of his legs. What king is said to have inhumanly ordered a general massacre of the Welsh bards? Edward I.: after the conquest of Wales, and the death of Llewellyn, its last prince of Welsh extraction; he and David, his brother, were cruelly beheaded, and their bodies treated with the greatest indignity. Who was William Wal-

lace? A famous Scottish hero, who, in the time of Edward I., bravely endeavored to defend the liberties of his country against the English. What became of him? He was defeated at the battle of Falkirk, in 1298, and shortly after being taken prisoner, through the treachery of Sir John Monteith, was conveyed to London, and there suffered the death of a traitor, 27th August, 1305. Who first bestowed the title of Prince of Wales upon his eldest son? Edward I., to reconcile the Welsh to their subjection. When was the battle of Bannockburn fought with the Scots? In the reign of Edward II.: the English lost it. Name the chief favorites of Edward II. Gaveston and the two De Spencers. When was the order of Knights Templars abolished? In the time of Edward II. Why? Because many of the knights were charged with high crimes and misdemeanors; fifty-nine of them residing in France, with their grand-master, were arrested and burnt alive. Who was king of Scotland in this reign? Robert Bruce, celebrated for his valor and fortitude. What remarkable events afflicted England at this time? A dreadful famine, which continued three years, and the most severe earthquake ever known in Britain. What death did Edward II. suffer? He was dethroned, and afterwards cruelly murdered in Berkeley Castle, Gloucestershire. X

Name the most remarkable events in the reign of Edward III: The battles of Cressy and Poitiers, (the former gained by the Black Prince alone, at the age of sixteen,) the siege of Calais, the institution of the Order of the Garter, and the battle of Neville's Cross, in which David Bruce, king of Scotland, was taken prisoner by Philippa, Edward's queen: the invention of gunpowder, by Swartz, a monk of Cologne, A. D. 1330: the art of weaving cloth brought into England from Flanders, and copper money first used in Scotland and Ireland, and painting in oil invented by John Van Eyck. What riband do the Knights of the Garter wear? A blue riband: it is esteemed the most honorable order of any the English have. Name the great men in the reign of Edward III. The Black Prince, John, Duke of Lancaster, the Earl of Salisbury, and the Duke of York. What was the character and fate of the Black Prince? He was valiant, prudent, and accomplished; he died in the prime of life, of a consumption, regretted by all. It has been remarked, that John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, though so nearly allied to royalty, never ascended the throne, being the son of Edward III., the father of Henry IV., and the uncle of Richard II.; so, also, Edward, Duke of Kent, son of George III., father of Queen Victoria, and brother of George and Wil-



liam IV., never ascended the throne. Upon what grounds did Edward III. assert his claims to the French monarchy? In right of his mother, Isabella, who was sister to the late king of France. What law destroyed this claim? The Salic Law. What gave rise to the Salic Law in France? The Salii: the original inhabitants had a law which excluded females from the inheritance of any landed possession; the Franks or French adopted this rule, and applied it to the succession of the throne, excluding women from sovereign power. Name some discoveries and improvements made in the time of Edward III. Gold was first coined, cannon used, turnpikes and clocks introduced, and the woollen manufacture first established, Windsor Castle built, Trinity Sunday first observed, the first speaker of the House of Commons chosen, and the title of esquire given to people of fortune. What king caused his uncle, the Duke of Gloucester, to be privately smothered at Calais? Richard II.; to rid himself of a monitor whom he feared. By whom was the Poll Tax first levied? By Richard II. What was it? A tax of one shilling, ordered to be paid by every person above fifteen; it occasioned an insurrection of the people, because the rich paid no more than the poor. Who headed this insurrection? Wat Tyler and Jack Straw, two of the common people; it was with some difficulty quelled. What two great noblemen did Richard II. banish? The Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk; but Hereford returned with an army before the expiration of his banishment, and deprived Richard of his crown and life. Where did Richard end his days? In Pontefract Castle, where he was starved, or, as some say, assassinated. What were the improvements in this reign? The manufactory of woollen broadcloth was carried to great perfection, side-saddles and spectacles first became common in England, and cards were invented in France. For whom were cards invented? For Charles VI., king of France, called the Well-beloved; he was insane the greatest part of his reign; and during his intervals of reason, cards were produced as an amusement.

When was the office of Champion of England first instituted? In the reign of Richard II. What has the Champion to do? On the king's coronation day, he rides up to Westminster Hall on a white horse, proclaiming the sovereign by his usual titles; he then throws down a gauntlet, (or iron glove,) challenging any one to take it up and fight him, who does not believe the monarch then present to be lawful heir to the crown. This office is hereditary in the Dymock family. Who was the first king of the house of Lancaster? Henry IV., surnamed of Bo-

lingbroke; he was the eldest son of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, and born in 1367. When was the battle of Otterbourne? In the reign of Henry IV.: Owen Glandwr and Harry Hotspur flourished at this period; the former was a valiant Welshman—the latter, son to the earl of Northumberland; from his ardent valor he derived his name. What distinguished characters lived in this reign? Chaucer and Gower, both English poets; and William of Wykeham, bishop of Winchester. Who was Wickliffe? A reformer, patronized by John of Gaunt; he has the merit of being the first to protest openly against the errors of the Roman church, and was famed for his learning and piety. What order of knighthood did Henry IV. institute? That of the Bath in 1399: the knights wear a red riband. It was revived in 1815, in George III.'s reign, by the Prince Regent. The other British orders are,—of the Garter, Grand Cross, of the Thistle, of St. Patrick: the decorations of knighthood are a collar and riband. Who gained the battles of Harfleur and Agincourt? Henry V., surnamed of Monmouth: they were fought against the French; Henry was afterwards, by the treaty of Troyes, declared heir to the French monarchy, and regent of France and Normandy. When were the followers of Wickliffe first severely persecuted? In the reign of Henry V.; Lord Cobham was one of the first martyrs to this cause: he excited the resentment of the clergy by transcribing and distributing the works of Wickliffe amongst the people in St. Giles's fields; and they in consequence circulated a report, which they caused to be made known to the king, that Lord Cobham, at the head of 20,000 Lollards, was marching to destroy him, upon which a bill of attainder was passed against him. What death did he suffer? He was roasted before a slow fire, A. D. 1417, because he refused to subscribe to the Roman Catholic opinions. What happened to Henry V. when Prince of Wales? Sir William Gascoigne sent him to prison, for contempt of his authority. Relate the story. One of his dissolute companions being brought before this magistrate for some offence, Henry, who was present, was so provoked at the issue of the trial, that he struck the judge in open court. Sir William, fully sensible of the reverence due to his authority, committed the prince to prison. When the king heard it, he exclaimed, "Happy is the king, who has a subject endowed with courage to execute the laws upon such an offender; still more happy in having a son willing to submit to such chastisement."

Name the three principal events in the reign of Henry VI.

The civil wars, the siege of Orleans, and the loss of France. Why were these civil wars engaged in? Because the houses of York and Lancaster contended for the throne; their divisions were occasioned by the claim which Richard, Duke of York, laid to the throne, in the reign of Henry VI. of Lancaster. What are civil wars? They are wars between those people who live under the same government, and are more to be held in detestation than any other; since they can be of no advantage to the nation, but, on the contrary, cause endless divisions, and totally put a stop to trade. Who was it obliged the English to raise the siege of Orleans? A young Frenchwoman, named Joan of Arc, but called from that event the Maid of Orleans, who headed her countrymen against the generals of Henry VI., and gained great advantages over them. Charles VII., of France, ennobled the Maid of Orleans, her father, three brothers, and all their descendants, even by the female line—and her statue in bronze adorns one of the squares of the city she rescued from the enemy. What French countries did England formerly possess? Bretagne, Maine, Anjou, Touraine, Normandy, Gascony, and Guienne. When was the battle of Wakefield fought? In Henry VI.'s reign, between the Yorkists and Lancastrians: in this engagement Richard, Duke of York, and his son were slain. What other celebrated battles were fought in this reign? Those of Towton and Tewkesbury; after the latter, Edward, son of Henry VI., was murdered in cold blood by Richard, Duke of Gloucester. Who was Henry VI.'s wife? Margaret of Anjou, a woman of keen penetration, undaunted spirit, and exquisite beauty; she fought twelve pitched battles in her husband's cause, but ambition, not affection, guided her actions; and wanting principle, she may engage our pity, but has no title to our esteem and reverence. What were the discoveries and improvements in this reign? The Azores and Cape Verd Islands were discovered: the Vatican library founded in Rome: caps and jewels were first worn, and pumps invented. In Henry's time the first national debt was incurred. What is the national debt? Money borrowed, from year to year, by government, of the nation, for which they pay legal interest to the lenders. Name the first king of the house of York. Edward IV.: in the reign of this prince printing was introduced, and polite literature encouraged among the English: Angola was settled by the Portuguese, violins were invented, and the first idea of electricity given. How did Edward IV. recompense the services of his brother, the Duke of Clarence? He caused Clarence, upon some slight accusation, to be drowned in a butt



of Malmsey wine. What king married Lady Elizabeth Grey? Edward IV. Name the most famous warrior at this period. The Earl of Warwick, commonly called the king-maker, because he deposed and reinstated Henry VI. and Edward IV. Name some other distinguished English generals. The Earls of Talbot and Salisbury; the Dukes of York, Bedford, and Mortimer. What king was smothered in the Tower by his uncle's order? Edward V. Who was his uncle? Richard III., Duke of Gloucester, last of the line of Plantagenet, who succeeded him upon the throne. What were the improvements in this reign? Post-horses and stages were established. The Earl of Rivers and Lord Hastings were beheaded in this reign. What were Richard III.'s best public actions? The strictness with which he enforced the laws, and the establishment of the hardware manufacture, by the prohibition against the importation of such as were not made in England. When was the Herald's Office instituted? In the reign of Richard III.: this king was killed at the battle of Bosworth field, in defence of his crown, when engaged against Henry, Earl of Richmond, afterwards Henry VII.: Richard was the first king who established English consuls abroad: Horace Walpole (in a work called "Historic Doubts") has endeavored with much ingenuity to rescue the memory of Richard III. from the ignominy uniformly attached to it, and from the imputation of having caused the death of Edward V. and his brother; how successfully, must be left to the judgment of his readers. When was America discovered? In Henry VII.'s reign, by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa; Sebastian Cabot, another famous navigator, lived at this period; he was born at Bristol about the year 1477, entered the service of Spain, and discovered or revisited Newfoundland, as well as the most important places in South America; he returned to England, obtained a pension from the crown, and died, leaving a high character as a skilful navigator and man of shining abilities: he was author of a large map of the world, and was the first who noticed the variations of the compass. When was the rebellion headed by Perkin? In the reign of Henry VII. Who was Perkin? An impostor, who pretended to be the son of Edward IV.; the prudence and sagacity of Henry defeated this, and many other plots against his government. What were the discoveries and improvements in this reign? Shillings were first coined in England; Greek generally taught in schools; passage to the East Indies discovered by the Portuguese; trade and commerce were greatly encouraged with foreign nations; and maps and sea charts now began to be

commonly used in England. What king first assumed the title of Majesty? Henry VIII.: till his reign the English kings were styled Your Grace, or Your Highness: Henry also received the title of Defender of the Faith, from the pope. Why? On account of a book which he published against the opinions of Luther; this title the kings of England still retain. In whose person were the houses of York and Lancaster united? In that of Henry VIII.; his claims on both sides were equal, as his mother was of the house of York, his father of the line of Lancaster.

Name the most remarkable events in the reign of Henry VIII. The reformation was begun; the battle of the spurs fought between the English and the French: and the battle of Flodden Field, in which James IV. king of Scotland, with the flower of his nobility, fell. When did Luther and Calvin live? In the reign of Henry VIII.; they were two celebrated reformers; Luther was a German, and Calvin a native of Picardy. What was meant by a reformer? One who protested against the errors of the Roman church. In what great points do Catholics and Protestants differ? The Catholics worship images, the saints, and the Virgin Mary; they believe in seven sacraments, and when they commemorate our Lord's supper, they think they eat the real body and drink the actual blood of Christ; they also acknowledge the pope as supreme head of the church. Who was the first pope that decreed the infallibility of the popes in general? Gregory VII., contemporary with William the Conqueror; he said, in council, that the church of Rome neither ever had erred, nor ever could err: and this doctrine of infallibility was established by Leo X. as a defence against the opinions of Luther. Who was prime minister to Henry VIII.? Cardinal Wolsey. Who were his two great contemporaries? Francis I., king of France; and Charles V., emperor of Germany. Name the discoveries and improvements at this period. The Bermuda, Japan, Ladrone, and Philippine Isles were discovered: soap, hats, and needles were first made in England: Peru was discovered and settled: the articles of religion and the Bible first printed in an English edition. What great men suffered death in this reign? Sir Thomas More, the lord chancellor; Fisher, bishop of Rochester, (tutor to Henry;) Lord Surrey, famed for his love of literature; and Edward Bohun, Duke of Buckingham; Wolsey, too, was impeached, but died of a broken heart before his trial; this prelate is said to have intrigued for the papal chair.

When were the knights of Rhodes first called by the title of

Knights of Malta? In the reign of Henry VIII. Why? Because the emperor Charles V. gave the island of Malta to the knights of St. John of Jerusalem, when they were expelled the isle of Rhodes by the Turks, under Soliman II. Upon what conditions were these knights admitted? They were to be of noble blood, to be unmarried, 500 to reside upon the island, and the rest to appear when called upon: they took a vow to defend Malta from the invasions of the Turks; and were governed by thirty superior knights and a grand-master, chosen from their body: in 1798 Bonaparte made himself master of this island, on his expedition to Egypt, through the treachery of one of the order, which he totally abolished, but the French garrison at Valetta were compelled, by famine, to capitulate to the English, who were confirmed in the possession by the treaty of Paris in 1814. What act passed in Henry VIII.'s reign showed the servile adulation of his people, and his own contempt of justice? It was enacted, that the same obedience should be paid to the king's proclamation as to an act of parliament; that the king should not pay his debts, and that those who had already been paid by him should refund the money. What order of knighthood was instituted in the time of Henry VIII.? That of the Thistle, by James V. king of Scotland; the knights wear a green riband. Who were the Jesuits? A religious order, founded by Ignatius Loyola, a Spaniard, in the reign of Henry VIII. They rose to power and influence above all other religious orders, though their rules strictly prohibit its members to accept any office in the church. On account of their busy, intriguing spirit, their admission into France was long resisted by its monarchs; Peter the Great of Russia expelled them from his empire in 1719. The order had acquired the inveterate hatred of the French people, from the day on which Henri Quatre was assassinated by the Jesuit, Ravallac, and in 1773 the order was finally dissolved at Rome, but their influence was such, that individually they continued rich and independent. In 1780 there were 9,000 Jesuits out of Italy, supposed to be secretly under the guidance of a superior. The order was silently restored in Sicily in 1804, a novitiate solemnly opened at Rome, in 1814, a college granted them at Modena, in 1815, and they took possession of the Collegium Romanum in that city in 1824. They have always maintained the reputation of learning, and seminaries for the education of youth are conducted by members of the order in England and Ireland, but the order has outlived its political power.



# CONTINUATION OF THE QUESTIONS IN ENGLISH HISTORY,

FROM THE REFORMATION TO THE PRESENT TIME

Fair thy renown,  
In awful sages, and in noble bards.

THOMSON.

WHEN was the battle of Pinkey, or Musselburgh, fought with the Scots? In the reign of Edward VI. Who was protector during the minority of Edward? Seymour, Duke of Somerset. Name Edward VI.'s best public action. Promoting and establishing the reformation, by act of parliament. He ordered that a Bible should be kept in every church; that evening prayers should be read in English in the king's chapel, and that popish images should be burnt. What insurrection was there during this reign? One headed by Ket, a tanner, a discontented, seditious fellow; he raised an army in Norfolk, but was defeated by Dudley, Earl of Warwick, who slew 2,000 of his followers, and afterwards hanged Ket, in chains, on the top of Norwich Castle. To whom did Edward VI. leave the crown? To Lady Jane Grey, his cousin: the council proclaimed her queen, but she reigned only ten days, and was then deposed by Mary, Edward's sister, and only daughter of Henry VIII. and Catharine of Arragon. Name the discoveries and improvements in this reign. Engraving, and knitting stockings, were invented; the Common Prayer Book was compiled, and published in English; the Psalms of David were translated into verse; half-crowns were first coined in England; and the study of anatomy was revived. When were Lord Guilford Dudley and Lady Jane Grey beheaded? In the reign of Mary. Why? Because Jane, the wife of Dudley, stood in Mary's way to the throne. To whom was Mary married? To Philip II., king of Spain: Mary was a zealous advocate for the Catholic faith, and repealed all the acts of her brother Edward, passed in favor of the reformation; she caused the Protestants to be burnt in Smithfield, as heretics; the Bishops Gardiner and Bonner assisted

her in the execution of these barbarities: Cranmer, Ridley, Latimer, Hooper, and Farrar, with near 300 others, perished at the stake in this reign. When did the English lose Calais? In the reign of Mary: the celebrated Duke of Guise reconquered it. What improvements were made in the arts in Mary's time? Hemp and flax were first planted in England; and the Horse Guards instituted; coaches first used; starch was also invented.

Name the principal events in the reign of Elizabeth. Sir Francis Drake's voyage round the world; the Spanish Armada defeated; the Irish rebellion suppressed; and the execution of Mary, queen of Scots. What was the Spanish Armada? A fleet of ships, sent out by Philip II., of Spain, to invade England. How did Elizabeth evince her modesty, and trust in God, after the defeat of the Spanish Armada? By ascribing the victory less to English bravery alone, than to the merciful interposition of Providence; and she ordered a medal to be struck, which represented a fleet beaten by a tempest, and falling foul of each other, with this inscription, "He blew with his wind, and they were scattered." Many of the Spanish men-of-war, and of which no mention is made in history, were lost on the western coast of Ireland. Who was Mary, queen of Scots? Daughter to James V., king of Scotland, and cousin to Elizabeth: she was famed for her beauty and misfortunes. Who was Mary's chief counsellor? David Rizzio, an Italian. Name Mary's husbands. Francis II., king of France; Henry, Lord Darnley, and Duke of Albany, in Scotland; and the Earl of Bothwell, afterwards Duke of the Orkneys: Mary was eighteen years a prisoner in England, and was at length executed at Fotheringhay Castle, in Northamptonshire. Name some men of genius in Elizabeth's reign. Shakspeare and Spenser. For what are Shakspeare's works particularly famed? For the wit, variety, and genius displayed throughout, no two characters being alike. Of what do Shakspeare's works consist? Of plays, both tragic and comic, he excelled in both, and poems. When did the Scots first openly declare themselves Protestants? In the reign of their queen Mary. What is the established religion of the Scots now? Calvinism; which takes its name from Calvin, whose opinions they follow: the reformation in Scotland was effected by John Knox, who resembled Luther in personal intrepidity and popular eloquence, and approached Calvin in his religious sentiments and the severity of his manners. Who were the most distinguished naval officers in Elizabeth's reign? Drake, Howard, Hawkins, Frobisher, and Ra-

leigh. Name some great men in Elizabeth's reign. Sir Philip Sydney, Lord Burleigh, the Earl of Leicester, the Earl of Essex, and Sir Francis Walsingham. Sir Philip Sydney aimed at the crown of Poland, but Elizabeth was unwilling to promote his advancement, lest she should lose so bright an ornament to her court.

When happened the dreadful massacre of Protestants at Paris? On St. Bartholomew's day, in the reign of Charles IX., of France, and Elizabeth, queen of England. What memorable answer did the Viscount D'Ortez, one of Charles's nobility, give him when he sent a circular letter to command the execution of the Protestants? This: "Your majesty has many faithful subjects in this city of Bayonne, but not one executioner." Name the chief leaders on the Catholic and Protestant sides in France, during the civil wars there. On the Catholic were Charles IX., the two Dukes of Guise, and Catherine de Medicis, the chief instigator of the wars; on the Protestant, the Prince of Condé, Admiral Coligni, and Henry the Great, then king of Navarre. When was the slave-trade first practised in England? In the reign of Elizabeth: it was introduced by Sir John Hawkins. What young Englishman was at the head of a conspiracy against Elizabeth, to place her rival upon the throne? Anthony Babington, who was afterwards executed. Name the discoveries, inventions, and improvements, in Elizabeth's reign. Stops were introduced in reading and writing; coaches and watches first common in England; the study of botany was revived; knives first made in England; Holland declared a republic; and criminals first sentenced to transportation. Name the first prince of the Stuart line who reigned in England. James I. of England, and VI. of Scotland; he was called Solomon. What remarkable event happened to James, before he ascended the English throne? Earl Gowrie's conspiracy against him, who invited James to his house, and took him prisoner; but the king was afterwards rescued by his attendants. What were the most remarkable occurrences in this reign? The gunpowder plot was discovered and defeated; and the celebrated Sir Walter Raleigh beheaded. What was the gunpowder plot? A scheme of the Roman Catholics, to blow up both houses of parliament by laying a train of gunpowder under them. Who was Sir Walter Raleigh? A famous historian and navigator. When was the first general assembly of the church of Scotland? In the reign of James I. Name the improvements in the time of James I. The circulation of the blood was discovered; telescopes were invented; the satellites round the planet Saturn



were first perceived; baronets created; mulberry trees first planted in England, and potatoes brought thither.

What is meant by Highland Clans? Tribes of Scotch Highlanders: each of these clans bears a different name, and anciently lived upon the lands of their respective chieftains, to whom they showed every mark of attachment, and cheerfully shed their blood in their defence; these chieftains, in return, bestowed a protection upon their clans, equally founded on gratitude and a sense of their own interest. Name the characteristic traits of the ancient Scotch Highlanders. Fidelity, hospitality, and great family pride. What were their dress and character? They wore a plaid made of woollen stuff, or tartan, which either hung down from their shoulders, or was fastened with a belt; from this belt hung their sword, dagger, knives, and pistol: a large leathern purse, hanging before, adorned with silver, was always a part of the chieftain's dress: their patience was unwearied, their courage undaunted, and their honor unsullied. Name the most striking events in the reign of Charles I. The wars between Charles and his parliament; the Irish massacre; and the execution of Lord Strafford and Archbishop Laud: this unfortunate king was taken prisoner by the parliament, confined at Carisbrook Castle in the Isle of Wight, and at last beheaded. When did Clarendon and Hampden live? In the reign of Charles I.: the former was a statesman and historian, the latter a celebrated patriot. What was the Irish massacre? A conspiracy of the Roman Catholics in Ireland, to murder all the English and Irish Protestants residing there. What were the discoveries and inventions in this reign? The Bahama Isles were discovered; barometers and thermometers invented; newspapers first published; sawing-mills erected; and coffee brought to England. When did the Lords Falkland and Fairfax live? In Charles I.'s time: they were of opposite parties; Falkland was attached to the king.

When was England declared a commonwealth? In Cromwell's time, protector of England. Name the most remarkable events in the protectorship of Cromwell. A war with the Dutch, who were defeated; and the island of Jamaica conquered: Cromwell made Lord Lieutenant of Ireland; landed in that kingdom, took Drogheda by storm, and put all the inhabitants to the sword: the sect called Quakers appeared, and the parliament contemptuously dismissed by Cromwell, who ordered the doors to be forthwith locked: several Spanish galleons taken and destroyed by the English fleet near Cadiz, one of which had treasure on board amounting to two millions, all silver.

After the publication of a pamphlet entitled, "Killing no Murder," Cromwell never considered his life secure; he wore armor under his clothes, carried pistols, and changed his bed-chamber almost every night. Name the two distinguishing traits in Cromwell's character. (Hypocrisy) and ambition. When did Milton live? In Cromwell's time, to whom he was Latin secretary: Cromwell, however, in general, was by no means an encourager of learning; but the nation, under his administration, improved both in riches and power. Why did Richard Cromwell resign the protectorship? Because he did not possess those great qualities which were necessary to support the views of his father, Oliver Cromwell. What were the improvements made about this time? St. Helena was settled; air-pumps and speaking-trumpets were invented. ✕

When was Charles II. restored to the throne of his ancestors? He embarked at the Hague on the 23d of May, 1660, for England, and arrived at Dover the 25th, where he was met by General Monck, afterwards Duke of Albemarle, on whom he conferred the order of the Garter; on the 29th, being his birthday, he made a triumphant entry into the city of London, and proceeded to Whitehall. Name some of the most remarkable events in the reign of Charles II. Dunkirk sold to the French for 400,000 crowns; the great fire and plague in London; and the Royal Society established for the improvement of philosophy, mathematics, physics, and all useful knowledge: Mr. Boyle and Sir William Petty were amongst the first members and promoters. When was the bill of exclusion attempted to be passed? In the reign of Charles II., to prevent the Duke of York, brother to Charles, from ascending the throne, as he was a papist; this bill passed the house of commons, but the lords threw it out: in this reign also many of the corporations in England were induced to surrender their charters. What is meant by the charter of a corporation? Its right to elect a mayor and aldermen. When were Algernon Sydney and Lord Russell beheaded? In the reign of Charles II. Name some men of genius in this reign. Milton, Boyle, Dryden, Otway, Butler, Temple, Waller, Cowley, Wycherley, and Halley; the Earl of Arundel, also, the great patron of learning and genius, obtained the title of the English Mæcenæus. What were the chief works of these authors? Milton wrote two epic poems, called *Paradise Lost* and *Paradise Regained*; several minor pieces, the most celebrated of which are *L'Allegro*, *Il Penseroso*, *Comus*, and *Lysidas*. Boyle, treatises upon Natural and Experimental Philosophy. Dryden translated Virgil, Plutarch,

Juvena., and Persius; wrote twenty-seven plays, and numerous pieces of poetry. Otway, plays. Butler, Hudibras. Temple, polite literature. Waller, poems. Cowley, miscellaneous poetry. Wycherley, poems and plays; and Halley, on astronomical subjects. Name some inventions and improvements in the reign of Charles II. Hydraulic fire-engines were invented; buckles introduced; gazettes first published; and the penny-post set up.

Name the most memorable actions in the reign of James II. The duke of Monmouth's rebellion; seven bishops sent to the Tower for refusing to read the decrees of James, for liberty of conscience in the Protestant churches, intended to bring the Papists into civil and ecclesiastical employments; and his endeavors to reconcile the church of England to the see of Rome: the Duke of Monmouth was defeated by the Earl of Faversham and Lord Churchill, at Sedgmore, near Bridgewater, in Somersetshire on the fifth of July, 1685, when 1,300 of his adherents were slain, and an equal number taken prisoners: Lord Grey fell into the king's power the next day, and the Duke on the 8th of the same month: he was beheaded on Tower-hill, in the thirty-sixth year of his age; and those concerned in his rebellion were convicted, and sentenced by Judge Jeffries, noted for severity in the execution of his office. What became of James? He engaged King William III. in Ireland, where he suffered a complete overthrow; was obliged to abdicate the throne, on account of his religious principles and arbitrary conduct; he fled to France, and died at Saint Germain's; this king introduced the use of sea-signals.

When was the battle of the Boyne? In the reign of William III., between William and James; the former was victorious. What renowned generals fought under the banners of William? The Duke of Schomberg, Baron de Ginkle, Count de Solmnes, and Prince George of Denmark. What great men shed lustre on this reign? Newton, Locke, Tillotson, Prior, and Burnet. Name their chief works. Newton wrote on astronomy and the mathematics; Locke, on philosophical subjects; Prior, poems; Burnet, history and divinity; and Tillotson, sermons. What Russian monarch travelled through Europe, in the reign of William and Mary, to obtain instruction in the arts of commerce and the mechanics? Peter the Great: this prince evinced that nobility of mind is superior to the advantages of birth, by his marriage with Catharine I., who, having a great soul, was raised from the lowest condition to share his throne. What remarkable expression of Peter the Great proves the



weakness of human reason ? This : “ I can reform my people, but how shall I reform myself ? ” Peter knew not the blessings of being early taught the lessons of morality ; his sublime genius had not been sufficiently cultivated, nor his passions accustomed to the restraints of reason ; his virtues were all his own, his defects those of his education and country. Name the chief improvements in the reign of William. Reflecting telescopes were made, and bayonets first used, made at Bayonne, in France ; the bank of England was also established, and public lotteries appointed by government ; from which period till 1824 no session passed without a lottery bill. X

Whom did queen Anne marry ? Prince George of Denmark ; she had six children by him, but they all died in infancy. What general, in her reign, was famed for his military talents and courtly accomplishments ? The Duke of Marlborough : his victories at Blenheim, Oudenarde, Ramillies, and Malplaquet, will transmit his name to the most distant posterity ; he was created Prince of Mindleheim, by Joseph I., emperor of Germany, in consideration of his signal services to the house of Austria. When was the act of union between England and Scotland passed ? In the reign of Anne : the Scotch nation is represented in the British parliament by sixteen peers and fifty-three commoners. When was the Hanoverian succession established ? In Anne’s time ; and the line of Stuart was set aside, to place that of Brunswick upon the throne : because, after the death of Anne, there being no Protestant heir to the crown of her line, the house of Hanover then stood the nearest in succession. What is meant by the terms Whig and Tory ? Whig was a name given in queen Anne’s time to those who were for liberty without abandoning monarchy, and friends to the house of Hanover : and Tory was a title by which those were distinguished who were for absolute monarchy, and friends to the house of Stuart. When did the English take the town and fortification of Gibraltar from Spain ? In the reign of Anne : it has continued ever since in their possession. When were the British and French Augustan ages ? The French, in the reign of Louis XIV. ; the English in that of queen Anne. Name some men of talents in the reign of Louis XIV. Descartes, an astronomer ; Fontaine, Moliere, Boileau, and Corneille, poets : Bossuet and Rapin, historians ; Fenelon, Archbishop of Cambray, the author of *Telemachus* : the two Daciers, critics and translators ; and Madame Sevigné, who shone in the belles-lettres. Name some men of genius in Anne’s reign. Pope and Swift, Congreve and Rowe, poets ; Bolingbroke and Shaftesbury,

philosophers; Steele and Addison, celebrated for their excellent periodical publications; and Arbuthnot, who wrote on medical subjects.

Which line of kings has been the most uninterruptedly unfortunate? The line of Stuart. Name some of the vicissitudes it has experienced? James I., king of Scotland, was assassinated; James II. was killed by the splinter of a cannon which burst near him at the siege of Roxburgh; James III. was killed in battle, while endeavoring to crush a rebellion of his subjects; James IV. fell at the battle of Flodden Field; James V. died of grief for the loss of a fine army; Mary, queen of Scotland, was beheaded; Charles I., king of Scotland and England, shared the same fate; Charles II. wandered many years as an exile; James II. was compelled to abdicate the throne. Louis XIV. received the exiled family with great hospitality, assigned the palace of St. Germain as their residence, and settled a pension on them of 6000 livres. Who were the two Pretenders? The son and grandson of James II.: after experiencing innumerable hardships in their fruitless attempts to recover the crown, they were proclaimed as traitors, and had a price of £40,000 set upon their heads, but they escaped to France, and both died there.

Name the three most remarkable events in the reign of George I. The rebellion in Scotland, in 1715, in favor of the Pretender; the South-sea scheme, and its ruinous termination; and the act passed for septennial parliaments. The electorate of Hanover was annexed to the British crown in this reign; and the battles of Preston Pans and Sheriff Muir were fought with the rebels. What were the improvements and discoveries in this reign? The northern lights were observed; inoculation used; the East India House built, and the commerce of the company greatly extended; and the Scots attained the art of making thread.

When were the battles of Dettingen and Culloden fought? In the reign of George II.; the former was gained by the king in person, in favor of the queen of Hungary; in the latter, William, Duke of Cumberland, was victorious over the Pretender, whom he finally defeated. When was the battle of Minden? In George II.'s time; gained by the English against the French. In what part of the globe did the English forces, during this reign, extend their conquests? Through the greater part of North America, headed by Townshend and the gallant Wolfe, who gained immortal glory. When did Lord Anson sail round the world? In the reign of George II. What remarkable improvements mark this reign? The new style was introduced

into England ; the British museum established ; and the Latin language abolished in the courts of law. What Englishman signalized himself at this time by his victories in the East Indies ? Colonel Clive, afterwards Lord Clive : in this reign happened that disastrous affair at Calcutta, when 146 Englishmen, confined in a small room called the Black Hole, by command of the nabob, were in such want of space and air, that 123 were found dead the next morning.

Name some remarkable events in the reign of George III. In the early part of this king's reign Captain Cook sailed round the world ; New Holland was discovered ; the Isle of Man was annexed to the British crown ; the order of Jesuits suppressed by the pope ; war with the American colonies ; the riots in London, (1780 ;) and after a contest of eight years, the independence of America acknowledged by the British government in 1783, and peace declared between the United States and England on the 15th Sept. Name some other interesting events. The severe indisposition and recovery of the monarch ; the revolution in France, (1789 ;) that ancient monarchy declared a republic ; war with the French ; rebellion in Ireland ; the great naval victories of Howe, Vincent, Duncan, Nelson, and Collingwood ; and the brilliant conquests of Seringapatam and the Mysore country, by Lieutenant-General Harris ; the directory was abolished in France, and the consular government appointed in 1799.

What great events mark the opening of the nineteenth century ? The union between Great Britain and Ireland : General Bonaparte, afterwards Napoleon I. of France, was chosen chief consul for life ; the battles of Copenhagen and Alexandria ; after the latter, the French were compelled to evacuate Egypt. In 1802, peace was signed between England and France, and the Catholic religion publicly restored in the French dominions. The treaty of Amiens was dissatisfactory to the English, who, in consequence, revived the war again in 1803, and acquired alliances on the continent ; but these arrangements only led to the aggrandizement of Bonaparte, extension of the French empire, and ruin of the allies. Nelson asserted the claim of Britain to the empire of the seas, and destroyed the French and Spanish fleets, off Trafalgar, in 1805 ; the death of Mr. Pitt, the uncompromising enemy of Napoleon, gave a momentary prospect of peace, which the ambition of the conqueror obstructed ; the English fleet bombarded Copenhagen, and seized the whole of the Danish fleet, while her army under Wellington, already landed in Portugal, defeated Junot, the



French general, and obliged the Russian fleet in the Tagus to capitulate, in 1808; the Spaniards also had risen against the French, and received supplies of money and troops from England; the victories of Wellington in Spain shook the throne of Napoleon, and the accession of the European powers to the coalition completed its fall; the return of the emperor from Elba afforded the British hero an opportunity of gaining additional glory in the memorable battle of Waterloo, 1815: after twenty-three years of almost uninterrupted war, a universal peace ensued. What consequences of the protracted war continue still to affect the prosperity of England? The national debt, which now amounts to upwards of £800,000,000. Who succeeded Mr. Fox in the premiership of England? Spencer Perceval; he was assassinated in the lobby of the House of Commons, in 1812, by Bellingham, a lunatic: Lord Castlereagh, who succeeded him, in a fit of temporary derangement committed suicide; and Mr. Canning died of a broken heart shortly after his elevation to the same high but anxious office: in 1819, the distresses of the manufacturers were manifested in different places, particularly at Manchester, where many thousands assembled, 16th of August, 1819, and were not dispersed without the sacrifice of lives: the last convulsion of this disease was Thistlewood's Cato-street conspiracy to assassinate the ministers, for which he and four of his accomplices suffered death.

What have been the chief improvements in the reign of George III.? Electricity, by the discoveries of Doctors Franklin and Priestley, brought to great perfection; academy of painting established: air balloons invented; and telegraphs used, though known in the time of Ptolemy: the arts and sciences received every possible encouragement from this king, and the many improvements in them under this reign are too numerous to particularize in a work of this nature. Name a few of the most distinguished authors since the accession of the line of Hanover. Bentley, the critic; Thomson, Shenstone, Young, Akenside, Chatterton, Gray, Goldsmith, Mickle, Wharton, Burns, Cowper, and Byron, poets; Watts, Sherlock, Hoadley, Leland, Lardner, Jortin, Warburton, Newton, Kennicott, Lowth, Price, Kippis, and Blair, divines; Fielding, Richardson, Sterne, Smollett, and Scott, novelists; Lyttleton, Hume, Robertson, and Gibbon, historians; Ramsey, Chesterfield, Johnson, Hawkesworth, Burke, and Melmoth, wrote chiefly on miscellaneous subjects; Johnson excelled also as a poet and biographer. Name some other great characters. Keill, Saunderson, and Robins, mathematicians; Hearne and Baker, antiquaries; Sir Hans

Sloane and Hales, naturalists ; Graham, Brindley, and Harrison, mechanics ; Flamstead, Bradley, Ferguson, and Herschell, astronomers ; West, an American by birth, Lawrence, and Wilkie, painters.

When did George IV. ascend the throne ? In the year 1820, having previously governed as Regent for nine years. What remarkable events took place in the reign of this king ? The trial of Queen Caroline ; and the passing of the Relief Bill, admitting Roman Catholics into parliament. By whom was George IV. succeeded ? By his brother, the Duke of Clarence, who assumed the title of William IV. : in the beginning of his reign, an act was passed for "reforming the representation of the United Kingdom." By whom was this king succeeded ? By Queen Victoria, who ascended the throne in 1837, at the age of only eighteen years.

Which four of the British queens have given the greatest proofs of courage and intrepidity ? Boadicea, queen of the Iceni ; Philippa, wife to Edward III. ; Margaret of Anjou, wife to Henry VI. ; and Elizabeth, who reigned in her own right. What English monarchs, since the conquest, have ascended the throne when minors ? Henry III., Edward III., Richard II., Henry VI., Edward V., Edward VI., and Queen Victoria.

What English kings have been most noted for their love of war and conquest ? Richard I., Edward I., Edward III., and Henry V. What is true glory ? Active benevolence, fortitude to support the frowns of fortune, evenness of temper in prosperity, patience in afflictions, contempt of unmerited injuries : this is virtue, and the fame of virtuous actions can alone be called true glory. Name some of the antiquities in England. Picts' Wall, between Northumberland and Cumberland ; Stonehenge, in Wiltshire, (or circles of stones forming an enclosed space on Salisbury Plain, near the city of Salisbury, where the Druids worshipped ; ) Joseph's chapel at Glastonbury ; York Minster ; Westminster Abbey and Hall ; and many Roman monuments, altars, and roads. Name the six greatest philosophers Great Britain has produced. Roger Bacon, Sir Francis Bacon, the Honorable Robert Boyle, Sir Isaac Newton, James Usher, and John Locke. Name the weak kings who have filled the English throne since the conquest. John, Henry III., Edward II., Richard II., Henry VI., Charles I., and James II. What is meant by a patriot king ? One who has his country's welfare particularly at heart, and studies the benefit of his subjects more than his own private interest.

What is the government of England ? Limited monarchy ;

the crown is hereditary, and females have the right of succession. What power has the king of England? He alone declares war, and makes peace; receives and appoints ambassadors; disposes of the several governments in the kingdom, and of all civil, military, and naval employments; he is heir to all estates when no other heir can be found; the law is constantly administered in his name, and he has a power to pardon all offences committed against it. What other powers has the king? He nominates all the great officers of the state and household; disposes of all the vacant bishoprics; no money can be lawfully coined without his command, and he can refuse his assent to any bill, though it should have passed both houses of parliament; but this branch of their prerogative the kings of England have seldom asserted.

Of whom is the imperial parliament composed? Of the king, the lords spiritual (or bishops and archbishops, of whom the archbishop of Canterbury is the chief, or primate of England) and temporal, and the commons, who debate in a separate house; they are all assembled by the king's writ, and the power of dissolving them rests with him. What is the jurisdiction of parliament? It has uncontrollable authority in making, abrogating, repealing, and revising laws: it can regulate, and new model, the succession to the crown; alter or establish the religion of the land; and even change the constitution of the kingdom, and of parliaments themselves. Who are the Lords Spiritual? Two Archbishops, and twenty-four Bishops, as representatives of the English church; and one Archbishop, and five Bishops, for Ireland. Who are the Lords Temporal? All Peers of the Realm are members of the upper house: some of these sit by descent, some by creation; but the sixteen Peers for Scotland are elected at the opening of every new parliament, and twenty-eight Irish Peers are elected for life. What is the number of persons in the House of Lords? It is not fixed, as it may be increased at will by the power of the crown. Of whom are the Commons composed? They are in general men of independent property; every candidate for a county is required to possess an estate of £600 per annum; for a city or borough, £300; this qualification is not required in Scotland: the counties are represented by knights, the cities and boroughs by gentlemen, citizens, or merchants; the number of English representatives is 471; of Welsh, 29; of Scotch, 53; and of Irish, 105, making a total of 658. What are the qualifications of an elector? In cities and boroughs the privilege of voting for the election of members extends to every male person of



full age, and not subject to any legal incapacity, who occupies a building within the prescribed boundary of the clear annual value of £10, provided he shall have paid the poor rates and taxes. What is meant by the Chiltern Hundreds? They are hundreds, or divisions of counties parcelled out by the wise Alfred, and now annexed to the crown; they still retain their peculiar courts.

What are the stewards of the Chiltern Hundreds? The stewards of these courts are appointed by the Chancellor of the Exchequer; their salary is twenty shillings a year. As the laws enact that a member of parliament who accepts a place under the crown may not sit unless re-elected, accepting the stewardship of the Chiltern Hundreds is merely a formal manner of resigning a seat, when the member wishes to be rechosen, or to retire altogether.

What is meant by a Call of the House? This, in parliamentary proceedings, is calling the names of the Commons over, each member answering to his own, and leaving the house in the order he is called in: this plan is adopted to discover whether any member be absent, or any person present who is not a member: if only forty members are present, the house may in general proceed to business: when very important questions are agitated, a Call of the House takes place.

What is a Committee of the whole House? It is said to be a Committee of the whole House, when each member may speak as often as he pleases; when the house is not in a committee, no member may speak more than once, unless to explain himself. What are the oaths taken by electors? They take the oath of abjuration, and likewise swear that they have not polled (or voted) before, during that election; and that they have not, either directly or indirectly, received any sums of money, place or employment, gift or reward; nor any promises of such money, place, or employment, in order to induce them to give their vote. What are the requisites for an English, Scotch, and Irish member of parliament? In order to prevent the mischiefs arising from placing authority in improper hands, the laws enact, that no one shall sit or vote in parliament who is under age; that all members shall take the proper oaths, except quakers, who are permitted to sit upon making an affirmation; and no alien, born out of the dominions of the British crown, is capable of being a member in the House of Commons.

What is meant by an adjournment, prorogation, and dissolution of Parliament? An adjournment is a continuation of the session from one day to another then named; sometimes the house

adjourns for a fortnight or month together: a prorogation is the continuance of the parliament from one session to another, notified generally by the royal proclamation: a dissolution is the total end of the parliament, which takes place by order of the new monarch after the death of the last, or at the sovereign's pleasure, or at the expiration of the time granted by law for its continuance. What is the substance of the monarch's coronation oath? He, or she, solemnly promises to govern according to law, to execute judgment in mercy, to maintain the established religion in England and Ireland, also the Protestant Presbyterian form of worship established in Scotland.

How are English laws made? By the mutual agreement of King, Lords, and Commons. Have the great "*law*" Lords a seat in the House of Peers? The twelve judges and the twelve masters in Chancery, sit in the House, and their opinion is referred to occasionally, but they have no vote; the Lord Chancellor is commonly Speaker of the House of Lords. In what respect is the law favorable to suspected persons? They are always furnished with a list of the jury; and should any be proposed as such, whom they have reason to believe prejudiced against them, the prisoners may object in open court to twenty men successively; they can even challenge thirty-five in cases of high treason, till twelve men are pitched upon, supposed to be competent and impartial judges. What form is used on these occasions? After the evidence is given on both sides, the judge repeats its substance to the jury, who, if the affair appears clear, give their verdict immediately; should doubts arise, the jury retire into another room, where they remain till they are unanimous in opinion; but in case any of these twelve men should die while they are consulting, the prisoner would be set at liberty. The same form of trial by jury exists in the United States of America; the laws of this country being founded upon the English, and in many things exactly the same. What are the customs? Taxes paid to government on goods exported and imported. What is a bill of entry? An account of goods entered at the custom-house. What is a bill of stores? A license granted at the custom-house for merchants to take such articles, free of custom dues, as are necessary for their voyage.

AN ABSTRACT  
OF  
BRITISH HISTORY,

FROM THE TERMINATION OF THE INVASION OF JULIUS CÆSAR, TO THE  
ARRIVAL OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

JULIUS CÆSAR, having subdued most of the nations of Gaul, resolved on extending his conquests to the other side of the channel, by the reduction of Britain. His real motive for this unjust aggression was a desire of enriching himself by the British pearls, then much esteemed; but his pretended plea was to punish the Britons for having sent assistance to the Gauls during his wars with them. The first invasion of Britain by the Romans took place, B. C. 55, and having with difficulty maintained themselves against the half-civilized natives for two years, Cæsar withdrew his legions. Not subdued, although often defeated, the Britons contended with the Romans until the military genius of Agricola completely vanquished them;—he completed the conquest of the Silures, begun by Fontinus, added North Wales also to the Roman province, and reduced seventeen different petty states of Britain to subjection. Agricola lived in the reign of the Emperor Domitian: his expedition occupied six years, and was completed, A. D. 84.

When Julian the Apostate was emperor, the Picts and Scots committed ravages on the British frontier, and menaced the freedom of the inhabitants. Their violence was not checked until the arrival of Theodosius, who committed dreadful havoc amongst them, deprived them of their booty, and drove them beyond the friths of Forth and Clyde. The Picts, recovering from this disaster, resumed their predatory incursions, upon which the Britons sent ambassadors to Rome, with their garments rent, and dust on their heads, to supplicate assistance. Touched by their sufferings, Honorius yielded, and the force which was landed in Britain again repulsed the Picts effectively. But the great Roman empire itself, having declined through the luxury, indolence, and crimes of its emperors, was now overrun by the Goths and other fierce tribes from the north of Europe, —so that the Britons were told that they must in future defend



themselves ; at all events, no longer look to Rome for aid. In this extremity they had recourse to the Saxons, a hardy race, inhabiting a part of Denmark and the adjacent tract in Northern Germany ; their invitation was accepted by two brothers, Hengist and Horsa, chieftains of great valor, and supposed to be descended from the Saxon god Woden. Received with respect, they were assigned the Isle of Thanet for their quarters, with which, at first, they appeared content ; but observing, in their campaigns against the Picts, the fertility and beauty of the country, they formed the ambitious project of making themselves masters of Britain. With this view they secretly and dishonestly entered into a treaty of amity with their former enemies, the Picts, a union which proved fatal to British liberty, and ended in placing the Saxon heroes in the undisputed government of Britain. Many battles were fought between the Saxons and Britons, before the former were enabled to partition the conquered into seven petty kingdoms, called the Saxon Heptarchy, and in the battle of Aylesford Horsa was slain.

After the death of his brother, and in the year 488, Hengist, although aided by the Picts and Scots, was completely defeated by Ambrosius. Two years after his defeat he died in *Kent*, of which he was king, and was succeeded by his son Esk, who reigned for twenty-four years in perfect tranquillity. At this time Ireland was denominated the Island of Saints, and was conspicuous for its seminaries of learning.

In 477 *Ælla* the Saxon effected a landing in Britain, and having obtained many victories over the natives, founded the kingdom of *Sussex*, in 491.

Another tribe of Saxons, conducted by Cedric and his son Kenric, landed in the West of Britain, in the year 495 ; they were called West Saxons, from the place of landing, and founded the kingdom which they called *Wessex* ; it included Hants, Dorset, Wilts, Bucks, and the Isle of Wight : Arthur, king of the Silures, marched against these intruders, and acquired by his victories over them that vast renown which subsequently entitled him to become the hero of romance he is now known as.

In the year 511 died Cedric the Saxon, after a residence in Britain of twenty years, and having acquired extensive territories, and finally established the kingdom of the West Saxons, which endured for 547 years. He was succeeded by the valiant and wise Arthur, king of Britain, who was at last slain at the battle of Camlan, in the year 542. Erchenwin founded the kingdom of *Essex*, (the East Saxons,) which included the present counties

of Essex, Middlesex, and part of Hertfordshire. This was the fourth kingdom of the Heptarchy.

In the year 547, Ida, the Saxon, landed at Flamborough, and subdued the country from the Humber to the Forth. He was founder of the fifth Saxon kingdom in Britain, under the name of *Northumberland*, which endured for 245 years.

The sixth Saxon kingdom in Britain is conjectured to have been founded about the year 575, by Uffa, and called the kingdom of the *East Angles*: it included Cambridge, Suffolk, and Norfolk. His successors were called Uffingæ, and the kingdom which he established lasted for 218 years. About twenty years after this period, Augustine, the monk, with forty of his order, landed in Britain, and commenced their pious labors of converting the Saxons to Christianity. Ethelbert, king of Kent, was amongst the number of those who embraced the Christian faith, and Augustine himself was raised to the see of Canterbury, in the year 598, and consecrated its Archbishop, by Eutherius, Archbishop of Arles. He died in possession of that see, A. D. 604-5.

In 585, Creda formed the kingdom of *Mercia*, in which were comprehended the midland counties of Britain, east of the Severn.

The Saxon Heptarchy was established in the beginning of the seventh century; and St. Paul's cathedral in London founded by Ethelbert, when London and Rochester were constituted episcopal sees; seven years after which, Sebert, king of the West Saxons, founded St. Peter's and the Abbey at Westminster.

In the reign of Eadbald, the son of Ethelbert, the kingdom of Kent was invaded by the Mercian princes, and became tributary to the kings of Mercia and Wessex, about the year 685.

Edwin, assisted by the king of the East Angles, defeated and killed Ethelfred, king of Northumberland, and possessed himself of his kingdom: Edwin was afterwards slain by Penda, king of Mercia, and the kingdom of Northumberland divided between the heirs of the two last monarchs: but in the year following, 634, both these princes were slain by Cadwallon, prince of Wales, who usurped their kingdom; Penda had called him in to his assistance in the invasion of Northumberland. Penda was one of the cruelest tyrants that disgraced the early annals of Britain; he slew three kings of the East Angles. Edwin, of Northumberland, assisted in the overthrow and death of Oswald, drove out the king of Wessex from his territory, slew Amias, king of Essex, and cut his army in pieces, but was at length

killed by Oswy, at the head of a powerful army of Northumbrians.

In the year 635, York was raised to an archiepiscopal see, and palls sent there and to Canterbury by Pope Honorios; and eight years afterwards the University of Cambridge is said to have been founded by Sigebert, king of the East Angles.

Ethelred, the youngest son of the sanguinary tyrant Penda, succeeded his brother Wulphere, on the throne of Mercia, and after a dreadful conflict with the king of Northumberland, became reconciled to that monarch, and governed peacefully to the end of his reign, which was occasioned by his voluntary abdication in the year 704, in order to embrace a monastic life.

About the year 680, Egfrid, the son of Oswy, ascended the throne of the Northumbrians, and after sustaining a bloody war against Ethelred, king of Mercia, turned his arms against the Scots and Picts. Having gained some advantages over the former, he pressed his conquests too far, and was defeated and slain by Bredei, the Pictish king, and his army cut to pieces: this occurred in the year 684. The following year Ceodwalla, who ruled in Wessex, extended his territories by the reduction of Sussex and part of Kent, but being conscience-stricken, by reflection upon the cruelties he had committed, he made a journey to Rome, where he died in 689, and was succeeded by his cousin Ina. This last prince possessed courage, abilities, and fortune. He defeated the Welsh, conquered Cornwall and Somersetshire, which he annexed to his dominions; spent the latter end of his reign in the establishment of peace, and finally withdrawing to Rome, accompanied by his queen, expired in a monastery there, bequeathing his crown to Ethelred, his brother-in-law, and the tax called Peter's Pence to the pope, for the maintenance of a college at Rome. The venerable Bede, of Wearmouth, in Durham, flourished at this period; the fame of his learning had reached Pope Sergius, who invited him to Rome, but he declined the invitation.

A fit of devotion, not uncommon in those ages, seized Cenred, the successor of Ethelred, king of Mercia, who, in consequence, repaired to Rome, and embraced a monkish life.

Eadbert, king of Northumberland, was the last prince of that race, who distinguished himself by the spirited defence of his southern territories against Ethelbald, king of Mercia. He ultimately retired to a monastery, and lived long to regret the folly of his religious phrensy. In 755, Cynewlf, king of the West Saxons, was defeated by the famous Offa, king of Mercia, and afterwards slain by Cyneheard, who pretended a right to his



throne. Offa, a spirited prince, had been elected to the throne of Mercia by universal consent; he reduced Kent, conquered the king of Wessex, and added the kingdom of the East Angles to his dominions by an act of the basest treachery. The prince of this last-mentioned country having demanded the daughter of Offa in marriage, was invited to the court of Mercia, and his proposal accepted; but upon his arrival was cruelly assassinated, and his territories usurped by the inhuman Offa. Amongst the different events of this king's reign, which lasted thirty-nine years, was the separation of England from Wales by a fosse, still called Offa's dyke, and a confirmation of the grant of Peter's Pence to the pope.

Brithric, a prince of the royal line, ascended the throne of the West Saxons, to the prejudice of Egbert, whom he endeavored to get into his power, but that prince wisely withdrew to the court of Charlemagne, and sought an asylum there until the death of his rival, in the year 800; when he was recalled by the nobility. Brithric was cut off by a poisoned draught, prepared by his queen for one of the court favorites, which the king accidentally tasted.

Egbert, seventh and last king of Wessex, united all the other Saxon provinces with his own, under the title of the kingdom of England, and thus extinguished the heptarchy, or seven governments, established by the East Angles, in the year 827, after they had existed 387 years. He reigned twenty-six years over Wessex, ten years over the united kingdom, and was the first king of England: his death occurred in 838.

In the year 838, Egbert was succeeded by his son Ethelwolf, a prince of inferior abilities, and better calculated to rule a monastery than a nation. He made a pilgrimage to Rome with his favorite son Alfred; imposed the tribute of Peter's Pence; shared his kingdom with his rebellious son Ethelbald; which last event he did not long survive, dying on the 13th of January, 857, after a reign of twenty years.

Ethelbald was a profligate character, and had been an undutiful son; he ruled in conjunction with his brother Ethelbert for a short period only, leaving him the undisputed occupancy of the throne of his father.

In 866 Ethelbert died, having survived his brother only five years, and was succeeded by his brother Ethelred.

Ethelred, after a short reign, was slain, bravely fighting against the Danes, in the year 871, and was succeeded by Alfred his brother; his children being excluded from the succession by the will of Ethelwolf. This wise, merciful, and brave

prince, grandson of Egbert, and deservedly surnamed the Great, overthrew the Danes in eight pitched battles in one year; but by a fresh invasion of barbarians was reduced to the utmost difficulties, and obliged to take shelter, in disguise, in a remote quarter of his dominions, until the disorder among the Danish forces gave him an opportunity of completing the conquests he had so nobly begun. Alfred deserves to be ranked among the best and greatest monarchs. He established a regular militia throughout England; founded the University of Oxford; established schools throughout his dominions; and, although he was the hero of *sixty-five* battles, was the best Saxon poet of his age; translated Orosius and Bede's Histories, and also *Æsop's Fables* from the Greek. He composed a famous code of laws, and divided the kingdom into counties, hundreds, and tithings: his survey of England was the model of King William's Domesday Book. He died, aged sixty-one, after a reign of twenty-nine years, in the year 901, and was interred at Winchester.

Alfred was succeeded by Edward the Elder; after crushing a violent burst of rebellion, excited by Ethelwald, son of Ethelbert, Alfred's brother, he reigned in peace; and is considered to have been one of the ablest and most active of the Saxon kings.

Athelstan, the eighth king from the Saxon Heptarchy, succeeded Edward. He was the natural son of that monarch, by Egwena, a peasant's daughter; and elected to the throne by the nobility and clergy. Having distinguished himself in war, promoted commerce, and completed the translation of the scriptures begun under Alfred, he died at Gloucester, in the year 941, having reigned sixteen years. In this reign flourished the famous Guy, Earl of Warwick.

Edmund, "the pious," 941: this prince, who succeeded his half-brother, at the age of eighteen years, was cut off by the hand of an assassin, named Leolf, who had the assurance to sit down at a banquet where the king was present; and Edred, his brother, was called to the vacant throne: he was the first monarch styled king of Great Britain. The Abbot Dunstan ruled the monarch in this reign, but was banished in the following reign: not, however, until his unkindness had broken the king's heart. Edwy, nephew of the last monarch, became his successor, and is conspicuous for being made the victim of the hierarchy. In 958 Edgar, "the peaceable," ascended the throne at the age of fifteen years, through monkish influence, and was in consequence represented as a great monarch. Ed-

ward "the Martyr" was crowned in 975, at the age of fourteen, and was the first king to whom the coronation oath was administered; he was stabbed by a servant of queen Elfrida, his step-mother, at the gate of Corfe Castle, and was surnamed the Martyr. His half-brother, Ethelred, succeeded him at the early age of twelve years, who proved unequal to a contest with the Danes, and fled to Normandy. Having caused Gunilda, sister of Sweyn, king of Denmark, to be assassinated, that prince took possession of his throne, to which Ethelred only returned upon Sweyn's death, in 1014.

Edmund Ironside succeeded to his father's throne and misfortunes at the same time, 1016; he divided his kingdom with Canute the Dane, son of Sweyn, after which he was assassinated. Canute left Norway to his natural son Sweyn, Denmark to Hardicanute, and England to Harold: this prince, surnamed Harefoot, reigned four years, and died in 1039, little regretted. The throne was left open to Hardicanute, brother of the last king: he was odious to the nation, and died of intemperance at Lambeth in 1041. The Danish line, consisting of Canute, Harold Harefoot, and Hardicanute, becoming extinct, the Saxon line offered two candidates for the throne, Edward, son of that Ethelred whom Sweyn deposed, and Edward son of Edmund Ironside, who had shared the kingdom with Canute the Great. The former was chosen, the latter consigned to exile in Hungary. Edward was controlled by the priesthood, from whom he obtained the surname of Confessor; after a peaceful reign, he died in the year 1066. He was the last of the Saxon line that ruled in England. Harold II., son of Godwin, Earl of Kent, succeeded to the exclusion of Edgar Atheling, the rightful heir, but he suffered for his ambition, being slain at the battle of Hastings, upwards of 600 years after the foundation of the Saxon monarchy, which was terminated there, upon which William the Norman ascended the throne with the surname of Conqueror.



# ABSTRACT

## OF THE

### ENGLISH REIGNS,

FROM THE CONQUEST, WITH THE CONTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.

Happy Britannia !  
 Rich is thy soil, and merciful thy clime,  
 Unmatched thy guardian oaks.

THOMSON'S SUMMER.

✱ WILLIAM the Conqueror, 1066 : he caused a general survey of the lands to be made, and entered in the Domesday Book, in imitation of the Roll of Winton, made by order of king Alfred ; in his reign began the first wars with France ; the Norman laws and language were introduced ; many forts built. He reigned with arbitrary sway ; dispeopled Hampshire for thirty-six miles, to extend the New Forest ; and instituted the curfew bell ; died 1087. Contemporary sovereigns :—Philip I. of France ; Henry IV. emperor of Germany ; Malcolm III. and Donald VII. of Scotland.

William Rufus, 1087, was cruel and irreligious : he invaded Normandy, his brother's dukedom ; engaged in the crusades ; and was killed by an arrow, shot at a stag by his bow-bearer, Sir Walter Tyrrel, a Norman knight, in the New Forest, Hampshire. Contemporaries to William Rufus, Henry I., and Stephen :—Louis VI. and Louis VII. of France ; Lothaire II., Conrad III. and Frederick I. of Germany ; Alexander and David of Scotland. Reigned from 1087 to 1100.

Henry I., surnamed Beauclerc, youngest son of William I., having seized the royal treasures at Winchester, procured himself to be recognised king of England ; he restored to the English the privilege of using fire and candle by night ; recalled Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury, and reinstated the church in its possessions ; he made war, in person, upon his brother Robert, duke of Normandy ; possessed himself of his dukedom, and confined the duke in Caerdiff Castle, where he died after an imprisonment of twenty-eight years, and was interred at Gloucester : he levied a tax of three shillings on every hide of land, and raised in this manner £824,000, as a portion for he

daughter Matilda. In this reign the institution of the order of Knights Templars took place, A. D. 1118: Henry's abilities were shining, but his conduct exceptionable. Reigned from 1100 to 1135.

Stephen of Blois, earl of Boulogne and Montaign, and grandson of William I., in 1135 seized upon the throne, in the absence of the Empress Matilda, or Maude, daughter and heiress to Henry I.: he seized the late king's treasure, amounting to £100,000; reduced Normandy; quarrelled with the clergy; carried on a war with Matilda, with various success. In 1141 he was defeated and taken prisoner, and thrown into Gloucester Castle, from which being liberated, he renewed the war. Matilda's son, Henry, at length concluded a peace with Stephen, when it was agreed that the latter should retain the crown during his life, and that Henry Plantagenet should be his successor, and that the castles built by Stephen's permission, amounting to 1,100, should all be demolished. Stephen and Matilda reigned from 1135 to 1155.✕

Henry II., surnamed Plantagenet, a wise and great prince, ascended the throne in 1154: he demolished the castles erected by the nobles, and endeavored to restrain the exorbitant power of the clergy, but was opposed by Thomas à Becket, who had first been his favorite, afterwards his tormentor. He subdued the Welsh, who did homage, and swore allegiance to him; landed in Ireland, and received the submission and oaths of several Irish princes; did penance at Becket's tomb, and received forty lashes from the monks of Canterbury; divided England into six circuits, and appointed for each three judges, A. D. 1176; he died uttering imprecations against his own children, which the bishops present could not persuade him to revoke: the well-known fair Rosamond lived in this reign. Contemporaries of Henry II.:—Frederick I. of Germany; Louis VII. and Philip III. of France; David, Malcolm IV., and William, kings of Scotland. Reigned from 1155 to 1190.

Richard I., surnamed Cœur de Lion, 1189: engaged in the holy wars; conquered the Island of Cyprus; obtained a victory over Saladin, and repaired the dismantled cities of Ascalon, Joppa, and *Cæsarea*; took 3,000 loaded camels and 4,000 mules, with other valuable spoils, which he distributed amongst his soldiers. In returning to England he was shipwrecked near Aquileia, but taking the way of Vienna was imprisoned by Leopold, duke of Austria, who delivered him to the avaricious emperor, by whom he was detained until ransomed by his subjects. He defeated the French repeatedly, but was at length

slain by a poisoned arrow discharged by Bertrand de Gourdon, while engaged in besieging the castle of Chalus, in 1199. The castle belonged to Vidomar, lord of Limoges, and a vassal of Richard's: having retained a treasure which belonged of right to the feudal lord, Richard undertook his chastisement, and perished in the attempt. Contemporaries of Richard I.:—Henry VI. and Philip I. of Germany; Philip II. of France; Sancho I. of Portugal; Canute V. of Denmark; and William, surnamed the lion, of Scotland. Reigned from 1190 to 1199.

John, 1199; he murdered his nephew; quarrelled with the pope, and was excommunicated; signed Magna Charta, the bulwark of English liberty; entered into a war with France, and his barons; and died deservedly detested. Contemporaries of John:—The Popes Innocent III. and Honorius III.; Otho IV. and Frederick II. of Germany; William and Alexander of Scotland. From 1199 to 1216. X

Henry III., 1216, was weak and irresolute: his was a long minority: he was prevailed upon to violate Magna Charta, his barons rebelled, a civil war followed, but an accommodation took place: Magna Charta was solemnly confirmed, and they returned to their allegiance. The famous Earl of Leicester was his chief opponent. Contemporaries of Henry III.:—Frederick II. of Germany; Louis VIII., Louis IX., and Philip III. of France; Alexander II. and Alexander III. of Scotland. From 1216 to 1272.

Edward I., 1272: he conquered Wales, is said to have massacred the Welsh bards, enacted useful laws, and was called the English Justinian: he granted the cinque ports their privileges. The renowned William Wallace and the celebrated Roger Bacon flourished. Edward's heart was buried in the Holy Land. Contemporaries of Edward I.:—Rodolph I., Adolphus, and Albert, of Germany; Philip III. and Philip IV. of France; Alexander III., John Baliol, and Robert Bruce, of Scotland. From 1272 to 1307.

Edward II., surnamed Caernarvon, 1307; encouraged Piers Gaveston and other favorites, and lost the affection of his people: he wanted his father's strength of mind to keep the barons in obedience; his queen, at their head, made war upon him; he was compelled to abdicate the throne, and was afterwards murdered in Berkeley Castle, Gloucestershire. Contemporaries of Edward II.:—Henry VIII. and Louis IV., emperors of Germany; Philip IV., Louis X., Philip V., and Charles IV. of France; Robert Bruce of Scotland. From 1307 to 1327.



Edward III., surnamed Windsor, 1327: he subdued Scotland, and defeated the French in the battles of Cressy and Poitiers; had two kings (John of France, and David of Scotland) prisoners in his court; encouraged the various manufactures: his conquests added more to the glory than the real happiness of his subjects, and he left his kingdom in an impoverished condition. Gunpowder was invented in this reign, by Swartz, a monk of Cologne. Contemporaries of Edward III.:—Louis IV. and Charles IV. of Germany; Charles IV., Philip VI., John I., and Charles V. of France; Robert Bruce, David II., and Robert II., (the first of the Stuarts,) of Scotland. From 1327 to 1377.

Richard II., 1377, was thoughtless and prodigal: the insurrection headed by Wat Tyler, on account of the poll-tax, was in his reign; the king suppressed it in person. The Earl of Hereford, son of the Duke of Lancaster, was banished, but returned before the expiration of the time, seized upon the throne, and confined Richard in the castle of Pontefract, where he was starved. Contemporaries of Richard II.:—Charles IV. and Wenceslaus of Germany; Charles V. and Charles VI. of France; Margaret of Norway, Denmark, and Sweden; Robert II. and Robert III. of Scotland. From 1377 to 1399.

Henry IV., 1399, reigned with wisdom and prudence; the Earl of Northumberland, who had assisted him in gaining the throne, rebelled, but was defeated; and his son, Henry Hotspur, slain. The English marine was greatly increased, but learning in general was at a very low ebb. Contemporaries of Henry IV.:—Robert Le Pit, and Sigismund of Germany; Charles VI. of France; Margaret and Eric XIII. of Denmark and Sweden; and Robert III. of Scotland. From 1399 to 1413.

Henry V., 1413, was powerful and victorious; his conquests in France were numerous and splendid; he gained the battles of Harfleur and Agincourt, and was declared next heir to the French monarchy. In his reign the followers of Wickliffe were severely persecuted. Henry died in the midst of victory. Contemporaries of Henry V.:—Sigismund of Germany; Charles VI. of France; Eric XIII. of Sweden and Denmark; Robert III. of Scotland. From 1413 to 1422.

Henry VI., 1422: he was crowned king of France and England. During his minority France was lost by the misconduct of his generals; the Maid of Orleans lived, who pretended to be divinely commissioned to rescue her country from the English. The first quarrels occurred between the houses of York and Lancaster; civil wars followed; and Henry became the tool of

each party in turn, till he was at length murdered in the Tower by Richard, Duke of Gloucester, who was afterwards Richard III. Contemporaries to Henry VI.:—Sigismund, Albert II. and Frederick III. of Germany; Charles VII. and Louis XI. of France; Eric XIV. of Denmark and Sweden; Robert I., James I., James II., and James III. of Scotland. From 1422 to 1471.

Edward IV., 1471. The civil wars continued, which destroyed the flower of the English nobility; trade and manufactures, however, notwithstanding these disadvantages, gradually increased; Margaret of Anjou, wife of Henry VI., died in extreme misery; her son, Prince Edward, was killed; and Edward IV.'s claim to the throne remained undisputed. Contemporaries of Edward IV.:—Frederick II. of Germany; Mahomet II., first emperor of the Turks; Louis XI. of France; Christian I. of Denmark; and James III. of Scotland. From 1471 to 1483.

Edward V., 1483, succeeded. Being a child, his uncle, the Duke of Gloucester, was chosen protector; he murdered the young king, and his brother, the Duke of York, in the Tower and seized upon the vacant throne, six months after the death of Edward IV., his brother. Contemporaries to Edward V., the same as Edward IV. 1483.

Richard III., 1483: he waded to the throne through the blood of his nearest relations; his private character was detestable; but, as a king, he managed the helm with success, being valiant and prudent. The Earl of Richmond asserted his superior right to the throne; Richard was killed at the battle of Bosworth, and Richmond proclaimed king. Contemporaries to Richard III., the same, the two last kings reigned so short a time. From 1483 to 1485.

Henry VII., 1485: he was prudent and avaricious. One quarter of the globe was discovered in his reign, by Columbus. Henry suppressed the insurrections occasioned by Perkin Warbeck and Lambert Symnel; protected the people; humbled the power of his barons; and left his kingdom in a flourishing condition. Contemporaries to Henry VII.:—Frederick III. and Maximilian of Germany; Bajazet II. of the Turks; Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; Charles VIII. and Louis XII. of France; John of Denmark and Sweden; and James III. and James IV. of Scotland. From 1485 to 1509.

Henry VIII., 1509: he separated from the Romish church, and was excommunicated; took the title of supreme head of the church of England, and dissolved the religious foundations.

Calvin and Luther, the reformers, lived; the famous Wolsey exercised unlimited power, as prime minister. Henry encouraged the arts and sciences; was cruel and tyrannical: married six wives, and beheaded two. Contemporaries to Henry VIII:—Charles V. of Germany and Spain; Louis XII. and Francis I. of France; Gustavus Vasa of Sweden; James IV. and James V. of Scotland. From 1509 to 1547.

Edward VI., 1547, had great natural abilities: Seymour, duke of Somerset, governed the kingdom during Edward's minority. He encouraged the Reformation, and died very young, leaving the crown to the accomplished Lady Jane Grey, his cousin, she being a Protestant. Contemporaries to Edward VI.:—Charles V. of Germany; Henry II. of France; and Mary of Scotland. From 1547 to 1553.

Mary, 1553, succeeded, after deposing Jane Grey, who reigned only ten days, and was afterwards beheaded by Mary's order. Her reign was cruel, and stained with blood: she restored the Catholic religion; persecuted and burnt the Protestants; married Philip, king of Spain, son of the famous Charles V.; and died, after a short reign, stained with every kind of barbarity: Cardinal Pole and twelve bishops died of the same distemper that carried off this cruel queen. Contemporaries of Mary were the same. From 1553 to 1558.

Elizabeth, half-sister to Mary, and daughter of Anne Boleyn, 1558: she was prudent, accomplished, and skilled in the art of governing a mighty empire. The Spanish Armada was defeated by her admirals: she established the reformed religion; supported the Protestant interest abroad; and founded a university in Dublin. In her reign the East India Company was established; but her glory was tarnished by the unjust imprisonment and execution of her rival, the unfortunate Mary, queen of Scots. Contemporaries to Elizabeth:—Ferdinand I., Maximilian II., Rodolphus II., of Germany; Henry II., Charles IX., Henry III., and Henry IV., of France; Philip II. and Philip III., of Spain; Mary and James VI. of Scotland. From 1558 to 1603.

James I., of England, and VI. of Scotland, 1603, had high notions of kingly power; he was a learned pedant, and particularly attached to peace. The famous gunpowder plot was discovered by him. His reign was inglorious; stained with the death of Sir Walter Raleigh; and his favorites managed the affairs of the state with little reputation. Contemporary with James I. of England and Scotland:—Rodolphus II., Matthias I., Ferdinand II. of Germany; Henry IV. and Louis XII. of France;



Philip III. and Philip IV. of Spain and Portugal. From 1603 to 1625.

Charles I., 1625, received from his father the same unconstitutional ideas of royal prerogative: his people began to feel their own weight in the scale of empire, and refused to pay the taxes he imposed; a civil war ensued, Charles was defeated, taken prisoner, and beheaded by the parliament, in the year 1649. Contemporary to Charles:—Ferdinand II. and Ferdinand III. of Germany; Louis XIII. and Louis XIV. of France; Philip IV. of Spain; and John IV. of Portugal. From 1625 to 1649.


Oliver Cromwell then usurped the regal power, under the specious title of Protector of the Realm. He rose from a low station to the high office he at last attained; defeated the wandering son of Charles I.; reduced Ireland to obedience; regulated the jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery; raised the English name among foreign nations; and at his death ordered his son Richard to be declared the Protector: he died on the 3d of September, a day on which he had twice triumphed over his enemies, and was interred in Henry VII.'s chapel; his remains were exhumed, hung in chains at Tyburn, and buried under the gallows, but removed secretly, and supposed to have been again interred in the centre of Red Lion Square, London. From 1654 to 1658. *B*

Charles II. restored, through the instrumentality of Monk, and from Richard Cromwell's inefficiency, 1660. He was profligate and capricious, but reigned absolutely: his brother James, a Roman Catholic, was appointed his successor: many imaginary plots distinguish this reign, in which Algernon Sydney and Lord Russell were executed. Contemporary with Charles II.:—Leopold of Germany; Louis XIV. of France; Philip IV. and Charles II. of Spain; and Charles XI. of Sweden. From 1661 to 1685.

James II., 1685, determined to abolish the Protestant religion, and substitute his own will for the law of the land: he was reconciled to the pope; but the nation resisted his attempts, called the Prince of Orange to the throne, and compelled James to abdicate. He died at St. Germain-en-Laye, in France. Contemporary with James II., the same as Charles II. From 1685 to 1688.

William III., and Mary, (daughter of James II.,) 1688. In this reign France was humbled: the Bill of Rights sanctioned by parliament; the laws generally revised; and the Court of Marches, in Wales, abolished. Contemporary with William III.:

—Leopold of Germany; Louis XIV. of France; Charles II. and Philip V. of Spain; Charles XII. of Sweden; and Peter the Great of Russia. From 1688 to 1702.

Anne, daughter of James II., ascended the throne in 1702; her reign was brief but brilliant; the victories gained by her army, under Marlborough, at Blenheim, Oudenard, Malplaquet, and Ramillies, humbled the pride of Louis XIV., but added little more than military renown to British interests. In this reign took place the legislative union of England and Scotland: now also arose the political distinction of Tory and Whig; and from the number of elegant writers who were contemporaries with queen Anne, her reign is called the Augustan age of literature. Contemporaries of Anne:—Leopold, Joseph I., and Charles VI. of Germany; Louis XIV. of France; Philip V. of Spain; Charles XII. of Sweden; and Frederick I. of Prussia. Reigned from 1702 to 1714. 

George I., elector of Hanover, 1714. He was wise, prudent, and cautious in choosing his ministers. In 1715, the Pretender's rebellion broke out; and the South Sea Scheme, which ruined thousands, occurred in this reign. Contemporaries with George I., the same as Anne. From 1714 to 1727.

George II., 1727. Another rebellion, 1745, ended in the total defeat of the Pretender at Culloden. North America became dependent on Britain; English arms everywhere victorious; Walpole and Chatham successively prime ministers. He was succeeded by his grandson. Contemporaries of George II.:—Charles VII. and Francis I. of Germany; Louis XV. of France; Philip V., Ferdinand VI., and Charles III. of Spain; Frederick II. and Frederick III. of Prussia; and Catharine of Russia. From 1727 to 1760.

George III., 1760. He was the son of Frederick, Prince of Wales, and grandson of George II. In this reign the American war broke out, and ended in the separation of those countries called "the United States" from England. In the East Indies vast accessions of territory were acquired, greater in extent than those lost in America. In 1800 the legislative union of Ireland with Great Britain was effected, by which the Irish parliament was closed, and the Irish representatives allowed seats in the imperial parliament. The victories of the Nile and Trafalgar, in the latter of which the gallant Nelson fell, completely destroyed the naval resources of Napoleon, and saved England from invasion. In 1811, owing to the mental infirmity of the king, his son the Prince of Wales was appointed regent, and his regency has been rendered one of the most

memorable eras in British history, by the battle of Waterloo, fought on the 18th of June, 1815, in which Napoleon the Great was completely defeated by Arthur, Duke of Wellington. George III. died on the 29th of January, 1820, having reigned just sixty years. Contemporaries of George III.:—Francis I. and Francis II. of Germany; Louis XV. and Louis XVI. of France; the overthrow of the French monarchy, and other events mentioned elsewhere; Charles IV. and Ferdinand VII. of Spain; Paul and Alexander of Russia; Washington, Jefferson, Adams, and Monroe, presidents of the United States. From 1760 to 1820.

George IV. succeeded his father in 1820, his regency having lasted nine years. Both his regency and reign owe all their lustre to the Duke of Wellington, all their blemishes to the king's selfish character. His daughter and only child, the Princess Charlotte, was married to Leopold of Saxe-Coburg, (afterwards king of Belgium,) but died in giving birth to a first child. When he had attained an advanced age, he caused his consort, (who was also his cousin,) queen Caroline, to be impeached of high crimes, &c., but, after a long and disreputable trial before the Lords, she was acquitted. This unhappy princess soon after died of grief. In this reign the ex-emperor Napoleon died in exile at St. Helena, and was interred on the island, from which, however, his remains were removed, nineteen years after his decease, and entombed in the church of the Hospital of Invalids in Paris. It was in George IV.'s reign that the Roman Catholics were emancipated by the recommendation and by the influence of the Duke of Wellington. Contemporaries of George IV.:—Louis XVIII. and Charles X. of France; Alexander of Russia; Frederick IV. of Prussia; Ferdinand VII. of Spain. The war between the Carlists and the queen's party, to place the daughter of Ferdinand on the throne; Adams, (John Quincy,) and Jackson, presidents of the United States; Pope Pius VII. From 1820 to 1830.

William IV., the third son of George III., succeeded his eldest brother in 1830. This short reign was disturbed by political dissensions between Whigs and Tories, in which he acted with impartiality. It was during this reign that the grant of twenty millions sterling was made by parliament, for the total abolition of the slave-trade; and in the year 1832, Lord Grey, then prime minister, succeeded, after a violent struggle of parties, in carrying the Reform Bill: the object of this measure was the extension of the elective franchise, and opening the House of Commons to what was then called the popular party. Con-



temporaries of William IV.:—Alexander and Nicholas I. of Russia; Frederick IV. of Prussia; Charles X. and Louis Philippe I. of the house of Orleans, of France; Jackson and Van Buren, presidents of the United States; Pope Gregory X. From 1830 to 1837.

Victoria, 1837, only child of the Duke of Kent, fourth son of George III., succeeded her uncle William IV., at the early age of eighteen years. Excluded by the Salic law from the throne of Hanover, that trust devolved upon her uncle Ernest, Duke of Cumberland. Her majesty espoused Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg on the 10th of February, 1840, and in 1841 gave birth to a prince, her second child, who is Duke of Cornwall by inheritance, and Prince of Wales by creation. In this reign Whig and Tory distinctions were revived; the two Canadas were united; poor-laws introduced into Ireland; the first stone laid of a new Parliament House, and of a Royal Exchange in London, which had both been destroyed by fire; the dockyards of Devonport and Woolwich discovered to be on fire, and the armory of the Tower of London burned down. Her majesty's naval forces were employed, in conjunction with the allied European sovereigns, in rescuing Syria from Mehemet Ali, the pacha of Egypt, and in making war upon the Chinese for having excluded British vessels from their ports. The English brought the Chinese government to terms, and secured to Christians many privileges, which until that time they had not enjoyed in China. Contemporary with Victoria:—Pope Gregory X.; Louis Philippe of France; Isabella of Spain; Nicholas of Russia; Frederick IV. of Prussia; Harrison, Tyler, and Polk, presidents of the United States.

# AN ABSTRACT OF THE SCOTTISH REIGNS,

FROM FERGUJ THE FIRST, THE FOUNDER OF THE SCOTTISH THRONE,  
TO MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS.

A manly race,  
Of unsubmitting spirit, wise, and brave,  
Trained up to hardy deeds, soon visited  
By learning, when before the Gothic rage  
She took her western flight.

THOMSON'S AUTUMN.

WHEN are the Scots and Picts first spoken of in history? In the fifth century: the former inhabited the eastern shores of Scotland, as far south as the Frith of Forth, and as far north as the island extended. The name of Picts seems to have been given them by the Romans, from the habit of staining their bodies when going to battle: the term *picti* signifies *painted*. They were probably of Gothic origin, though some think they were descendants of the ancient Caledonians, who were Celts mingled with Gothic settlers. The Scots were of Irish origin: a colony of this people, from Ulster, the northern province of Ireland, settled on the coast of Argyleshire, under Fergus, who had been called over to assist the Scots against the Picts and Britons, about the year 330 B. C., and gradually occupied the whole of the western coast of Scotland. This prince was lost at sea, off Carrickfergus in Ireland, which bears his name.

Twenty-five pagan kings ruled Scotland from the death of Fergus to the reign of Donald the First, A. D. 199, who was the first Scottish king converted to Christianity, and it was he also who made his subjects first acquainted with money coined from precious metals. During this reign Caledonia was invaded by Severus, who built a boundary wall to the Roman provinces from the Frith of Forth to that of Clyde.

Fergus II. succeeded Eugenius, in the year 404. Having lived abroad and in retirement during twenty-seven years, (according to the Black-book of Paisley,) he returned to aid in expelling the Romans, accompanied by Dunstan, king of the

Picts, and Dionethus a Briton. He long and successfully opposed the enemy, but was at last slain fighting against Maximianus : Dunstan his friend shared his fate, but Dionethus effected his escape, not however before he had received a grievous wound. Fergus II., founder of the kingdom of the Scots, possessed piety, courage, and abilities : he reigned honorably for sixteen years, and was a benefactor of his country.

After a long and sanguinary struggle between these two people, in which Drushenus, the Pictish king, was slain, Kenneth II., king of the Scots, finally ascended the Pictish throne in 833, and united both states into one kingdom, comprising the whole country north of the wall of Antonine : the routed Picts found an asylum in England.

Gregory, the seventy-third king, ascended the throne in 875. He was justly entitled to his surname "the Great." He subdued the Picts, vanquished the Danes, putting Hardicanute, their king, to flight, in Northumberland : defeated and slew Constantine king of the Britons, in the battle of Lochmaben ; chastised the Irish, who had invaded Galloway, and added Cumberland and Westmoreland to his dominions. He died in 892, after a glorious and most exemplary reign of eighteen years. It was not for his military abilities alone that he was admired by foreign princes, for it was his reputation for learning, wisdom, and justice that led Alfred the Great to court his friendship.

Malcolm II., "the victorious," eighty-third king, ascended the throne in 1004 : he repelled the Danes, improved the laws, and formed a titled aristocracy. After a splendid reign of thirty years, he became suddenly sordid and unjust, and was assassinated by his attendants as he slept.

Duncan, 1033. A prince of pacific temper, and great virtues : he was treacherously murdered by Macbeth, his general, and distinguished friend.

Macbeth, 1040. This tyrant usurped the throne to the prejudice of Malcolm, son of Duncan, who, with his younger brother Donaldblain, took refuge in England. Macbeth's reign was short as cruel, being killed in a war with the English, who armed in favor of Duncan's children.

Malcolm III., 1057, long an exile in England, ascended the throne of his ancestors upon the death of Macbeth : he introduced among the Scots the custom of giving surnames ; and, during the crusades, assisted Godfrey, Earl of Boulogne, in the reduction of Jerusalem. This wise and valiant monarch was killed, with one of his sons, at the siege of Alnwick.



Donaldblain, or Donald VII., 1092, uncle to Malcolm III. : his reign was short, being dethroned by Duncan, natural son of Malcolm.

Duncan II., 1094. The transient authority which this prince possessed was marked chiefly by his vices : he died without children.

Edgar, 1096, son of Malcolm III., was a good king, and cherished the interests of his subjects.

On the death of Edgar, his brother Alexander I., surnamed Acer, the Sharp, succeeded 1107. The early years of his life and reign were marked by rude and boisterous conduct, but repenting of his folly and ferocity he turned his thoughts to works of peace. Under this new feeling he built the church of St. Michael at Scone, and founded a monastery there : driven by a tempest to Æmona Isle, in gratitude for his preservation, and for his maintenance by the hermits, he dedicated a church there to St. Columb : he also enriched the monks of St. Andrew's, and completed Dunfermline church, which his father had begun. He had espoused the princess Sibylla, daughter of William the Norman, but left no issue.

David I., contemporary with Stephen, king of England, 1124. His valor was unquestioned, and his liberality to churchmen great : he compiled a code of Scottish laws, built many religious edifices, and reigned gloriously.

Malcolm IV., 1153, grandson of David. His actions are little celebrated, and his reign is chiefly memorable for the origin of the power engrossed by the Stuart family ; Walter, one of the king's courtiers, being appointed seneschal, or steward of Scotland, from which employment his descendants derived their family name.

William, surnamed the Lion, 1165, was frequently at war with England ; and being taken prisoner at the battle of Alnwick, by Henry II., that monarch refused to release him till he had done homage in his own name, and those of his successors.

Alexander II., 1214, son of William the Lion : he was often at war with the Norwegians, who invaded the Scottish isles.

Alexander III., 1249 : a prince of great virtues. In this reign the Norwegians were completely defeated, and obliged to retire from the isles. Alexander's issue failing, the crown was claimed by the descendants of David, Earl of Huntingdon, brother to William the Lion.

1285. An interregnum of some years succeeded, whilst the rival candidates asserted their claims, all descended from David

in different degrees of affinity. Of twelve competitors, the most distinguished were John Baliol, great-grandson to David, by his eldest daughter; and Robert Bruce, grandson by the youngest. The nobles agreeing to refer the decision of this question to Edward I., of England, he adjudged the throne to Baliol, as his vassal, and treacherously asserted English supremacy.

John Baliol, 1299, was more the creature of Edward than a monarch possessing uncontrollable authority. Gilbert de Umfraville, Earl of Angus, and William Wallace, were the foremost of the few who ventured still to assert the independence of Scotland, refusing subjection to Baliol, as the deputy of Edward. Soon after this, Baliol, upon the most frivolous pretences, was dethroned by the English king, and, retiring into England, lived in obscurity upon a pension.

Robert Bruce, 1306. On the death of his ancestor (one of the candidates for the throne) Robert entertained jealous fears of William Wallace, but the forces of William engaging with Edward I.'s army, at Falkirk, were defeated, and their leader suffered death. Robert, upon this, engaged the Scots in his own interest, the nobles seated him upon the throne, and he was afterwards known as the Bruce of Bannockburn, by his signal defeat of Edward II.; a victory still remembered by the Scots with triumph. The remainder of Robert's reign was a series of uninterrupted successes.

David Bruce, or David II., 1329, son of Robert; his minority was disturbed by Edward, son of John Baliol, who, assisted by Edward III., seized the throne, and compelled David to retire into France. The nobles, however, disgusted with the conduct of young Baliol, reinstated David. Some years after the Scottish king invaded England, in the absence of its prince; he was made prisoner at the battle of Neville's Cross, near Durham, and detained eleven years in captivity in the castle of Odiham, but afterwards ransomed. Leaving no issue, the crown was claimed by the Stuart family.

Robert Stuart, 1370, the descendant of Walter, seneschal of Scotland, claimed in right of his affinity by marriage to the daughter of David Bruce, being then only Baron of Renfrew. He was a prince of uncommon abilities and prudence.

Robert III., 1390, son of Robert Stuart, was weak in intellect, and deficient in courage. He committed the toils of government to his brother, the Duke of Albany, who took every method to aggrandize his own family. Robert's second son, James, was detained prisoner in England, on his way to France; during the nineteen years he spent in that country, his father's

dominions were subject to repeated commotions, and his eldest brother was assassinated by the Duke of Albany's command. Robert soon after died, oppressed with age and misfortunes.

James I., 1423. This prince had seen in foreign courts the different systems of jurisprudence, and endeavored, by abridging the power of the nobles, to assert the just prerogatives of the crown: but though he understood the principles of government admirably, the nation was not prepared to receive them: and in the struggle for power, he was assassinated by some of the nobility, in a monastery near Perth, whither he had retired. James instituted the office of lords of session.

James II., 1437, pursued his father's plan of humbling the nobility; and seconded by his ministers, aimed at restoring tranquillity and justice; but himself the slave of turbulent passions, he stabbed William, Earl of Douglas, to the heart, in a sudden fit of anger; and taking advantage of the weakness betrayed by the next earl, he proceeded to the ruin of his family, and declared his intention to subvert the feudal law; but the splinter of a cannon-ball, at the siege of Roxburgh castle, put an end to his schemes and life, at the early age of thirty.

James III., 1460: he, with inferior abilities, embraced the same object, neglecting those of high birth, and lavishing his favors and affection upon a few court sycophants. The exasperated nobles flew to arms; James met them in battle, his army was routed, and himself slain.

James IV., 1488, was generous, accomplished, and brave: war was his passion; and, adored by a people who wished, by attachment to his person, to expiate their offences to his father, he led a gallant army on to the invasion of England: the battle of Flodden Field proved the superior skill of the English; and James, with thirty noblemen of the highest rank, and an infinite number of barons, fell in the contest; leaving an infant of a year old to wield the Scottish sceptre.

James V., 1513. The Duke of Albany, his near relation, was declared regent; but the king, at thirteen, assumed the reins of government; he had a great but uncultivated mind, and while he repressed the consequence of the nobles, he protected commerce, and reformed the courts of justice. The reformed clergy in Scotland now first launched their thunders against the papal see, though without the concurrence of James. Quarrelling with Henry VIII., he assembled an army; the barons, piqued at his contempt of them, reluctantly complied with his summons; and, more intent upon retaliating their injuries than anxious for their own glory, suffered themselves to



be shamefully defeated. James felt this affront so keenly, that he died of grief.

Mary, queen of Scots, daughter of James V. and Mary of Guise, succeeded in 1542, when only a few days old. She was educated in France; and in her minority, the Earl of Arran and Mary of Guise were successively regents. Mary, who had espoused Francis II. of France, upon his death returned to govern her native country: she then married the Earl of Darnley, but soon disgusted with his conduct, was privy to his violent death, and immediately affianced to Bothwell, his murderer: the nobles, incensed to the highest degree, rose against her, and being taken prisoner, she was compelled to sign a resignation of the crown, in favor of her son. Escaping from custody, she fled into England, where Elizabeth, betraying the confidence reposed in her by Mary, unjustly sentenced her to death. The beauty, misfortunes, and we may add the crimes, of this celebrated woman, have rendered the annals of her reign peculiarly interesting.

James VI., 1567, only son of Mary, by the Earl of Darnley; he reigned long before his mother's death. In this period he diminished the power of the church, now declared Protestant by act of parliament, and married the daughter of the Danish king. Upon the death of his relation, Elizabeth of England, he ascended her throne; and the histories of Scotland and England have since been inseparable.

# AN ABSTRACT

## OF THE

### REIGNS OF THE FRENCH KINGS,

FROM PHARAMOND, FOUNDER OF THE MONARCHY, TO PHILIP I.,  
CONTEMPORARY WITH WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

Turn we,  
To vigorous soils, and climes of fair extent,  
Where by the potent sun, elated high,  
The vineyard swells refulgent to the day.

THOMSON.

A CONFEDERACY of German tribes, having conquered the Lombards, assumed the name of Franks, (the Free.)

Pharamond, first king of the French, in the year of our Lord 420 : he was famed as a warrior and politician.

Clodion, son of Pharamond, 428, was continually at war with the Romans, and lost several battles.

Merovee, first of the Merovingians, 447. The annals of his reign are lost in clouds of mist and obscurity, and history says little about him. The name of Gaul was now finally exchanged for that of France.

Childeric I., son of Merovee, 458 ; he abandoned himself entirely to his pleasures, and the French lords uniting to dethrone him, Count Giles was chosen king in his stead ; but upon his promise of better conduct, he was recalled, and again seated upon the throne.

Clovis I., of the Merovingian race, 481. In his reign Christianity became the religion of the state ; he performed many great exploits ; founded several churches and monasteries ; and published the Salic laws : he was famed for his valor, but it was tinged with inhumanity. He extinguished the Roman dominion in Gaul by the victory of Soissons, in 486, over the Roman general Syagrius ; reduced the Alemanni, Bretons, and Visigoths ; extended his dominions from the mouth of the Rhine to Toulouse ; and made *Lutetia*, or Paris, his capital. He had been converted to Christianity by his wife Clotilda, daughter of Childeric, whom he married in 493 ; and he crowned himself at Rheims, when he was anointed with the miraculous oil, said to

have been brought down from heaven by a dove, whence his successors received from the pope the title of "Most Christian King," and "eldest son of the church." He died in 511, and is interred in the church of St. Genevieve, in Paris.

Childebert I., son of Clovis, 511. He laid the foundation of Notre Dame, a celebrated church at Paris; reigned with wisdom and moderation, and was universally regretted by his people.

Clotaire I. succeeded his brother Childebert, 558, having before shared in the government. He was a cruel barbarian, killed two of his nephews, and aimed at the life of the third: his reign was one continued scene of horrors and murders.

Caribert, son of Clotaire, 562. This prince having raised, successively, to a share in his throne, two females of the lowest birth, the Bishop of Paris thought proper to excommunicate him. Caribert had a taste for literature, and some historians represent him as a good king.

Chilperic I., brother of Caribert, 567. This prince, for his repeated cruelties, was called the Nero of France: he loaded his subjects with taxes, and many on this account were compelled to quit their native soil. He at last met with the just recompense of his crimes, and was assassinated.

Clotaire II., 584. He was victorious over the Saxons, and reigned successfully.

Dagobert I., 628, succeeded his father Clotaire. He was enslaved by superstition, and bestowed great part of his revenues upon the monks, who, as a recompense, loaded him with flattery.

Clovis II., son of Dagobert, 638. In this reign France was afflicted with a great famine, and the king, to remove the necessities of the poor, caused the gold and silver ornaments, with which the tombs of the nobility were decorated, to be sold, and the money distributed among them.

Clotaire III., 660. In this reign, and the two preceding it, the power assumed by the mayors of the palace (or chief ministers) was so excessive, that the kings were merely the tools of profligate and ambitious men, who, under this title, bore the supreme sway.

Childeric II., 668. A weak and irresolute prince: his counsels quickly fell into contempt.

Thierry I., 673. The mayors of the palace, in this reign, usurped the regal power, and the only shadow of royalty he possessed was the title of king.

Clovis III., son of Thierry, 690. This prince died at the age of fourteen, and performed no action worth recording.



Childebert II., 695. He was surnamed the Just, and exercised the confined authority allowed him by the mayors, in such a manner as to gain the hearts of his people.

Dagobert II., 711. He was twelve years of age when he ascended the throne, and died at the age of seventeen, leaving only one son, who was judged by the mayors of the palace unfit to support the weight of government, and therefore set aside by them.

Clotaire IV., 718, reigned only one year ; his indolence was such that he never interfered in the affairs of state, but left all to his ministers.

Chilperic II., 719. He emerged from that indolence in which the former Merovingian kings had been plunged ; and asserted his right to govern alone, against Charles Martel, a famous mayor of the palace, but with little success.

Thiery II., 721. During his minority Charles Martel continued to hold the sovereign authority, (while Thiery bore the name of king,) and distinguished himself by his wisdom and valor.

Childeric III., 743, surnamed the Simple, was the last of the Merovingian race. Charles, surnamed Martel, or the Hammer, from an iron mace which he bore in battle, died in this reign. He was mayor of the palace, and routed the Saracens with great slaughter at Poitiers. Pepin and Carloman, the sons of Charles, shared the supreme authority, and dethroned Childeric, who died in the monastery where he was confined.

Pepin, the Little, or Short, 760, son of Charles Martel, succeeded to the undivided authority, and was particularly distinguished in the history of the second or Carolingian race. He abolished the office of mayor of the palace, and governed alone. Pepin was a celebrated hero, and defeated the Saxons, Slavonians, and Bavarians.

Charlemagne and Carloman, the sons of Pepin, 768. Carloman soon quitted the throne, and assumed the benedictine habit ; Charlemagne then reigned alone. This great prince trod in the steps of his father ; literature and the sciences now dawned upon the nation ; and Roland, or Orlando, the celebrated French hero, flourished at this period. He extended his dominions from the Ebro to the Lower Elbe, the Soale, and the Raab ; from the North Sea and the Eyder to the Garigliano, in Naples. He was master of France, Germany, and Italy ; and wrested Spain from the Saracens. The emperors of Turkey and Persia sought his friendship ; the latter conferring upon him the lieutenancy of the Holy Land. In 800 he was proclaimed emperor of the West, and solemnly crowned by the pope.

Louis I., surnamed the Debonnaire, 814, the son of Charlemagne. He was weak and superstitious in the highest degree, was twice deposed and taken prisoner by his children; yet, upon being restored to the throne, he pardoned their offences. Soon after this he died; and his children, contending for empire, fought the first famous battle of Fontenoy, in which 100,000 French were killed. Under this prince the empire of Charlemagne fell to pieces.

Charles the Bald, grandson of Louis I., 840. By the treaty of Verdun, the separation of the German and Italian crowns from the French was completed, when Charles obtained France. The history of the kingdom of France, properly speaking, begins, therefore, with the treaty in 843. In this reign the Normans invaded and plundered France. Charles was hated by his subjects, had few virtues and many vices. He was poisoned by a Jewish physician, named Ledecias, in whom he placed great confidence.

Louis II., surnamed the Stammerer, 877. From this reign the kings of France ceased to possess the empire of Germany, acquired in that of Charlemagne. Louis lavished the honors and estates of the crown; and his abilities were by no means adequate to his high station.

Louis III., and Carloman, the children of Louis the Stammerer, 879; they reigned jointly with great harmony. The Normans again ravaged the French provinces, but were attacked and defeated by the brothers. Louis died first, and Carloman did not long survive, being mortally wounded by one of his servants, who was aiming a javelin at a boar.

Charles the Fat, 884, emperor of Germany, was invited to accept the French monarchy. He was pious and devout; but wanting abilities and resolution, incurred the contempt of his people, and was declared incapable of holding the reins of government. He reunited, for a short time, the dominions of Charlemagne, but his subjects unanimously revolted, and a few months of disease and misery (in which he was compelled to beg his bread) were followed by his death.

Eudes, 888, was elected after the death of Charles: his reign was short, turbulent, and glorious. He resigned the throne to Charles the Simple, son of Louis the Stammerer; and died shortly after, beloved and regretted.

Charles the Simple, 898: he obtained this degrading name from the little improvement he made of the victories he gained over the Duke of Lorraine. Rollo, the famous Norman chief, took the city of Rouen. Charles's people deserted him, and

set up a new king, called Rodolph, or Randolph. Charles died in captivity.

Rodolph, who had been crowned before the death of Charles, succeeded 924. He defeated the Normans and Hungarians. After his death France was again divided by rival claimants.

Louis IV., son of Charles the Simple, 936 ; he seized upon Normandy, and promised Hugh, Count of Paris, to share it with him, but having broken his word, Hugh became his enemy. His army was afterwards routed by the Danes ; Louis was carried prisoner to Rouen, and committed to the custody of Hugh, who obliged him to enter Normandy, and restore it again to Richard, the lawful possessor.

Lothaire, son of Louis, 964 : he possessed courage, activity, and vigilance. Hugh, Count of Paris, having ceded his rights to the throne, Lothaire gratefully acknowledged the favor, by bestowing upon him the province of Aquitaine. Hugh died in this reign, leaving a son, who was afterwards the renowned Hugh Capet. Lothaire is said to have been poisoned by his queen.

Louis V., surnamed the Slothful, 986 : he reigned only one year, and was poisoned. Hugh Capet had been appointed his governor, but the wise counsels of Hugh were totally thrown away upon this headstrong prince, who was hated for his vices, and despised for his folly. He was the last of the Carolingian race.

Hugh Capet, the powerful duke of the Isle of France, Count of Paris and Orleans, was raised by the nobility to the throne, 987. His reign was happy and glorious. His people felt and admired his virtues ; and he transmitted to his son a peaceful and undivided inheritance.

Robert, the son of Hugh Capet, succeeded 996. France experienced the sad effects of a dreadful famine in this reign. The pope threatened to excommunicate Robert for marrying Bertha, who was related to his father. His sons rebelled, instigated by their mother, but he compromised matters with them, and died highly regretted.

Henry I., son of Robert, 1031 : he was brave, pious, and had many other good qualities. The custom of duelling was so prevalent in this reign, that Henry enacted a severe law to put a stop to it. His people were frequently led out to war ; for as he was jealous of the Normans, he tried every method to check their conquests.

Philip I., contemporary with William the Conqueror, 1060. Baldwin, Count of Flanders, was regent in his minority. Ava-



rice, perfidy, and ingratitude were the striking features in this king's character. The crusades for the recovery of the Holy Land from the Saracens were preached up in this reign, by Peter the Hermit. Philip's quarrels with William of England were frequent, and their issue bloody. In the latter part of his life, Philip abandoned himself wholly to voluptuous pleasures; and, guided by his queen, an ambitious and wicked woman, incurred the just hatred of his subjects.

---

## CONTINUATION

OF THE

## FRENCH REIGNS,

FROM LOUIS VI. TO THE PRESENT TIME.

LOUIS VI., surnamed the Gross, assumed the government in 1108, on the death of his father, Philip. He had all the qualities necessary to form a good king. He granted charters of incorporation to large towns, as a counterbalance to the feudal lords: he caused schools to be opened in all convents, and established local militia. He challenged Henry I. of England to single combat, to save greater effusion of blood, but his invitation being declined, he encountered and defeated the English in the field of battle. Henry now sought the aid of his son-in-law, the emperor of Germany, but Louis displayed the oriflamme, or banner of St. Denis, round which the nation rallied, and deterred the invaders. On his death-bed he is said to have delivered his ring to his son, with these words: "May the power with which you will shortly be invested be considered as a sacred trust, committed to you by Providence, and for which you must be accountable in a future state." In this reign the free cities arose, bondage gradually disappeared, and prepared the way for the civil existence of the people.

Louis VII., surnamed the Young, to distinguish him from his father, whose authority he had shared, ascended the throne, 1137. He commanded a fine army, the flower of France, in the Holy Land; but disease, and the calamities of war, had so decreased it, that on his return, only the shattered remains

accompanied him. During the absence of Louis, his kingdom suffered all the miseries of depopulation. He was continually embroiled with England, and his own barons. In this reign the troubadours, a kind of wandering French poets, resembling the Welsh bards, first appeared.

Philip II., surnamed Augustus, 1180. He engaged in the crusades with Richard I. of England. The monarchs quarrelled; and on his return home, Philip attacked Richard's French dominions. He defeated the Emperor Otho, and the Earl of Flanders, at Bouvines, banished the Jews from France, and curbed the influence of the clergy. He then endeavored to reform the manners of his people, protected and embellished those cities that acknowledged his sway, and released the people from the oppression of the soldiery. The orders of Dominicans and Franciscans were established, and this was the Philip who engaged in the cause of Arthur, Duke of Bretagne, against John, king of England.

Louis VIII., son of Philip, 1223. He reigned only three years, and in that time dispossessed the English of some lands in France. He is said to have died by poison; and left in his will legacies to 2,000 leprous persons, as that disorder then raged dreadfully.

Louis IX., the Saint, son of Louis VIII., 1226. He was a good but unfortunate prince. Undertaking an expedition to the Holy Land, he was defeated, and made prisoner by the Saracens: he might have escaped, but nobly disdained to forsake his subjects in their distress. On his return, after being ransomed, he foolishly resolved to engage in another crusade; and, besieging Tunis in person, fell a victim to the plague. His confessor, Robert de Sorbon, instituted the University at Paris, called the Sorbonne, which afterwards became the most famous theological school in Europe. By the introduction of a new administration of justice, he gave new power to the crown.

Philip III., surnamed the Hardy, 1270. He continued the wars against the infidels, till he compelled the king of Tunis to sue for peace. Thus ended the crusades, in which 2,000,000 men had been at different times engaged. In this reign was perpetrated that massacre of the French called the Sicilian Vespers: Philip conciliated the friendship of the English Edward I., and engaged in frequent wars with the Sicilians, in order to support the claims of his son to that throne. A general corruption of manners scandalously prevailed at this period; and the Albigenses, who dwelt in the south of France, were now most inhumanly persecuted: the introduction of letters of

nobility in this reign, was another blow to the already declining power of the nobles.

Philip IV., (Le Bel,) 1285. This prince continued the war with England, and joined Baliol, king of Scotland, against Edward. Philip was perpetually embroiled with Pope Boniface VIII., and Guy, Count of Flanders; he gained a decisive victory over the latter. The introduction of the Third Estate, a deputation of the cities, in the general assemblies of the clergy and nobility, was an important measure of this king; with the assistance of these feudal estates, Philip resisted the interdict of Boniface and the clergy. In this reign many of the Knights Templars, with their grand-master, were burnt alive at Paris, in presence of the king; an act characteristic of an age in which justice was the victim of power: and the Swiss asserted their independence, by the three cantons of Switz, Uri, and Underwald, throwing off the Austrian yoke.

Louis X., surnamed Hutin, 1314. He strangled his queen, on account of her repeated enormities, and espoused Clemence, daughter of the king of Hungary. On his accession, finding the treasury in an exhausted state, he accused Marigni, who had been his father's minister, as the source of the national necessities, and Louis seized upon his fortune to defray the expenses of the coronation: this unfortunate nobleman in vain endeavored to vindicate his honor; he was condemned to expire on a gibbet; and the king, after a short reign of two years, died by poison, given him by the friends of Marigni.

Philip V., surnamed the Young, succeeded his brother, by virtue of the Salic law, which excluded the daughter of Louis, in 1316. A contagious disorder raged in France, and the superstitious people imputed it to the Jews having poisoned the waters. Philip's kingdom was torn by faction; and he died, after a short reign of six years.

Charles IV., 1322. This prince was the last of the Capetine line. He expelled the Lombards and Italians from his dominions, for their extortion; and countenanced Isabella, of England, the queen of Edward II., (and the sister of Charles,) in her opposition to her husband and his favorites. Charles tried unsuccessfully to reunite the kingdoms of France and Germany. He had neither shining talents nor great vices.

Philip VI., the first of the line of Valois, 1328. Edward III., of England, asserted his claim to the French crown; Philip, however, succeeded, by the Salic law, and called upon Edward to do him homage; but receiving no satisfactory reply, he seized upon Edward's French territories, who, to recover his dominions,



performed the subjection required. Discontents were again renewed, and the English, in a naval engagement, took 230 of the French ships: Philip also lost 30,000 seamen, and two admirals. Four years after was fought the memorable battle of Cressy; and Hugh, Count of Dauphiné, annexed his dominions to the French crown, on condition that the king's eldest son should bear the title of Dauphin.

John, surnamed the Good, succeeded his father, 1350. This prince was very unfortunate in his wars with England: in the battle of Poitiers he and his son Philip were taken prisoners, and the French army totally routed. On promise of paying a ransom, amounting to 4,000,000 of gold crowns, resigning Guienne and other provinces, he was permitted, after four years' captivity, to revisit his native soil; when he found that the miseries of his people had been heightened by civil commotions, the consequence of his son's inexperience; France was plundered by banditti, and the Jacquerie, a mass of furious peasantry, in 1358, satiated their spirit of vengeance in the blood of the nobility. A pestilence carried off 30,000 of his subjects; and bowed down by calamity, he returned to expire in England.

Charles V., the Wise, son of John, 1364. Du Guesclin, his constable, the celebrated French commander, lived in this reign, and after the death of Edward, and the Black Prince, retook most of the English possessions in France, and restored order for a short period. Charles died in the prime of life, from the effects of poison.

Charles VI., 1380, son of the late king. He labored under an unfortunate imbecility of mind, caused by a fright he received. The war with England was renewed: the gallant De Courcy fought on the French side; but the battle of Agincourt gave the English a decided superiority. Henry V., their king, gave his hand to Catharine, the French king's daughter. Charles shortly after died, in 1422, abandoned by his subjects, who directed their attention to Henry of England, his expected successor. This was the epoch of the Armagners: a civil war of the crown vassals, conducted by Orleans and Burgundy, was sustained by assassination, and the succession settled upon Henry V., of England, to the exclusion of the Dauphin, afterwards king Charles VII.

Henry VI. of England, upon the death of his father was proclaimed king of France, when only nine months old, 1422; but at this time, amidst the licentiousness of war, of factions, and of manners, a peasant girl animated the French in the cause of the

Dauphin; this was the famous Joan of Arc, Maid of Orleans, who, assisting and heading the dispirited troops of Charles the Dauphin, by which the English were defeated, obliged Henry to relinquish his claim; and Charles, the Dauphin, ascended the throne of his ancestors, by the title of Charles VII.

Charles VII., surnamed the Victorious, 1436. When the rage of civil war had abated, he endeavored to regulate the disordered finances, and restore commerce. He deprived the English of their dominions in France; but experienced a series of domestic calamities, occasioned by the intrigues and daring spirit of his son, (afterwards Louis XI.,) who proceeded to acts of open rebellion against him. Charles, suspecting Louis of intentions to poison him, refused all nourishment for some days; he fell a victim to his distrust, and died in that deplorable situation. Charles was the first king who instituted a standing army, 1444.

Louis XI. succeeded, 1461. The title of Most Christian King was given him by the pope, though little suited to his character; as he was dreaded by all his subjects, and hated by his neighbors. This prince assisted the famous Earl of Warwick with a fleet and army, to restore Henry VI., of England, to his throne. After Henry's death Louis ransomed Margaret of Anjou from Edward IV. The French monarchy became absolute in this reign. Charles, Duke of Burgundy, was the constant opposer of this ambitious king, whose oppression and barbarities must shock every heart not dead to the feelings of humanity. The motto, a maxim of this cruel prince, was *Dissimuler c'est regner*. The 280 years' quarrel with the house of Strasburg, which obtained the inheritance of Burgundy, on the death of Charles the Bald, originated in this reign.

Charles VIII., 1483, being in his minority, Anne, eldest daughter of Louis XI., was chosen regent: she possessed strong powers of mind and great prudence. Charles on his marriage with Anne of Bretagne, which accomplished the union of that duchy with Nantes, took the cares of state upon him; and complying with the entreaties of the ambitious Ludovico Sforza, he attempted the conquest of Naples, whose king was oppressed by age and infirmities, as heir of Anjou. The French king besieged that city in person, defeated the Neapolitans, and obliged their monarch (Ferdinand II.) to fly: he soon, however, by force of arms, regained his throne, and Charles died not long after. He was the last king of the house of Valois.

Louis XII., surnamed the Father of his People, 1498. He engaged in wars with the Venetians and Milanese. Ludovico

Sforza having usurped the government of Milan, Louis defeated and sentenced him to perpetual imprisonment. This king was beloved by his subjects, as he showed his clemency on many remarkable occasions, and repealed some severe taxes. He married the princess Mary of England, sister to Henry VIII.

Francis I., Count of Angoulême, who had married the daughter of the late king, ascended the throne, 1515. This is the era of French literature: Francis loved and encouraged the arts: he was brave to excess, in his own person, but his valor and ambition endangered the safety of his kingdom. He contended unsuccessfully for the German empire. The Duke of Bourbon, a powerful lord, who resented the indignities he had received from the king and his mother, joined Charles V., of Germany, and Henry VIII., of England, in a confederacy to place Charles V. upon the French throne. Francis, by his valor and address, delivered his kingdom from the threatened danger; but, being unable to perform the conditions insisted upon by Charles, after the fatal battle of Pavia, in which he said "he had lost every thing but his honor," he was engaged in a war with the emperor till his death.

Henry II., son of Francis, 1547. The reign of this prince was chiefly distinguished by his wars with Pope Julius II. and the emperor. Henry married Catherine de Medicis, daughter of the Duke of Urbino. The battle of Saint Quentin, fought with the Spaniards, was lost by the French; but Henry's celebrated general, the Duke of Guise, preserved the lustre of the French arms against the united powers of England, Spain, and Flanders. He took Calais from the English. Henry was unfortunately killed at a tournament, while celebrating the nuptials of the princess Elizabeth with Philip, king of Spain.

Francis II., son of Henry, 1559. The government of the kingdom, during this reign, was intrusted to Catherine de Medicis. The king married Mary, queen of Scots; and wholly guided by his mother, and his uncles the Guises, persecuted the Protestants, now known by the name of Huguenots. Worn out by the oppressions of the Catholic party, they at length took up arms; and this was the era of those dreadful civil, falsely termed religious wars, which desolated France, and stain with indelible infamy the rulers of the French nation. Francis died, after a short reign of two years. So little had the refinement of manners and the cultivation which flourished under Francis I., softened the ferocity of fanaticism, that Calvinists were burned at the stake. The foundation of the national debt, the weight of



which broke down the throne 250 years after, was laid at this period.

Charles IX., second son of Henry II., succeeded in his minority, 1560. Catherine de Medicis governed him; and, joining to great abilities boundless ambition and keen revenge, she prevailed upon the king to arm against the Protestants, whose growing numbers she dreaded. Civil wars followed: after which (on the memorable 24th August, 1572) began that horrid massacre, which extended through Paris, Lyons, Orleans, Rouen, Angers, and Toulouse. Thus, merely for difference in opinion, 30,000 Frenchmen were inhumanly put to death by their vindictive enemies. Charles, after this, concluded a peace with the Huguenots; and, a prey to severe remorse, and the effects of a dreadful disorder, he expired, being only twenty-three years of age.

Henry III., brother of Charles, 1574. He had been elected king of Poland; but on the death of Charles, the Poles chose another king. Henry, fond of pleasure, fickle, and irresolute, was governed by Catherine de Medicis. The civil wars were renewed between the Catholics and Protestants, one of which was called the Holy League, and headed by the Duke of Guise. Henry, fearing this nobleman had designs upon the crown, basely caused him to be assassinated, with his brother, the cardinal of Guise; and the king, shortly after, experienced the same fate, from the hands of Clement, the monk. The detestable Catherine de Medicis died just before her son, aged seventy.

Henry the Great, first of the house of Bourbon, 1589. He was bred a Protestant, and gallantly defended that cause when king of Navarre; but wishing to heal disturbances, and conciliate the affections of his people, in 1593 he went openly to mass, though he was always supposed to be attached to his old opinions. Soon after this he published the edict of Nantes, which granted to the Protestants the exercise of their religion, the enjoyment of their estates, and made them eligible to public offices. After a glorious reign, Henry was assassinated by Ravallac, a monk of the order of Jesuits, in the streets of Paris.

Louis XIII. succeeded his father, 1610, when only nine years of age. Mary of Medicis, his mother, was appointed regent; Cardinal de Retz, his minister: they renewed the civil wars, which had continued during the reigns of five princes, and destroyed nine cities, 400 villages, and 2,000 monasteries, by their horrid ravages. Upon the death of De Retz, Richelieu became

minister ; he humbled Spain, and the spirit of the French nobility, defeated the Huguenots, and checked the ambitious views of Austria ; to him Louis owed his authority, for on his own account the king was little feared or loved by his people.

Louis XIV. succeeded his father when only five years old, 1643. His mother, Anne of Austria, with Cardinal Mazarin, conducted public affairs. This reign was the longest, and in its first part the most splendid of any in the French annals. Turenne, and the Prince of Conde, multiplied the conquests of Louis, and obtained the most brilliant victories. Louis revoked the edict of Nantes, and granted protection to James II., king of England. After the death of Mazarin, Colbert became prime minister, whose exertions in his country's service are never to be forgotten. Louis was the munificent patron of the arts, and twice defeated William III., but Marlborough tore the laurels from his brow, and humbled his pride. He lived to see the English government in the hands of Charles I., Cromwell, Charles II., James II., William and Mary, Anne, and George I.

Louis XV. succeeded his great-grandfather, 1715. The Duke of Orleans was appointed regent, who endeavored to relieve the miseries of war, and restore commerce and agriculture. When the king became of age, the Duke of Bourbon and Cardinal Fleury were successively ministers. When Fleury died, Louis reigned alone, and, at the head of his army, obtained some signal victories in Flanders : a peace succeeded, and for seven years the arts and literature flourished in France. This king assisted the Pretender in his schemes upon England. The conclusion of his reign was unfortunate ; his people, exhausted by war, loudly murmured, but Louis was deaf to their complaints, and pursued his arbitrary measures till his death.

Louis XVI., 1774, grandson of the last king. Upon him fell the weight of those miseries which his predecessors had caused. At the commencement of his reign he endeavored to alleviate the distresses of his subjects ; but, guided by the suggestions of his queen, Marie Antoinette, his anxiety to preserve his absolute authority was the rock upon which he was shipwrecked. His people rebelled ; an ardent and active spirit pervaded all ranks ; Louis was compelled to submit to the conditions imposed by the National Assembly, who, not content with abolishing royalty, beheaded their king, January 21st, 1793 : his queen shared the same fate, October 16th, 1793. These executions, contrary to existing laws framed by the Convention themselves, cast an eternal stigma upon the French nation, and caused the friends of real liberty to mourn the barbarities and

excesses which have been committed by the abusers of that sacred name.

An era succeeded, marked by a political fanaticism, of which history affords no other example, and by crimes, the recital of which fills the mind with horror.

The powers of Europe raised a crusade against revolutionary France; but though anarchy ruled within, France repelled foreign armies, while the different parties in the National Convention proscribed, banished, and massacred each other. The government of the Directory succeeded, but was overthrown by Napoleon Bonaparte, who was elected consul for life in 1802. This extraordinary person so far won the affections of the nation, by the number and splendor of his victories in Italy, Spain, Holland, Belgium, that he converted the republic into an hereditary monarchy in 1804. When consul he reduced empires into republics; when emperor he elevated republics into empires: in 1812, he marched with an army of 400,000 men into Russia, and reached Moscow, the ancient capital of the Czars, only to witness its conflagration. A severe winter destroyed his army, but a few months saw him again at the head of 300,000 men, when he resisted the combined efforts of Europe. In 1814 Paris was occupied by the European powers, Louis XVIII. placed on the throne, and Napoleon withdrew, an exile, to the Island of Elba. In 1815, he again returned to Paris, (from which Louis XVIII. and his court fled with great precipitation,) at the head of the very army that had been sent to take him prisoner, and levying a new army, gained a victory over the Prussians, but lost the memorable battle of Waterloo on the following day, upon which he again abdicated the throne, threw himself upon the generosity of the English nation, and was sent a prisoner to the Island of St. Helena, where he died on the 5th May, 1821. Having no children by his empress Josephine, he unfeelingly divorced her, and married Maria Louisa, daughter of the emperor of Austria. By this princess he had a son who took the title of Duke of Reichstadt; he died young. Louis XVII. never reigned: he died at the age of ten years from cruel treatment. Louis XVIII. reigned ten years.

Charles X., of the house of Bourbon, ascended the throne in 1824, but attempting to obtain absolute power, and having annihilated the charter, the people rose *en masse*; and after a sanguinary conflict in the streets of Paris for three days, in the month of July, 1830, he was obliged to abdicate the throne, from which he and his family are excluded by a decree of the Chamber of Deputies, in August, 1830. Prince Polignac, his



minister, was brought to trial and condemned to solitary imprisonment for life, first at St. Michael's, afterwards in Ham Castle; but he was released on an appeal from the British people.

Louis Philippe, of the branch of Orleans, descended from a brother of Louis XIV., was elected king of the French, 9th of August, 1830. He is the eldest son of Egalité, who so heartlessly voted for the death of Louis XVI.; was educated by Madame de Genlis; wandered, as an outlaw, over the north of Europe, and the states of America; and the vicissitudes of his life have been more extraordinary than those of any monarch in modern history. He has led armies to victory; taught the rudiments of literature for his support; and being restored to his rank, and elevated still further to wear the crown of that kingdom in which he was once a criminal, he has survived the attempts of seven different assassins on as many different occasions. At this time, March 18th, 1848, the news has just been received of another revolution in France, of which the chief instigators were M. Odillon Barrot, and Thiers. Louis Philippe has been dethroned and left Paris. The people have declared for a Republic, but the result has not yet reached us.

The French lines of kings were, the Franks, the Merovingians, the Carolingians, the line of Capet, of Valois, and of Bourbon. And the four French kings most famed in history were, Charlemagne, contemporary with Egbert, of England; Philip II., with Richard I.; Francis I., with Henry VIII.; and Henry IV., or the Great, with queen Elizabeth. The best French historians are, Philip de Comines, Davila, De Thou, and Mezerai. The grand epochs in the history of France are, the introduction of Christianity; France almost entirely conquered by Henry V., of England; the massacre of the Protestants, on Saint Bartholomew's day; revolution in 1792, when Louis XVI. was beheaded; abdication of Napoleon, 1814; revolution in 1830, when Charles X. was deposed; election of Louis Philippe to the throne; and revolution of 1848

## QUESTIONS

RELATING TO THE

## HISTORY OF AMERICA,

FROM ITS DISCOVERY TO THE PRESENT TIME.

When was America discovered? In the year 1492. By whom? Christopher Columbus, or Columbo, a native of Genoa, born in 1441. He was the son of a woolcomber, and studied at the university at Pavia, until he was fourteen years of age, when he left it for a seafaring life. Between thirty and forty years were spent by him in voyages to various parts of the then known world. At length he settled at Lisbon, and married the daughter of Palestrollo, an Italian navigator. He was well versed in the sciences of geography, astronomy, and geometry; and his observations during his voyages, supported by the evidence of pieces of wood carved with unknown figures, trunks of trees, and canes, drifted across the Atlantic, induced him to believe that by stretching across the ocean in a westerly direction, the shores of eastern Asia might be reached; and in the retirement subsequent to his marriage he resolved to obtain from some sovereign the means of making the attempt. To whom did he apply? First to his own countrymen, at Genoa; then to the king of Portugal, whose son, Prince Henry, gave him some encouragement; but this young prince dying early, Columbus, being no longer supported, carried his plans, &c., to England, and applied to Henry VII.; but this monarch, whose well-known parsimony prevented his expending money on a doubtful cause, refused his aid, and Columbus, nothing daunted, repaired to Spain, where Ferdinand and Isabella then reigned. What was his success with them? Isabella encouraged, but Ferdinand was opposed to him, and after many vexatious delays he was at length supplied with three small vessels, and sailed from the port of Palos, in Spain, on the 2d of August, 1492. To what islands did he first direct his course? To the Canary Islands; where, having refitted, he continued his voyage on the 6th of September, passing into seas which had never before been explored. What had he then to contend with? The superstitious fears of his crew; for when, after having sailed 200 leagues

from the Canaries, the variation of the magnetic needle from its direction to the polar star was observed for the first time, they became alarmed, and refused to continue the voyage. How did he overcome these scruples? By his firmness and presence of mind. He explained this phenomenon, which he did not then understand himself, in such a way as to quiet the fears of his crew; and after 30 days, continuing the voyage in a state of the utmost anxiety of mind and fatigue of body, for he never left the deck, he promised if land were not discovered in three days he would instantly return. On the second night, the night of the 11th of October, 1492, a light was discovered ahead of the vessel, and the next morning Columbus, who had been all night watching the light, gave the joyful cry of "Land!" and all joined in his hymn of thanksgiving to Almighty God. The whole crew united in ardent expressions of admiration for their commander, with acknowledgments of their own rashness and disobedience, and vows of future good conduct. Was this land the *continent* of America? No. It was a small island; one of the Bahama group, which form part of the British West India Islands, and is now called Cat Island, lat.  $24^{\circ} 37'$ , long.  $75^{\circ} 50'$ . Columbus gave it the name of St. Salvador, which signifies being saved. What islands did he next discover? Cuba, and Hayti, or St. Domingo, to which he gave the name of Hispaniola, and landing there, left some of his men to form a colony. Did Columbus, then, know that these islands belonged to a new world? No; he imagined them connected with India, according to his theory, that India could be reached by a western passage; and he therefore gave them the name of West India, and the natives he called Indians. What did he obtain before he returned to Spain? A quantity of gold from the mines of Hispaniola, and several of the natives, whom he persuaded to accompany him. What occurred on his voyage to Spain? A violent tempest arose which continued fifteen days, and Columbus, fearing that by the destruction of his vessels the benefit of his discoveries would be lost to the world, had the presence of mind to write a short account of his voyage, which he wrapped in an oiled cloth, and enclosed in a cake of wax, and putting this in an empty cask, threw it into the sea, with the hope that it might fall into the hands of some other navigator, or be washed ashore and found. What then occurred? The storm abated, and a few days after, Columbus entered the port of Palos, after an absence of seven months, amidst the acclamations and wonder of the multitude at the sight of the strange beings who accompanied him, and the gold with which they were



laden. What did he then do? He hastened to the court, where Ferdinand and Isabella received him with respect and admiration, and loaded him with favors and honors. When did Columbus discover the continent of South America? In 1498; on his third voyage. What did his success give rise to? Envy and intrigues against him in the court of Spain. What course was pursued towards him? He was at Hispaniola, the government of which island had been conferred on him; when, in consequence of false accusations, he was arrested by order of Ferdinand and Isabella, and sent home in chains. What did the captain of the vessel in which he was offer to do? To release him from his chains. What was his reply? "I wear these fetters in obedience to the orders of their majesties the rulers of Spain; they shall find me as obedient to this as to their other injunctions; by their command I have been confined, and their command alone shall set me at liberty." When released from his fetters, what did he do with them? He hung them in his chamber, and gave orders that they should be buried with him. Did Ferdinand express any regret at the treatment which Columbus received? No; after detaining him for some time about the court in fatiguing and vexatious attendance, he appointed another governor to Hispaniola, and Columbus retired in disgust. Did Columbus then give up all future discoveries? No; still intent on finding a passage to India by the western course, he made a fourth voyage, examined the coast of Darien, and was shipwrecked on the island of Jamaica, where the cave in which he took refuge is still shown on the eastern coast of the island. How did he obtain great influence and command over the natives of this island, who were a more warlike race than those formerly discovered? By predicting an eclipse of the moon, which led them to look upon him as a deity. Did this belief continue? No; they soon overcame this feeling and attacked his troops; his men mutinied, and at length worn out by fatigue, scarcity of provision, and sickness, he returned to Spain. Did he live long after this? He died soon after his return to Spain, at Valladolid, the 20th of May, 1506, aged 65 years. Who ordered a magnificent funeral for him? Philip I., king of Spain, who had recently ascended the throne. He also desired the following inscription to be engraved on his tomb, "To Castile and Leon, Columbus has given a new world." What was the character of Columbus? He was patient and persevering, fertile in expedients, grave and dignified in his manners, master of himself, and skilful in the government of other men. Why was not the name of Columbus given to this continent? He was

deprived of this honor by Americus Vespuccius, an Italian, native of Florence, who accompanied Ojida on a voyage in 1499, and discovered a part of the coast of South America the year after it had been discovered by Columbus. How did he effect this purpose? He wrote an account of his voyage, claiming the honor of being the first to discover the main land; and from him the continent was named "America."

Who discovered the continent of North America? John Cabot, a Venetian by birth, but a resident of Bristol in England. He received a commission from Henry VII., and sailed in May, 1497, on a voyage of discovery, accompanied by his son Sebastian, and one, or both of them, discovered the continent of North America, the year before the main land of South America had been discovered by Columbus, and two years before it had been seen by Americus. What was the land first seen called, and what is it supposed to have been? It was called *Prima Vista*, (first view,) and is supposed to have been a part of Newfoundland. What course did the Cabots then take? They proceeded further north, still in pursuit of the passage to India, but finding no appearance of one, they put about and sailed as far as Florida. How did they take possession of the country? By erecting crosses along the coast, and taking formal possession of it in behalf of the crown of England. What must be particularly remarked of this event? That it was the foundation of the English claim to North America; though no settlements were formed for many years after. Who at length discovered the western passage to the East Indies? Vasco de Gama, a Portuguese, first discovered the passage round the Cape of Good Hope, by pursuing a southwesterly course from Lisbon. Did many years pass after the discovery of America by Columbus, before any considerable settlement was made by the Spaniards on the continent? Yes; it was not until 1519, that Ferdinand Cortez, a young Spanish adventurer, sailed from Cuba for the invasion of Mexico, and landed at a seaport to which he gave the name of Vera Cruz, i. e. the true cross. Had Cortez a large armament? He had only a fleet of 11 small vessels, having on board 617 men, and as fire-arms were not in general use, only 13 of the men had muskets. He had also 10 small pieces of artillery and 16 horses; the first of these animals ever seen in that country, whose prairies now abound in wild horses. How were the rest of the men armed? With crossbows, swords, and spears, but they were all clothed in armor. Did Cortez advance at once to Mexico? He advanced as rapidly as possible, but was opposed, at different places on

the route, by the natives, who were much averse to his entering their country; but, naked and ill-armed, they had only numbers to oppose to the well-trained Spaniards with their cannon and muskets, which they regarded with superstitious fear. What person was most opposed to the advance of Cortez? The emperor or chief of the whole country, to whom all the other cities and provinces were tributary. Who was this? Montezuma; at once the wisest, the most powerful, and wealthy of all the Indian monarchs, who resided at the far-famed capital of Mexico. Why was Montezuma so violently opposed to the Spaniards before he knew their avarice and treachery? Chiefly from a tradition existing among the Mexicans, that a strange people from the east should conquer them. What was Montezuma's conduct when he found Cortez, in spite of all opposition, determined on advancing to Mexico? He appeared to resign himself to his fate and the force of circumstances; and from the time of Cortez's entry into Mexico, until the hour of his death, continued to treat Cortez with the utmost generosity, hospitality, and apparent confidence, and loaded him with gifts and honors. What was the return of Cortez for all this kindness? Deceit and treachery. He ordered Montezuma to be seized and placed in irons, accusing him of a *conspiracy* against the *Spaniards*; deprived him of all power, and robbed him of a vast amount of treasure. What was the consequence of this conduct? The Mexicans flew to arms, and after a violent contest the Spaniards were defeated: Montezuma was killed in the conflict, but his nephew, Guatimozin, who had placed himself at the head of the Mexicans, continued to encourage them by his bravery, and they pursued the Spaniards without mercy, killing many, and driving others into the canals by which the city was intersected, where numbers perished, laden with the gold and precious stones of which they had robbed the Mexicans. How is the recollection of this event preserved? It is called by the Spanish Mexicans to this day "*La noche triste, or dolorosa*—the night of misery;" on the anniversary of which they go in procession to the churches, and offer up prayers for the souls of those who perished at that time. What course did Cortez then pursue? Undismayed by this reverse, Cortez, with the aid of a nation of Indians who had joined him on his first entrance into Mexico, called "*Tlascalans*," and with a reinforcement of Spaniards, who joined him from Vera Cruz, besieged and took the city, seized Guatimozin and his family, and became master of the country in 1521. What was the fate of Guatimozin? He was put to death, after having been most cruelly tortured by



the Spaniards ; several of his most distinguished captains were tortured with him, and on hearing one of them cry out with anguish, while he had not uttered a groan, he turned to him and said : " Do you think I am on a bed of roses ? " When did the Spaniards form a settlement at Panama ? In 1518. Where is Panama situated ? On the west coast of the Gulf of Darien. Who sailed from this place to explore the regions of South America ? A Spanish adventurer, named " Pizarro," in the year 1525. What country did he discover ? The rich and flourishing kingdom of Peru. How did he obtain possession of it ? He procured from Charles V., then king of Spain and emperor of Germany, a commission as governor of the country, with a military force to subdue it ; and for this purpose he sailed from Panama, in 1531, with three small vessels and 180 men. How did he proceed ? He landed with his forces, marched with little opposition to the residence of the Inca, or king, Atahualpa, and having invited him to a friendly interview, tried to persuade him to embrace the Christian faith. Did Atahualpa consent to this ? He refused, and Pizarro immediately ordered his men to seize the defenceless monarch ; whom they detained a prisoner, and slew upwards of 4,000 of his attendants. What did Atahualpa offer to procure his release ? To fill the room in which he was confined ; which was 22 feet in length and 16 in breadth, with vessels of gold and silver as high as he could reach. What was the value of this treasure ? It was valued at upwards of £1,500,000, and was collected from different parts of the empire by the Peruvians for their monarch's ransom. Did Pizarro release him when he performed this promise ? The perfidious Spaniard still held the Inca prisoner, and being joined by his friend Diego Almagro, an adventurer like himself, with a reinforcement of troops, they brought Atahualpa to trial, on a charge of being an usurper and idolater, condemned and executed him. What was the subsequent fate of these two men ? They soon after quarrelled among themselves, Almagro was taken prisoner by the troops of Pizarro, condemned and executed by his order ; and soon after Pizarro was assassinated. Did the Peruvians take advantage of these contentions ? Yes ; they rose against the Spaniards, headed by their new Inca, Huanca Capac, but they were at length subdued, and Peru became a province of Spain. What was the state of the arts among the Mexicans and Peruvians at the time of the invasion by the Spaniards ? Both nations understood the arts of architecture, sculpture, and working the precious metals ; but knew little of mining, depending chiefly for

them, on that which was washed down by the streams of water from the mountains containing the mines.\* Were they acquainted with agriculture? In some degree, but the Indians raised only sufficient for their own use, not knowing any thing of foreign countries. They also understood weaving and embroidery, and excelled in an art now entirely lost, of forming a fabric composed of the feathers of the beautiful birds of the country. Which had the superiority in architecture? The Peruvians: they had some magnificent temples and palaces. What deity did the Mexicans worship? They had many gods, of which the chief were named Xacacataptl and Mejitl, who were worshipped with human sacrifices. What was the Peruvian religion? They adored the sun, as the supreme Deity, though they had inferior gods; and their worship was unattended by the sanguinary traits of the Mexican faith. They regarded their Incas as divine. What were the discoveries of 1524? Francis I., king of France, wishing to have a share of the new world, sent Verrazano on a voyage of discovery; he explored a great part of the coast of North-America. When was the Gulf of St. Lawrence discovered, and by whom? In 1534, by James Cartier, who also sailed under orders from Francis I. What was his further course? He entered the gulf, and sailed up the river, taking possession of the country in the name of the king of France, to which he gave the name of New France, but it was afterwards changed to Canada. What commission did Elizabeth, queen of England, give to Sir Walter Raleigh in 1584? She gave him a commission, "to discover, occupy and govern, remote, heathen, and barbarous countries, not previously possessed by any Christian prince or people." To what part of the new world did Sir Walter direct his course? To the shores of North America; he arrived off the coast of what is now called North Carolina, entered Pamlico Sound, and proceeded to Roanoke Island, near the mouth of Albemarle

\* The Peruvians excelled in the workmanship of gold and silver articles, the beauty of which far exceeded any thing which the Spaniards had ever beheld. Among the articles given for the ransom of Atahualpa to Pizarro, "were," says Mr. Prescott in his admirable work, the Conquest of Peru, "goblets, ewers, salvers, vases of every shape and size, ornaments and utensils for the temples and the royal palaces, tiles and plates for the decoration of the public edifices, curious imitations of different plants, and animals. Among the plants, the most beautiful was the Indian corn, in which the golden ear was sheathed in its broad leaves of silver, from which hung a rich tassel of threads of the same precious metal. A fountain was also much admired, which sent up a sparkling jet of gold, while birds and animals of the same material, played in the waters at its base."

Sound, taking possession of the country in the name of the Queen of England, and gave it the name of *Virginia*, in compliment to the *Virgin Queen*. Did he attempt to form settlements there? On Raleigh's return to England the glowing descriptions he gave of the country induced many adventurers to offer their services, and in 1585, he fitted out a squadron of seven ships, which he placed under the command of Sir Richard Grenville, who followed the same course which Sir Walter had pursued the last year, and left a colony at Roanoke under the command of Captain Jane. What was the fate of the colony? The following year, the colonists were reduced to the utmost distress for want of provisions, and on Sir Francis Drake's stopping there, on his return from a successful expedition against the Spaniards, in the West Indies, they all embarked with him for England. What was the fate of the next colony? Raleigh had sent out a vessel for the relief of the distressed settlers at Roanoke, which arrived shortly after they left; and Sir Richard Grenville arriving soon after, and seeing nothing of them, left fifteen of his crew well provided with provisions, to keep possession of the island, and returned to England; but they were never heard of after, having been most probably murdered by the Indians. How did the tribes of Indians who inhabited that country receive Sir Walter Raleigh and the other adventurers? With the utmost kindness and hospitality; but they met with only cruelty and ingratitude from the colonists, which no doubt roused their savage passions and induced them to defend themselves, and war against the usurping foreigners. When was the next colony sent out? In 1587. Sir Walter sent out one hundred and fifty adventurers to the same island under Captain White, who remained but a short time, and returned to England for provisions, as they could obtain none from the natives. Who was the first child of English parents born in America? The daughter of Captain White, a Mrs. Dare, accompanied her father to the island; her daughter was born there, and named *Virginia Dare*. What was the fate of this colony? In consequence of the threatened invasion of England by the famous Spanish Armada, it was three years before Raleigh could send relief to the colony by Captain White, who, when he arrived there, found not one to tell their fate; and fearing for himself, returned at once to England, leaving not a single English settler on the shores of America. How did this unfortunate issue affect Raleigh? He was so much distressed and annoyed by these repeated failures, that he was easily induced to sell his patent



to a company of merchants in London in the year 1589. Did they attempt to colonize? No; they were satisfied with a paltry traffic with the natives, and made no attempt to penetrate farther into the country, or form a settlement. When did the next expedition set forth? In 1602. Bartholomew Gosnold, with thirty-two men, sailed from Falmouth on the western coast of England, and steering due west, was the first English commander who reached this country by this shorter and more direct course. Where did he land? He made the coast near Nahant, but failing to find a good harbor, he bore to the south, discovered and gave the name to Cape Cod, which was the first ground in New England ever trod by Englishmen. Sailing thence round Nantucket, he discovered and named Martha's Vineyard, entered Buzzard's bay, and finding a fertile island, he gave it the name of Elizabeth, in honor of the queen. Did he leave a colony there? He built a fort and storehouse, and prepared to leave a colony, but the natives appearing hostile, the men refused to remain, and he returned to England, making the passage in five weeks, the shortest then known. When did the French again send a company to this continent? In 1603. Henry IV. of France granted by letters patent, to the Sieur de Monts, the country called Acadia, extending from the 40th to the 46th degree of north latitude. The next year de Monts sailed, taking Samuel Champlain as his pilot, and having doubled Cape Sable or Sandy Cape, entered an extensive bay, which they called "La baye Française," now the bay of Fundy; on whose eastern side he founded Port Royal. What further discoveries did they make? Proceeding to explore this bay, they discovered and named the rivers St. John and St. Croix, and sailed along the coast to Cape Cod. What measures did the English adopt, at this encroachment on their claims? James the First, of England, divided that portion of North America which lies between the 34th and 45th degrees of north latitude into two divisions; granting the southern part or first colony of Virginia, lying between the 34th and 41st degrees, to the London company of merchants, and the northern portion to the Plymouth company. What measures did the Plymouth company take? In 1607, they sent out admirals Raleigh and Gilbert, with a hundred planters, under Capt. George Popham, their president. They landed at the mouth of the Kennebec river, where they built and fortified a storehouse; but in two or three months the ships returned to England, leaving only forty-five men behind them. What was the fate of this small colony? Their sufferings during the winter

were most severe ; the president died, they lost their storehouse by fire, and the next year they returned to England much dispirited ; and this was the first and only attempt made to settle that northern portion of the country until 1620. How long a period had now elapsed since the discovery of North America by the Cabots ? One hundred and ten years ; and twenty-four since Raleigh planted his first colony on the island of Roanoke ; and yet there was not in 1607 one Englishman settled in America. When and by whom was the first effectual attempt made to settle the country ? In 1607, an armament consisting of 105 men, in a small vessel of 105 tons, and two barks, sailed from England under the command of Capt. Newport, and were four months in making the voyage. What land did they first discover ? A promontory which they called Cape Henry, the southern boundary of Chesapeake Bay ; and keeping along the southern shore, they sailed up a river called by the natives Powhattan, to which they gave the name of James river. What was their first step ? They built a fort and commenced a town, to which, in honor of King James, they gave the name of Jamestown, which, although it has never become a place of much importance, boasts of being the first permanent English settlement in America. How was the colony governed ? By a council of seven persons, with a president chosen from among their number, their form of government having been drawn up by King James. Whom did they choose for their first president ? Edward Wingfield, the most unsuitable among them ; Capt. John Smith, the man appointed by the king, having been excluded by envy from even having a seat in the council. How did the colonists prosper ? They were soon involved in contests with the Indians, the result of their cruelty towards them, and under their gathering misfortunes were obliged to depose Wingfield and appoint Capt. Smith, a man of great ability and undaunted courage, in his place. What romantic incident is connected with Capt. Smith's history ? While engaged in hunting, he was taken prisoner by the Indians, who carried him before their chief, Powhattan ; he was condemned to death, and it was on the point of being carried into execution, when Pocahontas, the favorite daughter of their chief, having in vain implored mercy for him, rushed forward, and placing her head on that of the captive, seemed determined to share his fate. What was the result of her interference ? Powhattan relented and set the prisoner free ; Pocahontas was frequently afterwards of great service to the colonists in giving them information of the hostile designs of

the Indians. What was her ultimate fate? She married Mr. Rolfe, a planter, and accompanied him to England, where she was baptized and instructed in the Christian religion; she died at the age of 22, leaving one son, from whom are descended some of the most respectable families in Virginia. What was the state of the colony in 1608? Disease and famine had greatly diminished their numbers, but new arrivals occurring, they increased to 200. What became of Capt. Smith? Having been severely injured by the explosion of gunpowder, he returned to England in 1609; the colonists being reduced to the number of 60 persons, formed the same resolution. Did they fulfil their intention? No: meeting Lord Delaware, the appointed governor, they were induced to return, and in 1619 their numbers were increased by the arrival of 1216 new settlers; principally adventurers in search of gold. What expedient was adopted to induce them to settle permanently? Young women were sent from England, and sold to them for wives. What was the price of a wife? At first 100 pounds of tobacco, but as their numbers decreased they brought 150 pounds. What was the tobacco valued at? Three shillings a pound. What was the commencement of slavery in English America? In 1620 twenty negroes were carried to Virginia, in a Dutch vessel, and sold as slaves. What did the colonists now turn their attention to? Agricultural pursuits, particularly the cultivation of tobacco. What kind of persons did King James send to the colony at this time? Convicts, and all idle and disorderly persons then in custody for their offences. What happened to the French colony in Virginia at this period? Capt. Argall was sent from Jamestown to dispossess them. Did he succeed? Yes; he destroyed Port Royal, and all the French settlements in Acadia. What did he do on his way back? He visited the Dutch settlement of Manhattan, and took possession of the country in the name of King James, and the Dutch traders immediately acknowledged his supremacy, and under him, that of the governor of Virginia. How did the colonists succeed? They enjoyed great prosperity till the year 1622. What occurred then? The Indians under Opeacananough attempted a general massacre, and although the plot was discovered, they succeeded in killing about 347 persons. What was the result of this attempt? A war of extermination followed, then a famine, and in 1624, out of 9,000 persons only 1,800 remained. How were these losses repaired? By the arrival of new settlers; but the colony suffered much by restrictions on its trade, and by the arbitrary government of Sir



John Harvey. What did the population amount to in 1660? About 30,000; and in the succeeding 28 years their number was doubled. Who was Henry Hudson? An Englishman in the Dutch service, who, when in search of a northwest passage to India discovered the noble river that bears his name. Who made the first permanent settlements on the Hudson? The Dutch, who in 1614 erected two forts, one at Albany and the other on Manhattan Island. What name did the Dutch give to their settlement on Manhattan Island? New Amsterdam, which it retained till it was taken by the English, who called it New York. What were the names of the Dutch governors? Van Twiller, Kieft, and Stuyvesant. What happened to the Dutch colony in 1664? Charles II., of England, being at war with the Dutch, granted the country to his brother the Duke of York, and Governor Stuyvesant was compelled to capitulate to an English force under Colonel Nicholls. Who were the Pilgrim Fathers? They were English puritans, who were compelled to leave their country by the persecutions that sect labored under. When did they arrive in America? They landed at Plymouth on the 22d of December, 1620, and founded the first permanent settlement in New England. How did the New England colony succeed? Their sufferings and difficulties were extreme, but by perseverance they were enabled to overcome the rigors of their situation. What were the names of their first governors? John Carver was the first, and he was succeeded in 1621 by William Bradford. What did they do to protect themselves from the Indians? They organized a military force, the command of which was given to Miles Standish. Were the Indians disposed to be hostile? No, they entered into a treaty with them, which was confirmed by their principal chief. What was the name of this chief? Massasoit, from whom Massachusetts takes its name. How long was this treaty observed? For a period of fifty-four years. When was the colony of Massachusetts Bay founded? In 1628, by John Endicott, who formed a settlement at Naumkeag, now Salem. When and by whom was Boston first settled? In 1630, by 1,500 persons, under John Winthrop. When was New Hampshire settled? In 1623, at Dover and Portsmouth, by persons sent out by John Mason and Ferdinando Gorges, to whom the country had been granted. When were these settlements annexed to Massachusetts? In 1641, and so continued till 1679, when a separate government was instituted for New Hampshire. When and where was the settlement of Connecticut commenced? In 1635, at Windsor and Weathersfield. When and by whom was the

colony of New Haven founded? In 1638, by Theophilus Eaton, John Davenport, and others. When was the settlement of Rhode Island commenced? In 1636, at Providence, by Roger Williams, a minister of the gospel, who had been banished from Massachusetts on account of his religious opinions. When was the first college founded in America? In two years after the settlement of Massachusetts Bay, Harvard College was founded at Cambridge; it takes its name from Mr. John Harvard, who, dying at Charleston, in 1638, bequeathed £800 for the purpose of erecting a college. What were the principal characteristics of the New England colonists? They were enterprising and industrious, strongly attached to liberty, piety, and justice; they were not, however, free from vices and follies, some peculiar to themselves, and others to the age in which they lived. What troubles had the colony of Connecticut to contend with at this period? They were involved in a war with the Pequods, a tribe of Indians inhabiting the southeast part of the state; the Indians suffered a severe defeat from the colonists under Captain Mason, losing from six to seven hundred of their number, and most of their wigwams burnt. What measures did the New England colonies adopt for the general security and welfare? In 1643, the four colonies of Massachusetts Bay, New Haven, Plymouth, and Connecticut, formed themselves into a confederacy, called the united colonies of New England. How were they governed? Each sent two delegates, to assemble in the different colonies once a year, or oftener if necessary. How long did this union subsist? A little more than forty years, when the colonies were deprived of their charters by James II. What was the most general and destructive war in which the New England colonists were ever involved? A war with Philip, chief of the Wampanoags, son of Massasoit, whose principal residence was at Mount Hope, in Rhode Island. What was the character of Philip? He was a man of great abilities, undaunted courage, and the most uncompromising enemy the whites ever had. Were there other tribes engaged in this war? Yes; all the surrounding tribes, fearing the loss of their hunting-grounds from the gradual encroachments of the settlers, formed a combination, of which Philip was the leader. Give some further particulars of the war. It was carried on with great fury on both sides, but finally, in a severe engagement, called the swamp fight, which took place in December, 1675, the colonists under Josiah Winslow obtained a complete victory over the Indians, about 1,000 of whom perished, besides many women and children. Did the Indians ever recover from the effects of this

defeat? No; they however continued their depredations, massacring the inhabitants and burning their villages, till the death of Philip, who was shot in 1676, by an Indian attached to the band of the famous Captain Benjamin Church. Did this terminate the troubles of the New England colonists with the Indians? Yes, until the wars with the French, who employed the Indians as auxiliaries. What was the amount of the English population of the colonies at this period? About 60,000, of whom nearly 600 fell during the Indian war, besides the destruction of several towns. Who was the founder of Maryland? Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, secretary to James I. Being repulsed in his endeavor to settle in Virginia, he turned his attention to a tract of land north of the Potomac, and obtained a grant of it from Charles I., but before the patent was made out he died, and the grant was given to his eldest son, Cecil Calvert. Whence does Maryland take its name? From Henrietta Maria, queen of Charles I. Who was the first governor of Maryland? Leonard Calvert, brother of Cecil, who with 200 persons commenced the settlement of St. Mary's in 1634. When and by whom was Pennsylvania settled? In 1682, by William Penn, from whom it takes its name. How did he obtain a grant of the land? In payment of a debt due to his father, Admiral Penn, by the British government. By whom was he accompanied? By 2,000 persons, principally of the sect called Quakers, or Friends, to which he also belonged. When was Philadelphia founded? In 1683. Who were the Quakers? A religious sect founded by George Fox, the son of an English weaver, in 1648. For what was the government of William Penn remarkable? Religious toleration, kindness and humanity in his intercourse with the Indians, from whom he obtained by fair purchase as much land as he required. Was this course pursued by his successors? Yes, the treaty with the Indians was preserved inviolate for more than seventy years. What was the effect of this policy? The rapid increase of the colony, the enjoyment of civil and religious liberty, holding out inducements to all oppressed persons in Europe, to seek an asylum in Pennsylvania. Which were the first colonies in which the principles of religious toleration were acted upon? Rhode Island, Maryland, and Pennsylvania; all the other colonies in the early stage of their history having persecuted those who differed from them in religion. What tended to increase the emigration from England to America? The arbitrary measures of the Stuart family, who had occupied the throne since the first permanent English settlement in North America. How did they



conduct themselves towards the colonies? They took their charters from them, and gave them governors whose oppressive measures gave great dissatisfaction. In what year were their charters taken from them, and by whose influence was it accomplished? In 1683, by Edward Randolph and others, who prejudiced the king and council against them. Who was the governor of New York at this period? Sir Edmund Andros, who was also appointed governor of New England in 1686. What steps did Sir E. Andros take on his arrival in Boston? He commanded the colonies to surrender their charters. That of Massachusetts was given up, but Captain Wadsworth concealed the charter of Connecticut in a hollow oak in Hartford. What occurred at this period in England? The revolution of 1688, which resulted in the expulsion of James II., and the accession of William and Mary to the British throne. What was thought of this in America? It gave the greatest satisfaction to the colonists; they immediately seized Sir E. Andros, Randolph, and other obnoxious persons, and kept them in confinement till they were sent to England for trial. Connecticut and Rhode Island also resumed their charters and former mode of government. What was done with regard to the charter of Massachusetts Bay? The old charter was refused, but a new one less favorable to liberty was granted to them in 1692, uniting the colonies of Massachusetts Bay and Plymouth under the name of Massachusetts, and annexing to it the provinces of Maine and Nova Scotia. What were the principal features in the new charter? The appointments to the principal offices were taken from the people and vested in the crown: the only privilege which was allowed to them was the right of choosing their own representatives. What was done in order to render this charter more acceptable to the people? Sir William Phipps, a native of Maine, was appointed governor. How did the revolution in England affect the colonists? It partially restored their liberties, but subjected them to the evils of a war with the French and Indians. How long did these wars continue? From 1690 to the peace of Ryswick, in 1697, and again during the reign of Queen Anne, from 1702 to the peace of Utrecht, in 1713. What were the effects of this war on the colonies? It materially checked their growth, large tracts of land were desolated, several towns burnt, and nearly 8,000 young men are computed to have perished. For how long a period after this were they at peace? For thirty-one years, when they were again involved in a war that occurred between Great Britain and France, in 1744. What was the principal occurrence of this war in

America? The capture of Louisburg from the French, by troops from New England under Sir William Pepperell, aided by Commodore Warren with four ships from England. Give some account of Louisburg. Louisburg is situated on Cape Breton, and having been fortified at great expense, was called the Gibraltar of America; it surrendered on the 16th of June, 1745. What was the result of the reduction of this fortress? It encouraged the colonists to attempt the conquest of all the French possessions in North America, and so exasperated the French, that in 1746 they sent an armament under the Duke d'Anville to recapture Louisburg and harass the colonists as much as possible. What was the force of this armament? It consisted of eleven ships of the line, thirty small vessels of war, and three transports, with 3,000 regular troops, and 40,000 stand of arms, for the use of the Canadians and Indians, and altogether was the largest expedition that had ever been sent to America. What was the result of this expedition? A long and disastrous passage, great mortality among the troops, and the death of both commanders, so disheartened the French that they returned without having accomplished any thing but alarming the colonists; but, by the treaty of Aix la Chapelle, in 1748, Louisburg, to the great mortification of the colonists, was restored to the French. What part of the country did the French claim? From the discoveries of Champlain, Marquette, La Salle, and others, they claimed all the country watered by the Mississippi and its branches, and that occupied by the St. Lawrence and the tributaries of the lakes. By what right did the British claim this land? By the discoveries of Cabot, to whom they had granted the whole country from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and also by a title they had bought from the chiefs of the Iroquois. What was the Ohio Company? It was an association of gentlemen, principally Virginians, who obtained a grant of 600,000 acres on the Ohio for the purpose of carrying on a fur trade with the Indians. How did this company succeed? They surveyed the land and built a few trading houses, but the French, who considered this an encroachment on their rights, after complaining to the governors of New York and Pennsylvania, seized some of the traders and imprisoned them at Presque Isle: 1750. What was the result of this hostile measure on the part of the French? Robert Dinwiddie, the governor of Virginia, having laid the matter before the assembly of that state, they determined to send a messenger to St. Pierre, the French commandant, requiring him to withdraw from the territory. Who was the person chosen for this pur-

pose? George Washington, then in his twenty-second year: 1752. What was St. Pierre's answer to Dinwiddie? He replied that he had no authority to discuss treaties, that he acted under the authority of the Governor-general, Marquis du Quesne. How did the British government act under these circumstances? They determined on four expeditions against the French, for which purpose, troops were raised in the different colonies, and forces sent from England; Washington was appointed Lieut. Colonel of the Virginian troops. Name the commanders and points of attack of these expeditions. General Braddock was to attack Fort Du Quesne with two English regiments and the troops under Washington, Governor Shirley was to lead the American regulars and Indians against Niagara, the militia of the northern colonies, commanded by General Johnston, were to attack Crown Point, and Nova Scotia was to be invaded by 3,000 men under generals Monckton and Winslow. How did the expedition against Du Quesne terminate? General Braddock being surprised by a party of Indians, was entirely defeated, and he himself slain; of eighty-eight officers, sixty-four were killed or wounded; Washington remained unhurt, although he had four balls through his coat and two horses shot under him, and succeeded in leading off the remaining troops. What was the result of that against Crown Point? Gen. Johnston with 5,000 men entirely defeated Baron Dieskau, but nothing was done towards taking Crown Point. In this battle, Baron Dieskau was killed, together with 700 or 800 men. How was Johnston rewarded for this action? He received a baronetcy and £5,000, but it was thought at the time that the credit belonged equally to Gen. Lyman. What was the result of the expedition against Niagara? The troops under Shirley were delayed at Oswego waiting for supplies, till it was too late in the season to effect any thing. When was war formally declared between the two countries? In 1756, after having been carried on for two years. What generals were appointed to the command of the opposing armies? The French were commanded by the Marquis de Montcalm, and the English at first by the Earl of Loudon and afterwards by General Abercrombie. For what was the campaign of 1757 chiefly memorable? For the cold-blooded massacre of the garrison of Fort William Henry, by the Indian auxiliaries of the French. Give some account of the massacre. Montcalm, the French commander, attacked Fort William Henry, commanded by Col. Munroe, with 9,000 regulars, Canadians and Indians; on the capitulation of the fort, the Indians, roused by the hope of plunder, attacked the unarmed garrison, who had



been promised an escort of French troops to protect them from these outrages, and destroyed the greater part of them, including all the women and children; and the few survivors were met by some forces under General Webb, and conducted into his camp. What was the issue of the expedition to Nova Scotia? They arrived in the Bay of Fundy on the 1st of June; they were then joined by 300 British troops, and proceeding against Beau Séjour, took possession of it in five days, and the French evacuated the country; thus Nova Scotia was taken with the loss of only three men. What dispute arose at this time between the governor and the assembly of Virginia? The proprietors wished to exempt their own lands from the payment of taxes, which were raised for the defence of those lands; to settle this dispute, Benjamin Franklin was sent to England, and the business was soon arranged, the proprietors submitting, provided the taxes were fair and equitable. What change took place in the English ministry at this period? William Pitt, afterwards Lord Chatham, was created prime minister, and his assurances that the colonists should choose the officers for their own troops induced them to increase their army to 20,000. What further measures did Pitt employ to assist the colonists, and terminate the war. He sent 12,000 men under General Amherst, an armament was sent out under Admiral Boscawen, and he appointed Abercrombie commander-in-chief of the British forces in America. What was the number of the British and colonial troops at this time? The colonial troops amounted to 20,000, the British to 30,000; three expeditions were resolved on—against Louisburg, Ticonderoga, and Fort Du Quesne. Who were the commanders of the expedition against Louisburg? General Amherst, and under him, General Wolfe, with a force of 14,000 men, and a large naval armament under Boscawen. What was the result of this expedition? After a desperate resistance the fortress surrendered, and a quantity of military stores fell into the hands of the British, on the 6th of July, 1758: with Louisburg, the whole island of Cape Breton and that of St. Johns became subject to the British. What was the result of that against Ticonderoga? Through the unskilful management of General Abercrombie, who attacked the fort without artillery, the British were entirely defeated, with the loss of nearly 2,000 killed and wounded; here also fell Lord Howe, a young nobleman much beloved by the colonists. What did Abercrombie then do? He detached Col. Bradstreet, with 5,000 provincial troops, against Frontenac, which was taken, and with it large

quantities of supplies intended for the French army and their Indian allies. By whom was the expedition against Fort Du Quesne commanded? By General Forbes, who, contrary to the advice of Washington, insisted on opening a new road from Raystown to the Ohio. What were the consequences of this measure? The army suffered so much from toil and the severity of the weather, that they were on the point of abandoning the expedition; but receiving intelligence of the weakness of the French, they continued their route, and reached Du Quesne to find it in ruins, the French having abandoned and set fire to it the previous night. What were the further results of this expedition? The death of General Forbes from fatigue, and peace with the Indians, who found it more advantageous to side with the British than the French; a new fort was erected by the British on the ruins of Du Quesne, called Fort Pitt, now Pittsburg. What was the object of the campaign of 1759? The reduction of Canada, for which purpose the army was divided into three divisions. By whom were they commanded, and what were the points of attack? Gen. Amherst, who superseded Gen. Abercrombie in the chief command after the disaster at Ticonderoga, was ordered to take Ticonderoga and Crown Point, Gen. Wolfe was to make an attempt on Quebec, and the third division under Gen. Prideaux was to reduce the stronghold of Niagara. How did the divisions under Amherst and Prideaux succeed? On reaching Ticonderoga and Crown Point, Amherst found them deserted; and Niagara surrendered after a severe resistance, during which Gen. Prideaux lost his life by the bursting of a shell. Give some account of Gen. Wolfe's expedition against Quebec. This celebrated general, with a force of 8,000 men, landed on the Island of Orleans, and made some unsuccessful attempts to reduce the city. He then determined to scale the precipice on which the fortifications were built, and thus reach the level plain called the Heights of Abraham. How did he succeed in this daring attempt? He gained the Heights during the night, and in the morning Montcalm learning with surprise of this achievement, prepared to give him battle. Give some account of this battle. The French were entirely defeated, with the loss of many men and their general, Montcalm; the heroic Wolfe also perished in this contest. Relate some particulars of the deaths of these generals. Wolfe received three wounds, the last proving fatal; faint with the loss of blood, he was roused by the cry, They fly! they fly! "Who fly?" he exclaimed. "The enemy," was the reply. "Then," said he,

"I die content," and expired. Not less heroic was the death of Montcalm ; on being told his wound was mortal, he rejoiced, "for," said he, "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." What were the results of this battle ? The French, panic-struck, signed the capitulation of Quebec five days afterwards, and retired to Montreal. What further steps did the contending armies take ? The French under Monsieur de Levi attacked Quebec in the spring of 1760, but were unable to effect any thing, and Gen. Murray being reinforced, Monsieur de Levi abandoned the siege. What did Gen. Amherst now do ? He assembled all the British forces and invested Montreal, and the governor, Vaudriel, unable to resist him, surrendered all the French possessions in Canada, the island of Cape Breton, and Nova Scotia. What further troubles had the colonists at this period ? They were involved in constant wars with the Indians on the western and southern frontiers. What great Indian chief distinguished himself in these wars ? Pontiac, chief of the Ottawas. What bold plan did he resolve on ? Having by his great influence united all the northwestern tribes under his command, he resolved on a simultaneous attack on all the British posts on the lakes. How did he succeed ? He captured nine of the British forts ; among others, Maumee and Mackinaw. What stratagem did he employ against Mackinaw ? He pretended to be playing ball with his warriors outside the fort, and threw the ball over the enclosure. The Indians climbed over after it, and surprising the unprepared garrison, took the fort with great slaughter, Major Henry, the commandant, being one of the few that escaped. What was the cause of the failure of his attack on Detroit ? An Indian squaw who had been kindly treated by the whites betrayed his designs, and when Pontiac and his warriors entered the fort under pretence of holding a council, they were immediately surrounded, and arms being found concealed under their blankets, they were turned out, without having been able to effect their design. What put an end to these wars ? The peace of Paris, signed in 1763, which gave to the British all the northern possessions of the French in America. When did the Moravians come to America, and who were they ? In 1740 ; they were Germans who were driven from their native country by religious persecution. What were they celebrated for ? Their success as missionaries among the Indians. What great events do we now come to in the history of America ? The causes which led America to declare her independence of the mother country. What were the first of these causes ? The



stamp duty and other taxes, proposed to be laid on the colonies by Lord Grenville, in 1764. What reasons did England give for imposing such taxes? The great expenses incurred by the wars in America, which had increased her national debt to a great amount. What was the reply of the colonists to this reasoning? That they had already contributed more in proportion to their means than Great Britain had, and that by the advantages she would derive from the monopoly of their commerce, she was equally interested in their defence; they also insisted that they could not legally be taxed, except through their own representatives. When was the stamp act passed? On the 2d of March, 1765, by an almost unanimous vote in both houses of parliament, and the royal assent was also freely given. How was this received in America? It roused the colonies of Virginia, Massachusetts, and New York to a determined opposition. What was done in Boston and New York? In Boston the bells tolled as for a funeral, the houses of the stamp officers were broken into, their persons insulted, and their property destroyed. In New York they hawked the Act through the streets, under the title of the "Folly of England and Ruin of America;" the merchants also agreed not to import any more goods from England, till the act was repealed. What was done in Virginia? Patrick Henry, a high-spirited and eloquent young lawyer, a member of the house of Burgesses, introduced five resolutions asserting their rights and privileges, and declaring that they were not bound to obey any laws taxing the colonists, save such as were passed by themselves. What was his celebrated speech on this occasion? Alluding to George III. taxing the colonists, he said, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III.—" he was here interrupted by the cry of "*treason!*" Pausing for a moment he continued, "and George III. may profit by their example." What brought about the repeal of the Stamp Act? A change in the British ministry and the exertions of Mr. Pitt, Lord Camden, and others. When was the first continental congress held? On the 7th of October, 1765: nine of the colonies sent delegates to New York, the others, afraid of committing themselves, refused. Name the nine colonies who sent delegates. Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina. What measures did they adopt at this meeting? They asserted their privileges as free subjects of Great Britain; the most important of which were, their exclusive right to tax themselves, and the trial by jury. What further meas-

ures did the Congress resolve on? They forwarded petitions to the king and parliament, declaring that the late acts of parliament had a tendency to subvert their rights, and praying for redress. The other colonies also sent petitions. What act did parliament pass, that further inflamed the minds of the colonists? An act was passed in 1767 imposing duties on tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors, and the authority of the Assembly of New York suspended till they should comply with the requisition to quarter troops, and another appointing a naval officer to enforce these acts. How did the colonists receive these arbitrary measures of the British? The Assembly of Massachusetts presented a petition to the king, and requested the other colonies to co-operate to seek redress for their grievances. How did the British ministry receive these petitions? They were highly offended, and ordered Gov. Bernard to require the Assembly to rescind the vote by which the circulars were sent to the other colonies, and in case of their refusal, to dissolve the Assembly. Did the Assembly of Massachusetts comply with this requisition? No; 92 out of 109 refused to comply, and the governor in consequence dissolved the Assembly. Did this proceeding restore peace and quiet? No; it exasperated the people, and in June the custom-house officers having seized a sloop belonging to John Hancock, they assembled and beat the officers, compelling them to leave the town. What further offensive measures did the British ministry resolve on? In September, 1768, they sent two regiments to Boston, who were quartered in the State House, the townspeople having refused to receive them. What occurred in the following year? The proceedings in Massachusetts were declared illegal and unconstitutional by the British parliament, and a strict inquiry was directed to be made into all treasonable acts committed since 1767, in order that the offenders might be sent to England for trial. How were these declarations received in Virginia and the other colonies? The Virginians denied the right of the king to remove the offender from the colony, and voted an address to the crown, which, though loyal, declared their conviction of ill-treatment from the British government; and the Assembly having been dissolved by the governor, they met at a private mansion, and passed non-importation acts, which were agreed to by the other colonists. What occurred in Boston at this time? The Assembly of Massachusetts convened, and expressed their belief that a standing army, in a time of peace, was an invasion of their rights, and they refused to make any of the appropriations the governor proposed, and

he again prorogued them. What occurred in this city in 1770? On the fifth of March, some of the inhabitants insulted the troops while under arms, and an affray occurred in which three of the townspeople were killed, and five wounded. What was the consequence of this affray? Captain Preston and his soldiers were tried for murder, and all save two acquitted. They had for their counsel John Adams, and Josiah Quincy, two of the leading opposers of British aggression. What occurred in the following year? Lord North being appointed to the ministry, introduced a bill removing the taxes on every thing except the tea, but the colonists were dissatisfied while the parliament claimed the right of taxation. What were the principal events of the two succeeding years? Meetings were held in several towns, and in 1773, the people of New York and Philadelphia sent back the tea ships to England. How did the Bostonians behave at this crisis? Being apprehensive that the tea would be landed in small quantities, in spite of their opposition, they boarded the ships disguised as Indians, and threw their cargoes over the side, destroying in this manner three hundred and forty chests of tea. How did parliament act on receiving an account of these transactions? They passed a bill called the "*Boston port bill*," shutting up the ports of that city. What effect had this act on the Bostonians and colonists generally? A great number of the former were deprived of the means of subsistence, but supplies were sent to them from all parts of the country, and the colonists were more firmly united than ever. What took place in May, 1774? General Gage, commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, arrived in Boston as governor of Massachusetts; and soon after, two more regiments with artillery and stores were landed, which showed a determination on the part of the British government to enforce its decrees by arms. What effect had these proceedings on the Americans? Finding that nothing more was to be expected from the *kindness of Great Britain*, they resolved to defend themselves, and a plan for assembling a general congress originating in Massachusetts, was soon followed by all the colonies except Georgia. When and where did this congress assemble? On the 7th of September, 1774, at Philadelphia, under the name of the Continental Congress, and Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was chosen president. What did they do? They published a declaration of their rights, agreed to suspend all commercial operations with Great Britain, and drew up an address to the king, another to the people, and a third to the colonists. When did the first engagement take place



between the British and colonists, and what was the occasion of it? On the 19th April, 1775, a detachment of 800 troops under Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, were ordered to take possession of some military stores at Concord. In passing through Lexington they found some of the militia of that town drawn up under arms. Major Pitcairn riding up, exclaimed, "Disperse, you rebels!" Not being immediately obeyed, he discharged his pistol and ordered his men to fire, which they did, killing eight men. Did this affair end here? No; the British having proceeded to Concord, and destroyed the stores, were attacked on their return, and although reinforced by Lord Percy with 900 men, were continually harassed by a destructive fire from the Americans, who were concealed behind stone-walls, hedges, etc. At last they reached Bunker's Hill almost exhausted, and the next morning entered Boston under cover of a fire from a frigate in the harbor. What was the number of killed and wounded in this affray? The British lost 273 men, the Americans only 84. How was the news of this engagement received by the other colonies? It was the signal for a general rising, troops were enrolled, and the forts and arsenals seized by the Americans. How many troops were soon collected in the vicinity of Boston? 20,000 men under Colonel Putnam; and expeditions were immediately sent against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, which secured those important posts. Who commanded these expeditions? Colonels Ethan Allen and Seth Warner. What measures did the provincial congress of Massachusetts take? They sent an account of the Lexington affair to England, proving that the British troops were the aggressors, declared their loyalty to the crown, but protested against the tyranny of the British ministry, and added that they were determined to be free or die. What were the proceedings of the second Continental Congress? They assumed the appellation of the "United Colonies," and established a mail-route from Maine to Georgia, Benjamin Franklin being appointed Postmaster-general. What occurred in May? Large reinforcements of British troops arrived in Boston, under generals Burgoyne, Howe, and Clinton, officers of high reputation, and martial law was proclaimed. What offers did General Gage make? A full pardon for all who returned to their allegiance, with the exception of John Hancock and Samuel Adams. What was the next step of the Americans? General Prescott with 1,000 men was ordered to throw up a breastwork on Bunker's Hill, on the night of the 16th June, in order to dislodge the British troops if possible. How did he succeed? He had nearly completed it, when at

dawn the British perceiving what he was about, opened a fire on the work from their ships, and at noon the Americans having received a reinforcement of 500 men, were attacked by 3,000 British under General Howe; these they twice repulsed, but their ammunition failing, they were obliged to retire. This affair has received the name of the battle of "Bunker's Hill." What was the loss on both sides? The British lost 1,054, the Americans 453, among whom was the gallant Major-general Warren; the town of Charlestown, consisting of 400 houses, was also wantonly burnt by the British soldiery. What further measures did Congress adopt? They drew up a second petition to the king, and addresses to the people of Great Britain and Canada, stating their reasons for taking up arms; they also organized a regular army, appointing George Washington commander-in-chief. Whom did they appoint major-generals at the same time? Artemas Ward, of Massachusetts, Colonel Lee, formerly a British officer, Philip Schuyler, of New York, Israel Putnam, of Connecticut; and Horatio Gates was appointed adjutant-general. What expedition was resolved on by the Americans? The invasion of Canada; and two forces were accordingly sent, one under generals Schuyler and Montgomery, by the way of Champlain, another by the river Kennebec, under Arnold. How did this expedition succeed? General Schuyler, from illness, was unable to proceed, and the command devolved on Montgomery, who took Fort Chamblee and St. Johns, then Montreal surrendered, and proceeding to Quebec, he was joined by Arnold with 1,000 men. How did the siege of Quebec terminate? Having in vain attacked the city, the Americans were obliged to retire; General Montgomery was killed, with 400 of the troops, and early in the next season the Americans evacuated Canada. What took place in Virginia at this period? The hasty measures of their governor, Lord Dunmore, roused the Virginians to more determined opposition, and advanced the cause which he wished to overthrow, and at last he and his family were forced to take refuge on board a man-of-war. What steps did he take to revenge himself on the colonists? He carried on a predatory warfare, by landing troops from the ships to ravage the country, and reduced the town of Norfolk to ashes, but was ultimately compelled to leave the American coast. How did affairs stand between the British and colonists at the close of the year 1775? The Americans generally were successful, all the royal governors were expelled from the colonies, and Boston was closely invested by the American militia; Congress fitted out 13 ships, and Massachusetts

granted letters of marque and reprisal. What were the first important steps taken in 1776? Washington, who had continued the blockade of Boston during the winter, resolved upon erecting a battery on "Dorchester Heights" for the purpose of annoying the British, whom he resolved to expel. How did he succeed? On the night of the 4th of March, a redoubt was constructed, which menaced the British shipping with destruction, and General Howe perceiving in the morning the advantage the Americans had gained, saw no alternative but to dislodge them, or evacuate the place. How did the British soldiery succeed in their attempt to reduce the battery? A storm of wind and rain prevented the attack until too late, and accordingly, on the 17th of March, the British were compelled to evacuate Boston, and Washington entered in triumph. How was the news of the battle of Bunker's Hill received in England. With the greatest astonishment, proving as it did, that the Americans were more formidable than they had supposed. What measures did they take to subdue the colonies effectually? They took into their pay 16,000 Germans, and sent over in addition 25,000 British troops, and authorized the capture of American vessels wherever they should be found. What further steps did the British take? They sent Sir Peter Parker with a large fleet to reduce the southern colonies; for which purpose he sailed in June, and soon arrived at Charleston, which he tried to take possession of. How did he succeed? Having attacked a fort on Sullivan's Island, which commanded the entrance to Charleston, the British were repulsed with considerable loss by the 400 Americans under Colonel Moultrie, who defended it, and soon after the fleet sailed for New York, where the British forces were ordered to assemble. What motion was made in Congress on the 7th of June, 1776? Richard Henry Lee (a Virginian) made a motion for declaring the colonies free and independent states. How was it acted upon? A committee, consisting of Adams, Jefferson, Franklin, Sherman, and Livingston, was appointed to draw up a Declaration of Independence. When was this signed? On the 4th of July, 1776. Who is said to have contributed very much to bring about this declaration? Thomas Paine, author of a pamphlet called "Common Sense." What force had the British now collected in the neighborhood of New York? An army of nearly 35,000 excellent troops under Sir William Howe, and a fleet under his brother Lord Howe. What was the American force? About 17,000 men, but very inferior in point of arms and equipments. What did the British commanders determine



on? The capture of New York; but previous to the attack Lord Howe wrote a letter to "George Washington, Esq.," offering terms of accommodation to the Americans. What was Washington's dignified behavior on this occasion? He returned the letter unopened, saying, that it did not express his public character, and that as a private individual he had no right to receive any communications from an agent of the king. What offers were made by the British? Pardon to all for past offences; but Washington replied, they had committed no offences, and therefore did not require any pardon; they were in arms to defend their rights. Give some account of the battle of Brooklyn. The British having landed their army on Long Island, attacked the Americans, who were commanded by generals Putnam and Sullivan, on the 27th of August; the Americans, taken unawares, were defeated, with a loss of 1,500 men; and three of their generals, Sullivan, Lord Stirling, and Woodhull, were taken prisoners. Washington with the remainder of the army withdrew to White Plains. What were the effects of this battle? The British took possession of New York: Long Island and Staten Island also fell into their hands. Who was Captain Hale, and what was his fate? He was an American officer of great promise, from Connecticut, and having volunteered for the dangerous service of a spy, he was taken by the British and executed. What was the state of American affairs in the winter of 1776? Most gloomy; in addition to the severe defeat at Brooklyn, the British had seized upon Rhode Island, and General Lee was taken prisoner at Baskenridge; the American army on the Delaware was reduced to about 3,000 men, and insufficiently equipped. What bold enterprise did Washington resolve upon at this period to revive the drooping spirits of the Americans? On the night of the 25th of December, 1776, he crossed the Delaware, attacked the enemy at Trenton, and took their whole force prisoners, consisting of 1,000 Hessians; their leader, Colonel Rahl, was slain. How was this successful attempt followed up? Washington hearing of the approach of Lord Cornwallis, marched to Princeton, and on the 3d of January, 1777, defeated a party of British troops and forced 300 to surrender. What effect had these victories on the contending armies? The Americans were animated to further efforts, although General Mercer and several other officers had been killed in these battles; the English, on the contrary, were alarmed and dispirited. What measures had Congress taken for prosecuting the war? They invested Washington with unlimited powers, raised an army for three years, or during the war, and sent

agents to Europe to solicit assistance. Who were the agents sent to France? Silas Deane and Arthur Lee. What was the result of this mission to France? Several individuals embarked in the American cause; among these was the young Marquis de La Fayette, whose arrival was hailed with joy by the people, and Congress appointed him a Major-general in the army; but although the French government wished success to the Americans, they were afraid openly to acknowledge it. What proceedings did Gen. Howe adopt in the spring of 1777? He sent a detachment up the Hudson to destroy some stores at Peekskill, and in April, another force of 2,000 men under Gen. Tryon to Danbury, in Connecticut, who destroyed the stores, and burnt the town; some skirmishes took place, in which the American general, Wooster, was killed. What was the number of the American army in the spring of 1777? It consisted of 7,000 men. What steps did Gen. Howe take on finding his efforts to draw the Americans into a general engagement fail? He retired from New Jersey to Staten Island, and afterwards embarked with 16,000 men, entered the Chesapeake, and landed at the head of Elk river. What was Howe's object in this proceeding, and what measures did Washington take to prevent its completion? Gen. Howe intended to capture Philadelphia, and Washington, with generals Greene, Sullivan, Wayne, and Stirling, marched to oppose him. What was the result of this manœuvre? On the 11th of September a battle was fought on the Brandywine, in which the Americans were obliged to yield to the superior force of the British, with a loss of nearly 1,000 men in killed and wounded; among the latter was the young La Fayette. What were the immediate consequences of this battle? Gen. Howe took possession of Philadelphia, and deeming it necessary to open a communication with the Atlantic, attacked the forts on the Delaware, and after being repulsed once or twice, effected their capture, but with a loss of 300 men. What were Washington's movements while the British troops were absent on this service? He attacked Germantown on the 4th of October, but was repulsed with a loss of 1,200 men in killed, wounded, and prisoners; the British loss was comparatively trifling. What important events were taking place in the north during these proceedings in the middle states? The British determined to invade the states through Canada, and in June an army of 7,000 men, besides Canadians and Indians, commanded by Gen. Burgoyne, passed up Lake Champlain and attacked Ticonderoga, which was abandoned by the Americans under St. Clair. Give some further particulars of Burgoyne's move-

ments. Having proceeded to Skeensborough, (now Whitehall,) he destroyed the American flotilla and stores there, and from thence led his army to Fort Edward on the Hudson. What expedition did he send out while remaining here? A detachment of 500 English and 100 Indians under Colonel Baum, to destroy the stores at Bennington, in Vermont. What was the result of this expedition? They were defeated by Gen. Stark with 800 militia from Vermont and New Hampshire, on the 16th of August, and the next day a reinforcement of 500 Germans under Colonel Breyman was also defeated by Stark. What was the number of killed and wounded on the part of the British? About 600 men; but a few days previous the American general, Herkimer, was defeated by Colonel St. Leger with considerable loss. What were the final proceedings of Burgoyne? Having crossed the Hudson and encamped at Saratoga, he was attacked on the 17th of September by Gen. Gates at Stillwater: both sides claimed the victory, but the Americans had the advantage, and on the 7th of October the battle of Saratoga was fought. What was the result of these battles? On the 17th of October, the British army, amounting to 5,752 men, exclusive of sick and wounded, surrendered to Gen. Gates at Saratoga, as prisoners of war. What effect had the surrender of Burgoyne on the British, Americans, and French? The British were much alarmed, while the Americans were inspired with fresh hopes of success; and the French, in February, 1778, decided the negotiation that was set on foot in 1776, by signing treaties of alliance, amity, and commerce with the Americans. What steps did the British ministry take on receiving intelligence of these treaties? They resolved to conciliate America, and commissioners arrived in June bringing proposals for accommodation. How were these propositions received by the Americans? Congress refused to listen to any terms short of an acknowledgment of independence, although the English might have effected their object a few years before had they proposed the same terms they were now willing to make. What change took place in the British army in 1778? Gen. Howe returned to England, and Gen. Sir Henry Clinton was appointed commander-in-chief of the royal forces in America. What did the British commander resolve on doing? He evacuated Philadelphia on the 18th of June, intending to concentrate his forces at New York. How did he succeed in this measure, and what steps did Washington take to interrupt their advance? Gen. Washington immediately put his troops in motion and followed the British army to Monmouth, where a battle was fought, in which the



Americans had the advantage ; but night suspending the conflict, Clinton silently decamped, and succeeded in reaching New York, where he remained inactive during the greater part of the summer. What efforts did the French make at this period to assist the Americans ? They sent a fleet of twelve ships of the line and four frigates, under the command of Count d'Estaing ; they arrived at the entrance of the Delaware in July, and shortly afterwards attacked the British troops at Newport, but were repulsed. What took place on Rhode Island between the British and American troops ? On the 29th of August a battle was fought, in which both armies lost about 200 men ; the British were commanded by Gen. Pigot, the Americans by Gen. Sullivan : on the succeeding morning the Americans left the Island. Give some account of the close of this campaign. The French fleet sailed to the West Indies without having accomplished any thing of importance. The British sent an expedition to Georgia, and on the 29th of December, Savannah was taken from the Americans. Where was the war principally carried on in the beginning of 1779 ? In the south, but nothing of great importance occurred there ; and at this time the exertions of the Americans were enfeebled from the depreciation of their bills of credit. What expeditions were sent out by the British in the early part of the season ? One under Sir George Collier and Gen. Matthews, to Virginia, and another under Gen. Tryon, against the maritime ports of Connecticut. How did they succeed ? That against Virginia landed at Portsmouth, and destroyed the shipping and valuable stores there, while the other, under Gen. Tryon, plundered New Haven, and burnt Fairfield and Norwalk. What expeditions were sent forth by the Americans in the middle of the season ? Three ; the first against Stony Point, an eminence on the Hudson, which had been taken and fortified by the British ; but the Americans under Gen. Wayne compelled the garrison to surrender. What were the second and third expeditions directed against ? A British post at Penobscot, and the invasion of the country of the Six Nations ; the first, commanded by General Lovell, was unsuccessful, but the other, under Gen. Sullivan, ravaged the Indian villages and destroyed their corn and fruit-trees. What was the cause of this expedition against the Indians ? The recent enormities they had committed in conjunction with the royalists ; the most conspicuous of these were the massacre of Wyoming, and that of Cherry Valley. Who were the leaders of this party ? Johnson, Butler, and Brandt. Who held the chief command of the American army during this

campaign in the south? Gen. Lincoln; he sent a detachment of 1,500 men under Gen. Ash to cross the Savannah and take a station on Briar Creek, but he was surprised and defeated by the British under Gen. Provost, on the 3d of March. What were Provost's movements after this affair? He invested, and attempted to take Charleston, but was repulsed, and on the approach of Gen. Lincoln retired with the main army to Savannah. What measures were concerted between the Americans and the French? The bombardment of Savannah, which they invested in September; and on the 9th of October they made an assault, and were repulsed with considerable loss. What was the amount of the killed and wounded of the allies? The French lost 700, the Americans 400; the Count d'Estaing was wounded, and Count Pulaski killed. On the 18th of October the siege was raised, and the French fleet set sail for Europe. What great sea-fight occurred at the close of this year? That between the celebrated Paul Jones, with a flotilla of five vessels, and Captain Pearson of the frigate *Serapis*. What was the result of this engagement? The Americans succeeded in capturing the English vessel, after a bloody battle which lasted several hours: this engagement took place off the coast of Scotland, and is one of the most desperate on record. Where were the principal operations of the war carried on in the succeeding year of 1780? In South Carolina: Sir Henry Clinton having arrived at Savannah from New York, proceeded to Charleston, and laid siege to that city in April. What was the result of this siege? Gen. Clinton being unable to continue the defence, capitulated on the 17th of May, the garrison and male inhabitants of the city surrendering as prisoners of war. Did Sir Henry Clinton continue to command the army in South Carolina? No; leaving 4,000 men under Lord Cornwallis, he returned to New York: a proclamation was issued inviting the Carolinians to join the British, and was partly successful. What measures were taken by the British to secure the interior of the country? A large force under Lord Rawdon was sent to Camden: several skirmishes took place, in one of which the American general, Burford, was defeated by the British under Col. Tarleton; in others, Sumter, also an American, was highly distinguished. Who was appointed to the command of the American forces in the south in the place of Gen. Lincoln? Gen. Gates, who arrived at the American camp in July, and collected troops to oppose the progress of the British. What was the effect of this movement on Lord Cornwallis? He repaired to Camden to reinforce Lord Rawdon,

and on the 16th of August a battle was fought, in which the Americans were defeated with the loss of nearly 2,000 men, including Gen. Gregory and Baron de Kalb. What were the consequences of this battle? Gen. Gates was obliged to retreat to Hillsborough, in North Carolina, and Sumter was pursued and defeated by Col. Tarleton. What further assistance did the French render to the Americans? In July, M. de Ternay, with a fleet of seven ships of the line and several frigates, and a force of 6,000 troops under Count de Rochambeau, arrived at Rhode Island; the fleet returned, but the land forces remained, and co-operated in the final reduction of the British army. What flagrant act of treachery occurred in this year? The plot of Gen. Benedict Arnold to deliver West Point into the hands of the British. What was the immediate cause of Arnold's treachery? His extravagance, together with a determination to be revenged for having been reprimanded by Gen. Washington. How did the plot succeed? It was discovered on the eve of success by the capture of the British agent in the transaction, Major André, an amiable and heroic officer. How was André captured? He was seized just as he was leaving the American lines by three soldiers, named John Paulding,\* Isaac Van Wert, and David Williams, who, although tempted by a large bribe, refused to let him go. What was André's fate? Being taken as a spy, his life was forfeited by the laws of war, and he was executed, much to the regret of both English and Americans. What was the further history of Arnold? He escaped to a British man-of-war, and received as the reward of his treachery £10,000 and the rank of Brigadier-general in the British army; but though rewarded, he was despised. What occurred in the autumn of 1780? Gen. Greene was appointed to the chief command of the army in the south, and shortly after the battle of the Cow Pens was fought, between the Americans under Col. Morgan and the British under Col. Tarleton, in which the latter were defeated with great loss, while that of the Americans was trifling. Give some account of the campaign of 1781. It was chiefly carried on in the south; Gen. Arnold made a descent on Virginia, and committed great depredations on the unprotected coast. Give some account of the proceedings in North Carolina. The opposing armies under Greene and Cornwallis met near Guilford courthouse, and on the 15th of March an engagement took place, in which the Americans were defeated, although the British lost 400 men. What steps

\* Grandfather of the celebrated author of that name



did Gen. Greene take after the loss of this battle? He marched to Camden, where he was attacked and defeated by Lord Rawdon with 900 men. What were the effects of this battle on the British? Rawdon had sustained such severe losses that he became apprehensive lest the surrounding inhabitants, who were rising in all directions, should attack and destroy the post; he therefore on the 10th of May evacuated Camden and retreated to Charleston. Whom did the British appoint to the command of their army in August? Colonel Stuart, who, being attacked by General Greene, fell back upon Eutaw Springs, where he was attacked and defeated, with a loss in killed, wounded, and taken prisoners, of 1,000 men, while the American loss was only 600. How did Lord Cornwallis proceed after the battle of Guilford? He marched towards Virginia, and arriving at Petersburg in May, took command of the united forces there, and then fortified himself at Yorktown in the best manner he was able. What plan of combined operations had been concerted by Generals Washington, Knox, and Rochambeau? To invest the British army at Yorktown, while Washington, giving out that New York was the destined point of attack, deceived and baffled Sir Henry Clinton. How did this measure succeed? Washington having crossed the Hudson and passed rapidly through New Jersey and Pennsylvania, effected a junction with Lafayette at Elk river, whence he despatched his forces for Virginia, Sir Henry being unaware of his manoeuvre till it was too late to pursue him. What gave further confidence to the Americans? The arrival of 24 French ships of the line under Count de Grasse, from which a large body of troops was landed, and the combined army to the number of 16,000 invested Yorktown. Give some account of the siege. The Americans opened their batteries upon the enemy early in October; by the 11th they had silenced the British fire, and on the 17th Lord Cornwallis proposed a cessation of hostilities. How was it received? On the 19th the capitulation was signed, by which the British stores and army to the number of 7,073 men were surrendered to Washington. How was the success of this expedition received? It was looked upon as deciding the war, and securing the Independence of the United States; divine service was performed throughout the whole army, and a day of thanksgiving set apart by Congress and observed in all the states: Gen. Washington also liberated all those who were under arrest for their offences. What occurred in 1782? In March, Lord North resigned, and a new cabinet was formed, who advised the king to discontinue

the war. What took place in the autumn of this year? Gen. Carleton was appointed to the command of the British forces in America, and on the 30th of November provisional articles of peace were signed, by which the Independence of the United States was acknowledged. What were some of the events of 1783? The recognition of American Independence by Great Britain, Sweden, Denmark, Spain, and Russia; and on the 25th of November the British troops evacuated New York. When was the definitive treaty of peace signed between Great Britain and America? On the 3d of September, 1783, at Versailles, by Adams, Franklin, Jay, and Laurens, on the part of the Americans, and Oswald, on the part of the British. What difficulties arose when the American army was about to be disbanded? The want of money rendered the payment of their arrears very difficult. Congress had been driven to the expedient of emitting bills of credit, and the depreciated currency deprived the soldiers of their due. How did the officers generally act under these circumstances? They kept quiet till the close of the war, but then great excitement prevailed, and the army at Newburg was agitated by an address, privately circulated, advising them to take violent measures. How did Washington behave at this crisis? He assembled the officers, and exhorted them to moderation in demanding their arrears, assuring them, that he would exert himself to the utmost in securing the payment of their just demands, and begged them not to listen to those who would sow discord between them and their representatives. How was this advice received by the officers? They voted Washington an address of thanks, and resolved to have unshaken confidence in the justice of Congress. How did Congress act with regard to the settlement of these claims? They put the army account in train to be settled, and decreed that the officers should receive after the close of the war five years' additional pay, and each soldier \$80, in addition to his wages. What day was fixed on for disbanding the troops? The 3d of November, on the day before which, Washington delivered his farewell address to the troops, and took leave of his officers. What was Washington's after conduct? He repaired to Annapolis, where Congress was sitting, delivered to the president his military commission, and then retired to his farm at Mount Vernon. What was the state of the government at this period? It was found to be so weak and inefficient, that commissioners were appointed to meet at Annapolis, in 1786, to form a general system of commercial regulations. What did these commissioners do? Finding

their powers insufficient to effect any thing of importance, they advised the states to elect delegates with ampler powers to meet at Philadelphia, which was done in May, 1787. What did these new delegates do? Having appointed Washington their president, they, after four months' deliberation, formed the Federal Constitution, which was presented to Congress and transmitted by that body to the several states for their approval. Was this form of government accepted by the states? Yes; it was accepted and ratified by all the states except North Carolina and Rhode Island, and in 1788 became the Constitution of the United States. When did the two dissenting states adopt it? North Carolina in 1789, Rhode Island in 1790; by this constitution the several states sent delegates to Congress. Who was chosen the first President? George Washington, who, although averse to entering on public affairs again, yielded to the unanimous voice of his country, and proceeded to New York, where Congress was then assembled, where he was received with the greatest enthusiasm by all classes. When was he inaugurated? On the 30th of April, 1789. How was this government and president received by the people generally? With unbounded joy; its beneficial effects were soon felt, public confidence was restored, commerce revived, and the national debt was funded and brought at once to its par value. Who was chosen Vice-President? John Adams, who had borne a distinguished part in the revolution. Name the other principal officers. Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of State; Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury; Henry Knox, Secretary of War; Edmund Randolph, Attorney-General; and John Jay, Chief-Justice. In what war were the United States involved in 1790? A war with the Indian tribes north of the Ohio: they obtained a victory over Gen. Harmer, and in 1791 another over St. Clair; but Gen. Wayne, who succeeded him, completely defeated them, and negotiated a treaty of peace at Greenville, in 1795. What other difficulties were the states involved in, at this period? The French revolution had commenced, and that nation, under the rule of the Directory, claimed assistance from America; but Washington was disposed to remain neutral, although a large portion of the community would have urged the nation into hostilities with England. What effect had Washington's resolution of preserving a strict neutrality on the different parties in the states? The country was already divided between opposing parties, and this neutral policy widened the breach. Who was Washington's successor as president? This great man having de-



clined a re-election was succeeded by John Adams, in 1797. What means did France take to revenge herself on the Americans, for refusing to assist her? They began a course of insult and aggression, that ended in open hostilities; the Americans adopted means of defence, increased their navy and army, appointing General Washington commander-in-chief. How did these disputes terminate? After the lapse of a few months, the Directory government of France was overthrown, and the hostilities between the countries were amicably settled. In what year did Washington die? In 1799, on the 14th of December, in the 68th year of his age. What effect had the news of his death on the people? It produced an impression that is without a parallel in America; the people, in accordance with the recommendation of Congress, wore crape on the left arm thirty days, as a token of grief; eulogies were delivered, and funeral processions celebrated throughout the country, for the loss of one whom they had been accustomed to regard as the "father of his country." By what names were the two parties designated at this time? Those in favor of the Constitution were styled Federalists; the others, Democrats, or Republicans: they differed on various subjects, both with regard to the foreign and domestic policy. What act of the federalist party was severely censured by the republicans? A commercial treaty with Great Britain, negotiated by Mr. Jay in 1794. What acts were passed during Mr. Adams' administration, that excited dissatisfaction? Raising a standing army, imposing a direct tax, and enacting the alien and sedition laws. What occurred in 1801? A change in the administration: the republican party being in the majority, elected their candidate, Thomas Jefferson, to the presidency, in opposition to Mr. Adams. What was the state of the country at the time Mr. Jefferson was elected? Very prosperous, and continued so during the first term of his official career; at the expiration of which, he was re-elected almost unanimously. What effect had the war between Great Britain and France on America? Being almost the only country that was not involved in this war, she endeavored to preserve her neutrality, in order to carry on her commerce with them, but they were inclined to contract its limits. What occurred in May, 1806? The British government declared all the ports from the Elbe in Germany to Brest in France, to be blockaded; and that all American vessels trading with those ports, were liable to seizure and condemnation. What occurred in the following November? The emperor of France issued the Berlin decree, declaring the

British islands in a state of blockade, and prohibiting all intercourse with them. What further orders were issued by the British in November, 1807? The "British orders in council," by which all neutral vessels trading with France, were compelled to stop at a British port and pay a duty. What decree was issued by Bonaparte, in consequence of this order? The "Milan decree," by which every vessel was confiscated that submitted to British search and pecuniary exactions. What course did Congress adopt on the recommendation of Mr. Jefferson? They laid an embargo on all the shipping of the United States; which was removed in March, 1809, and "non-intercourse with Great Britain and France," was substituted. What new causes of provocation were continually occurring? The trade of the United States was harassed by both nations, the government was accused by the British of partiality for France, and in France, of submitting to the insults of Great Britain. What provocation did America receive exclusively from the British? The impressment of her seamen, whom they either *could* not, or *would* not distinguish from Englishmen; and thus American seamen were compelled to fight for the British. What did the British complain of in the Americans? That they concealed runaway British seamen on board American merchant vessels; and declared they had a right to search for them. To what description of vessels had this search been confined hitherto? To merchant vessels; but in 1807 the British ascertained that four seamen had deserted from their vessels to the Chesapeake, an American frigate of 36 guns, commanded by Commodore Barron. What steps did the British take to recover these seamen? By the orders of Admiral Berkeley, the Chesapeake was followed beyond the Capes of Virginia, by the Leopard, of 50 guns, Captain Humphreys commanding, and after in vain demanding the deserters, they fired a broadside upon the Chesapeake, killing and wounding about 20 men. What was the result? The Chesapeake struck her colors, and gave up the four seamen; but the American government considered this outrage a sufficient ground for declaring war. What proclamation was issued by the president? One ordering all British vessels of war to quit the waters of the United States, and forbidding all intercourse between them and the inhabitants. How did the British government act with regard to the attack on the Chesapeake? They disavowed any participation in it, but took no measures with regard to it at all satisfactory to the Americans. Who succeeded Thomas Jefferson as president? James Madison, in 1809. Mr. Erskine, the British minister,

made an arrangement with the government at the beginning of this administration, which induced them to renew their trade with England, but it was afterwards disavowed by the British government. What served to increase the angry feelings between the countries? A rencounter between the ship of war *President*, and an English ship, the *Little Belt*. What message did the president send to Congress on the 1st of June, 1812? A message strongly recommending a declaration of war: the principal grounds for it were, impressing the American seamen, the orders in council, and a suspicion that the Indians had been instigated to hostilities by the British. What was the result of this message? The bill for declaring war passed both houses, and the next day was signed by the president. How was this declaration of war received by the people? With less unanimity than the previous war with Great Britain, and it was consequently prosecuted with less vigor: five days after this declaration had been issued, the British orders in council were repealed, in consequence of the decrees of Berlin and Milan having been revoked. How were the operations of the war carried on by the Americans? Owing to their imperfect preparations, they were wholly unsuccessful during the first campaign. What occurred on the 12th of July? General Hull invaded Canada with 2,000 men, but on the 16th of August he was compelled to surrender, with his whole force. Who made a second attempt to invade Canada? General Van Rensselaer, who crossed the Niagara with 1,000 men in November, and attacked the British at Queenstown: after an obstinate engagement, in which the British general, Brock, was killed, Van Rensselaer surrendered, with all his troops. Did the Americans meet with more success in their naval engagements? Yes: in August the frigate *Constitution*, Captain Hull, captured the British frigate *Guerriere*; in October, the *United States*, commanded by Captain Decatur, took the *Macedonian*, an English frigate; and in November the British sloop *Frolic* was taken by the *Wasp*, Captain Jones. Give some further account of the naval engagements. The *Wasp* and her prize was retaken by a British 74, the *Poictiers*; but in December, the *Constitution*, Captain Bainbridge, captured the British frigate *Java*: in all these engagements the total loss of the British was 423, of the Americans only 73. Give some account of the war during 1813. In January a detachment of 800 men, under General Winchester, was surprised and defeated by a party of British and Indians under General Proctor, at Frenchtown. What was the fate of the prisoners? They were left by General Proctor



without a sufficient guard to protect them from the Indians, who cruelly murdered a great number of them. What occurred in April? General Pike, with 1,700 Americans, took possession of York, in Upper Canada, but by the explosion of a mine, Pike, with about 100 Americans and 40 British, was killed. What happened to Colonel Dudley about this time? He was detached from Fort Meigs to take possession of a British battery, in which he was partially successful, when he fell into an ambuscade prepared by Tecumseh, and of 800 men, only 150 escaped. What occurred in May, 1813? 1,000 British troops under Sir George Prevost attacked Sackett's Harbor, but were repulsed by the Americans under General Brown. What fort did the Americans take from the British? Fort George, in Canada, which was defended by General Vincent: the Americans were commanded by General Boyd and Colonel Miller. Which was the most brilliant victory of this year? That of Commodore Perry, on Lake Erie, on the 10th September. Give some account of this engagement. The British fleet, under Commodore Barclay, consisted of six vessels, mounting in all 63 guns—the American fleet of nine vessels, and 56 guns; the firing commenced at 12 o'clock: in three hours the Americans gained a complete victory, and became masters of the lake. What did General Harrison do after this victory? He crossed over to the Canadian shore, and on the 5th October fought the battle of the Thames. Give some particulars of this battle. The British army under Proctor consisted of 2,000 men, more than half of whom were Indians, under Tecumseh; these being charged by Colonel Johnson, with the Kentucky cavalry, were routed, and Tecumseh slain, which in a great measure decided the fate of the day; the British were entirely defeated. What was the result of the action at Williamsburg? 1,200 Americans under General Boyd were defeated by 2,000 British under Lieutenant-colonel Morrison. What did the British do at Buffalo? They burnt Buffalo, and some other villages, in retaliation for the burning of Newark, in Canada, by the Americans. What was going on in the south at this period? The British fleet under Admiral Cockburn committed great depredations on the shores of the Chesapeake; but in an attack on Craney's Island, they were repulsed by the Virginia militia. Give some account of the engagement between the Hornet and the Peacock. Captain Lawrence, in the U. S. ship Hornet, attacked the British sloop Peacock, and in fifteen minutes gained a complete victory: unfortunately, the Peacock sunk before all her wounded could be removed. What naval engagement took

place in June? That between the U. S. ship Chesapeake, Captain Lawrence, and the British ship Shannon, Captain Brooke, in which the Chesapeake was taken, and Captain Lawrence killed: the last words of this brave officer were, "Don't give up the ship." What other engagements took place in this year? The Argus was captured by the British sloop Pelican, and the Enterprise captured the British brig Boxer. What occurred in July, 1814? On the 2d July, General Brown took Fort Erie from the British, and on the 5th attacked and defeated them under General Riall, at Chippewa: in this battle General Scott, who commanded one brigade of the American army, highly distinguished himself. When was the battle of Lundy's Lane fought? On the 25th July; the Americans were commanded by generals Scott and Ripley, and the British by generals Drummond and Riall. What was the result of this engagement? In favor of the Americans, though the loss was about equal on both sides. What was the last action of importance on this frontier? The attack of the British on Fort Erie, in which they were repulsed with great loss. What expedition did the British resolve on in August? An attack on Washington, by a fleet of 60 sail, and an army of 5,000 men, under General Ross. What did they do on their way thither? Having landed in the Patuxet, 40 miles from Washington, they defeated the American militia, under General Winder, at Bladensburg. What did they do at Washington? They burned the capitol, with the records, etc., the president's house, public offices, and many private dwellings, and then retreated to their ships. What did the British do in September? They made a similar attempt on Baltimore, but were finally repulsed without having been able to effect much; in this attack General Ross fell. What occurred at Plattsburg in the same month? Sir George Prevost with 14,000 men, aided by Commodore Downie with a fleet mounting 95 guns, attacked that place. What was the result of this attack? Commodore Downie was defeated by Commodore McDonough, with a fleet mounting 86 guns; and Sir George Prevost having attacked the forts was driven off by General Macomb. How were the naval engagements conducted? The Americans were generally successful; they captured many English merchant vessels, besides several men-of-war, among these the Epervier, Swan, Reindeer, Cyane, Levant, and Penguin, while the British victories were few in comparison; they however took, among others, the Essex and the President, American frigates. When was the treaty between England and the United States commenced, and when was it finally settled? In

April, 1813, commissioners were appointed to meet at Gottenburg, but afterwards the place of meeting was changed to Ghent; and there the treaty was concluded on the 24th December, 1814. Give the names of the American commissioners who signed this treaty. John Quincy Adams, Albert Gallatin, and James A. Bayard: Henry Clay and Jonathan Russell were added to the three first mentioned. What was the last important operation of the war? The battle of New Orleans, which occurred on the 8th of January, 1815: the English, under Sir Edward Packenham, were totally defeated by the Americans, who were commanded by Gen. Andrew Jackson; the British loss amounted to 2,000 men, and their commander also was killed. What war was America engaged in shortly after the peace was ratified with Great Britain? With Algiers, the Algerines having violated the treaty of 1795, and committed depredations on the commerce of the United States. What measures did Congress take to intimidate the Dey of Algiers? They fitted out two squadrons under commodores Decatur and Bainbridge; they set sail in June, captured some Algerine vessels off Cape Palos, and then sailed for Algiers. Give some further account of this expedition. Decatur obliged the Dey to sign a treaty of peace highly advantageous to the Americans; he then proceeded to Tunis and Tripoli, where he obtained satisfaction for their unprovoked aggression. When was the national bank established? In April, 1816, an act was passed by Congress, establishing a national bank, with a capital of \$35,000,000. When was the territory of Indiana admitted into the Union as a state? In December, 1816; in the same year James Monroe was elected President, and entered on his official duties the following March. When were the territories of Mississippi, Illinois, and Alabama admitted into the Union? In the years 1817, 1818, and 1819. What treaty was negotiated in 1819, and finally settled in 1820? That by which Spain ceded East and West Florida and the adjacent islands to the United States, as indemnity for spoliations committed on the property of American citizens. Who succeeded James Monroe as President? John Quincy Adams, in 1825. What remarkable event occurred on the 4th July, 1826? The death of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson, two of the principal contributors to American Independence; and on the following anniversary died another ex-president, James Monroe. Who succeeded John Q. Adams in the presidential chair? Andrew Jackson, the hero of New Orleans, in 1829. What difficulties occurred with the Indians in 1832? In April some of the Indian tribes under their chief,



Black Hawk, ravaged the northern part of Illinois, murdering the settlers and burning their dwellings: generals Scott and Atkinson were sent to suppress them. What dreadful epidemic prevailed throughout America in this year? The Asiatic cholera; it broke out among the troops destined for the Indian frontier, and added greatly to Gen. Scott's toil and sufferings. What was the result of this war? Black Hawk and his son were taken prisoners, and after some months' detention, allowed to return to their people, satisfied of the folly of contending with the United States. What other Indian disturbances occurred in 1834? The Seminoles, a warlike tribe inhabiting East Florida, refused to remove west of the Mississippi, according to the terms of a treaty which they had signed; General Jackson, however, insisted on their removal, and a sanguinary war was the consequence. Who was the principal Indian chief? Osceola, or Powell: his father was an Englishman, his mother a Seminole: at his instigation Charley Amathla, a chief favorable to the removal, was killed; this was the first outbreak. Give some account of the war. From the favorable nature of the country, the Indians, although few in number, were enabled to baffle the pursuit of the troops, and kept up a succession of devastations and massacres; often surprising small bodies of troops and committing great slaughter among them. Which were the most bloody of these rencounters? That in which Major Dade and his command of 117 men were killed, but one escaping to tell the tale; and the surprise of Camp King, the same day, 23d December, 1835. What was the fate of Osceola? He came into the American camp, with 70 warriors, under the protection of a flag; General Jesup suspecting him of treachery, caused him to be imprisoned at Fort Moultrie, where he died a few months after: it was generally supposed this event would put an end to the war, but the Seminoles refused to make any treaty, and the war continued for some years. What is generally thought of the Florida war? That it was one of the greatest danger and hardship that America had been engaged in; numbers of brave men and officers perished on the battle-field, or in the fatal swamps of the country. What outbreak occurred in Alabama among the Creek Indians? In 1836, Osceola sent the war-belt to the Creeks, and they rose upon the defenceless inhabitants, murdering their families, and burning their houses; they were soon defeated and dispersed by Gen. Scott, who restored peace early in the summer. Who succeeded Andrew Jackson as President? Martin Van Buren, in 1837. During his administration, the revolt in Canada occur-

red, and it was sympathized with by the neighboring Americans. What steps were taken by those Americans who were friendly to the Canadian insurgents? These adventurers took possession of Navy Island, situated in Niagara river, and fortified it against the British, whom they contrived to annoy by firing upon the Canada shore, and destroying their boats. What proclamation did Martin Van Buren and Governor Marcy issue? One ordering and enjoining the American people to preserve a strict neutrality; nevertheless these adventurers purchased arms and ammunition, and carried on the war with the British. Give some further account of their proceedings. They hired the steamboat *Caroline* to ply between the Island and American shore; she began to run on the 29th of December, and on the evening of the same day, a party of armed men crossed from the Canadian to the American shore, drove the men on board the *Caroline* ashore, set her on fire, and cutting her adrift, let her float over the falls; an American of the name of Durfee was killed, and the American government had a British subject (McLeod) tried for the murder, but he was eventually released. Who was elected to the presidential chair in 1841? William Henry Harrison; but dying a month after, the vice-president, John Tyler, became president. What difficulties occurred with the British government during Mr. Tyler's administration? Difficulties growing out of the Northeastern boundary question. Gen. Scott was stationed there by the American government to preserve the peace between the inhabitants on either side of the line; these difficulties were, however, amicably adjusted. Who succeeded John Tyler? James K. Polk of Tennessee, who was elected by the Democratic party in 1845. What difficulties arose between England and the United States in the early part of Mr. Polk's administration? Difficulties relative to the Oregon question, which it was feared at one time would lead to war between the two nations; but these were also amicably settled. What large tract of country was annexed to the United States while Mr. Polk was president? The Republic of Texas, at their own earnest desire, became part of the Union. What war was the United States involved in, in consequence of this annexation? A war with Mexico, of which Texas formerly constituted a part. What led to the first outbreak in this war? A part of the American forces under Gen. Taylor, stationed on the Rio Grande, were ordered by the Mexicans to retire from that section of country, and on their refusing to do so, were attacked by the Mexicans. Were the Americans generally successful in this war? Their progress through

the country up to the time of their entering the Mexican capital, was one series of brilliant victories against overwhelming odds; neither their superior numbers nor better knowledge of the country, enabled the Mexicans to stay for a moment the onward march of the Americans. What officer particularly distinguished himself? Gen. Zachary Taylor, who at Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, and particularly at Buena Vista, covered himself with unfading glory. What other officer fully sustained his former high reputation? Gen. Winfield Scott, the hero of Chippewa and Lundy's Lane, who, after the capture of Vera Cruz, marched to the capital, gaining many brilliant victories by the way. A treaty between the two nations is now being negotiated, which it is to be hoped will soon lead to peace. What great man died in this year, 1848? John Quincy Adams, who was struck down while in his seat as a Representative from Massachusetts, and after lingering a few days, died; the whole population of the different cities through which his body passed on its way to Boston, turned out to do honor to the remains of this pure patriot and great statesman.



## QUESTIONS ON THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

### INTRODUCTION.

WE pass by the causes which led to a confederation of the American colonies, the chief object of which was to secure union and strength in their efforts to throw off the British yoke, as that has been fully explained in the foregoing History; and in this introduction to the Questions on the Constitution of the United States, will merely state the nature of the resolutions then formed, the adoption of them, and the formation of the first and second Constitutions. In 1774, the assembling of a Continental Congress was first recommended; and in accordance with this, a Congress met at Philadelphia on the 7th September of that year, in the course of whose deliberations a *Declaration of Rights* was adopted. This was followed, in the year 1776, by a resolution asserting their independence; and on the 4th July, 1776, *The Declaration of Independence* was formally adopted, proclaiming to the world that the American colonies "were, and ought to be, free and independent states," and absolving them from all allegiance to the government of Great Britain. The articles of confederation, however, did not receive the assent of Congress until the latter end of 1777; and were not attended to by the state of Maryland until 1781, when, having been duly ratified by all the states, the fact was announced by Congress. Their adoption was attended by many obstacles, as various conflicting interests had to be reconciled, whose force had not been diminished by the crippled condition in which the resources of the country were left after the Revolutionary struggle. The chief cause of the downfall was the want of due authority and power over the states, and an absence, in consequence, of that strict allegiance and obedience on the part of the latter to the general government, so essential to the union in its infancy. Daily experience called loudly for some substitute, to exercise the functions necessary to control the several members; and the subject having been duly considered and discussed, delegates were sent to a convention of *all* the states, and on the 21st of February, 1787, the present Constitution was adopted, and subsequently ratified by the states, with the exception of North Carolina and Rhode Island. By the accession to it of nine

states, it became, in 1788, the Constitution of the United States. The two dissenting states acceded to it in the course of the two following years. On the 30th of April, 1789, George Washington, the Father of the country, was unanimously elected President of the Federal Republic. A Republic is that form of government, where the executive and legislative powers are vested by the people in their agents or representatives; an Aristocracy is where these powers are confined to a *portion* only of the people; and a Democracy, where it is exercised directly by the people themselves. To the first class belongs the Republic of the United States of America, and the code of its principles forms the subject of the present chapter.

#### QUESTIONS.

What is the government of the United States? A Federal Republic. What constitutes the Republic? At this time, (1849,) thirty states; the original number, in 1789, was thirteen: these states have exclusive jurisdiction within their own borders of all matters pertaining to their domestic or local affairs, while those of an external or national character are vested in the general government. Part of the public domain is also divided into territories, which are also under the control of the general government. What do we mean by the general government? The federal power created by the union of the states, and the people thereof, in their collective capacity. Of what parts, or branches, is that government composed? Of three, the legislative, executive, and judicial powers. What are the powers of the legislative branch? To the legislative branch is confided the duty of apportioning moneys for the support of the government; appropriations, which are limited in duration to two years; of raising and maintaining the army and supporting the navy; collecting taxes, and other means of revenue; regulating commerce; declaring war, including the grant of letters of reprisal and marque; punishing all offences against the law of nations; providing for the disciplining and arming the militia; and of making, abrogating, and repealing all laws necessary for effecting these purposes, or any others vested by the Constitution or laws in any department of the government. Of what is the legislature composed? Of a House of Representatives, and Senate. How is the number of the representatives regulated? By the aggregate of inhabitants: each *member* representing the number which Congress may decree. In those states where slavery exists, in estimating the population, *five* slaves are

counted as *three whites*. How is the number determined? By a census, taken every ten years. What are the qualifications necessary for a representative? To have attained the age of twenty-five years, to have been a citizen of the United States for seven years, and an inhabitant, when chosen, of the state from which elected. What provision is there for vacancies, by resignation, or otherwise? The executive of the state issues a *writ* for an election to fill the same. What are the particular powers of this branch of the legislature? The originating of all bills involving the expenditure of money; the sole right of impeachment, with the power of deciding on the election of its own members. For what length of time are the members chosen? The term of two years. How are they chosen? By a direct vote of the people, whose privileges are controlled by the state laws, with the express provision, however, that no person shall vote for a national representative, who is not entitled to vote for a member of the house of delegates of his own state. What constitutes a quorum? A majority: though a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and compel the presence of absent members. May a member be expelled? Yes, by a vote of two-thirds. What peculiar privilege have the members of Congress? They are exempt from arrest during their attendance at, and passage to and from either house, *except* for treason, felony, and breach of the peace. Have they, or can they grant, any titles? They have not, and cannot grant them: the Constitution allows no grant of titles from any source. What is the compensation to the members? An allowance of eight dollars *per diem*, and a certain sum per mile when travelling on the public service. Who is the presiding officer of the House of Representatives? The Speaker. How is he chosen? By a vote of the members. Of what is the Senate composed? Of two members from each state in the union, each of whom is entitled to one vote. For what time are they chosen? For the term of six years. By whom are they chosen? By the legislatures of their respective states. What are they considered to represent? The states, as sovereignties. By concession, each member of the federal union was considered in such capacity, by the framers of the Constitution, as entitled to equal representation. In what particulars do the two houses of Congress differ? The Senate may be called the *conservative*, while the House is denominated the popular branch. Whence arises this distinction? From the mode of their election: the Senate checks a too partial and hasty, as well as uncalled for legislation, by those in immediate contact with popular caprice; while



the experience and superior wisdom of matured deliberation affords an opportunity for correcting errors, proceeding from faction, or designed for partisan objects. Has either house the power of passing laws independent of the other? No law can pass from the legislative to the executive branch before receiving the assent of *both* houses; and the Senate may defeat, by amendments, or refusal to act, money bills, which must originate in the House of Representatives, and thus check the exercise, by the latter, of this prerogative confided to them, from their presumed superior knowledge of the wants of the country, they being fresh from the people. Does the term of office of all the senators expire at the same time? No: it was provided that immediately after assembling, after the first election, they should be divided as equally as possible into three classes; the seats of the first to be vacated after the expiration of the second year; those of the second, after the expiration of the fourth year; of the third, after the expiration of the sixth year, in order that *one-third* might be chosen every year. In case of the admission of a new state into the union, how is this decided? By ballot: one senator taking the four, the other the six years term. What are the qualifications of a senator? A citizenship of nine years, to have attained the age of thirty, and to be an inhabitant of the state from which chosen. What provision is there for vacancies by resignation, or otherwise? The executive of the state makes temporary appointments, until the next meeting of the legislature, which fills the vacancy. Who is the presiding officer of the Senate? The Vice-President of the United States; or, in his absence, a president *pro tem.*, chosen by a vote of the senators. Has the Vice-President a vote? Only in cases of equal division, when he gives a casting vote. Does the Senate choose the other officers? Yes. Can the Senate originate an impeachment? No: they can only try the accused, under their oath, for the conviction of whom a vote of two-thirds is requisite. If the President of the United States be the accused, the Chief-Justice presides. What is the *extent* of the penalty they can impose? Removal from, and disqualification to hold any place of profit, trust, or emolument under the government of the United States. The party may afterwards be tried, convicted, and punished, as provided by law for any criminal. What are considered the grounds for impeachment? Treason, bribery, and other like crimes and misdemeanors. Has the Senate any other peculiar powers? Yes: executive restraints, which will be mentioned in connection with the executive branch of the government. How often, and when, does Congress meet?

Once every year, in the city of Washington, on the first Monday in December, unless convened at some other period by proclamation of the President of the United States, to decide on matters of immediate importance. What constitutes a quorum of the Senate? The rules are the same as those of the House of Representatives. What is meant by "a" Congress? A period of two years, comprising two sessions of that body. Does Congress keep a record of its proceedings? Regular journals are kept and published of the proceedings of both houses, with the exception of those which it may be deemed important to keep secret. How is a vote of the Senate taken? The vote is invariably taken *viva voce*, but a division and *count* may be had, if called for. A vote of one-fifth of the members present may also secure the "*ayes*" and "*nays*" on any question. What is meant by a "*call*" of the house? A call of the house is the calling by the clerk of the names of all the members, to ascertain who are the absentees, and the sergeant-at-arms may compel their presence. Can either house adjourn? Neither house can adjourn without the consent of the other for more than three days, or to any other place than that in which the session may be held at the time of adjournment. Is a member of Congress eligible for any other office? None which has been created, or enlarged in its emoluments, during the period for which he was elected. The reverse of this applies to persons holding civil offices, with regard to eligibility to Congress. How are the laws made? Laws are required to pass the two houses of Congress, after which they are presented for signature to the President, without whose consent they cannot go into force. Can the President prevent the passage of any bill? If the President does not approve any bill he may return it to the house of Congress in which it originated, and his objections will defeat its operation, unless overcome by a vote of two-thirds, in both houses. In the latter case, however, his "*veto*" has no influence. In the reconsideration of a bill, how must the vote be taken? By the "*ayes*" and "*nays*," and entered in full on the journals of both houses. • Can the President retain a bill without his signature? He may for a period not exceeding ten days, (exclusive of Sundays :) if he fails to return it at the expiration of this time, the bill becomes a law, unless Congress shall have adjourned in the mean time. Does this comprise all submitted to the President for his signature? No: every order, resolution, or vote, with the exception of one of adjournment, is subject to his approval, under the same restrictions. Are the territories represented in Congress? Each territory under an organized

territorial government is entitled to one delegate in the House of Representatives, who has the right of speaking, but not of voting. Where does Congress meet? In the city of Washington, in the "*Capitol*," a building erected for the legislative and judicial branches to hold their meetings. The District of Columbia, in which Washington is situated, possesses no state jurisdiction, being entirely under the control of Congress, having been ceded to the general government by the states of Maryland and Virginia. Can Congress *tax*, or lay a duty, upon any articles exported from one state to another? No tax or duty can be laid on articles transported from state to state; nor can any preference be given in a regulation of commerce or revenue to any particular state; nor can the cargoes of vessels trading between the ports of different states be charged with duties. Can any officer of this government be rewarded by any other government, either by title or profit? Not without the consent of Congress. This provision is to secure additional purity in public officers. Are the rights of the states defined? Those powers extended to the general government which are denied the states, are expressly defined. To a certain extent, however, the states have complete jurisdiction over those state affairs not conflicting with the general government. Can any state enter into compact with, or declare war against, another state or foreign power? Only in case of actual invasion, or where the imminence of the danger precludes delay. How is the executive power vested? In one presiding officer; termed the President of the United States of America. There is also a Vice-President, whose duty it is to preside over the Senate, and, in case of accident or death to the President, discharges his duties. For how long a period are the President and Vice-President chosen? For a term of four years. How are they elected? By electors. How are the electors chosen? By a direct vote of the people in every state, in such manner as its own legislature may direct. In case of more than two candidates for the presidency, are those electors chosen having the highest number of votes? This matter is under the control of the states; a majority of all the votes cast being requisite in some, and plurality *only* in others. Is there a direct vote of the people for electors in every state? In *all*, with the exception of South Carolina, where the legislature elects. Are people residing in the territories entitled to a presidential vote? They are not. How with regard to the District of Columbia? The citizens of the District of Columbia do not participate in the election; being to a great extent composed of those connected with the government, they are thus removed from all party



influences. Can any representative, senator, or person holding office under the government, be an elector? No, *he cannot*. Where, and how, do the electors vote? In the capitol of each state, by ballot, and on the same day throughout the union. Can the President and Vice-President be an inhabitant of the same state? They cannot. Where are the electoral votes finally counted? In the Senate of the United States, by the President of that body, the vote of each state having been sealed and transmitted to him. The candidate for each office who has the majority of electoral votes, is then declared, by the president of the Senate, duly elected. How are the sealed votes conveyed to the Senate? By one of the electors of each state, chosen from their body for that purpose. Should there be no majority, what is then done? The three candidates having the highest number of votes are then selected, and one of them must be chosen by a vote of the House of Representatives, by ballot. How does the House of Representatives vote? By states, the representation from each having one vote. In case of equal party division in the representation, how is the choice made? The vote of the state thus equally divided is lost, the choice being made by the remaining states. What number is required for this purpose? Two-thirds of the states of the union, a majority of the *whole* number being necessary to a choice. Should the House not be able to choose a President, what is done then? The Vice-President acts as President. Should the people fail to elect a Vice-President, how is he chosen? By the Senate, from the two candidates having the highest number of votes; with the same restrictions as to the requisite number of senators as those enforced with regard to representatives in the House, in the choice of a *President*. How, and when, is the day of election for President and Vice-President appointed? By *Congress*, which, by a recent law, has enacted that the election throughout the Union shall be on the *first* Tuesday in November, *next* preceding the expiration of a presidential term. On what day does this term expire? On the third day of March, every fourth year. May the President be chosen for a second term? He may. Is the same person *again* eligible as President? Eight years has hitherto been the extent that any one person has filled the presidential chair, although the Constitution does not define the time. What are the qualifications of a President? He must have attained the age of thirty-five years, be *born* a citizen of the United States, and have been for fourteen years a resident of the same. Do the same restrictions apply to the Vice-President? They do. In what case do the duties devolve upon

the Vice-President? In case of the removal of the President, by death, resignation, or inability to discharge his duties. Should both be incapacitated by any of these causes, what must be done? Congress must declare what officer shall act as President, and he shall continue in such capacity during the continuance of such disability. Does the President receive a compensation? Yes: \$25,000 per annum, which can neither be increased nor diminished during his term, nor enlarged by extra allowance from the government, or any state or states. What is the compensation of the Vice-President? \$6,000 per annum, subject to the same restrictions. What is the oath of the President of the United States? "I do solemnly swear, (or affirm,) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States." By whom is it administered? By the Chief-Justice. What military power has the President? He is commander-in-chief of the army and navy, and of the militia, when called into actual service. Has he the power of pardoning offences? In all cases coming under United States jurisdiction, except those of impeachment. What other powers has he? He makes treaties, appoints ambassadors, consuls, and other public ministers, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States established by law, and whose appointment are not otherwise provided for by the Constitution. Is there any limitation to his powers? Yes: all treaties, to be valid, require the concurrence of two-thirds of the members of the Senate present when action is had on the same. A majority of this body must also approve his selection of all the officers we have named. During the recess of the Senate, can the President grant commissions, or make appointments? He may: but if not approved by the Senate during its ensuing session, the same are null and void. What is the course of proceeding by the Senate on executive nominations? It has what is termed an executive session, deliberating with closed doors; proceedings of this character are not divulged until the injunction of secrecy be removed by its own will. By whom is the President assisted in the government? By his Cabinet. Of whom is the Cabinet composed? Of a Secretary of State, Secretary of the Treasury, Secretary of War, Secretary of the Navy, Attorney-General, and Postmaster-General, who take precedence in the order recited. What are their duties? To each is intrusted that department of executive business signified by his title, all being separate and distinct, to a certain extent. How does the President communicate with Congress? Always in writing. At their annual

meeting he transmits a message regarding the state of the union, and suggesting such measures as he may deem essential for the public weal; also whenever he thinks it necessary or expedient during their session. Can the President convene or adjourn Congress? Yes: on extraordinary occasions he may call an extra session of both houses, or either of them; or if they shall disagree in regard to the adjournment, he may adjourn them for such a period as he may deem proper. What other special powers has he? He receives ambassadors and other public ministers, sees that the laws are faithfully executed, and commissions all officers of the United States. Can he be removed from office? He may, on impeachment for conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors. The same applies to the Vice-President, and all civil officers. What do we mean by the judicial department? The judicial is that power which interprets and pronounces the laws, and which, by deciding controversies and enforcing rights, prevents the exercise of absolute and despotic will. How is this power vested? In one Supreme Court, and such inferior courts as may be established or ordained by Congress. How are the judges appointed? By the President, with the concurrence of the Senate. How long do they hold office? For life, or during their good behavior. Do they receive a compensation? They do; and the same cannot be diminished while they continue in office. To what does their power extend? To all criminal and civil cases in law or equity arising under the Constitution, or the treaties, or laws of the United States, embracing those affecting public ministers and consuls, and all questions demanding legal investigation of a maritime nature. What is meant by maritime offences? This embraces acts or offences on the high seas, where, in the absence of jurisdiction of any particular nation, the rights are common. What other powers has the judiciary? The decision of controversies between two or more states, or one state and citizens of another, and in certain contingencies between citizens of the same state. What is the form of trial for crimes? By jury, except in cases of impeachment, and in that state where the offence may have been committed. What is treason against the United States? Carrying on war against them, or giving aid and comfort to their enemies. What is necessary to convict a person of treason? Two witnesses to the same overt act, or a confession in open court. What is the punishment for treason? It is regulated by Congress. In what does this differ from the English law? No attainder of treason affects the children or heirs, nor does the forfeiture extend beyond the life of the party convicted.



# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

SOVEREIGNS.			SOVEREIGNS.	
Spain.	France.		England	
Ferdinand & Isabella.	Charles VIII.	1492. Columbus discovers America.	Henry VII.	
		1497. The Cabots discover the continent at Labrador.		
Charles V.	Francis I.	1498. Columbus discovers the continent of South America.	Henry VIII.	
		1524. Verrazano explores the coast.		
Philip II.	Henry III.	1534. James Cartier discovers the Gulf of St. Lawrence.	Elizabeth.	
		1584. Sir W. Raleigh sends two vessels to America.		
Philip III.	Henry IV.	1585. Raleigh sends Sir Richard Grenville, who leaves a colony on the island Roanoke.	James I.	
		1586. They return to England.		
Philip IV.	Louis XIII.	1587. Raleigh sends a colony by Captain White, which is lost.	Charles I.	
		1589. Raleigh sells his patent to the London Company.		
		1602. Gosnold discovers Cape Cod.		
		1603. Henry IV. grants Acadia to De Monts.		
		1604. De Monts discovers the Bay of Fundy and founds Port Royal.		
		1606. London and Plymouth companies established.		
		1607. Plymouth Company make an ineffectual attempt to form a colony at Kennebec.		
		“ The first permanent settlement at Jamestown.		
		“ Captain Smith rescued by Pocahontas.		
		1609. Lord Delaware appointed governor.		
		“ Hudson river and Lake Champlain discovered.		
		1613. Pocahontas marries John Rolfe.		
		1614. Dutch settle on Manhattan Island.		
		1620. Commencement of slavery in America.		
		“ Landing of the Pilgrims.		
		1621. Treaty with Massasoit.		
		1622. Charter granted to Gorges and Mason.		
		1628. John Endicott settles at Salem.		
		1632. Lord Baltimore obtains a grant of Maryland.		
		1636. Roger Williams founds Providence.		
		1634. Settlement of Maryland commenced.		
		1637. War with the Pequods.		
		1638. Harvard College founded.		
		1641. New Hampshire and Massachusetts unite.		

SOVEREIGNS.		SOVEREIGNS.		
Spain.	France.	England.		
Philip IV.	Louis XIV.	1643. Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New Haven unite in a confederacy.	Charles I.	
Charles II.		1664. Patent granted to the Duke of York.	Charles II.	
		1665. War with Philip, son of Massasoit.	James II.	
		1682. William Penn settles in Pennsylvania.		
		“ Founds Philadelphia.	William & Mary.	
		“ Charter of Massachusetts annulled.		
		1686. Sir Edmund Andros appointed governor-general.	George II.	
		1688 Revolution in England.		
		1689. Imprisonment of Andros and Randolph.		
		“ Connecticut and Massachusetts resume their charters.		
Philip V.		1692. Massachusetts obtains a new charter.		
		1697. Peace of Ryswick.		
		1740. Moravians settle in Pennsylvania.		
		1744. War between England and France.		
		1745. Capture of Louisburg and Cape Breton.		
		1748. Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.		
		1750. Difficulties of the Ohio Company with the French.		
		1752. Washington sent to remonstrate with the French.		
		1755. Braddock defeated and slain.		
		“ Dieskau defeated at Lake George.		
Ferdinand VI.	Louis XV.	1756. War formally declared between England and France.		
		1757. Massacre at Fort William Henry.		
		1758. General Amherst takes Louisburg.		
		“ Defeat of Abercrombie at Ticonderoga.		
		“ Colonel Bradstreet takes Frontenac.		
		“ English take Fort Du Quesne.		
		“ Victory and death of General Wolfe.		
		1760. Surrender of Canada to the English.		
		1763. Peace of Paris.		
		“ War with the combined Indians under Pontiac.		
Charles III.		1764. Duties imposed on sugar, molasses, &c.	George III.	
		1765. Parliament passes the Stamp-act.		
		“ Patrick Henry introduces his five resolutions into the House of Burgesses.		
		“ First meeting of the Continental Congress.		
		1766. Repeal of the Stamp-act.		
		1767. Duties laid on tea, painters' colors, &c.		
		1768. Non-importation agreement entered into by the merchants of Boston, New York, &c.		
		1770. Affray with British troops at Boston.		
		1773. Cargoes of tea destroyed at Boston.		
		1774. Boston Port-bill.		
Louis XVI.		“ Meeting of Congress at Philadelphia.		

SOVEREIGNS.		SOVEREIGNS.	
Spain.	France.	England.	
Charles III.	Louis XVI.	1775.	Battle of Lexington.
		"	Americans take Ticonderoga and Crown Point.
		"	Second meeting of Congress at Philadelphia.
		"	Royal governors driven out of the southern colonies.
		"	George Washington appointed commander-in-chief.
		"	Battle of Bunker's Hill.
		"	Benjamin Franklin appointed postmaster-general.
		"	Defeat and death of General Montgomery at Quebec.
		1776.	British evacuate Boston.
		"	Declaration of Independence.
Louis XVI.	Continental Congress.	"	Aug. 27. Americans defeated at Long Island.
		"	Dec. 26. British defeated at Trenton.
		1777.	British defeated at Princeton.
		"	General Herkimer defeated.
		"	Battles of Bennington, Brandywine, and Stillwater.
		"	British enter Philadelphia.
		"	Battles of Germantown and Saratoga.
		"	Surrender of General Burgoyne.
		1778.	Treaty of alliance with France.
		"	British evacuate Philadelphia.
George III.		"	Battle of Monmouth.
		"	Arrival of a French fleet under D'Estaing.
		"	Savannah taken by the British.
		1779.	Sunbury taken by the British.
		"	General Provost surprises the Americans at Briar Creek.
		"	Capture of Stony Point by General Wayne.
		"	Repulse of the French and Americans at Savannah.
		1780.	Surrender of Charleston to the British.
		"	Arrival of a French squadron under Rochambeau.
		"	Lord Rawdon defeats General Gates near Camden.
		"	Arnold endeavors to deliver West Point into the hands of the British.
		"	Execution of Major André as a spy.
		1781.	Robert Morris appointed treasurer.
		"	Morgan defeats Tarleton at the Cowpens, South Carolina.
		"	Battle of Guilford.
		"	British evacuate Camden.
		"	Surrender of Cornwallis to the allies at Yorktown.
		1782.	Disturbances among the officers at Newburg.



France.	U. States.	England.
Louis XVI.	Continental Congress.	
	George Washington.	
Bona- parte 1st consul.	John Adams.	
Napoleon Emperor	Thomas Jefferson.	
	James Madison.	
Louis XVIII.		
Napoleon's return.		
		George III.
	1783	Acknowledgment of the Independence of the U. S. by Sweden, Denmark, Spain, and Russia.
	"	Definitive treaty of peace signed, and the army disbanded.
	"	British evacuate New York.
	1786.	Meeting of delegates at Annapolis.
	1787.	Convention at Philadelphia to frame a constitution.
	1789.	Federal constitution adopted by eleven States.
	"	Washington inaugurated as President of the United States.
	1794.	General Wayne defeats the Indians in Ohio.
	"	Treaty concluded with Great Britain.
	1797.	John Adams inaugurated.
	1799.	Death of Washington.
	1801.	Thomas Jefferson inaugurated.
	"	War with Tripoli.
	1806.	Great Britain searches American vessels and impresses American seamen.
	1807.	Outrage committed on U. S. frigate Chesapeake.
	"	An embargo laid by the American government.
	1809.	James Madison inaugurated.
	"	Embargo repealed and non-intercourse substituted.
	1811.	Attack on U. S. frigate President.
	1812.	War declared with Great Britain.
	"	General Hull invades Canada.
	"	Hull surrenders Detroit to the British.
	"	U. S. vessels Wasp, United States, and Constitution capture the British vessels Frolic, Macedonian, and Java.
	1813.	Battle and massacre of Frenchtown.
	"	Capture of York by the Americans.
	"	Devastations of the British on the shores of the Chesapeake.
	"	The Chesapeake captured by the Shannon.
	"	Perry's victory on Lake Erie.
	"	Battle of the Thames.
	1814.	Battles of Chippewa and Lundy's Lane.
	"	British enter Washington.
	"	Battle of Plattsburg.
	1815.	Battle of New Orleans.
	"	Peace with Great Britain.
	1816.	National Bank established.

George III.

France.	U. States.	England.
Louis XVIII.	James Monroe.	George III.
	1817 James Monroe inaugurated.	
	1818. Illinois admitted into the Union.	
	1819. Alabama " " "	
Charles X.	John Q. Adams.	George IV.
	1825. John Quincy Adams inaugurated.	
	1826. Death of Adams and Jefferson.	
	1827. Death of Monroe.	
Louis Philippe.	Andrew Jackson.	William IV.
	1829. Andrew Jackson inaugurated.	
	1832. Cholera breaks out.	
	" Black Hawk war.	
	1835. Major Dade's massacre.	
	Van Buren.	
	1837 Martin Van Buren inaugurated.	
	1841 William Henry Harrison inaugurated.	Victoria.
	" Death of Harrison.	
	" John Tyler becomes President.	

## AN ABSTRACT

OF

## THE ROMAN KINGS AND MOST DISTINGUISHED HEROES.

ROMULUS, founder of the Roman state; he instituted the senate, which at first consisted of 100 counsellors, and he divided the people into three tribes.

Numa Pompilius, the institutor of religious ceremonies. This amiable man was with difficulty persuaded to accept of the kingdom: he calmed the dissensions amongst the citizens; moderated the warlike ardor of the Romans by the impressions of religion; made a goddess of honesty or good faith; introduced Termini, or gods of boundaries; and distributed the citizens into companies, according to their trades: the temple of Janus was not opened during his reign.

Tullus Hostilius. In his reign was fought the battle between the Horatii and the Curiatii. Tullus became superstitious, studied magic, and was burnt to death in his palace, or, according to other accounts, was assassinated.

Ancus Martius, grandson of Numa. He built many fortifications, and greatly improved the city. He vanquished the Latins, and other neighboring states, in several battles; and built the city of Ostia at the mouth of the Tiber.

Tarquinius Priscus. He increased the number of the senate, and built a magnificent temple to Jupiter.

Servius Tullius: he enlarged Rome, and added a fourth tribe; divided the citizens into six classes; instituted the census or valuation of estates; the *lustrum*, or expiatory sacrifice, every fifth year, and coined money: he was slain by order of Tarquin the Proud, after a useful reign.

Tarquinius Superbus, the last of the kings: he was dethroned, and expelled Rome, on account of his enormous vices. He subdued the Volsci and Sabines, and became master of Gabii by a cruel stratagem. In this reign the Sibylline books were purchased; the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus built; the Circus Maximus completed, and the city adorned with public buildings.

Lucius Junius Brutus, the first consul: he brought his own sons to justice for a conspiracy in favor of Tarquin.



Titus Lartius, the first dictator: this officer enjoyed absolute power, and was only created on emergencies.

Menenius Agrippa. In his time the first tribunes were chosen. He was famed for his eloquence.

Caius Marcius Coriolanus: he was unjustly banished Rome, and returned with an army of Volscians to besiege it, but his mother's entreaties prevailed upon him to spare the city; after which he was assassinated by the Volsci. In his time the first ediles were chosen.

Terentius Arsa: he was a famous tribune, and active friend of the people.

Lucius Quintius Cincinnatus; a celebrated dictator, taken from the plough to command the Roman armies. In his time the decemviri were appointed.

Virginius, a centurion in the Roman army. In his time the unjust and abused authority of the decemviri was abolished. He killed his own daughter, Virginia, to prevent her falling a sacrifice to the villany of Appius Claudius.

Marcus Manlius, the brave defender and saviour of the capitol, in the war with Brennus, king of the Gauls. The enemy were attempting to scale the ramparts, but were discovered by the sentinel hearing the cackling of some geese, and repulsed by Manlius. This patriot was at last unpopular, and condemned to be thrown from the Tarpeian rock.

Camillus, a renowned general, three times dictator: he led the Romans on to victory, and compelled the Gauls to raise the siege of Rome.

Marcus Curtius, a young patrician, famed for throwing himself down the gulf; he was urged to this act by an obscure answer of the augurs, which declared "that the gulf would not close until the most precious thing in Rome was thrown into it;" Curtius supposing military virtue to be alluded to, cast himself all armed into it, upon which the chasm is said to have closed.

Manlius Torquatus: he put his son to death for contempt of his consular authority, and as an example of military justice. The great Earl of Pembroke displayed a similar rigid conduct in the Irish wars.

Fabricius, one of the poorest and most virtuous of the Romans: his integrity was unshaken amidst every attempt of King Pyrrhus to bribe him; and his noble spirit will transmit his name and merits to the latest ages.

Curius Dentatus: a hero who reduced the Samnites, Sabines, and others: he is remarkable for leading a life of voluntary poverty.

Regulus. In his time the first Punic wars began. He was defeated and taken prisoner by Xantippus, the Lacedemonian; and sent to Rome by the Carthaginians to obtain peace for them; resolutely refusing to compromise his country, he returned a prisoner, and was doomed by the Carthaginians to suffer the most cruel tortures.

Marcellus. He vanquished the Gauls in their war with Rome; and, for his valor, was called his country's sword.

Fabius Maximus; famed for his wisdom, prudence, and conduct; he has been styled the buckler of Rome.

Scipio Africanus, the great conqueror of Spain and Africa; and the successful opposer of Hannibal, the Carthaginian general, whom he defeated at Zama.

Scipio Æmilianus, the destroyer of Carthage. He shone equally in learning as in arms.

The Gracchi, the friends of liberty and virtue; they endeavored to stem the rising torrent of corruption, but fell a sacrifice to the attempt; they revived the Agrarian law of Licinius Stolo, forbidding any Roman to possess more than 500 acres of public lands.

Metellus Numidius; famous in battle, and a man of strict integrity.

Caius Marius; famed for his insatiable pride and ambition; he brought great calamities upon his native city in his quarrel with Sylla. He subdued the Numidians, the Cimbri, and the Teutōnes.

Sylla, a great conqueror, tyrannical in command; but he had at last the moderation to resign all his dignities, and retire to a private station. He was the implacable enemy of Marius.

Marcus Tullius Cicero; the great Roman orator and philosopher, and the distinguished friend of liberty.

Pompey the Great, a brave general, but whose ambition led to his country's slavery and his own premature fall.

Julius Cæsar: the greatest hero of his time. He was chosen perpetual dictator of Rome; but trampling upon the liberties of the Roman people, fell by the hands of assassins led by his friend Brutus.

Marc Antony; the friend of Cæsar, famed as a general, but still more noted for his attachment to Cleopatra, queen of Egypt.

Augustus Cæsar; the first Roman emperor, and the nephew of Julius. In his reign the Romans enjoyed peace; and JESUS, the long promised Messiah, appeared in Galilee.

AN ABSTRACT  
OF THE  
BIOGRAPHY OF THE MOST CELEBRATED  
GRECIANS.

CECROPS, the first king of Athens.

Theseus, contemporary with Romulus, and a king of Athens: memorable for his courage and conduct; he killed the Minotaur, a monster kept by Minos, and achieved many other great exploits.

Jason, a noble Thessalian, who is said to have sailed with forty-nine companions to Colchis, in search of the golden fleece: this expedition is, however, more properly in the region of fable than true history, as also that of Theseus.

Agamemnon, generalissimo of the Grecian armies at the siege of Troy, and king of Argos and Mycenæ, in the Morea.

Codrus, the last king of Athens; he devoted himself to death for the benefit of his country, which was immediately after governed by archons, the Athenians conceiving that none could be found sufficiently worthy of his throne.

Cadmus, a king of Thebes, and the inventor of letters.

Ulysses, king of Ithaca and Dulichium, and one of the wisest among the Greeks: Ajax and Achilles joined him, and the collective force of the Greeks, in the Trojan war.

Lycurgus, the celebrated Spartan lawgiver; he totally remodelled the constitution, and composed a code of jurisprudence, selected from the best laws made by Minos and others.

Homer, the prince of poets: supposed to have been born at Smyrna; Hesiod was his contemporary.

Thales, a Grecian philosopher, astronomer, geographer, and geometrician.

Draco, the rigid legislator of Athens; he punished all offences indiscriminately; his laws are said to have been written in characters of blood, from their great severity.

Solon, the wise reformer and improver of the Athenian laws his principle was contrary to that of Draco.

Alcæus, and Sappho; a Greek poet and poetess who wrote chiefly in lyric numbers.

Simonides, a famous Grecian poet.

Pisistratus, an aspiring Athenian, who, while Solon travelled



into Egypt, took advantage of his absence to usurp the government of Athens.

Æschylus, a Greek tragic poet.

Cleisthenes, the introducer of the Ostracism: he was endued with great penetration and abilities, which were seldom properly directed.

Miltiades, an Athenian general, who gained the battle of Marathon, fought against the Persians.

Harmodius and Aristogeiton: two young Athenians, who delivered their country from the tyranny of the sons of Pisistratus, and were honored with high marks of esteem and admiration.

Anacreon, of Teos, a celebrated poet: his works are distinguished by their elegance and simplicity of expression.

Leonidas, the Spartan king, who fell at the battle of Thermopylæ, in defence of his country's dearest rights, fighting against the Persians.

Themistocles, an Athenian general, famed for his valor and address; he gained the signal victory at Salamis; but being afterwards banished by his ungrateful countrymen, he sought refuge at the court of Xerxes, king of Persia; and soon after, to avoid bearing arms against the Athenians, poisoned himself.

Sophocles, and Euripides, two Grecian poets.

Cimon, son of Miltiades, a famous general: he too was banished, but at the expiration of five years returned to Athens, and his gallant spirit forgetting former injuries, he once more animated the Greeks to fame and conquest.

Pericles, an Athenian general, celebrated for his love of the fine arts; the age in which he flourished is called that of luxury, as he introduced a taste for expensive pleasures at Athens. In his time began the famous Peloponnesian war.

Lysander, the renowned Spartan conqueror of Athens; the treasures which he then brought to Lacedæmon insensibly corrupted the pure morals of its citizens.

Alcibiades, a brave Athenian, who had some splendid virtues, counterbalanced by great vices; his character was peculiarly magnificent and ostentatious. He was killed by command of the thirty tyrants. He took arms for the first time at the battle of Potidæa, where Socrates fought at his side, defended him, and led him out of danger after being wounded.

Thrasybulus, the Athenian who overturned the power of the thirty tyrants, and restored peace to his bleeding country.

Xenophon, a warrior and historian. He wrote the biography of Cyrus the Great, and has left an account of the retreat of the

ten thousand Greeks from Asia, which himself conducted. The first of these works is called the *Cyropede*, the second, the *Anabasis*.

Socrates, an Athenian philosopher, whose mind being too enlightened for the times in which he lived, the Athenians falsely accused him of disrespect to their gods, and he soon fell a martyr to their suspicion and vengeance, being condemned to take a draught of hemlock.

Agésilas, a Spartan king, who gained many important victories: he defeated the Persians under Artaxerxes, and opposed Pelopidas and Epaminondas in the Theban war. He perished by shipwreck on the coast of Libya.

Pelopidas, a Theban general, who rescued his country from the Spartan yoke, assisted by the valor of his friend Epaminondas.

Epaminondas, a Theban warrior, who joined to the duties of his station a taste for philosophy and the sciences. He gained two celebrated victories, Leuctra and Mantinea; at the latter of which he fell.

Philip, king of Macedon, and father of Alexander the Great. He gained the famous battle of Chæronea, and obtained various successes against the Thebans and Athenians: he was the inventor of the Macedonian Phalanx, and united the highest talents with the most intrepid bravery. The Greeks chose him their general, against the Persian force. He was soon after killed by one of his own guards, Pausanias, a young Macedonian, whom the Persians hired to commit the act.

Alexander the Great, king of Macedon, and son of Philip, a renowned conqueror. He ran a rapid career of what the world calls glory; and, after defeating the Persians, and destroying their empire, he died at Babylon, as is supposed from the effects of a fit of intemperance.

Aristotle, the celebrated philosopher, the tutor of Alexander. He has left treatises on natural history and metaphysics.

Demosthenes, the Grecian orator. Æschines was his contemporary and rival.

Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus. He conquered Macedonia from the successors of Alexander. His life was one continued scene of war and tumult.

## OF MYTHOLOGY IN GENERAL.

WHAT is mythology? Mythology is the fabulous history of the pagan divinities; it takes its name from two Greek words, (*mythos* and *logos*,) which signify fabulous history. How can you divide fabulous history? It can be divided into historical, philosophical, allegorical, and moral fables. What do you understand by historical fables? Ancient history, mingled with fiction, where tradition informs us of the events which have occurred in the earliest ages. It is probable that Jupiter, Apollo, Bacchus, Hercules, &c., have existed, and that their histories are founded on facts. Give some examples. The deluge of Deucalion is evidently taken from the Noacian deluge; the fable of the giants who wished to climb to Heaven, brings to our minds the sacrilegious plan formed by man, in building the tower of Babel, &c. What do you understand by philosophical fables? They were invented by the poets; and present us with many fables, under which are hidden useful truths. This kind of fable is most frequently the method of speaking figuratively and metaphysically, and which, by insensible degrees, was taken in a literal sense. Give some examples. Ocean, says the fable, was the father of streams; the moon espoused the air, and became the mother of the dew. What can be more philosophical than the sublime idea of the Furies having sprung from the blood of a father shed by his son, of Coelus murdered by Saturn?

What are allegorical fables? They are a species of parable concealing some mystic idea, or offering an ingenious emblem. Give an example. Ceyx and Alcyon, changed into the birds called Halcyons, is a touching image of conjugal love. The power of eloquence and music is evident in the fable of Orpheus, whose voice charmed beasts and softened rocks. What do you understand by moral fables? They contain precepts and examples for conduct in life. What can convey a better moral than the ancient belief, that the stars were sent by Jupiter, on earth, to watch over the actions of human beings! Give some further examples. The Furies devouring Orestes, the Vulture tearing the entrails of Prometheus, are striking pictures of remorse: Medusa, whose look alone could convert to stone, depicts the ravages of passion, while Narcissus is a perfect representation of those who, from silly vanity, can only admire themselves. Has not poetry encouraged these fables?



Yes ; for it has peopled the universe with fantastic beings ; and by its fictions, shepherds became satyrs ; shepherdesses, nymphs ; men on horseback, centaurs ; oranges were golden apples, &c. What was the origin of idolatry and fable ? Men, having by degrees lost the knowledge of the only true God and his worship, turned their adoration towards visible objects : the sun, the moon, and stars, were the first objects of worship. Afterwards they adored as gods, animals, plants, &c. Did they not deify men ? Yes, altars were raised to celebrated men, and to those who were the benefactors of the human race. Gratitude deified famous warriors, artists of genius, the first instructors of man, &c. Thus, Esculapius, who excelled in medicine, was represented as the son of Apollo ; Bacchus, who taught the cultivation of the vine, as the god of wine, &c. The taste of man for the marvellous did the rest. Had not every country its own divinities ? There was no place in the world without the protection of some particular deity. To quote the words of the eloquent Bossuet, "Every thing was a god, except God himself." Where did idolatry and fable first spring up ? According to generally received opinion, Egypt and Phœnicia were the cradles of idolatry and fable ; thence they passed to the west, where they were adopted by the Greeks, who embellished and transmitted them to the Romans. These last collected in *one* temple, called the Pantheon, all the divinities of different countries, and by the power of their arms, carried the worship of these false gods to the extremity of the then known world. Were there many gods according to mythology ? The ancients counted more than 300 Jupiters, and at least 30 Hercules' ; and Juvenal represents *Atlas* as groaning beneath the weight of Heaven, from the number of the gods who were placed there. How many orders of gods were there ? Three ; the first comprising the supreme deities, who were considered as the masters of the other gods : there were twenty of these. Who were the gods of secondary rank ? They comprised the inferior gods, who presided over the fields, forests, streams, fountains, flowers, &c. Such as Pan, Flora, Pomona, Vertumnus, Pallas, &c. Who were of the third order ? In this were placed the demi-gods ; that is, all the divinities who had a human father or mother. Such as Hercules, Esculapius, Castor, and Pollux, &c. Among these were also placed the heroes who had attained immortality, such as Achilles, Hector, Ulysses, &c.

## DIVINITIES OF THE FIRST RANK.

Which were said to be the gods of the highest rank? They inhabited the heavens, where they held supreme authority over the earth, sea, and infernal regions. These were Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, Ceres, Mercury, Minerva, Cybele, Apollo, Diana, Venus, Mars, and Vulcan. What was Destiny? A blind goddess; born, says Hesiod, of Chaos and Night. What was Chaos? According to the Pagans, Chaos was a mass of unformed matter, in which all the elements were mixed up, and confounded together before the creation. What should we understand by the name Destiny? According to the heathens, that *chance*, by which every thing occurs in this world; but Christians know that nothing occurs by *chance*, and therefore we must not understand it in this manner, but only as applying to the belief of the Pagans. Were the other gods obliged to submit to the laws of Destiny? Yes; even Jupiter, the king of the gods, consulted her, but could not influence her immutable decrees. How is Destiny represented? With a bandage over the eyes, beneath her feet a globe, on her head a crown, surmounted by stars, and a sceptre, the symbol of sovereign power: she holds in her hand sometimes an urn, and sometimes a book, containing the fate of mortals. What of Cœlus? Cœlus is supposed to be a deity as old as Destiny. The poets also call him Uranus, and suppose that he wedded his sister, the earth, called also Vesta. Who were the children of Uranus and Terra, or the earth? Three divinities, celebrated in the history of paganism, Saturn, Titan, and Cybele.

How did Saturn obtain the highest power? Titan, being the elder brother, should have obtained the sovereignty of the earth, but he yielded his right to Saturn, on condition that his brother should never rear a male child. Saturn, faithful to this engagement, devoured his own sons as soon as born. What device did Cybele employ to deceive Saturn? Having twins, Jupiter and Juno, she presented her daughter to Saturn, and hiding Jupiter, gave his father a stone, which he swallowed instead. Where was Jupiter brought up? In the island of Crete, by priests called Corybantes. He was nursed by the goat Amalthea. To prevent the cries of the young god from reaching the ears of Saturn, the Corybantes danced to the sound produced by clashing together steel bucklers or shields. What course did Titan pursue? Having discovered this cheat, and seeing with grief that his sons, the Titans, were thus excluded from the throne, he made war on Saturn, dethroned and confined him in prison

with Cybele; at length they were both released by Jupiter. How did Saturn conduct himself towards Jupiter? Having learned from Destiny, that some day Jupiter would dethrone him, he made war on him as soon as he was released from prison. Jupiter was victorious, and fearing that his father would again attack him, banished Saturn from heaven. Where did Saturn take refuge? Saturn having lost the empire of heaven, retired to a part of Italy, where Rome was afterwards built, and to which he gave the name of "Latium," from the Latin word "*latere*," which signifies to be hidden. Janus, the king of the country, received the exiled god with kindness, and even associated him in the government. How did Saturn evince his gratitude to Janus? He endowed Janus with extraordinary prudence, by means of which precious gift he was enabled to remember past events and foretell the future. For this reason, Janus is fabled to have two heads, or two faces, one of which looked constantly at the past, the other at the future. He also had the name of "Bis-frons," which signifies double-faced. What is the time of Saturn's reign in Italy designated? The Golden Age; because under the wise administration of this god, refinement, virtue, and the arts were honored and flourishing. The succeeding ages are called the Silver Age, the Age of Brass, and the Iron Age, to show the constant growth of man towards corruption. What honors were rendered to Janus? The Romans devoted a particular kind of worship to Janus, who, from his peaceful reign, was considered as the god of Peace. Numa Pompilius dedicated a temple to him containing twelve altars, one for every month in the year. This temple remained open in time of war, and shut in peace. How is Janus represented? Holding in his hand a wand, because he presided over public roads; and a key, because he invented doors. His statue has sometimes four faces, depicting the four seasons; and his right hand is frequently marked with the number 300, and his left with 65, to denote the number of days in the year. The month of January takes its name from Janus. How was Janus addressed? He was invoked before any one of the gods in the sacrifices, perhaps because he was the first to erect altars; or, that they regarded him as an intercessor with the gods for mankind. What were the Saturnalia? The feasts of Saturn. They lasted several days, during which time joy prevailed throughout all classes. Every year, in the month of December, they were celebrated in Latium, in commemoration of Saturn's abode there. During the Saturnalia, the senate was not assembled; the public schools were closed,



friends exchanged presents, and the rich gave sumptuous entertainments. It was forbidden to execute judgment, or to undertake war. Masters served at the tables of their slaves, to recall the liberty which all men enjoyed during the reign of Saturn. How is Saturn represented? Saturn is generally represented as an old man, bowed down by the weight of years, holding a scythe, to show that he presides over time and agriculture. He has wings, and placed near him is an hour-glass; and sometimes a serpent with its tail in its mouth. The hour-glass is the measure of time; wings denote its swiftness; the serpent, forming a circle, is the emblem of eternity, which has neither beginning nor end. Who was Cybele? She was the sister and wife of Saturn, and regarded as the mother of the gods; and for this reason is called the "*Great Mother*." She is also called Berecynthia, Dindimania, and Ida, the names of three mountains in Phrygia, where she was worshipped with peculiar reverence. What other names had she? Ops and Terra; this word signifies the earth, and is derived from Cybele presiding over the earth, as Saturn reigned over heaven; and that of Ops, which signifies succor and riches, was given to her because she provided all good gifts for mortals. What other name? She was also called Rhea, from a Greek word signifying "*to flow*," because all things *flow* or *issue* from the earth. She is also called Vesta. Was not the name of Vesta given to other mythological persons? Learned men distinguish three Vestas; one, also called the earth, the wife of Coelus and mother of Saturn; the other called Cybele, was his wife; the third, the daughter of Saturn. How was Vesta, the wife of Saturn, represented? Vesta, or Cybele, was represented as a robust and powerfully framed woman. An oaken crown indicated that man was formerly fed from the fruit of this tree. The towers by which her head is surmounted, indicate that cities were under her protection; and the key in her hand shows the treasures concealed in the earth. The car in which she is seated, drawn by lions, is the emblem of the earth supported in air, by its own weight. Her dress is generally green, from the verdure of the earth. She holds a drum, which, being filled with wind, represents the storms and tempests enclosed within the earth. Over what did Vesta, the daughter of Saturn, preside? She was the goddess of Fire, which is indicated by the name Vesta. She was worshipped in Phrygia, from whence Eneas carried her statue and worship into Italy. Numa Pompilius dedicated a temple to her, on which a fire burned perpetually, called the "*sacred fire*." Who were the priest-

esses of Vesta? They were six young virgins called Vestals, and intrusted with the care of the sacred fire. If it should be extinguished by any fault of theirs, they were punished severely, for superstition attached the most terrible consequences to its extinction; and in such case, to relight it no common fire was used, but the rays of the sun only. They buried alive those vestals who broke their vows. What were the feasts of Cybele called? They were called the "megalisian" feasts, or games, from a Greek word signifying "*great*," because they were the feasts of the "great goddess." At Rome these feasts were celebrated by the Roman matrons, in a temple which was called the Opertum—that is, the "*hidden place*," and men were not permitted to enter. Who were the priests of Cybele? They were called in Latin Gallii, from Gallus, a river of Phrygia. When the priests drank the water of this stream they became furious, and cut themselves with whips and swords. They were also called Corybantes. They solemnized the feasts of Cybele with great noise, mingling their cries with beating of drums, striking their shields with lances, dancing, and shaking their heads with frantic gestures. What sacrifices did they offer to Cybele? A bull and goat; also a *sow*, from its productiveness. The larch and fir were sacred to her: the first because the priests made their sacred flutes of this wood; and the second, in memory of Atys, who was metamorphosed into this tree. Who was Atys? A young and beautiful Phrygian, a priest of Cybele, and passionately loved by that goddess; but whether from inconstancy or disdain, he preferred the nymph Sangarida, the daughter of Sangar, a river of Phrygia. The goddess revenged herself by putting the nymph to death. Atys, in despair, killed himself; but Cybele taking pity on a mortal whom she had so tenderly loved, changed him into a fir-tree, thenceforward dedicated to her. Who was Ceres? She was the daughter of Saturn and Cybele; she taught men the art of cultivating the earth and sowing corn, a benefit which caused her to be regarded as the goddess of Agriculture. Who were her children? Ceres had a daughter, by Jupiter, named Proserpine, and by Jason, (the only mortal she ever loved,) a son, Plutus, the god of Riches. Relate the carrying off of Proserpine. Pluto, the god of Hell, was so black, and his kingdom so frightful, that all the goddesses refused his love. One day he saw Proserpine gathering flowers, with some of her young companions, on the plains of Etna, in Sicily. He carried her off in spite of the violent opposition of Cyann, a nymph whom he changed into a fountain. The god having opened the earth

with his trident, re-entered his dominions with his prey. Ceres, inconsolable for her loss, entered her chariot drawn by flying dragons, to search the world for her well-beloved daughter. What did Ceres then do? She traversed the world, and in gratitude for the hospitality of Celeus, king of Eleusis, she taught his son, Triptolemus, the art of agriculture. Whom did she change into frogs? Passing through Lycia, she changed the peasants of the country into frogs, for having disturbed the water of a fountain where she wished to allay her thirst. How did she revenge herself on Ascalaphus? Jupiter, touched by the grief of Ceres, had promised to restore her daughter, provided she had neither eaten nor drunk in the infernal regions. Unfortunately she had taken a few seeds of a pomegranate, and Ascalaphus, the son of Acheron, informed Jupiter of it. Ceres, irritated by this, threw in his face the water of Phlegethon, and he was changed into an owl, under which form he became the favorite bird of Minerva. Relate the metamorphosis of Stellio. Ceres, fatigued by her travels, and being pressed by thirst, entered the house of an old woman named Baucus, who, with much kindness, offered her refreshments and a dish of soup. Ceres ate with such avidity, that young Stellio could not avoid laughing; the offended goddess threw the remainder of the soup into his face, and changed him into a lizard. How did she at length find her daughter? Having travelled over the whole earth without being able to ascertain the fate of her child, she returned to Sicily, where the nymph Arethusa informed her that her daughter was the wife of Pluto, and queen of hell. Ceres then again appealed to Jupiter, who promised that she should remain six months of the year with her mother, and the other six in the land of darkness. How is Ceres represented? As a beautiful woman; her head crowned with a garland of wheat, or poppies, with a full and beautiful bosom, showing that she is the nurse of the human race; she holds in her right hand a bunch of wheat, and a sickle, and in her left, a flaming torch. Her car is drawn by lions or serpents. What were the feasts of Ceres called? The feasts of Ceres were called Eleusinian, because they were celebrated chiefly by the Athenians, at Eleusis, a city of Attica. It was forbidden to divulge what occurred during the celebration of them. To reveal the secret was considered sacrilegious. Entering the temple was forbidden to the profane. They were, of all the Grecian solemnities, the most celebrated and the most mysterious, and are known as the "Eleusinian mysteries." What were the sacrifices offered to Ceres? A sow or a wether. Wine and flowers were banished from her altars, with the ex-



ception of the poppy, which, by procuring sleep for Ceres, gave some comfort to the unfortunate and desolate mother. How did Ceres punish Eresichthon? He had the audacity to cut several trees in a forest dedicated to Ceres, and she punished him with unceasing hunger. Metra, his daughter, beloved by Neptune, obtained from this god the power of assuming any shape, like Proteus. Her father sold her to obtain money, and when she took another form he sold her again. This deceit did not procure sufficient food for Eresichthon, who died devouring his own limbs. With whom did Jupiter divide the sovereign power of the world? Jupiter, the son of Saturn and Cybele, having banished his father from heaven, divided the empire of the world with his brothers; he kept heaven for himself, gave to Neptune the sway of the ocean, and that of the infernal regions to Pluto. Who was his wife? He married his sister Juno. Was his reign peaceful? No; it was soon troubled, for Terra, the wife of Cœlus, in despair because Jupiter to avenge Saturn had condemned to Tartarus the Titans, her grandsons, incited against him the giants, the sons of the Titans. These were men of uncommon size and strength, who did not even fear to attack the sovereign of heaven. Relate the story of the war of the giants. Determined to dethrone Jupiter, the giants undertook to besiege his throne, and to succeed in this, piled Ossa on Pelion, and Olympus on Ossa, (these were mountains in Greece,) from whence they tried to scale heaven, throwing rocks against the gods, some of which falling into the sea became islands, and others falling again to earth formed mountains. What effect had this on Jupiter? Frightened at the sight of such powerful enemies, he called the gods to his aid, who, being alarmed, fled into Egypt, where they concealed themselves under the forms of different animals; and this is the origin of the divine honors paid to many beasts by the Egyptians. By whom was he assisted? By Bacchus, who was more courageous than the other gods, and having taken the figure of a lion, fought for some time so steadily, encouraged by Jupiter, who constantly cried to him, "Courage, my son," that at length the giants were defeated. By some, this timely aid is attributed to Hercules. What was the fate of the giants? After their defeat, Enceladus, the most powerful, who threw rocks against Olympus; Briareus, who had a hundred hands and fifty heads, and Typhon, or Typhus, who was half man, half serpent, and who alone, says Homer, gave more trouble to the gods than all the giants together; were buried alive by Jupiter,—Typhon, under the Isle of Ischia; Briareus and Enceladus,

under Mount Etna. The poets say these last cause earthquakes every time they wish to change their position. What did Jupiter do after this? Finding himself in peaceful possession of the empire of the world, Jupiter set about forming man; Prometheus, the son of Japhet, wishing to imitate the ruler of the universe, made several statues of slime, and animated them with sacred fire, which he stole from the chariot of the sun. How did Jupiter avenge himself? Irritated by the audacity of Prometheus, he commanded Vulcan to chain him to Mount Caucasus, where a vulture constantly devoured his entrails, which were as constantly formed anew, thus continuing the torments of the unfortunate Prometheus; Hercules at last killed the vulture and released him. Tell the story of Pandora. The other gods, offended by the severity of Jupiter, saw with sorrow that he intended reserving to himself the right of creating man, and determined among themselves to make a woman, on whom each of them should bestow some particular gift; thus, Pallas endowed her with wisdom, Venus with beauty, Apollo with the knowledge of music, Mercury with eloquence: they then named her *Pandora*, which signifies, made by gifts from all. What present did Jupiter bestow upon her? Jupiter, pretending that he wished to bestow something on her, presented her with a closed box, and desired her to take it to Prometheus, who, fearing some treachery, would not receive either Pandora or her box; but Epimetheus, more foolish than his brother Prometheus, received Pandora and married her. The fatal box was opened, and all the evils and crimes which have since deluged the world, and which were there contained, escaped, to work evil on the human race. Hope alone remained in the box, to comfort humanity. What were the different metamorphoses of Jupiter? Jupiter loved many mortals and assumed different forms to please them. He transformed himself into a bull to carry off Europa, the daughter of Agenorus, who had two sons, called Minos and Rhadamanthus. He took the figure of a swan to deceive Leda, the wife of Tyndarus, who had a son Pollux, and a daughter, Helen; he presented himself as a satyr to Antiopa, who had two children, Zethus and Amphion. Under the form of Amphictyon, king of Mycena, he deceived his wife Alcmena, and she had a son Hercules. What were his other metamorphoses? He changed himself into a shower of gold to corrupt Danae, who was shut up in a tower of brass, and was the mother of Perseus. He appeared to Semele, the mother of Bacchus, as a young man, and deceived Calista under the form of Diana. Calista was the mother of Arcas. To Mnemosyne, the mother of

the nine muses, he appeared as a shepherd. Why was Periphas changed into an eagle? Periphas, king of Athens, from his noble actions, was honored while living, as a god. The ruler of heaven, incensed that a mortal should have divine honors paid him, was about destroying him with a thunderbolt, but at the intercession of Apollo, he changed Periphas into an eagle, and he became his favorite bird; and to him Jupiter confided the care of his thunderbolts. What became of the goat Amalthæa? The goat Amalthæa, who had suckled Jupiter, was placed, with her two kids, among the Constellations. The nymphs who had the care of the young god, were presented by him with one of the horns of the goat, which produced all they desired; and this is the one known as the horn of plenty. Why was Lycaon changed into a wolf? Lycaon, prince of Arcadia, who was the first to sacrifice human victims, carried his cruelty to such lengths, as to put to death all the strangers who passed through his dominions. Jupiter having, in the course of his travels, sought a night's lodging with him, Lycaon prepared to put him to death during his sleep; but wishing first to ascertain whether Jupiter, who was in disguise, might be a god, had served to him for supper the limbs of an unfortunate victim whom he had murdered. Jupiter commanded fire from heaven to destroy the palace of Lycaon, and changed him into a wolf. This fable is founded on the cruelty of Lycaon, and his name, which signifies wolf. What were the names of Jupiter? The same Jupiter has different names, in the profane writers. Dies Pater, or father of days; Feretrius, because in his temple were offered the spoils of the vanquished; Hospitalis, because he presided over the rites of hospitality; Stator, because at the prayer of Romulus he had prevented the flight of the Romans before the Sabines: but the surname under which he is most generally known, is that of Olympus, from the mountain on the summit of which he resided with his court. What other names is Jupiter known by? In Africa, he was honored as Jupiter Ammon, for the following reason: Bacchus being at the point of death in the Lybian desert from thirst, implored the aid of Jupiter, who appeared to him under the form of a ram; who, striking the earth with his foot, a stream of water gushed forth. In gratitude for this, Bacchus dedicated a temple to him, under the title of Jupiter Ammon. Ammon, in Greek, signifies dry or sandy. For this reason, also, Jupiter is sometimes represented under the form of a ram. What kind of worship was rendered to him? As holding the first rank among the divinities, his worship was always the most solemn



and the most universally spread. His three most famous oracles were those at Dodona, Lybia, and Trophonius. The victims generally offered were the goat, sheep, and white bull, the horns of which were gilded. Sometimes only grain, salt, and incense were offered. What tree was sacred to Jupiter? The oak; because, after the example of Saturn, he taught men to eat acorns. It was believed that the oaks of the forest of Dodona, in Epirus, gave out sounds, which were the oracles of Jupiter. In the temple of that forest he was worshipped as Jupiter Dodonian. How is Jupiter generally represented? As a man of majestic figure, with a thick beard, seated on a throne, holding in his right hand the thunderbolts, and in his left a figure of victory; the virtues seated by his side, at his feet an eagle with outspread wings, bearing the youth Gany-mede. Were there not many Jupiters? The ancients had no limits to the number; according to Varron and Eusebius, there were three hundred. This may be accounted for by many kings adopting that name, and for the same reason may arise the boast of various nations, that Jupiter was born among them. Whose daughter was Juno? She was the daughter of Saturn, and married her brother Jupiter, by which means she became queen of heaven. She was the goddess of kingdoms, and protectress of marriages; she presided also at the birth of infants, and from this takes the name of Lucina. How many children had Juno? Mars, Vulcan, whom Jupiter threw from heaven because he was so ugly, and Hebe, the goddess of youth. What were the occupations of Hebe? She poured out nectar for the gods; but having one day let it fall, during an assembly of the gods, she was so much ashamed that she could never be reassured. Jupiter then gave the employment to Ganymede, son of Troas, king of Troy, whom he carried off on the back of an eagle, while the young man was hunting on Mount Ida. What was Juno's character? She was proud and haughty. All the women who were beloved by Jupiter, as well as their children, fell victims to the jealousy and fury of this goddess. One day Jupiter, wearied by her vindictive temper, hung her in the air by means of two loadstones, having an anvil to each foot, and her hands tied behind her back with a golden chain. Give some instances of the jealousy of Juno. Jupiter being in love with Io, the daughter of Inachus, king of Argos, to protect her from the anger of Juno, he covered her with a cloud, and changed her into a cow. Juno, suspecting something wrong, pretended to admire the beauty of the animal, and begged her of Jupiter: no sooner did she obtain possession of her than she

intrusted Io to the care of Argus, who had a hundred eyes, fifty being always open while the others were closed in sleep. Jupiter commanded Mercury to put this spy to sleep with the sound of his flute, and then kill him. Juno took his eyes and spread them over the tail of a peacock, or changed him into that bird, which she then took under her protection. What became of Io? Juno, being still more angry with Io, pursued her with a gadfly, which stung her incessantly, and so irritated the unfortunate princess that she swam across the sea; and having traversed the earth stopped on the borders of the Nile, where Jupiter restored her to her original form. The Egyptians adored her under the name of Isis, the sister of Osiris, and it was there she had her son Epaphus. What other efforts of vengeance were exercised by Juno? She never restrained her vengeance, her jealousy, or pride. It is well known what evils were wrought on Troy by the preference which Paris gave to Venus over Juno. After Europa was carried off she persecuted her, and even the descendants of her brother Cadmus. The children of this prince, Melicestus, Actaeon, and Penthea perished miserably. Semele, his daughter, was destroyed by the sparks emitted from the person of Jupiter, when he appeared before her in his own person. She loaded Hercules with all kinds of labors. Why did she devastate the island of Egina? To revenge herself for the love which Jupiter entertained for Asopia, the daughter of the queen of that country, she brought on the island a terrible pestilence, which destroyed all the inhabitants. Eacus, the son of Asopia, besought his father Jupiter to repeople the kingdom; who, commanding an ancient oak of the forest of Dodona to produce an immense number of ants, they immediately assumed the human form, and accompanied Achilles to the siege of Troy. These were the Myrmidons, so named from a Greek word which signifies *ant*. What was the employment of Iris? She was the messenger of Juno, who loved her, and made her her confidant, because she only brought her good news. To reward her, she placed her in heaven, and she is the rainbow, or Iris, the harbinger of good tidings. How is Juno generally represented? As seated in a car, drawn by peacocks; she has a sceptre in her hand, and her head crowned with lilies and roses; painters also place a peacock at her feet, and generally place near her a rainbow, the emblem of Iris. Where was she chiefly worshipped? Throughout Greece and Italy were found temples dedicated to her; but she was chiefly worshipped at Argos, Samos, and

Carthage. The poppy, dittany, and pomegranate were offered by her priests; they also sacrificed to her a female lamb.

### APOLLO.

Of whom was Apollo the son? Jupiter, having abandoned Juno to attach himself to Latona, daughter of Titan Lacus and Phœbus, had by her Apollo and Diana. What troubles did Latona experience? Before their birth the jealousy of Juno roused the serpent Python against Latona, which followed her unceasingly. The Earth had promised the queen of the gods not to give an asylum to her rival; Latona was on the point of being devoured by the monster, when Neptune, touched by her grief, caused the island of Delos to rise from the depths of the sea. Latona was changed into a quail by Jupiter; she fled to this island, and gave birth to Apollo and Diana. Apollo was surnamed Delos, from his birthplace. Why did Latona change the Lycian peasants into frogs? One day as Latona, fleeing from the persecutions of Juno, was passing over Lycia, some peasants were so cruel as to refuse her a little water; Latona, to punish their inhumanity, changed them into frogs. What was the first exploit of Apollo? The first use that Apollo made of his valor was to wreak vengeance upon the serpent Python, who had so cruelly tormented his mother. The god pierced the monster with his sacred arrows, and his skin served to cover the tripod upon which the Pythoness sat to deliver her oracles. The Pythian games were instituted to commemorate this victory. Relate the history of Esculapius. The triumph of Apollo was disturbed by the death of his son Esculapius, looked upon as the god of medicine. He had made great progress in this art, which he learned from his father and from the centaur Chiron; he restored the life of Hippolytus, son of Theseus, whom some cruel sailors had torn to pieces. Jupiter, looking upon this resurrection as an encroachment upon his authority, and besides, excited by the complaints of Pluto, whom Esculapius deprived of his victims, struck the rash physician with a thunderbolt.

Why was Apollo driven from heaven? Apollo was in despair, but not daring to avenge himself upon Jupiter, he shot the Cyclops who had forged the thunderbolts, with his arrows. For this rash act Jupiter drove him from heaven, and deprived him, for many years, of his divinity. What became of Apollo in his exile? Apollo was forced to gain his living in the ser-



vice of Admetus, king of Thessaly, whose flocks he watched. Since that time he has been honored as the god of shepherds. During his sojourn in this country, he invented the lyre.

What was the metamorphosis of Daphné? It was during the exile of Apollo that Daphné, daughter of the river Peneus, was changed into a laurel by her father, that she might be freed from the persecutions of this god. Apollo tore off a branch of this tree, making a crown of it. He wished that ever after the laurel should be consecrated to him, and become the reward of poets.

What was the transformation of Hyacinth? Apollo had a young friend Hyacinth. One day when they were playing at quoits together, Zephyr, piqued by the preference which this young man showed for the son of Jupiter, turned the quoit which Apollo threw, from its course, and caused the death of Hyacinth by it. The god changed his friend into the flower which bears this name. What did the parents of Hyacinth do? The parents of Hyacinth pursuing Apollo to avenge the death of their son, forced him to retire into Troas, where he found Neptune.

What did Apollo and Neptune do? Apollo and Neptune both fled to Laomedon, who was then building the city of Troy. After having bargained with this king, they labored in building the walls of this city; but Laomedon having afterwards refused to pay them the agreed salary, they resolved to avenge themselves, Neptune by inundating the new city, and Apollo by ravaging the country with pestilence. What did Laomedon do to terminate his troubles? Laomedon sought a remedy for so many evils. He consulted the oracle, which answered him that he ought to appease Apollo and Neptune, by every year exposing upon the rocks a young Trojan girl to be devoured by sea-monsters. What new misfortune came upon Laomedon? The lot fell one year upon Hesione, daughter of the king. This princess had just been chained upon the seaside, when Hercules descended to earth with the Argonauts and delivered her. What was the end of Laomedon? Laomedon, who had promised some invincible horses, so light that they could run upon the waters, to the liberator of his daughter, refused them to Hercules after his victory. The hero, roused to just wrath, besieged the city, killed this perjured king, imprisoned his son Priam, who was afterwards ransomed by the Trojans, and finally gave Hesione in marriage to Telamon, king of Salamis, one of the Argonauts. How did Apollo's disgrace finish? The exile and troubles of Apollo at last moved Jupiter, who restored

him his divinity with the attributes which characterized it, and intrusted to him the care of spreading light over the universe. By this attribute, he bears the name of Sun, Phœbus, or Father of light, and is represented guiding the chariot of the Sun, drawn by four fiery horses called Ectron, Pyrois, Eaus, and Phlegon. Which are the children of the Sun? Apollo had several children, of whom the most celebrated are Aurora, Phaeton, the Heliades, and Linus.

Relate the story of Aurora and Tithonus. Aurora married Tithonus, son of Laomedon, king of Troy. She obtained immortality from Jupiter for him, but she did not think to ask also that he might have the privilege of retaining his youth. Finding himself borne down by the weight of years, he was transformed, by his own request, into a grasshopper. Who was the son of Aurora? Of the marriage of Aurora and Tithonus was born Memnon, king of Ethiopia, who assisted Priam in the Trojan war, in which war he was killed by Achilles. His death was so mourned by Aurora, that her tears produced the dew of the morning.

What birds sprang from the funeral pile of Memnon? The birds called Memnonides rose from the ashes of Memnon. They separated into two flocks, and fought with so much fury and stubbornness, that they fell near the funeral pile, like victims sacrificing themselves in the ashes from which they had arisen. What honors are rendered to Memnon? The Egyptians raised a statue in the city of Thebes to Memnon. It is said that when the first rays of the rising sun fall upon it, it gives forth sounds resembling a harmonious voice, while melancholy notes are heard when the sun leaves to enlighten another hemisphere. Thus this statue seems to rejoice at Aurora's coming, and to grieve at her departure. Who was Aurora's second husband? Cephalus, whom she allured from Procris, daughter of Erectheus, king of Athens. Cephalus being afterwards reconciled to Procris, struck her accidentally with a fatal arrow which Aurora had given him. Cephalus, in despair, pierced himself with the same dart, and was changed into a star, as Procris also was. How is Aurora represented? The ancients represent Aurora clothed in a pale yellow robe, a torch in her hand, leaving a palace of vermilion, and mounted upon a fire-colored chariot. Homer describes her with a large veil thrown back, to show that darkness is dispelled before her: she opens with her rosy fingers the gates of day. Sometimes she is represented under the form of a young nymph, crowned with flowers and sitting on a chariot drawn by Pegasus, because she is the friend of poets.

Relate Phaeton's adventure. Phaeton, son of Apollo and Clymene, daughter of the Ocean, had a dispute with Epaphus, who upbraided him with not being the son of Apollo, as he boasted himself. Phaeton complained to his father, and asked him as a proof of his birth, the favor of being allowed for one day to drive the chariot of the Sun: Apollo had the weakness to consent to it. The horses perceiving that they were driven by an inexperienced hand, turned from the ordinary course. At one moment rising too high, they menaced heaven with an inevitable conflagration; at another descending too low, they drained the rivers and burned the mountains. To whom did Terra complain? Terra, burning to her centre, carried her complaints to Jupiter. This god, to prevent the destruction of the universe, overwhelmed the son of Apollo with a thunderbolt, and precipitated him into Eridānus, a river in Italy, now called the Po. Relate the metamorphosis of Phaeton's sisters. The Heliādes, daughters of Apollo and Clymene, and sisters of Phaeton, felt such bitter grief at their brother's death, that they wept four entire months. The gods changed them into poplars, and their tears into grains of amber. Cycnus, a relation of Phaeton, came to weep for him upon the banks of the Eridanus, and was metamorphosed into a stork. Who was Linus? Linus, son of Apollo and Terpsichore, passes as the inventor of lyric verse. He taught Orpheus and Hercules to use the lyre. Fable says, that the latter, piqued by too severe a reprimand from him, broke his head with his lyre. In what city did Apollo deliver his oracles? Apollo delivered his oracles in many countries, but chiefly at Delphos, where he had a magnificent temple; the priestess of which was called Pythoness, and gave the answers of Apollo seated upon the tripod, which was covered with the skin of the serpent Python. What arts are attributed to Apollo's invention? Apollo gave the first knowledge of arts and sciences to the Greeks; and besides music, which he invented, he impressed the precepts of morality. He was also particularly honored as the god of poetry, music, and the fine arts. He was the preceptor of the muses, with whom he dwelt on Parnassus, Helicon, and Pindus. Parnassus is also called the sacred mount, and the valley it forms, the sacred valley. This valley is watered by the Permessus, a river which rises in Mount Helicon, from the waters of Castalia, a nymph whom Apollo transformed into a fountain, and by the Hippocrene, another fountain which rises in Mt. Helicon, and which Pegasus caused to spring up with a blow of his foot. What was this Pegasus? A winged horse, which



was born from the blood of Medusa, when Perseus cut off the gorgon's head. It is said that Apollo and the muses permit good poets to make use of Pegasus. What was the fate of the satyr Marsyas? Marsyas, who is looked upon as the inventor of the flute, had the rashness to defy Apollo. The Nycians were brought in as arbiters. It was not without trouble and peril that the god gained the victory over his rival in the art of the flute. Indignant at such resistance, he fastened Marsyas to a tree and skinned him alive.

Relate the history of Midas. Pan, also had the temerity to defy Apollo, pretending that the notes of his flute excelled the lyre and song of the god of harmony. Midas, king of Phrygia and friend of Pan, was chosen as judge, and yielded him the victory. Apollo revenged himself by giving Midas asses' ears. How was Midas' misfortune discovered? Midas took great care to conceal his deformity, and hid his ears under a magnificent tiara. His barber perceived it, but did not dare to speak of it. Weary with the weight upon his mind, he went to a solitary spot, and making a hole in the ground he bowed himself to it and said, in a whisper, that his master had asses' ears; then closing the hole, he went off. Reeds grew upon this spot, and when agitated by the wind they repeated the barber's words—"Midas has asses' ears." What gift did Midas obtain from Bacchus? When Bacchus came into Phrygia, Silenus, who accompanied him, stopped at a fountain, where Midas had caused some wine to be placed to attract him. Some peasants finding Silenus drunk there, after having adorned him with garlands, conducted him to Midas, who received him magnificently. Bacchus, to recompense Midas for the hospitality shown his grandfather, promised to satisfy his most ardent desire. The king of Phrygia obtained the privilege of changing all that he touched into gold. But Midas had cause to repent of his foolish wish, for his food turned into gold, and he was in danger of dying of hunger. What advice did Bacchus give him? Bacchus, touched by his distress, advised him to plunge into the Pactolus, a river in Lydia. Midas obeyed, and losing the virtue of converting every thing into gold, he communicated it to the Pactolus, which, ever since this time, rolls golden sand. There are many other fables of metamorphoses made by Apollo.

Relate the metamorphosis of Clytie. Clytie, one of the nymphs of the ocean, was beloved by Apollo; she allowed herself to die of hunger from jealousy, when the god abandoned her for Leucothea. Apollo metamorphosed her into a sunflower, or heliotrope, a flower which follows, they say, the course of

the sun. Relate the transformation of Leucothea. Leucothea was the daughter of Orcamus, king of Persia; Apollo, charmed with her beauty, personated her mother, and under this disguise gained her affection. Orcamus, informed by Clytie of the amours of his daughter, caused her to be buried alive. Apollo watered the earth which covered her body with nectar, and immediately the tree which bears incense started from it. Relate that of Cyparisse. The young Cyparisse had nurtured a stag, which by accident he killed; he regretted its loss so much that he put an end to his life. Apollo was inconsolable, and to perpetuate his tenderness for the child he changed him into a cypress. Relate that of Coronis. Coronis, daughter of Phlegias, was beloved by Apollo, by whom she gave birth to Esculapius. But he being informed by a raven that Coronis was unfaithful to him, in the first transport of jealousy pierced her with an arrow and changed her into a rock. Apollo soon repented of his revenge, and to punish the tattling raven he made his feathers, which were formerly white, of a jetty black. What birds were consecrated to Apollo? The crow and the stork were consecrated to Apollo, to indicate, by their difference in color, that this god knew all that the days and nights could produce. The raven was believed to have a natural instinct for predicting future events, and his croaking often furnished prognostics.

How is he represented? The emblems of this god vary according to the characters he represents. At Lesbos his statue held a branch of myrtle. He is sometimes seen with an apple, the prize of the Pythian games, in his hand. When he is taken as the sun, he holds a cock in his hand, is crowned with rays, and traverses the zodiac in a chariot drawn by four white horses. How is he again represented? He is generally represented in ancient monuments as a beautiful and beardless youth, with long, fair locks, crowned with laurel; at his feet are the emblems of the arts, and he carries the golden lyre whose wondrous tones enchanted both gods and men.

## DIANA.

Whose daughter was Diana? Diana was the daughter of Jupiter and Latona, and sister of Apollo. What names are given her? She is called Luna or Phœbe, in heaven, from the name of her brother Phœbus; Diana upon earth; Hecate in hell. Under these different names she is the same divinity. The poets also call her "the goddess in three shapes," and "the triple Hecate."

She is more generally called "the chaste Diana," because she would never marry, and for changing the hunter Acteon into a stag, because he had the boldness to watch her while bathing with her nymphs. Acteon was devoured by his own dogs. Did not Diana love young Endymion? Some mythologists say that Diana, the celestial divinity, the moon or Phœbe, loved the shepherd Endymion, by whom she had fifty children. It is said that Jupiter, having found this shepherd in Juno's apartment, had condemned him to eternal sleep, always retaining his youth. Endymion fell asleep in a valley, which the moon often shone upon, this no doubt gave rise to the fable of Diana and Endymion.

Relate Calisto's history. After all, the severity of Diana is much less uncertain. Calisto was the favorite nymph of this divinity. Jupiter became enamored of her, took the figure of Diana, deceived her thus, and by her had a son named Arcas. Diana, informed of Calisto's fault, drove her from her court. Juno, more vindictive, changed her into a bear; but Jupiter carried her off with Arcas, and placed them in the heavens; where they form the constellations of the great and little bear. What vengeance did Diana take upon Niobe? Diana treated the unfortunate Niobe with much more cruelty—changing her into a rock, and destroying all her children; to punish her for boasting of her fruitfulness. What was Diana's occupation upon earth? Hunting; wherefore she is considered the goddess of hunters. She wandered in woods and forests surrounded by sixty nymphs, daughters of the ocean, armed, like her, with bows and arrows. What was the most famous temple of Diana? Diana had a famous temple at Ephesus, which has been classed as one of the seven wonders of the world; and which Erostratus burnt the day of the birth of Alexander the Great, while Diana was occupied, it is said, at the bed of Olympia, mother of this prince. Erostratus set fire to this temple to render his name celebrated. The Ephesians vainly forbade, by a decree, that this fool's name should be uttered. What worship is offered her? The first-fruits of the earth, oxen, heifers, and white stags, and sometimes even human victims were sacrificed to Diana. Seconded by Iphigenia, priestess of this goddess, Orestes and Pylades carried her statue off into Italy, after having killed Thoas, priest of the temple. How is Diana represented? Upon most of the ancient medallions she is seen in a hunter's dress, a carcass upon her shoulder, a dog by her side, and holding a bow in her hand. Poets describe her also as driving a chariot drawn by hinds or white stags. When Diana is taken as the moon, her head is ornamented with a crescent;



a troop of little loves accompany her, and lead her towards Endymion.

### BACCHUS.

Whose son was Bacchus? Bacchus was the son of Jupiter and Semele, daughter of Cadmus, king of Thebes. What was Juno's revenge? Juno, jealous of Jupiter's attachment to Semele, took the form of Berea, her rival's nurse, and persuaded her to exact from Jupiter his consent to appear to her in all the wonder of his glory. Jupiter resisted for a long time, but yielding at last to the solicitation of her he loved, he appeared in the midst of thunders and lightnings. What happened then? The palace was consumed, and Semele, the victim of her indiscretion, perished in the midst of the flames. Jupiter took the child from her and kept it carefully, calling it Bacchus. Where, and by whom was Bacchus brought up? It is said that this god was brought up near the city of Nysa; where Mercury, as soon as he saw the day, carried him to nymphs, daughters of Atlas, and that Bacchus, in gratitude for the care they had bestowed on him in his infancy, changed them into stars called the Hyades. When he was of an age to be instructed, the muses and old Silenus had the charge of his education. How is Silenus represented? Silenus, commonly called the foster-father of Bacchus, is represented in a complete state of drunkenness, sometimes seated upon an ass, upon which he can scarcely hold himself; sometimes walking by the aid of a stick or thyrsus: this was a wand twined with vine-leaves or ivy. What were his exploits? Bacchus overran the earth, and conquered the Indies with an army of men and women, carrying, instead of arms, wands and drums. He afterwards passed into Egypt, where he taught men agriculture, planted the vine, and was worshipped as the god of wine. We have already spoken of the valor shown by him in the war with the giants. Who was the wife of Bacchus? On his return from the Indies, Bacchus married Ariadne, daughter of Minos, king of Crete, whom Theseus had abandoned. He presented her with a golden crown enriched with precious stones. It was the master-piece of Vulcan. After the death of this princess, her crown was placed among the constellations. What feasts were celebrated in honor of Bacchus? Feasts in honor of Bacchus were celebrated with great clamor, by priestesses called Bacchantes, or Menades. These feasts were called Bacchanals, or Orgies. Who were the Bacchantes? The Bacchantes, or Menades, were clothed in skins of tigers or panthers; they wandered over

the mountains, their hair streaming, and torches or wands in their hands. What was Pentheus' punishment? Pentheus, king of Thebes, prevented his subjects from celebrating the feasts of Bacchus. This god inspired the Bacchantes with fury, and the cruel women, among whom was the mother of the prince, fell upon him and tore him to pieces. What was that of the Mineides? The Mineides, daughters of Mineus, king of Thebes, were not warned by this example. They refused to assist in the feasts of Bacchus, and during the ceremony disdainfully pretended to be employed at tapestry-work. Their house was suddenly illuminated by sparkling fires, which sent forth an awful roaring. The vengeance of the god reached these impious ones, who were changed into bats. How is Bacchus represented? Bacchus is generally represented with horns, symbols of strength and power; or in remembrance that this god drove the first oxen in a plough. He is always crowned with a vine branch, or with ivy, with the features of a young and beardless man laughing, to show that wine gives the vivacity of youth. He holds in one hand a bunch of grapes or a cup, and in the other a wand. Sometimes he is seated on a bull, sometimes in a car drawn by tigers or panthers, and sometimes drawn by Centaurs. What sacrifices were made to him? They offered the magpie to Bacchus, because wine makes one indiscreet; the buck, because he destroys the buds of the vine. Among fabulous animals, the phoenix was consecrated to him; and among plants, the ivy, which, it is believed, dispels by its natural freshness, the fumes of wine. What is the opinion of savants about Bacchus? Almost all authors believe that Bacchus is the same with Noah, who planted the vine and taught men to make wine.

What was the employment of Mercury? He was the son of Jupiter and the nymph Maia, the messenger and interpreter of the gods; he directed their enterprises, mixed himself up with all intrigues relating either to peace or war, and that he might the more swiftly execute the orders of the gods, was furnished with wings on his head and feet. What was the Caduceus of Mercury? The Caduceus, which is represented in Mercury's hand, is a wand entwined with two serpents, and surmounted with wings. It is told that having met with two serpents fighting, he separated them with his wand, round which they twined themselves. The Caduceus was regarded as the emblem of peace. What virtues were attributed to the Caduceus? The poets attributed great virtues to it; it was by the aid of this, that Mercury conveyed to the infernal regions

the souls of the dead. No one could die until a stroke of the Caduceus had entirely destroyed the ties which unite soul and body. It had also the property of bringing sleep to the weary eyelids, and pleasant dreams. Was not Mercury the god of eloquence? Yes, and he is therefore represented with a chain of gold issuing from his mouth, to signify that he chained all hearts and minds, by the power of eloquence. Did he not pre-side over trade? Yes, his name is said to be derived from a Latin word which means "*commerce*." As the tutelary deity of merchants, he is also represented as holding a purse in one hand, and in the other a branch of olive and a club. The olive-branch is the symbol of peace, and the club, of strength and virtue; both necessary in traffic. Was he not also the god of thieves? Yes, and several robberies he committed prove him to be an adept in the art. When he was a child he stole Neptune's trident, Apollo's arrows, the sword of Mars, and the girdle of Venus. This is an allegorical allusion to the brilliant qualities ascribed to Mercury. How did he carry off the cattle belonging to Apollo? He was in his *cradle* when he robbed Apollo, by making the oxen walk round and round until their footsteps were so confused, that the traces of them were lost. The angry god threatened the audacious child, but Mercury softened him by presenting his lyre to Apollo, of which he is said to have been the inventor. This lyre was made of a tortoise-shell, strung with linen threads. Did he not commit other robberies on Apollo? One day Mercury stole from Apollo his lyre, and the flocks of king Admetus. The shepherd Buttus was the only witness of this theft, and Mercury offered him the finest cow to be silent: Mercury then retired a short distance, and reappearing as a shepherd, offered him an ox and a cow if he would tell him where the flocks were he was in search of. Buttus immediately revealed the secret which he had engaged to keep, and Mercury changed him into a touchstone, which has the property of proving the purity of the metal which it touches. What names did the Greeks and Romans bestow on Mercury? The Greeks call him Hermes, or Interpreter, and the Romans Vialis, because he had charge of the highways. Were there not several Mercuries? According to Cicero there were five; one who had the gift of eloquence, another who was a learned physician, a third a clever merchant, &c.; and that they were afterwards all attributed to Mercury the son of Jupiter and Maia. Relate the birth of Venus. Venus, the goddess of beauty and love, was formed from the froth of the sea; according to some she was the daughter of Jupiter and



Dione, an ocean nymph. She arose near Cytherea, whence she was transported by Zephyrus to the island of Cyprus. Whom did she marry? The Hours, who had charge of her education, carried her to heaven, where all the gods became enamored of her beauty and demanded her in marriage. Jupiter gave her to Vulcan to recompense him for the services he rendered during the war with the giants, when he forged the thunderbolts for Jupiter. Thus the most beautiful goddess became the wife of the ugliest among the gods. How many children had Venus? The poets attribute many children to Venus. The most celebrated are Cupid, or Love, Hymen, the three Graces, and Eneas. She is also said to be the mother of Laughter, of Games, and of Pleasures, who are all represented as genii, or little children with wings. How is Love represented? He is said to be the son of Venus and Mars, and is painted as a child with wings, carrying a bow and quiver filled with arrows; sometimes he is represented blind, or with a bandage over his eyes, and a torch in his hand and his finger on his lips, as a sign of discretion. Who was Hymen? He was the son of Venus and Bacchus. He presided at marriages, and is represented as a young man crowned with flowers, in a saffron-colored robe, holding in his right hand a torch, and in his left a nuptial veil. Who were the three Graces? The Graces, Aglae, Thalia, and Euphrosyne, were also the children of Venus and Bacchus. Being the inseparable companions of Venus, the goddess owes to them the charms which ensured the triumph of her beauty. They are represented naked, and holding each other by the hand or with their arms entwined, showing they are the link and charm of society, and that the simple beauty of nature is superior to that of art. Tell the story of Anchises. Eneas was the son of Anchises, a Trojan prince, who met the goddess on Mount Ida. It is said that having boasted of her favor, Jupiter struck him with a thunderbolt, which only grazed without injuring him. Relate the story of Adonis. He was a young man of such extraordinary beauty, that Venus forsook the society of the gods to follow him to the forests of Mount Libanus, whither he went to hunt. Mars, being jealous of this preference, engaged the assistance of Diana. This goddess raised up an enormous boar, whom Adonis wounded by throwing his javelin at him; and the furious animal tore him to pieces. Venus arriving too late to relieve her favorite, wept over him, and changed him by her tears into an Anemone. Who was Psyche? Psyche, whose name in Greek signifies the soul, was the goddess of pleasure; and is represented with butterflies' wings, and sometimes with a butterfly hovering

near her. Venus was so jealous of her beauty, and of the passion which Cupid entertained for her, that she persecuted her to death; but Jupiter restored her to life and rendered her immortal, for the sake of *Love*. Where were honors rendered to Venus? She was principally worshipped at Amathontus, a town of Cyprus; at Paphos, in the same island; and at Cytherea, an island to the south of the Poloponnesus, where she had a celebrated temple. What were her names? Venus is called Cypria, from the particular worship which is paid her at Cyprus, where the town and mountain of Idalia were particularly consecrated to her; Cytherea, because as soon as she was formed from the froth of the sea, she was transported to that island by the Nereides and Loves on a sea-shell. How was she represented? The ancients represented the goddess of beauty in many different ways. At Elis, she is depicted sitting on a goat, her foot resting on a tortoise. In Sparta and at Cytherea she is clothed in armor like Minerva. At Olympus, as rising from the waves, crowned by Pitho, or Suado, the goddess of persuasion, her most faithful companion; but most frequently she is represented with Cupid, in a car drawn by doves, swans, or sparrows. What is said of the girdle of Venus? Homer has given a most beautiful description of this mysterious girdle; every thing attractive, agreeable, and charming, is found within it. What things are dedicated to Venus? The dove, rose, and myrtle: the dove, because in a moment of anger, Love changed into a dove Peristera, one of Venus' nymphs; the myrtle for its perfume; and the rose, because this flower, which was originally "*white*," changed its color after having been dyed in the blood of Adonis, who was pricked by one of its thorns. What offering was made to Venus particularly by women? Women were in the habit of offering her their hair. Berenice, the wife of Ptolemy, king of Egypt, vowed to offer her hair to Venus if her husband returned victorious from Asia. Her hair was hung in the temple of this goddess, but it disappeared the following night. A learned astronomer asserted that the goddess had placed it in heaven and changed it into stars. This is the constellation called "Berenice's hair."

Who was Neptune? He was the son of Saturn and Cybele, the brother of Jupiter and Pluto. As soon as he was born his mother, to conceal him from his father Saturn, who was in the habit of devouring his male children, hid him among the shepherds of Arcadia, and made Saturn believe she had brought into the world a foal, which he devoured instead. Which was

the empire of Neptune? In the division which the three brothers made of the universe, Neptune received the dominion of the seas and their islands, from which he is considered the god of ocean. Relate the adventures of Neptune. Having formed a conspiracy against Jupiter he was exiled from heaven with Apollo, and was reduced to the necessity of working at the walls of Troy for subsistence. We have already spoken of the treachery of Laomedon, king of Troy, who refused to pay Neptune the salary agreed upon, and the vengeance which he thereby drew upon himself from the god, who undermined the walls by water, and raised up a marine monster who ravaged the banks. After this Neptune made his peace with Jupiter, and employed himself in his government of the waters. Who was the wife of Neptune? Amphitrite, the daughter of Nereus and Doris. She concealed herself for some time from him; but a dolphin, who was in Neptune's interest, found her at the foot of Mount Atlas, and persuaded her to take pity on him. Neptune rewarded the dolphin by placing him among the stars. What children had Neptune? By his marriage with Amphitrite he had several children; the best known are the Tritons and Harpies. What were the Tritons? The upper parts of their bodies were like men, and the lower like fish. They preceded Neptune, and announced his coming with the sound of the conch; sometimes they were seated on cars drawn by blue horses. The poets have assigned to them the power of calming tempests and preventing shipwrecks. Who were the Harpies? The Harpies were monsters, who had the face of a woman, the ears of a bear, the body of a vulture, the wings of a bat, and talons on their feet and hands. They infected every thing they touched, and by this means occasioned famine. The best known were Aello, Ocypeta, and Cetenos. Name the principal marine gods. Among them is Ocean, the son of Heaven and Earth, who espoused Tethys, who is sometimes called the Sea. The car of Tethys was a most beautiful conch-shell, more polished and whiter than ivory; it seemed to fly over the surface of the water. We must not confound *Tethys* with *Thetis*, the mother of Achilles. Who were the children of Ocean and Tethys? Nereis and Doris, who being married had many children of a secondary order of divinities, called nymphs, and represented as young girls. Whose sons were the rivers? The sons of Ocean and Tethys. Painters and poets represent them as old men, with thick beards and long flowing hair, with a crown of rushes on their heads; they leaned upon an urn, from whence flowed the water forming the rivers over which they presided. Who



was Proteus? He was also the son of Ocean and Tethys; he was the guardian of Neptune's flock, composed of seals and sea-calves. The sea-god had given him the knowledge of the past, present, and future. When any one went to consult him he assumed a variety of forms to frighten those who approached. Sometimes he was a lion, then a leopard, then a boar; sometimes he was seen as water, then as fire. To force him to speak it was necessary to find him sleeping, and tie him in such a way that he could not escape. Who were the Sirens? They were the daughters of the river Achelous and the muse Calliope; they inhabited the high rocks between the island of Capria and the coast of Italy. There were three principal, Leucosia, Ligeria, and Parthenopæ: they had the head and body of a woman as far as the waist, and the rest like a bird. They attracted travellers by the sweetness and melody of their songs. What had an oracle predicted of them? That they would perish so soon as a man could be found to resist the power of their voice and words. Therefore these enchantresses did not fail to put to death all who ventured near them, until the earth was whitened by the bones of their victims. How did Ulysses resist them? Warned by Circe, he stopped the ears of his companions with wax, and they tied themselves to the masts of their vessel; these precautions were not useless, for Ulysses himself was so charmed by the flatteries of the Sirens that he made signs to them to untie him, but this they refused, and the Sirens, in spite, threw themselves into the sea. Who was Eolus? Among the sea-gods he must not be forgotten, who had the power of raising storms and tempests; he was the son of Jupiter, and reigned over the isles of Eolides, now called the Lipari isles. How does Virgil describe him? As keeping the winds chained up in a deep cavern; to point out the ravages they occasioned when they separated Sicily from Italy, and opened the straits of Gibraltar.

What was the adventure of Glaucus? He was the son of Neptune and the nymph Nais, and a celebrated fisherman of Anthedon, in Beotia. One day having rested his fish on a certain herb, he noticed that they regained their strength and jumped again into the sea. He wished to try the herb himself, but he had no sooner tasted it than he threw himself into the sea. Ocean and Tethys then deprived him of humanity, and admitted him among the sea-gods. Who was Scylla? She was a beautiful nymph beloved by Glaucus; but as she did not return this love, he applied to Circe, a famous sorceress, who poisoned the fountain in which Scylla bathed. No sooner had

she entered it than she found herself changed into a monster with twelve talons and six heads; a pack of dogs came out of her body, and by their continual howlings, struck with horror all those who passed by. Scylla disgusted with herself sprung into the waves, and was changed into a gulf which bears her name. Who was Charybdis? Charybdis, having stolen the flocks of Hercules, was struck by Jupiter's thunderbolts and changed into a gulf, found near the straits of Messina, facing Scylla, and equally dangerous. Homer supposes that three times a day he swallows the waves, and throws them forth again with horrible bellowings. Who was Phorcys? Phorcys was a marine god; the son of Neptune and Terra. Fable says the Gorgons were his daughters. Thorsa, one of the daughters, had a son by Neptune, who was the Cyclop Polephemus. Of Phorcys also was born the serpent who guarded the golden apples of the garden of the Hesperides. What were the Halcyons? Marine birds, who made their nests on the waves, even during the depth of winter. During this time the sea became calm, and tempests respected the young family. This calm continued about fourteen days, and the sailors called them "Dies alcyonei—Halcyon days." Where do the Halcyons come from? Their origin is explained in the following manner. Alcyone, the wife of Ceyx, king of Thacia, saw in a dream the shipwreck of her husband, who was returning from Delphos. At sunrise the princess, in great alarm, ran to the shore and found the body of her husband floating on the waves; she tried to throw herself into the sea to embrace him, but the gods, touched with compassion, changed the faithful pair into Halcyons. How is Neptune represented? He is generally represented with a trident in his hand standing on the waves of the sea, and often on a car drawn by sea-horses; the lower part of their bodies ending in a fish's tail. Describe the car of Neptune. It is in the form of a large shell, the wheels are of gold, and appear to fly over the surface of the waters. The Tritons, Nereids, and Dolphins, covered with scales which shine and appear like gold and silver, swim in crowds around the car. What distinguishes the trident of Neptune? The trident, or sceptre with three prongs, marked the triple power which Neptune retained of raising and appeasing the sea; and opening the earth when struck by the god with that emblem of his puissance. What people particularly worshipped Neptune? The Lybians looked upon Neptune as their greatest divinity. In Greece and Italy many temples were dedicated to him; as well as feasts and games. Those of the Isthmus of Corinth,

and the circus at Rome were solemnized with much ceremony. What were sacrificed to him? Besides the ordinary victims, that is to say, the horse and bull, the Auspices offered to him the *gall* of the animal, because it is as bitter as the waves of the sea. Why was the horse sacred to him? Because he made this animal spring from the earth by a blow of his trident.

Who was Pluto? The brother of Neptune and Jupiter, and the third son of Saturn. He had the same fate as the greater part of his brothers; but Jupiter administered a drink to the god, and Saturn rejected Pluto from his stomach. His gratitude prompted him to omit nothing to assist his brother in the war against Saturn; and after the victory, obtained the sovereignty of the infernal regions. Who was the wife of Pluto? Proserpine, the daughter of Jupiter and Ceres; he was obliged to carry her off, as no goddess would consent to marry him, on account of his extreme ugliness and the horrible darkness of his kingdom. Give some account of these regions. The empire of Pluto consisted of those subterranean places where the souls of the dead were punished or rewarded. Fable tells us it could be reached by the river Styx, in Arcadia. What did the infernal regions contain? The Greeks imagined it to be a vast place divided into two parts; the one frightfully dark and horrible, with lakes exhaling deathlike and noisome vapors, towers of iron and brass, burning furnaces, and horrible monsters gnawed and tormented the souls of the departed—this was Tartarus. The other, smiling and peaceful, where an eternal spring reigned, and this was called the Elysian fields, the abodes of virtuous shades. What were its principal rivers? Acheron, Cocytus, Phlegethon, Styx, Erebus, and Lethe. What was Acheron? He was the son of Apollo and Terra, and was changed into a river and sent to hell for having furnished the giants with water when they were at war with Jupiter. He is represented as an old man, leaning on a black urn; the course of the water was so rapid that it bore away rocks, and nothing could check its force. Tell us of Cocytus. It surrounded Tartarus, and was formed by the tears of the wicked; its name signifies tears. What of Phlegethon? It rolled in waves of flame round every part of Tartarus; no tree or plant could grow on its borders; and after a long course in a contrary direction to that of Cocytus, emptied itself into the Acheron. What is said of Styx? It was a river from which were exhaled deadly vapors, and turned nine times round hell. The poets describe her as a nymph, the daughter of Ocean and Tethys, and say that Strength and Victory were her children. When



Jupiter, in his war with the giants, called all the gods to his assistance, Styx was the first to offer her services with her two children. The king of gods, delighted with this proof of her devotion, loaded her with gifts; he also commanded that the Styx should be a place sacred to the gods, and imposed the heaviest penalties on those who should break the vows sworn in her name. How did the gods take this oath? In swearing by Styx, it was ordained that one hand should be extended towards the sea, and the other towards the earth. Those who broke this oath were exiled ten years from heaven, and were deprived of nectar and ambrosia. Ambrosia was the food of the gods, as nectar was their common drink. What of Erebus? This river was the daughter of Chaos and Night, who was changed into a river and condemned to the infernal regions for having aided the Titans. Erebus is sometimes considered as part of hell, and sometimes as hell itself. Say something of Lethe. It is sometimes called the "river of oblivion," and is represented as an old man, holding in one hand an urn, and in the other the cup of forgetfulness. The shades were obliged to drink of these waters, which had the property of producing forgetfulness of the past, and disposed them to suffer anew the miseries of life.

Who was Charon? He was the son of Erebus and Night; he is called the ferryman of hell, as he transported all the shades over the Styx in his boat. He is represented as an old man. Each shade paid for his passage a piece of money, and for this reason the Greeks and Romans put a piece of money in the mouth of every corpse; these have been found under the tongues of many mummies. The souls of those whose bodies remained unburied wandered a hundred years on the banks of the river before Charon would ferry them across. Who was the guardian of hell? Cerberus, a dog with three heads, and whose neck, instead of hair, was encircled by serpents; he watched the gate of hell, caressed those who entered, and menaced with terrible barks all those who wished to leave it. It is said that Hercules chained him and made him follow him to earth, when he released from hell Alceste, the wife of Admetus. Orpheus lulled Cerberus to sleep by the sound of his lyre, when he went to reclaim from Pluto his wife Eurydice; and the sibyl who conducted Eneas to hell, stopped his mouth by giving him a cake to eat made of honey and poppies. Who were the judges of hell? There were three, Minos, Eaque, and Rhadamanthus; they sat in judgment on the souls of those whom Mercury brought before their tribunal. Who was Minos?

He was the son of Jupiter and Europa, a king of Crete, who governed his kingdom with much wisdom and mildness; it is said he retired every nine years during his reign to a grotto, where the laws were dictated to him by Jupiter. He was the chief judge of hell, and is represented holding in one hand a sceptre, and in the other an urn, in which was enclosed the fate of mortals. Who was Eaque? He was the king of Egina, the son of Jupiter and Egina, and was the same whose kingdom having been depopulated by the plague, obtained permission to have it repopled by the myrmidons, or ants, as before related. Who was Rhadamanthus? He was the son of Jupiter and Europa, who, having killed his brother Minos, took refuge in Beotia, where he married Alcmæna, the widow of Amphitryon. He was worshipped by his subjects for his virtues; and such was the opinion the ancients held of his justice, that when they wished to express a severe though just judgment, they called it "one of the decisions of Rhadamanthus." Why were these appointed as judges of hell? The wisdom which Minos, Eaque, and Rhadamanthus had shown in governing their kingdoms on earth, caused them to obtain from the poets, the name of judges of the infernal regions after their death. Who were the Furies? They were also called Eumenides, and were the ministers of the vengeance of the gods on mortals. There were three—Megera, Alecto, and Tisiphone, daughters of Acheron and Night. They were represented with severe and menacing countenances; their dress was dark and bloody; they had bats' wings, and serpents twisted about their heads, and torches in their hands. Their companions were Rage, Terror, and Death. What was their employment? The gods, when they punished the wicked, employed the Furies to bring on man all the evils of celestial anger. While living, the Furies alarmed their souls with terror; the most frightful remorse pursued them, and they were given up to frightful visions which sunk them into the deepest melancholy. The parricide Orestes was given up to their vengeance. How were they worshipped? Such terrible deities required particular respect. The fear of them was so great, that they were never named, and men were afraid even to look at their temples when passing, which thus became an asylum for all criminals. They sacrificed to the Furies, ewes, rams, and turtle-doves. Who were the Fates? They were three infernal deities who presided over the lives and deaths of mortals; their names were Clotho, Lachesis, and Atropos, and were supposed to be the daughters of Night. Immutable in their decrees, they

spun the thread of life composed of two colors, black and white, according to their fate ;—if the white predominated, the life was long and fortunate ; if black, miserable and short. How were each employed ? Clotho held the distaff, Lanchesis turned the spindle, and Atropos cut the thread. Who were the other infernal deities ? The fertile imaginations of the poets peopled these regions with deities without number : among the principal were Night, Sleep, Dreams, Death, and Manes. Who was Night ? Night, the goddess of darkness, was the daughter of Heaven and Earth, and according to some, of Chaos. She wedded Acheron, by whom she had the Furies and several other children. How was she represented ? On antique monuments she is represented holding above her head a flying drapery, strewed with stars, or a blue drapery with a reversed torch, walking in silence over the heavens, or in an ebony car, after the sunset. Who was Sleep ? He was the son of Erebus and Night, who inhabited a grotto impervious to the rays of the sun. The waters of Oblivion flowed near the entrance, and no other noise was heard save the soft murmurings of its waters. At the mouth grew poppies and other somniferous plants, from which Night gathered the juices to disperse them over the earth. The god himself reposed on a couch of ebony with black curtains. Who were the children of Sleep ? They were the Dreams. The three principal, Morpheus, Phantasy, and Phobetor, only attended on palaces ; the others watched over the lower classes under different forms, sometimes agreeable, and sometimes the reverse. Morpheus is represented with butterflies' wings, emblems of his swiftness. Who was Death ? The daughter of Erebus and Night, and sister of Sleep : she was one of the inexorable deities, deaf to the vows and prayers of mortals, and having no respect for rank or talent. She is represented armed with a sickle, with a pale face and closed eyes. Her black and tattered dress scarcely covered her bones and skeleton form : sometimes she holds a horn in her hand, and a butterfly flutters round her. They consecrated to her the yew, cypress, and the cock, whose crowing disturbed the silence of the tomb. What is understood by the Manes ? The ancients themselves do not appear to have any very correct idea of the meaning of the term. Sometimes they are considered as the souls, after separation from the body, sometimes as infernal deities, or merely tutelary geniuses of death. They generally sacrificed black sheep to the Manes, and the cypress was consecrated to them. Who were the guilty beings fabled among the inhabitants of hell ? First, the giants, the sons of the Titans, buried beneath



Mount Etna, which was considered as one of the entrances into hell. Ovid says that when the giant Typhon moves, he causes the earthquakes, and the eruptions of the volcano are occasioned by his sighs and groans. What is said of Sisyphus? He was the son of Eolus; and after having devastated Attica by his ravages, and put to death all strangers who fell into his power, was sent to Tartarus by Jupiter, and condemned to roll an immense stone which was constantly falling back on him, and did not leave him a moment of rest. Who was Salmoneus? The brother of Sisyphus. He wished to pass for a god, and imitated the thunder of Jupiter by having his car surrounded by torches drawn over a brazen bridge, from which he threw these lighted torches on his unfortunate subjects. Jupiter killed him with a thunderbolt and confined him in Tartarus. What crime had Phlegyas committed? He was the son of Mars and Chrysa, and had a daughter named Coronis, by whom Apollo had Esculapius. For this reason Phlegyas set fire to the temple at Delphos. To punish him he was condemned to Tartarus, where an immense stone, suspended over his head, kept him in continual apprehension of its fall. Tell the story of Ixion. He was king of the Lapithæ, and having cheated his father-in-law, Deinoes, of the presents which he had promised him for his daughter, this last cut off his hair. Ixion, dissembling his resentment, invited his father-in-law to visit him, and made him fall into a burning pit. After this crime Ixion was obliged to fly his country, but Jupiter took compassion on him, carried him to Olympus, and admitted him to the table of the gods; but the ungrateful man made love to Juno, which so incensed Jupiter, that he cast him into Tartarus, and fastened him to a wheel surrounded by serpents, and which turned round and round with him forever. What was the crime of Tityus? He was an immense giant, a son of the Earth, whose outspread body would cover nine acres. Having made love to Latona, Apollo and Diana killed him with their arrows, and condemned him to Tartarus, where a vulture seated on his breast constantly devoured his entrails. What is the story of Tantalus? The gods having visited him, he had his own son Pelops served up to them as food with other meats. But the divinities refused to partake of this horrible feast, with the exception of Ceres, who was so preoccupied by her grief for the loss of her daughter, that she ate one of the shoulders of Pelops. The king of the gods threw Tantalus into hell, restored Pelops to life, and gave him an ivory shoulder to replace the one which had been eaten. What were his torments? Jupiter condemned him to continual thirst in the midst of a tank,

the waters of which constantly escaped from his parched lips ; and devouring hunger under trees loaded with fruit, which were blown away from his hand into the clouds so soon as it was stretched forth to reach them. This is an emblem of avarice, which is always poor though surrounded by wealth. What is the story of the Danaides ? Danaus, king of Argos, had fifty daughters who were called the Danaides. Egyptus, his brother, the king of Egypt, had fifty sons, whom he wished to marry their cousins. Danaus having been informed by an oracle that one of his sons-in-law would dethrone him, commanded his daughters to put their husbands to death, which order was executed the night of their marriage by all but one, Hypermnestra, who spared her husband Lynceus. Jupiter punished these cruel women by condemning them to fill a ton, pierced with holes, with water. How is Pluto represented ? He is represented with different attributes, according to the genius of the people who worship him. He is often represented carrying off Proserpine, who is fainting, in his car, drawn by black horses. He has on his head a crown of ebony, narcissus, or cypress. His right hand holds a long fork, the other the key of the infernal regions. Who was Plutus ? The god of riches ; the son of Ceres and Jason. He is placed among the infernal deities, because riches are drawn from the bowels of the earth, the residence of these divinities. He is represented as an old man with a purse in his hand. He is lame and deformed, and walks towards us slowly ; but when represented as leaving us, it is with wings, to show that riches are slowly gained and rapidly lost. He is also said to be blind, because riches are dispensed indiscriminately to the good and evil. Whose son was Mars ? The god of war was the son of Jupiter and Juno. Who were his children ? He had by Venus, Hermione ; and by Rhea, Sylvia, Romulus, and Remus. Another son of Mars was Asculaphus, who was killed at the siege of Troy. By whom was he wounded ? By Diomedes, at the siege of Troy, where he took the side of the Trojans. Minerva, who favored the Greeks, directed the lance of Diomedes, and when Mars was wounded, he uttered so loud and horrible a cry, that it was like the sound of a whole army rushing to battle. How is Mars represented ? As a warrior clothed in armor ; sometimes seated in a car drawn by fiery horses, who are led or driven by Bellona. A cock is generally placed near him, to show the watchfulness which the science of war requires. Where were the greatest honors paid to him ? The worship of Mars, spread by the Greeks, was much in favor at Rome.

It is said that the Romans looked upon this god as the protector of their empire. Who were his priests? They were instituted by Numa, and called *Salii*, which means to "*jump*," because they danced through the streets when they celebrated his feasts. They carried about small bucklers called "*ancilles*," which they supposed to have fallen from heaven, and to the preservation of which the superstitious Romans attached the safety of their city. Was the name "*Mars*" bestowed upon one person only? It is supposed that the name was given to most warlike princes, and that every country had a Mars as well as a Hercules.

Relate the circumstances of Minerva's birth. Minerva, daughter of Jupiter, was goddess of wisdom, of war, of sciences and arts. Fable says that Jupiter, feeling a violent pain in his head, had recourse to Vulcan, who cleft his head with an axe. Minerva sprang in full armor from his brain, and of an age which permitted her to aid her father gallantly against the Titans. Had she not two names? When this goddess presided in war, she took the name of Pallas; considered as the goddess of wisdom and the fine arts, she is called Minerva. However, these names are indifferently given. What dispute had she with Neptune? One of the most celebrated passages in the history of Minerva, is her dispute with Neptune, to decide upon the honor of giving a name to the city of Athens, which Cecrops had founded. The twelve great gods, chosen as arbiters, decided that this honor belonged to the two divinities who should produce the most useful thing for the city. Neptune, with a blow of his trident, caused a beautiful horse to rise from the earth; and Minerva, with a blow of her lance, an olive-tree, the symbol of peace. The gods decided in favor of the goddess of wisdom, and the city founded by Cecrops was called Athens, in honor of Minerva, called formerly Athena by the Greeks. How was she revenged upon Arachne? Arachne having pretended to surpass Minerva in the art of embroidering, the goddess came to see her under the form of an old woman. Arachne dared her to a trial. The able workwoman embroidered with more neatness than the goddess. Minerva, for spite, broke her rival's frame and spindle. Arachne hung herself in despair, and Minerva transformed her into a spider. How is she represented? In simple and modest beauty; a grave manner, full of strength and majesty, is given to Minerva. She generally has a helmet surmounted by an owl upon her head, a pike in one hand, a buckler in the other, and the ægis upon her breast. Sometimes the attributes of the sciences and arts



are placed near her. What was this ægis? The ægis of Minerva was a buckler covered with the skin of a monster called ægius, who vomited fire, and was slain by Minerva. Upon this sacred buckler is fastened the head of Medusa, one of the three Gorgons. Around the immortal ægis were Terror, Discord, Strength, &c. What was consecrated to Minerva? The olive-tree, the emblem of peace, and the owl, emblem of prudence and wisdom, were sacred to Minerva. The appearance of this bird was only fatal when she sung, but silence was a good omen. Where was Minerva particularly honored? Minerva was particularly honored at Athens. Her feasts, which were celebrated every year, were at first called Athenæ, afterwards Panathenæ. Prizes were awarded there for gymnastic combats, and for those who excelled in poetry and music. The little Panathenæ were celebrated every year, and the great ones every five years.

Relate the circumstances of Vulcan's birth. Vulcan was the son of Jupiter and Juno. He came into the world so deformed that Jupiter, ashamed of having such a son, took him by one foot and dashed him from heaven: he fell upon the isle of Lemnos, almost lifeless, after having rolled through the air one whole day. The inhabitants of Lemnos received him, and took care of him; but he was always lame from this fall. How did Vulcan's disgrace end? Vulcan, recalled to heaven by the aid of Bacchus, returned to Jupiter's good graces, who allowed him to marry Venus, the most beautiful of all the goddesses. What were Vulcan's offices? Fable makes him the god of fire, and tells us that he was celebrated as a forger of iron. He had established his forges in the island of Lemnos, at Liparus, and in the caverns of Mt. Etna; his companions were the Cyclops, monstrous giants, who had but one eye, in the middle of their foreheads, as their name indicates. These able forgers made for Pluto the casque which rendered him invincible; for Neptune, the trident with which he raised and calmed the seas; and for Jupiter the thunderbolts with which he made the gods and men tremble. Which was the most celebrated of the Cyclops? Polyphemus was the most celebrated of the Cyclops; he loved Galatea, daughter of Nereus and Doris, but this nymph cared only for the attentions of the shepherd Acis. The Cyclops, jealous of this preference, crushed his young rival with a rock; Galatea, overcome with grief, changed her lover's blood into a river in Sicily, which bears his name.

What is said of the Muses? Jupiter, transformed into a shepherd, gained the love of Mnemosyne, goddess of memory,

and daughter of Heaven and Earth. The nine Muses were born of Jupiter and Mnemosyne. It is thus that nine young virgins are described of so strict chastity, that they put the young Adonis to death for having dared to inspire them with too tender sentiments. They dwelt on Helicon, Pindus, and Parnassus, where they were instructed by their brother Apollo; thence the names of "learned fairies," "sisters of Apollo," and "goddesses of the sacred valley," by which they are designated; they are also called the "nine sisters," and the "daughters of memory." Over what did they preside? Although the nine Muses preside equally over sciences, the fine arts, and poetry, each of them has a particular employment. Calliope presides over eloquence and heroic poetry; Clio over history; Erato over amorous poetry; Melpomene over tragedy; Thalia over comedy; Terpsichore over dancing; Euterpe over instruments; Polymnia over elegiac poetry; Urania over astronomy. How are they represented? They are described as beautiful and modest young girls, simply clad, and having wings. Apollo is at their head, a lyre in his hand, and crowned with laurel. As each one presides over a different art, they have crowns, and certain particular attributes. Why are they given wings? They took wings to escape the outrages of Pyreneus, king of Phocia, with whom they were forced to take refuge from a storm. This prince, to pursue them, mounted a high tower; but not being able to sustain himself in the air, he fell, and was killed. What worship was rendered them? They had altars in Greece, in Macedonia, and Rome. The Muses and Graces were honored in the same temple, and an agreeable banquet was scarcely made that they were not called to it and saluted, glass in hand. But they have been most honored by the poets, who have the habit of invoking them at the commencement of their poems, as the goddesses most capable of inspiring the enthusiasm so necessary in their art. What objects were consecrated to them? Among fountains and rivers, the Hippocrene, the Castalia, and the Permessus were sacred to them; and among trees, the palm-tree and laurel.

What is the second order of gods? They are inferior in rank to those of the first order, and inhabit the earth, never being admitted into heaven. They were very numerous, because the ancients had introduced many allegorical divinities, who, like Truth, Envy, Rage, etc., were merely virtues or vices; even the passions were honored by the heathens with particular adoration. Of what was Momus the god? He was the son of Sleep and Night, and god of raillery and wit. Having been chosen by

Neptune, Vulcan, and Minerva, judge of the excellence of their works, he criticised all three with equal severity. What was his judgment? He blamed Neptune for not having placed the horns of the bull before the eyes, that the animal might strike with greater precision. He criticised the man Vulcan had forged, as he had not placed a window in the breast, by which whatever was done or thought there, might be easily brought to light. Finally, he censured the house which Minerva had built, because the goddess had not made it moveable, by which means a bad neighborhood might be avoided. These illiberal reflections upon the gods were the cause of Momus being driven from heaven. How is he represented? Raising a mask from his face with one hand; his staff, the emblem of folly, rests in the other, showing that while he unmasks the vices of men he laughs at their folly. Who was Comus? God of joy and pleasure, presiding over feasts and the toilette. His worshippers adored him at night, their heads crowned with flowers, and accompanied by youths and maidens, who sang, danced, and played upon various instruments. How is he represented? The poets described him young and stout, his face flushed with wine, and crowned with roses; holding a torch in his right hand, his left resting on a column. What is said of Bellona? She was goddess of war, and sister to Mars; she is represented armed with a torch, her hair dishevelled, and a whip in her hand to animate the combatants in war. Her priests, called Bellonaireans, celebrated her feasts by wounding themselves, the blood being offered as a sacrifice to the goddess. Whose son was Esculapius? He was the son of Apollo and the nymph Coronis. Having been educated by Chiron, he became the inventor and god of medicine. He accompanied Hercules and Jason in the expedition against Colchis; and was of great service to the Argonauts by healing the sick and wounded. Did he not resuscitate the dead? Yes, it was he who gave new life to Hippolytus, son of Theseus. Jupiter, irritated to see a mortal thus encroach upon his rights, killed the physician by lightning. Apollo, being inconsolable from the death of his son, caused him to be received into heaven, where he was made a star, called Serpentarius. Where was he worshipped? For some time only at his native town, Epidaurus, but his worship soon spread through Greece. How is he represented? Sitting on a throne, a stick in his right hand, his left resting on a serpent's head. Cocks and hens are sacrificed to him. Had he any children? Two, Machaon and Podalisus, who accompanied the Greeks in the expedition against Troy, and were of great



service as physicians. Whose son was Pan? Some say Jupiter and Callisto are his parents; others, Mercury and Penelope. He was the god of shepherds, of huntsmen, and of all the inhabitants of the country. How is he represented? He had two small horns on his head, his complexion was ruddy, his nose flat, and his legs, thighs, tail, and feet were those of a goat. The Satyrs are his companions, and Sylvanus, who presides over forests. Where is he worshipped? Particularly in Arcadia, where he gave oracles on Mount Lycæus. His feasts were celebrated at Rome under the name of Lupercalia; the priests who officiated were called Luperci. What is the derivation of the word Pan? It comes from a Greek word which means *all*. He was considered as the symbol of the universe. Give the history of Syrinx. She was an Arcadian nymph, with whom Pan was in love; and her father, the river Ladon, changed her into some reeds to enable her to escape him. The reeds, which received the sighs of Pan, made a very sweet sound, and he made himself a pipe out of them, called Pan's pipe. Whose son was Faunus? He was the son of Picus, king of the Latins, and grandson of Saturn. He was numbered among the deities of the country, as he had introduced agriculture to mankind. What were the Fauni? Rustic Roman deities, descendants of Faunus, who lived in the fields, and were principally engaged in agriculture; this employment distinguishes them from the Satyrs and Sylvani. Over what did Sylvanus preside? Over forests: he is said to be the son of Faunus; many confound him with Pan. He is generally represented as half a goat and half a man, holding a branch of cypress in his hand, and is sometimes classed with the Fauns, Satyrs, and Silenus. What is said of the Satyrs? They were demigods of the country, and are described as small men, covered with thick hair, the feet and legs of goats, and short horns on the head. They frequently terrified the shepherds, and pursued the shepherdesses; sacrifices were offered to them of the first-fruits of every thing. What is their name derived from? A Hebrew word, "*sair*," which signifies a devil under the shape of a goat; when old, they were called Sileni. Who was Priapus? The son of Bacchus and Venus, and god of gardens and fruit-trees; the Romans placed his statue in their gardens. How is he represented? With a human face, and the horns of a goat; he was crowned with the leaves of the vine, and sometimes with laurel; his statues are often surrounded with gardening implements. Over what did Terminus preside? He was the god of boundaries. His worship was first introduced into Rome by Numa

Pompilius, to punish all unlawful usurpation of land. He was first represented as a large square stone; afterwards, as a human head without feet or arms, to intimate that he never moved, wherever he was. How was he honored? Not only in his temples, but also in fields, and was ornamented with garlands. The sacrifices made him were for some time only milk, wine, fruits, and cakes made of new flour; but afterwards goats and sows were offered to him. Who was Pales? The goddess of sheepfolds and pastures; her festivals, called Palilia, were celebrated the very day that Romulus began to lay the foundation of Rome. The ceremony consisted in lighting a large heap of straw, over which the shepherds jumped, one after the other, and the most active gained the prize, which was generally a young goat or lamb. Who was Pomona? A goddess remarkable for her beauty, presiding over gardens and fruit-trees; she married Vertumnus, god of autumn. How is she represented? Sitting on a basket, full of flowers and fruit, and holding a bough in one hand and apples in the other. She had a temple at Rome, and sacrifices were offered to her for the preservation of fruit. What does fable say of Flora? She was the goddess of flowers and spring, and married to Zephyrus, who gave her the empire of flowers. What were her festivals? They were called Floralia, and celebrated by women, who danced for a day and a night, and those who showed less fatigue than others were crowned with flowers. She is represented with a wreath on her head, and holding a basket of flowers.

Who were the Nymphs? The children of Nereus and Doris; not immortal, but very longlived. How many kinds of nymphs are described? Two; water-nymphs, and nymphs of the earth. How were the water-nymphs divided? Into Nereides and Naiades; the Nereides were sea-nymphs, half fish, half woman; the Naiades presided over rivers, fountains, streams, and lakes; and are represented holding an urn, from which they seemed to pour water. How were the nymphs of the earth divided? Into four different classes: the Dryades, presiding over the country; the Napææ, over hills and dales; the Oreades, over mountains; and the Hamadryades, over forests. Give the history of Thetis. She was the most beautiful of the Nereides, and was courted by Jupiter, Neptune, and Apollo; but when the gods were informed that her son would be greater than his father, their addresses were stopped; and Peleus, the son of Æacus, was permitted to solicit her hand, and became the father of Achilles. Relate the misfortunes of Echo? She was the daughter of

Air and the Earth ; her loquacity having displeased Jupiter, she was deprived of the power of speech by Juno ; and only permitted to answer the questions which were put to her. She fell in love with the handsome Narcissus, and being despised by him, she pined away and was changed into a stone ; which still retained the power of voice. What was the punishment of Narcissus ? Cupid, to avenge the wrongs of Echo, led him to a fountain, where he became enamored of the reflection of his own image, and after fruitless attempts to approach this beautiful object, he grew desperate and killed himself. His blood was changed into a flower which still bears his name. What was the metamorphosis of Arethusa ? She was one of Diana's attendants ; and while bathing one day was seen by the river Alpheus, who fell in love with her ; to escape from the god, she implored Diana to change her into a fountain ; and Alpheus immediately mingled his streams with hers. What nymph was consulted by Numa ? Egeria ; according to Ovid she became his wife. This prince frequently visited her, and that he might more successfully introduce his laws into the state, solemnly declared before the Romans that they were previously sanctioned by the nymph Egeria. The death of Numa rendered her so disconsolate that she melted into tears, and was changed into a fountain by Diana. Who were the household gods ? The Lares, who presided over houses and families ; and the Penates, who were the guardians of cities and empires ; but often confounded with the Lares. How were the Penates worshipped ? Their statues were generally made of wax, ivory, silver, or earth ; and the only offerings they received were wine, incense, fruits, &c : their feasts, called Compitalia, were celebrated in the open air. Who was Genius ? The son of Heaven and Nature, who gave life and motion to all ; empires, cities, and even small villages, had a tutelary genius. Did not every man have a genius ? Yes, two ; one good, and promoting happiness ; the other bad, and inspiring evil and wicked feelings. They offered him wine, flowers, and incense. How is he represented ? When a good genius, he is young, crowned with poppies, and holding a branch of leaves covered with grapes. The bad genius is an old man with a long beard ; an owl rests on his hand, a bird of bad omen. Who was Fortuna ? The goddess of fortune ; from her hand were derived riches and poverty, pleasures and misfortunes, blessings and pains. She is represented blind, standing, with wings to her feet, one of which is in the air, the other resting on a wheel which turns round continually as an emblem of inconstancy. What is the account given by fable



of Nemesis? She was the daughter of Nox and Oceanus, and goddess of vengeance; always prepared to punish impiety, and at the same time reward the good and virtuous. How is she represented? Armed with serpents and burning torches, and with wings, to signify the swiftness of the punishment which follows crime. Who was Ate? A daughter of Jupiter, and an infernal deity; occupied in tormenting mankind. Jupiter, justly irritated at the number of evils she had caused, sent her from heaven, swearing she should never return; and she now traverses the earth, only pleased when in the midst of misfortune. Who was Harpocrates? The Egyptian god of silence; and is represented under the form of a man with his finger on his lips. The peach-tree is consecrated to him, as the leaves have some resemblance to a tongue, and the fruit to a heart; an ingenious emblem of the harmony which should exist between the heart and tongue. What is said of Hermia? She was a daughter of Coelus and Terra, and governed Thessaly with so much wisdom that she was honored as the goddess of justice. Among the moderns she is represented as holding a pair of scales in one hand, and a sword in the other. Who was Astrea? The daughter of Themis, and sometimes confounded with her, as she was also goddess of justice. She lived upon the earth during the golden age; but the wickedness and impiety of mankind afterwards drove her to heaven, and she was placed among the constellations of the Zodiac, under the name of Virgo. Who was Fama or Fame? The messenger of Jupiter. Virgil describes her as a monster with as many eyes, ears, mouths, and tongues, as feathers. She is also represented with wings and a trumpet in her hand, sometimes with two, for she publishes truth and falsehood. What is said of Envy? She was the daughter of Night, and is represented as a very ugly old woman; her head covered with snakes instead of hair, her eyes squinting and set deep in her head, and of a livid complexion. She holds three serpents in one hand, a hydra in the other, and an immense serpent rests on her breast. Give some description of Discord. She was an infernal deity, to whom are attributed all the wars and quarrels among mankind. Jupiter banished her from heaven for fomenting disputes among the gods. What did she do at the wedding of Thetis and Peleus? To revenge herself for not having received an invitation, she threw the fatal golden apple among the goddesses, which became a matter of great dispute, until Paris became judge of their respective merits. How is she described? With a pale, ghastly look; her garments torn, her eyes sparkle with fire, and in her bosom a dagger

is concealed. Her head is generally entwined with serpents, and she is attended by Bellona; one of her bloody hands holds a flaming torch, the other grasps a scroll on which is inscribed, wars and discord. How was the goddess of strength honored? As a divinity, said to be the daughter of Themis, and sister of Temperance; she is represented as an armed Amazon, who with one hand clasps a column, the other holds a branch of the oak. Who was Peace? The daughter of Jupiter and Themis, presiding over the golden age; she was worshipped at Rome. She is represented holding in one hand the horn of plenty, in the other an olive-branch; sometimes she holds a lighted torch downwards, and some ears of corn; the little god Plutus rests on her bosom. What is said of Victory? She is supposed to be the daughter of Titan and Styx; and was greatly honored by the Greeks, particularly at Athens. She is represented with wings, crowned with laurel, and holding a branch of palm in her hand; she stands on a globe, to signify that Victory governs the world. Who was Hope? She was the sister of Sleep, who makes us forget our misfortunes, and of Death, and was highly honored by the Romans under the form of a young nymph, crowned with budding flowers. Green is her favorite color, an emblem of the verdure which precedes the blossoms and fruit; her altars show that hope is but a fleeting joy. What is said of Truth? She was the daughter of Saturn and Time, and mother of Virtue; she is represented as very young, simply dressed, with a noble air, and eyes which shine like brilliants. She holds in her left hand an open book, with a branch of palm; in her right a mirror, which is sometimes ornamented with flowers and precious stones, to show that truth can be embellished. What does fable say of the divinity called Virtue? She was represented very young, and modest, but with a manner which commanded respect; dressed in white, as an emblem of her purity; she holds a spade, a sceptre, and a crown of laurel, trophies of her conflicts, her power, and the gratitude which is due to her. How were the principal virtues distinguished among the Romans? Each by their attire: Patience was known by her rule, and her pointing to a globe at her feet; Temperance had a bridle; Justice held an equal balance; and Fortitude leaned against her sword; Honesty was clad in a transparent robe; Modesty appeared veiled; Clemency wore an olive-branch, and Devotion threw incense upon an altar; Tranquillity was seen to lean on a column; Health was known by her serpent; Liberty by her cap; and Gayety by her myrtle.

What are divinities of the third order? The divinities of the

third order comprise gods who derived their origin from a god or goddess, and heroes whose great virtues or superior talents have raised them to the rank of divinities, such as Perseus, Hercules, Jason, Theseus, Castor and Pollux, Bellerophon, Esculapius, Orpheus, Cadmus, etc. These divinities dwelt upon earth.

Who was Perseus? Perseus was the son of Jupiter and Danae. Acrisius, king of Argos, imprisoned his daughter Danae in a tower of brass, in the belief of an oracle, which had announced to him that his son-in-law would some day seize his crown and destroy him. But Jupiter, transformed into golden rain, that is to say, after having corrupted the keepers of the princess, penetrated into the tower, and by him Danae gave birth to Perseus. What did Acrisius do? Acrisius, informed of the birth of Perseus, caused him to be exposed with his mother to the mercy of the waves in a frail skiff. Danae and her son were cast upon the coast of the little island of Seriphus, one of the Cyclades. Polydectus, king of this isle, received the young Perseus and brought him up carefully. How did Polydectus banish Perseus from his court? Polydectus falling in love with Danae, sought to remove Perseus from his court: to accomplish it, he ordered him to combat the Gorgons who desolated the country near the garden of Hesperides, and to bring him the head of Medusa, in the hope that he would perish in the enterprise. What arms did Perseus receive? Perseus, beloved of the gods, received for his success in this expedition a mirror from Minerva, wings and a cimeter from Mercury, and from Pluto his helmet. This helmet and glass had the property of rendering the wearer invisible. Relate the defeat of the Gorgons. The Gorgons were three sisters, called Medusa, Euryale, and Steno. They were daughters of the sea-god Phorcus and of Ceto, both children of Neptune. Between the three they had but one eye and one tooth, which they used by turns. The tooth was longer than a wild boar's tusk. Their hands were of brass, their hair was in the form of serpents; with merely a look they killed men or petrified them. By the aid of his sacred weapons, Perseus attacked these monsters, conquered them, and cut off Medusa's head. What became of this head? He always carried it with him in all his expeditions, and petrified his enemies by using it. From the blood which ran from the head of Medusa, Pegasus was born, who immediately, with a stroke of his foot, caused the fountain of Hippocrene to spring up. It is also said that the drops of blood which fell from the head, as Perseus bore it to Poly-



dectus, were transformed into the numbers of serpents which infested Lybia. Against whom did he make a trial of Medusa's head? Perseus, mounted on Pegasus, transported himself through the air into Mauritania, where Atlas reigned. This prince, owner of the garden of Hesperides, having been warned by an oracle to beware of a son of Jupiter, refused the young hero hospitality. But Perseus punished him immediately by showing him Medusa's head, which petrified him and changed him into a monster which bears his name. Perseus afterwards carried off the golden apples of the garden of Hesperides. Why is it said that Atlas carried the heavens? Poets say that Atlas supports the heavens upon his shoulders, perhaps because Mount Atlas is surrounded with clouds; perhaps as a celebrated astronomer, the inventor of the spheres, was named Atlas. How did Perseus deliver Andromeda? Powerful in his terrible weapons, Perseus undertook to deliver Andromeda. This princess, daughter of Cepheus, king of Ethiopia, and of Cassiopeia, had been exposed on the seaside to be devoured by a monster of the ocean, as a punishment for her temerity in having disputed the prize of beauty with Juno and the Nereides; Perseus, mounted upon Pegasus, killed or petrified the monster. How did Cepheus reward Perseus? Cepheus, the father of Andromeda, gave his daughter in marriage to her deliverer. Perseus, however, was forced to achieve a second conquest in a combat with Phineas, the uncle of Andromeda, who had the audacity to carry her off. The hero, always victorious over all his enemies, consecrated the head of Medusa to Minerva, upon whose invincible ægis it was afterwards graven. What was the end of Acrisius and Perseus? Although Perseus had cause to complain of his grandfather, Acrisius, he re-established him on his throne, whence he had been driven by his brother, Prætus, and killed the usurper. But a short time after, in displaying his dexterity at quoits, Perseus struck Acrisius dead upon the spot. He felt such poignant grief at this accident, that he left Argos and founded a new city which he called Mycenæ, where he was treasonably murdered by Megapenthe, son of Prætus, who thus revenged his father's death. The people of Mycenæ and Argos raised heroic monuments to his memory. Jupiter placed him in the heavens among the northern constellations with Andromeda, Cassiopeia, and Cepheus.

Relate the circumstances of Hercules' birth. Hercules and Eurystheus were sons of Alcmena, wife of Amphitryon, king of Thebes. These twin-brothers were born while this prince was

at war. The father of Eurystheus was Amphytrion, of Hercules, Jupiter, who had profited by the king's absence, and deceived his wife, appearing to her under the form of her husband. What persecutions did Hercules suffer from Juno? The implacable Juno, aware of Jupiter's infidelity, exerted all the efforts of her jealous fury against Hercules. Having made Jupiter swear that the first-born of the two children should command the other, she did not fail to cause Eurystheus to be born before Hercules. To give warning proof of the hatred she bore the latter, she sent two serpents to devour him in his cradle. The young Hercules, without showing the least fear, tore them to pieces, showing from his birth that he was worthy to be the son of Jupiter. Was not Juno's hatred appeased? It is said that at the entreaties of Pallas, Juno was calmed, and that she even consented to nourish the infant with her milk to render it immortal, and that Hercules suffered this sacred milk to fall, which formed the white pathway in the heavens, called the milky way. Who were Hercules' masters? Hercules had many masters. He learned archery from Rhadamanthus, to fight in full armor from Castor, and from the Centaur Chiron astronomy and medicine. Lastly, Linus taught him to play upon the lyre. It is said that, irritated one day by the reprimands of the latter, Hercules threw his instrument at his head and killed him instantly. Who are called Heraclides? Hercules had a great many children known under the name of Heraclides. It is said that to avenge their father for the persecutions he had suffered from Eurystheus, they took arms against him and killed him. After having been often driven from Peloponnesus, they returned there finally and occupied the country until then held by the Pelopides. It is thus that they are called the descendants of Atreus and Thyestes, sons-in-law of Pelops. What are the twelve labors of Hercules? Eurystheus, at the instigation of Juno, commanded Hercules to expose himself to the most imminent dangers, persuaded that he would perish in the end. These are what are called the twelve labors of Hercules. What was the first? A lion of immense size had taken refuge in the forest of Nemea and devastated the country. Hercules attacked this monster; after many useless efforts he seized him, tore him to pieces with his hands and dragged off the skin, which afterwards served him as garment and shield. What was the second? In the morass of Lerna, near Argos, a city of Peloponnesus, there was a hydra more terrible than this lion. This monster had seven heads; when one was cut off several imme-

diately took its place. Hercules destroyed them all with a single blow of his club, and steeped his arrows in the hydra's blood to make them fatal. What was the third labor? A cruel wild boar, which dwelt on Mount Erymanthus, ravaged all the surrounding country: Hercules took him alive, and brought him to Eurystheus, who on seeing him nearly died of fright. What was the fourth? Mt. Menalus served as a retreat for a hind, with brazen feet and golden horns, so light in the chase that no one had been able to catch her: Hercules, not wishing to pierce her with his arrows, because she was sacred to Diana, at last took her, after a whole year's pursuit, at the moment of her crossing the river Ladon. The hero carried her on his shoulders to Mycenæ and offered her to Eurystheus. What was the fifth? Immense birds covered Lake Stymphalus, in Arcadia; they threw darts of iron against those who attacked them. Hercules exterminated them with his arrows. They were so numerous and of such extraordinary size that their wings intercepted the light of the sun. What was the sixth? The Amazons were warlike women who inhabited the shores of the river Thermidon, in Thrace; they exercised their daughters in managing arms, and strangled or killed their male children. Eurystheus had commanded Hercules to bring him the girdle of Hippolyta, queen of the Amazons. The hero penetrated into the country of these warriors, conquered them, and took their queen prisoner. What was the seventh? Hercules delivered the earth from two famous tyrants, Diomed and Busiris, who had committed awful highway outrages. Relate the history of Diomed. Diomed, king of Thrace, son of Mars and the nymph Cyrene, had some furious horses which vomited fire. He fed them with human flesh, and gave them all the strangers who were so unfortunate as to fall into his hands to devour. Hercules took Diomed, and allowed his own horses to devour him. These furious animals were afterwards brought to Eurystheus. Relate the history of Busiris. Busiris, king of Spain, celebrated for his cruelty, offered the strangers who landed on his coasts to Jupiter. It is said, that having heard the beauty and wisdom of the daughters of Atlas boasted of, he caused them to be carried off by pirates; but Hercules followed the ravishers, put them to death, and went into Spain to kill Busiris. What is the eighth labor of Hercules? Geryon, son of Chrysaor and Callirhoe, reigned over Betica. Poets have made him a giant, with three bodies, who had his flocks guarded by a dog with two heads, and by a dragon with seven. It is said that Geryon fed his oxen on human flesh. Hercules killed him, with



his protectors, and carried off his oxen. What is the ninth? Augias, king of Elidus, and son of the Sun, had stables which contained three thousand oxen; they had not been cleansed for thirty years. Hercules turned the river Alpheus from its course and made it run through the stables. He presented himself afterwards to Augias to receive the reward of his labor; being refused, Hercules, enraged, pillaged the city of Elis, and killed the ungrateful prince. What is the tenth? Neptune, wishing to destroy the whole of Greece, had sent a furious bull, blowing flames from his nostrils, into the states of Minos. Hercules proved his great skill and address in overpowering this monster. What is the eleventh? Eurystheus insisted, that Hercules should go and seek the golden apples in the garden of Hesperides. The trees which bore this precious fruit were intrusted to the care of a horrible monster, with a hundred heads, and breathing a hundred sorts of breaths at once. Hercules killed the dragon, and took the golden apples to Eurystheus. What was the twelfth? Theseus, for having dared to descend into the infernal regions with his friend Pirithous, to carry off Proserpine, was kept prisoner there. Hercules chained Cerberus, and delivered Theseus. What did Hercules do after his twelve labors? After having happily finished his twelve labors, Hercules, thinking he had still not done enough for his glory, overran the universe to cleanse it from monsters and tyrants, and to relieve the miseries of the human species. It would be difficult to enumerate all the memorable actions he accomplished in this glorious expedition. Every country, and almost every city in Greece, is honored by having been the theatre of some marvellous deed of this hero. We will relate some of them. Relate the history of Cæus. Cæus, son of Vulcan, was a famous brigand, who had retired into Mt. Aventin, one of the seven hills of Rome. One day he dared to steal the oxen of Hercules, and made them enter his cave backwards, that their footsteps might not be traced. Hercules, hearing them bellow, ran directly to the cave; Cæus in vain vomited clouds of fire and smoke, Hercules seized him in his strong hands and strangled him. Who was Anteus? The giant Anteus, son of Neptune and the Earth, massacred all the travellers who crossed the sands of Lybia. He had vowed to build a temple to Neptune, his father, with the skulls of men. Hercules, provoked by Anteus, threw him to the earth three times, but in vain; for the Earth, his mother, gave him new strength every time he touched her. The hero, to put an end to him, raised him up and smothered him in his arms. What were the Pigmyes? The Pigmyes,

fable tells us, were but two feet high, and, according to the poets, existed in Thrace. An army of these little men attacked Hercules, who was sleeping, after the defeat of the giant Anteus. Hercules awoke, laughing at the project of this swarm of ants, wrapped them in his lion's skin, and carried them to Eurystheus. What of Admetus and Alceste? Alceste, wife of Admetus, king of Thessaly, was the most perfect model of conjugal love. Her husband was in danger of death, and she had the courage to offer herself up to death, if the gods would save him. This generous sacrifice was made, and Admetus restored to life. Fable says that Hercules struggled with Death, and bound him with chains of diamond, until he would consent to restore Alceste to the light. What other exploits are attributed to Hercules? Hercules also overran the earth, everywhere relieving distress, and delivering men from the calamities which oppressed them. It is he who delivered Prometheus, breaking the chains which bound him to Mt. Caucasus. How did he mark the end of his travels? Hercules, having penetrated to Gades, now Cadiz, thought he had arrived at the end of the earth. He separated two mountains, which touched each other, to make the Mediterranean communicate with the ocean: one is called Calpe, in Europe; the other Abyla, in Africa. It was thus that the straits of Gibraltar were formed. These mountains were called the hills of Hercules. He made this inscription there, "Ne plus ultra"—nothing further. What did Juno do? So much glory only served to redouble the fury of Juno against Hercules. This goddess, always carried away by jealousy, excited the hero to such an excess of anger that he killed his wife, Megara, and his own children: returned to his senses, he would have put an end to himself, if his friends had not prevented him. To what last means did Juno resort? Furious to see Hercules triumphing over all his enemies, and coming off victorious in the most perilous enterprises, Juno entreated Love to avenge her. This god inspired Hercules with the most violent passion for Omphale, queen of Lydia; the conqueror of so many monsters did not blush to clothe himself in woman's garments and bow at the feet of Omphale. Did he not love Dejanira? Hercules afterwards became deeply enamored of Dejanira. This princess had been affianced to the river Achelous. Hercules conquered his rival in single combat, during which Achelous was by turns transformed into a serpent, a bull, and a man with the head of an ox. After having married Dejanira, he was conducting her home, when he was arrested by the river Evenus, whose waters were very thick and dangerous.

Who offered to carry Dejanira over? The centaur Nessus offered to carry Dejanira over on his back; Hercules consented to it, and crossed the river first. Arrived on the other side, he saw that the centaur intended to carry Dejanira off, and he pierced him immediately with his arrows, poisoned with the blood of the hydra of Lerna. How was Nessus revenged? Nessus tried to avenge himself before he died, and to effect this, he presented Dejanira with a robe bathed in his blood, assuring her that if Hercules once wore this robe, he would never love any other woman than herself. What use did Dejanira make of it? This too credulous woman, informed that her husband preferred Iola, daughter of Eurytus, king of Celchalia, to herself, sent the tunic of Nessus to him by a young slave, called Lichas. How did Hercules receive it? Hercules, then occupied with sacrificial rites upon Mt. Etna, received this fatal present with joy. He had no sooner put on the poisoned robe than he felt himself scorching with violent heat, and torn by the most cruel torments. He became furious, seized Lichas and threw him into the sea, where he was changed into a rock. Relate the circumstances of his last moments. Feeling his last hour approaching, he gave to Philoctetus the arrows steeped in the blood of the hydra of Lerna, without which the Fates had declared that Troy could not be taken. Himself cutting the trees on Mt. Etna, he made of them a funeral pile, on which he finished his glorious career. Dejanira regretted so deeply the death of Hercules that she destroyed herself. What honors were rendered to Hercules? After his death Hercules was placed among the ranks of the gods, and received into heaven, where he married Hebe, goddess of youth. The people of Greece and Italy, witnesses of his great deeds, erected temples to him, of which one of the most celebrated, situated at Rome, was called the Temple of the great Hercules. It is said that neither dog nor fly ever entered there. What other name is given to Hercules? Hercules is often called Alcides, that is, son of Alceus, his maternal grandfather. How is he represented? This hero is represented under the form of a strong and robust man, covered with the skin of the Nemean lion, and leaning on his club. He sometimes wears a crown of white poplar, a tree which was sacred to him, because he bound his head with its leaves on going down into hell.

Whose son was Theseus? The father of Theseus was Ægeus, king of Athens; the mother was Æthra, daughter of Pitheus, king of Peloponnesus; he was the relation and contemporary of Hercules. Is he not also considered the son of Neptune?



Some poets give him Neptune for father, and found this opinion upon the following fable. Theseus, wishing to prove to Minos, king of Crete, that he was descended from Neptune, cast his ring into the sea, and threw himself immediately after it into the waves, and brought it back with a crown which Amphitryon had placed on his head. This is not to be believed, as it denies the rest of the history of Theseus. What were the deeds of Theseus' infancy? Ægeus, leaving Peloponnesus to return to Athens, his wife remained on her father's estates. Æthra was pregnant. Ægeus hid his sword under an enormous stone, and instructed her, that if she gave birth to a son, not to send him to him until he should be strong enough to lift the stone, and take thence the sword—by which he should be recognised. Theseus was hardly sixteen years of age when he girded himself with the sword of Ægeus; and informed by his mother of his origin, departed to join his father. Did not Theseus imitate Hercules? Before avowing himself heir to the throne of Athens, he resolved to make himself worthy of it. The glory and virtues of Hercules excited his courage. Jealous of imitating the great actions of this hero, he delivered Attica from brigands and monsters, which infested the roads and made them very dangerous. What events happened at Athens? Arrived at Athens, Theseus found this city in strange confusion. Medea, whose crimes had caused her to be driven from Corinth, had fled, and was governing under the name of Ægeus; favored by the indiscreet passion she had inspired in the king. Thinking that the presence of a stranger, celebrated for his exploits, would affect her projects of becoming mistress of the throne, she tried to make him an object of suspicion to the king; and determined him to have him poisoned in the midst of a feast. At the moment when Theseus was on the point of swallowing the poison, Ægeus recognised his son by the sight of his sword. He drove Medea from his presence, thus discovering and punishing her perfidious designs. What did Theseus then do? Theseus, declared heir to the throne of Athens, showed his courage against certain infamous rascals, whose crimes merited a cruel chastisement. Among them were Phalaris, Scyron, Procrustes, Periphetus, Cercyon, etc. Phalaris, tyrant of Agrigentum, had forged a brazen bull, in which those he had condemned to death were burned by a slow fire. This monster was amused by the cries of his victims, which were like the bellowing of cattle. Who made the first trial of this? It is said that Perillus, the author of this horrible invention, made the first trial of it. It was thus that the tyrant

paid him his promised salary. Phalaris was massacred by Theseus. What is said of Scyron? Scyron, a famous brigand who ravaged Attica, not content with robbing travellers, conducted them to a rock from the top of which he precipitated them into the sea. They were devoured by tortoises, which Scyron thus fattened on human flesh. Theseus destroyed him and burned his bones, which he sacrificed to Jupiter. Relate the history of Procrustes. Procrustes practised the most horrible cruelties in Attica. The wretch stretched his guests on an iron bed, cut off the extremities of their legs when they were longer than the bed, or stretched them with cords until they should reach the end of it. He shared the same fate as Phalaris and Scyron. Who was Periphetus? Periphetus, son of Vulcan, had established himself in the environs of Epidaurus, where he attacked travellers. Theseus, going from Trezena to Corinth, killed him and seized his club, which he always carried afterwards as a memento of this victory. What is related of Cercyon? Cercyon, also called Simus, was devastating Attica. Endowed with extraordinary strength, he bent the largest trees, by pulling down the tops and fastening to them those he had overcome in fight. The trees rising again, tore his victims to pieces. Theseus made him undergo this cruel punishment himself. What monsters did Theseus destroy? Theseus, conqueror of these tyrants, turned his valor against many monsters. He had the glory of delivering the earth from an enormous bull which made great ravages in the fields of Marathon. He caught and killed the wild boar of Calydan, which Diana had sent against the Etolians to punish them for having neglected her worship. Finally, he destroyed the Minotaur, a monster half man and half bull. What is related of Minotaur? Pasiphae, daughter of the Sun, and wife of Minos, king of Crete, had brought him into the world. Minos kept him shut up in the labyrinth of the island of Crete. This monster was only fed on human flesh. The Athenians were obliged to send seven young boys, drawn by lot, every year, for the food of the Minotaur. Who had imposed this punishment upon them? This horrible tribute was imposed upon them by Minos, to avenge the death of his son Androgeus, whom the young Athenians had killed, in jealousy for his constant success in the public games. The tribute had already been paid three times, when Theseus, to free his country, made sail for Crete to combat the Minotaur. Relate the circumstances of Theseus' expedition. He could not succeed in his enterprise without the assistance of Ariadne, daughter of Minos, who was passionately

enamored with Theseus. This princess gave him a ball of thread, by which he escaped from the labyrinth after having killed the Minotaur. Who married her after Theseus? Theseus, who had brought his liberatress with him on leaving Crete, left her on the isle of Naxos. Bacchus, coming a short time after into this isle, consoled her for Theseus' infidelity, and marrying her, presented her with a beautiful golden crown, a master-piece of Vulcan's. This golden crown was afterwards placed among the stars. What was this labyrinth? The labyrinth was an immense enclosure filled with chambers and avenues, and offering so many turns, that once entered there, one could never find egress. How many labyrinths were there? There have been two celebrated ones. The one in Egypt was one of the wonders of the world; it contained three thousand apartments and twelve palaces, and was, according to Herodotus, the work of twelve kings. The other, situated in the island of Crete, near the city of Gnossa, had been made on the model of that in Egypt, to serve as a dwelling for the Minotaur. Who constructed the labyrinth of Crete? Dedalus, one of the most able artists of heroic Greece, planned and constructed the labyrinth in the isle of Crete. This wise architect was the first victim of his invention; for, having favored the infidelities of Pasiphae, wife of Minos, this king shut him up in the labyrinth with his son Icarus and the Minotaur. How did Dedalus and his son escape? Resolved to escape from this prison, the ingenious Dedalus formed artificial wings which he attached to his shoulders and those of Icarus, with wax; Dedalus, by the aid of his wings, freed himself. Icarus, forgetting the wise instructions of his father, approached too near the sun; the wax melted upon his wings, and the imprudent youth fell into the sea, where he was drowned. Since that time this sea has been called Icarien. What became of Dedalus? The unfortunate Dedalus landed in Sicily; others say in Egypt. The king Cœalus, who gave him an asylum at first, caused him afterwards to be stifled in a stove, to prevent the fulfilment of the menaces of Minos. What more is attributed to Dedalus? The invention of sails is attributed to Dedalus, and it is believed that his wings are an allegory upon which the sails of a vessel are designed. What event signalized the return of Theseus? When Theseus left to combat the Minotaur, he was in the same vessel which conducted the seven victims offered in sacrifice to the vengeance of Minos. This vessel had black sails, to express the grief and mourning into which the Athenians were plunged. Ægeus had advised Theseus his son, if he returned



conqueror, to change these sails into white ones. Entirely occupied with the victory which he had just gained, Theseus forgot this advice of his father's. What happened? Ægeus perceiving the vessel returning with black sails, believed his son dead, and only thinking of his grief, plunged himself into the sea. The Athenians gave his name to the Ægean sea, now called the Archipelago. How did Theseus thank Apollo? Theseus fulfilled his parting vow to Apollo, to send every year an offering of thanks to Delos. Deputies crowned with olive-branches were sent there every year. For this purpose the same vessel which had borne Theseus was used and carefully kept in order, so that it was always ready to set sail; for which reason the poets have called this vessel immortal. Did not Theseus lay aside his authority? After having given many wise laws to the Athenians, Theseus laid aside sovereign authority. He resumed his former mode of life, and sought new adventures. What occurred at the wedding of Pirithous? Pirithous, king of the Lapithæ, having married Hippodamia, invited the Centaurs to assist at the festival: excited by wine, they committed the greatest excesses. Hercules and Theseus did not leave their audacity unpunished, but killed a great number of them. Who were the Centaurs? The Centaurs were men celebrated for their talent in the art of riding. They were such excellent horsemen that they appeared to be but of one body with the horse they rode. Poets have also said that they were monsters, half man and half horse. The most celebrated of the Centaurs was Chiron, not less skilful in medicine than in astronomy, and whose disciples were the principal persons mentioned in fable. How was Pirithous connected with Theseus? Pirithous, struck with the recital of the great deeds of Theseus, wished to measure his strength with him, and defied him to single combat. Theseus accepted the challenge; but when the two heroes met, seized with a secret admiration for each other, they embraced, and swore eternal friendship. What war did Theseus carry on with Pirithous? Theseus, accompanied by his friend Pirithous, went to the banks of the river Thermidon to seek the Amazons, to have the glory of fighting them as Hercules had done. After having conquered them, the Athenian hero married their queen Antiope, or Hippolyta, whom he had taken prisoner. By her he was father of the unfortunate Hippolytus. What project did Theseus and Pirithous afterwards form? The two friends, after their victory over the Amazons, formed the project of carrying off the beautiful Helen, priestess of Diana, whose beauty afterwards caused

the ruin of Troy. This enterprise happily terminated, they drew lots for the princess, on condition that he to whose lot she fell should be obliged to procure another wife for his friend. To whom did Helen fall? Helen fell to the lot of Theseus, who, according to the agreement made, resolved to go with Pirithous to carry off Proserpine. They descended together into hell, but Cerberus threw himself upon Pirithous and strangled him. As for Theseus, he was loaded with chains and kept prisoner, until Hercules came to his deliverance. During his captivity, Helen was freed by her brothers and taken to her own country, Sparta, where she became the wife of Menelaus. Who was Theseus' second wife? Happily escaped from hell, Theseus married Phedra, daughter of Pasiphae and Minos, and sister of Ariadne. This prince brought up, at Trezene, the son he had had by the queen of the Amazons. He brought his new wife into this city. Phedra had no sooner seen the young Hippolytus than she felt a violent passion for him. What was Hippolytus' conduct? Hippolytus, only occupied with the study of wisdom and the amusements of hunting, had drawn upon him the indignation of Venus, who swore to punish his disdain. Phedra, excited by this goddess, dared to declare her passion to the young prince; despised, spurned, and furious, she arraigned Hippolytus, and accused him before Theseus. What did Theseus do? This unhappy father, deceived and abused by his wife, gave up his son to the vengeance of Neptune, who had promised to grant him three of his desires. Hippolytus, travelling on the seaside, was overturned in his chariot, dragged across the rocks, and torn by his horses, which were terrified at the sight of an awful monster coming out of the sea. Was he not restored to life? According to Ovid, Esculapius restored Hippolytus to life, and Diana covered him with a cloud to conceal his flight from hell. Phedra, torn with remorse, acknowledged her calumny, and destroyed herself. How did Theseus die? The Athenians revolted against Theseus. This prince, indignant at their ingratitude, overwhelmed Athens with curses, and retired into the isle of Scyros, resolved to end his days in peace there, and in private life. But Lycomedes, king of this island, jealous of the reputation of Theseus, or won over by his enemies, caused him to be precipitated from the top of a rock. What honors were rendered to his ashes? The Athenians, many centuries afterwards, rendered great honor to the ashes of Theseus. They pretend that, this hero appeared to them, covered with his armor, at the battle of Marathon. His remains were care-

fully sought, and they found in the place where tradition said they had been placed, great bones, and near them the iron of a pike, and a sword. Cimon caused this precious deposit to be transported to Athens, where it was received with great pomp. A very handsome temple, which still exists, is sacred to his memory.

Relate the story of the birth of Castor and Pollux. It is said that Leda, the wife of Tyndarus, king of Sparta, to please whom Jupiter transformed himself into a swan, laid two eggs, from one of which were produced Castor and Clytemnestra, and from the other Pollux and Helena. The first two were mortal; the last two, immortal. How did Castor and Pollux distinguish themselves? Pollux, by his address in the combats of the Cestus and all athletic exercises; Castor, by his skill in taming horses. Why were they placed among the sea-gods? Because they had the honor of clearing the Archipelago from the pirates who infested it; and for this reason also they were invoked by sailors as their tutelary deities. For this reason they sacrificed white lambs to them, and black sheep to the winds. What exploits have rendered them famous? The two brothers followed Jason to Colchis, and had a share in the conquest of the Golden Fleece. In returning to their own country they recaptured Helena, their sister, who had been seized by Theseus, and also took captive Æthra, the mother of that hero. In what enterprise did Castor die? They had carried off two beautiful sisters, betrothed to Lynceus and Idas, who fought obstinately against them. Castor was killed by Lynceus, who, in his turn, fell by the hand of Pollux. Idas was killed by a thunderbolt from Jupiter. What did Pollux request of Jupiter? He besought Jupiter to render Castor immortal, but as this could not be entirely granted, he obtained permission to share his immortality with his brother, and they lived and died alternately. From the extraordinary affection they bore each other, their names have become symbolical of fraternal affection. How is this fiction explained? It is founded on the belief that the two princes, after death, were transformed into the constellation called the "*Twins*," and that these two stars never appear above the horizon at the same time. Whose son was Jason? He was the son of Eson, king of Colchis, in Thessaly. Eson having been dethroned by his brother Pelias, Jason, when arrived at manhood, claimed his paternal heritage. Pelias, to put off this claim, proposed to his nephew the conquest of the Golden Fleece, an enterprise full of glory and danger, promising to restore his states if he returned victorious. What was the Golden



Fleece? It was taken from a ram with which the gods had presented Athamas, king of Thebes. Phryxus his son, flying from the ill-treatment of Ino his stepmother, with his sister Hellas, took this ram, on which they mounted to cross the arm of the sea which separates Europe from Asia. Hellas, who was frightened by the noise of the waves, fell into the sea, and gave her name to the strait, "the Hellespont," now the Dardanelles. What became of Phryxus? Overcome by fatigue, he arrived at a point near Colchis, and there landed and slept. The inhabitants were about to kill him, when the ram, who was endowed with the power of speech, awoke him. Phryxus then went to Ætus, king of Colchis, and consecrated to Mars the Golden Fleece, which was hung upon a tree in a wood consecrated to that god. Ætus gave him his daughter in marriage, but afterwards becoming envious of the riches of his son-in-law, put him to death to obtain possession of the Golden Fleece. Who aided Jason in his enterprise? The expedition to obtain the Golden Fleece being one full of glory, when announced throughout Greece, attracted to Jason's standard the most renowned warriors, anxious to partake of the glory of the enterprise. Give some account of the vessel which carried them. They embarked in a vessel, the model of which was designed by Minerva. The wood was cut from the forest of Dodona, which gave rise to the belief that oracles proceeded from it. It was called the Argo, either because it was made in Argos, or because it was built by a person of that name. Those who embarked in it were called the Argonauts, and had each their particular employment. Typhis had charge of the helm; Lynceus, who had very sharp sight, had the look-out for rocks and shoals; and Orpheus, who accompanied them with his lyre, alleviated the tedium of the voyage with its sweet sounds. What were the difficulties of the enterprise? Jason had first to yoke two bulls, a present from Vulcan, whose horns and hoofs were of brass, and who vomited fire, and then fasten them to a diamond plough, and make them plough four acres of ground to sow the teeth of the dragon which had been slain by Cadmus; and from which were to spring forth armed men, all of whom he must slay. Next, he must kill a dragon which watched over the preservation of the Fleece; and all this work was to be done in one day! How did Jason succeed? By the aid of Medea, daughter of king Ætus: this famous sorceress put the dragon to sleep by her enchantments, and aided the young warrior whom she loved to overcome the other obstacles. What did Jason and Medea do? As soon as he

gained possession of the treasure, he fled from Colchis with Medea, to avoid her father's anger. Pursued by the king, they cut into pieces Absyrthus, the brother of Medea, and strewed the ground with his limbs to retard the progress of the king. They arrived in the dominions of Alcinous, king of Phœnicia, where their marriage was celebrated; and the new-married couple returned in triumph to Colchis. What was the end of Pelias? Having refused to restore to Jason his throne, Medea revenged herself on him by causing him to be torn to pieces by his own daughters. How was this done? Medea, professing the secret of restoring the aged to youth, the daughters of Pelias requested her to confer this favor on their father. Medea desired them to cut their father into pieces, and then boil them in a cauldron. The fire destroyed them entirely, so that these unfortunate girls could not even bury their father; nor did the crime benefit Jason, for the daughters of Pelias retained the throne by force. What fault did Jason commit? After having lived ten years most happily with Medea, forgetting his vows to her, he became in love with Glaucus, the daughter of the king of Corinth, married her and divorced Medea. How did Medea avenge herself? She was furious, but dissembled her anger, and sent her rival a robe covered with diamonds. This robe, which had been steeped in the most subtle poisons, destroyed the unfortunate Glaucus. Jason would have punished her, but Medea, after putting her own children to death, transported herself in a car drawn by flying dragons to Athens. What did she do there? It is said she tried to poison Theseus, the king of that city; but being obliged to fly thence, she went into upper Asia, where she married a powerful prince, and had a son called Midas, or Medus, who was looked upon as the first king of the Medes. How did Jason die? After the flight of Medea, he led a wandering life. She had predicted he would perish amidst the ruins of the vessel of the Argonauts. The prediction was fulfilled; for one day while walking on the sea-coast, where the remains of this vessel had been drawn up to dry, a beam fell from it and broke his head. What does fable say of Bellerophon? He was the son of Glaucus, king of Corinth, and Epimedeia, the daughter of Sisypheus. He was called *Hipponaus*, a word which shows that he was the first who taught the art of guiding a horse without a bridle; but afterwards, having the misfortune to kill his brother Beïus, he obtained the name of Bellerophon. Where did he take refuge? Although the murder was unintentional, he was obliged to take refuge with Proetus, king of

Argus. Sthenobia, the wife of this monarch, accused him unjustly to her husband ; Prætus, not wishing to violate the laws of hospitality by punishing him himself, sent him to Jobatus, the father of Sthenobia, requesting him to punish Bellerophon for insulting his daughter, while Bellerophon thought he was taking a letter of recommendation. What reception did he receive from Jobatus ? He received him very kindly, and the first nine days after his arrival were passed in a succession of fêtes. At last the king of Lycia having broken open the letters of his son-in-law, did not like to commit a breach of hospitality, and therefore determined to expose him to some great danger. To what dangers was he exposed ? Jobatus raised up against the young prince many enemies, but he triumphed over them all ; and overcame, with a handful of soldiers, the Solymnians, the Amazons, and the Lycians. At last the king engaged him to fight with the Chimera, hoping that he would be conquered in this enterprise. What was the Chimera ? A monster born in Lyeia, which had the head of a lion, the tail of a dragon, and the body of a goat. Her immense throat was constantly vomiting forth flames and fiery winds. How did he overcome the Chimera ? The young hero, aided by Minerva, who lent him Pegasus for the occasion, and, mounted on this animal, conquered the Chimera by shooting her with arrows. Then Jobatus, discovering the innocence of Bellerophon from the assistance rendered him by the gods, gave him his daughter in marriage, and declared him his successor. Sthenobia, torn by remorse, poisoned herself. Bellerophon was placed with Pegasus, among the stars. What are called the letters of Bellerophon ? Ever since the adventures of this prince, letters purporting to bear a message contrary to their true meaning, are called "the letters of Bellerophon." What is told of Orpheus ? He was a celebrated poet and musician, the son of Apollo and Clio. The most savage beasts were tamed by the sounds of his lyre ; rivers suspended their course, and even trees and stones were moved. Whom did he marry ? The nymph Eurydice. She died the day of her marriage, and, miserable at her loss, Orpheus descended to the infernal regions and demanded her from Pluto ; the god was touched by his grief, and promised to restore her to him on one condition, which was, that he should walk before her and not turn to look back, until they had passed the limits of hell. When they approached daylight, Orpheus could no longer refrain from taking one look at his beloved wife ; he turned his head, and she was snatched away from him forever. How did Orpheus die ? In despair



he retired to Mount Rhodopus; there the Bacchantes, piqued at his indifference to them, determined to be revenged on him. One day while they were celebrating the feasts of Bacchus, they threw themselves upon him and tore him to pieces, throwing his head into the Ebro, where, tossed about by the waves, it still gives forth melancholy sounds, which are reverberated by the echoes of the banks. Where were divine honors paid to Orpheus? A temple was dedicated to him where his head was found, the entrance to which was forbidden to women. His father changed him into a swan, and his lyre is placed among the stars, and ornamented by nine beautiful stars presented by the Muses. How is he represented? Crowned with laurel, holding a lyre or lute in his hand, and around him various animals attracted by his harmonious sounds. Whose son was Aristeus? The son of Apollo and the nymph Cyrene. This shepherd was in love with Eurydice, but she preferred Orpheus. On her wedding-day, while trying to conceal herself from Aristeus, she was stung by a bee, and died immediately. How was her death avenged? The nymphs, grieved by her loss, killed all the bees belonging to Aristeus. The young man, in despair, appealed to his mother, who advised him to consult Proteus. How did he obtain an answer from Proteus? This god changed himself into a serpent, then to a river, and then to a lion; but Aristeus, having succeeded in chaining him, forced him to resume his natural form. Proteus then informed him of the cause of his misfortune, and advised him to make expiatory sacrifices to the manes of Eurydice. What sacrifice did he offer? He offered four bulls and as many mares. After which, with joy, he beheld immense swarms of bees coming out of the bodies of the victims, which far exceeded in number those he had lost. Who was Arion? The rival of Orpheus; he remained a long time at the court of Periander, king of Corinth, where his talents were richly recompensed. One day while crossing from Tarentum to Corinth, the sailors determined to kill him for his wealth. What steps did he take? He implored them to allow him to play on his lyre once more; he filled the air with sweet sounds, but finding that he could not soften the hearts of these barbarians, he threw himself into the sea, with a garland on his head and his lyre in his hand. How was he saved? A dolphin, who had been attracted by the sweetness of his voice and followed the vessel, took him on his back and carried him as far as Cape Tenedos, in Lacaonia, whence Arion reached Corinth. The dolphin was recompensed by being placed among the stars. What may we learn from the fable of Amphion? Amphion was the

son of Jupiter and Antiope, the wife of Lycus, king of Thebes. He married Niobe, and became so skilful in the science of music that he is said to have built the walls of Thebes by the power of his lyre, at the sound of which the stones, moved by the sweetness of the notes, arranged themselves in order. This is an ingenious emblem of the power of music and poetry on the earliest race of men.

Who was Cadmus? He was the son of Agenor, king of Phœnicia, and the nymph Melia. He was the brother of Europa, who was carried off by Jupiter. What was done by Agenor on this occasion? Being in despair at the loss of his daughter, he commanded his son Cadmus to search for her all over the world, and not to return until he had found her. What city did Cadmus found? Not daring to return to his own country without his sister, he consulted the oracle at Delphos to know where he should settle. Apollo commanded him to build a city on a spot to which he should be conducted by an ox. Cadmus obeyed, and built the city of Thebes, in Beotia, on the model of the Thebes in Egypt, the walls of which had been constructed by Amphion with the sound of his lyre. What became of his companions? It is said that his companions, going to draw water from the fountain of Dirizæ, were devoured by a dragon. Cadmus killed the monster, and, by the advice of Minerva, sowed his teeth in an adjoining field. What then occurred? From the field thus sown, armed men sprung up, and at first attacked Cadmus, but soon fell on each other, and they were all killed but five, who assisted him to build the city. For what were the Greeks indebted to Cadmus? It is said that he introduced among them the worship of the Egyptian and Phœnician deities; but what is still better, that he introduced the knowledge of letters, and the art of writing, until then unknown in Greece. Who was the wife of Cadmus? *Harmonia*, a daughter of Venus and Mars. Her name shows what art she taught the Græeks. What was the end of Cadmus? An oracle having apprized him that his posterity was threatened with great misfortunes, he exiled himself from Thebes that he might not witness them, and retired to Illyria, where he and his wife were both changed into serpents. What was the history of Œdipus? Laius, king of Thebes, having been warned by an oracle that he would perish by the hand of his son, previous to his birth desired a soldier to take the young prince so soon as he was born and put him to death. What became of Œdipus? The soldier, struck by the grace and beauty of the child, would not kill him, but hung him by the

feet to a tree on Mount Cytheron. Phorbas, the shepherd of the king of Corinth, attracted by the cries of the child, took him to his own cabin. By whom was he brought up? The queen of Corinth having heard the adventure, wished to see him, and having no children, adopted and took charge of him. The feet of the child having still the marks of the cords by which he had been tied, the queen, for that reason, called him Œdipus, which means, *inflamed feet*. What did the oracle foretell to him? He received the following reply, when he became old enough to consult the oracle: "Œdipus will be the murderer of his father, and the husband of his mother, and from him shall spring a detestable race." From the fear of accomplishing this horrible prediction, he exiled himself from Corinth, and intended going to Phocidia. How did he become a parricide? On his journey he had to pass a narrow defile, where he met Laius, mounted on his car, who ordered him, in the most haughty manner, to let him pass. Œdipus had only an escort of five persons, but he attacked the king of Thebes, without knowing who he was, and in the conflict Laius was killed. What happened at Thebes? On arriving there, Œdipus found the city destroyed by the Sphinx. The father of Jocasta, who had taken the reins of government on the death of his son-in-law, Laius, published throughout Greece that he would give his daughter, now a widow, and his kingdom, to whoever would deliver Thebes from this monster. Who was the Sphinx? The offspring of Echidna and Typhon, a monster with the head of a woman, the body of a dog, the wings and tail of a dragon, the feet and nails of a lion. This creature resided on Mount Phiceus, where it stopped all travellers and proposed to them riddles, which were composed by the Muses; all those who could not guess them she devoured. Juno, at length being vexed with the Thebans, sent her to devour them. What was the riddle which she usually offered? That which she proposed to the Thebans was this: "What animal is that which, in the morning goes on four legs, on two at mid-day, and in the evening on three?" It was the fate of the Sphinx that she should perish so soon as this riddle was guessed. By whom was it guessed? Œdipus, incited by the reward, presented himself to the Sphinx, and was clever enough to guess her meaning. He replied that this animal was *man*; who, when a child, walks on four legs, by creeping on hands and knees; when grown up, walked on two legs; and in the decline of life, supported himself on his stick, which was to him a third leg. The Sphinx, conquered by this explanation, threw herself into the sea. Did Œdipus



receive the promised recompense? After having delivered the Thebans from this monster, he was proclaimed king of Thebes, and married his mother Jocasta, by whom he had two sons, Eteocles and Polynices, and two daughters, Antigone and Ismene. What new misfortune befell Thebes? Many years after, the kingdom was desolated by a terrible plague. On consulting the oracle, the reply was, that it would not end until the murderer of Laius was expelled. How was he discovered? After much difficulty, Œdipus learned from a shepherd that he had found him exposed on Mount Cytheron, and from other circumstances, no doubt remained that he was the unfortunate parricide; and Jocasta, in despair, killed herself. Finish the story of Œdipus. He was so struck with horror by these terrible revelations, that he put out his eyes. Driven from Thebes by his sons, he was followed and comforted by his dear Antigone, who is represented as the most perfect model of filial love. The unfortunate father remained for some time near a town of Attica, called Colonna, in a wood sacred to the Eumenides, a name under which the Furies were worshipped. What was his end? Driven out of this wood, which was interdicted to the profane, he was conducted to Athens, where Theseus received him with much kindness. A short time after a clap of thunder warned him of the end of all his misery, the earth opened, and received the unfortunate man, without further pain or trouble. Who was Polynices? The eldest son of Œdipus. Eteocles agreed with his brother Polynices, that they should divide the government of Thebes, after the departure of their father, and that they should reign alternately each year. Eteocles reigned first, but when the year came round he refused to resign the crown to his brother. This was the cause of the famous Theban war, so renowned in song. What course did Polynices take? To regain his rights, he armed all Greece against his brother. The chief warriors among the Argives took part in this expedition. These were Adrastus, Polynices, and Tydeus, the famous Capaneus, Hippomedon, the divine Amphiaraus, and Parthenopea. They were called "the Seven Argive Chiefs." What events took place during this war? When the Argives presented themselves before the fortifications of Thebes, the soothsayer Teresias promised success to the Thebans if Menecæus, the son of Creon, and the last descendant of Cadmus, would sacrifice himself for the safety of Thebes. "It is done," replied this generous prince, and threw himself from the walls in presence of the enemy. Victory was the reward of this glorious action, as it was considered by the ancients; the Argives were repulsed and their seven chief-

tains perished, with the exception of Adrastus. What was the fate of Eteocles and Polynices? The two brothers having determined to end this cruel war by single combat, fell each by the sword of his brother. But death did not end their hatred; for the bodies being both placed on the same funeral pile, the flames divided them and consumed each separately, proving that their mutual aversion did not end with life. Who then ascended the throne? Creon, after the death of the sons of Œdipus, remounted the throne which he had abdicated in favor of that unfortunate prince. By his command the body of Polynices was refused the rites of sepulture, because he had armed strangers against his own countrymen. Who undertook to bury it? Antigone, his sister, returned to Thebes to pay the last honors to his memory, and having been surprised in the act of collecting his bones for that purpose, was condemned to be buried alive; to avoid which horrible fate, she strangled herself. Ismena, her sister, declared herself the accomplice of Antigone, and perished in the same way. Give some account of Pelops. He was the son of Tantalus, king of Lydia, and being obliged to forsake his own country on account of an earthquake, took refuge in Greece with Œnomaus, king of Elidus, where he fell in love with Hippodamia, the daughter of the king. What obstacles presented themselves to this marriage? An oracle having predicted that Œnomaus should perish by the hand of his son-in-law, he determined to condemn his daughter to perpetual celibacy. To frighten the suitors, he announced that he would only give the hand of his daughter to the one who should overcome him in a chariot race, and that he would kill all those whom *he* conquered. The lovers were obliged to precede him, and he followed, sword in hand, drawn by two horses who were fleet as the wind. How did Pelops become the conqueror? Thirteen suitors had already perished, when the gods becoming incensed, made Pelops a present of two winged horses. Although he might have been certain of victory, the son of Tantalus determined to employ a stratagem, and to this end bribed Myrtilus, the son of Mercury, who was the charioteer of Œnomaus, to upset the car. The king perished in the fall, and Pelops married Hippodamia, and took possession of the estates of his wife, to which he gave his own name, and they became the *Peloponnesus*, now known as the Morea. Had Pelops any children? He had a great number; among whom Atreus and Thyestes are celebrated in fable for the horrible outrages they committed. What were these? Thyestes, having seduced Eope, his brother's wife, by whom he had two children, after

wards fled, and left her to bear her husband's anger. Atreus disguised his anger, and some time after, at a feast which was given on the return of Thyesteus, and where the two brothers swore eternal friendship to each other, he had the limbs of his own children served up to Thyesteus. To show the horror entertained of this crime, it is said that the sun would not rise to give light to that day. How did Thyesteus revenge himself? He had another son, by a different person, named Egistheus, who, to revenge his father's death, murdered Atreus at a sacrifice which was held at the sea-side; and afterwards killed Agamemnon, the son of Atreus, when he returned from the Trojan war. What is said of Troy? It was a city, situated in Asia Minor, founded nine hundred years before the birth of Christ. Under its kings, who were Dardanus, its founder, Ericthoneus, Troas, Ilus, Laomedon, and Priam, it acquired the highest degree of power and splendor; three centuries after its foundation, it was the most celebrated city in the universe, when it was totally destroyed by the Greeks, who united themselves to avenge the injury done to the Grecian princes in the person of Menelaus, king of Lacedemon. What was the injury? Hercules having sacked the city of Troy, to punish Laomedon for his want of faith, had given to Telamon, king of Salamis, the hand of Hesione, the daughter of Laomedon. Priam, the successor of Laomedon, desired his son Paris to go and reclaim this princess. Paris, on his way to Salamis, stopped at the court of Menelaus, carried off the wife of this prince, and swore not to restore her until Hesione, his aunt, should be returned. The Grecian princes, who did not wish to restore Hesione, took up arms and came before the walls of Troy to demand Helen, with a formidable army. Did the gods take part in the Trojan war? Yes, they were equally divided; and it was in vain that Jupiter tried to reconcile them. Neptune, Apollo, and Hercules, who had old injuries to avenge, declared violently against the Trojans, and were seconded by Juno and Minerva, who swore to take revenge of the Trojans for the insult which they pretended to have received from Paris. Which of the gods took part with the Trojans? Venus always protected her dear Trojans, and often engaged Jupiter on her side. One of her efforts was to unite the Xanthus and Simois, two rivers of the Trojan plain, to drown Achilles, one of the greatest enemies of the Trojans. He would have perished had not Juno sent Vulcan to his aid, who dried up the two rivers with his torch. On what fatalities did the taking of Troy depend? The poets say that the capture of the city depended on certain events which



were to take place during the siege; these were called *fatalities*, and were six in number. 1st. It was necessary that there should be a descendant of Æacus at the siege. This was Achilles. 2d. That the Greeks should have possession of the arrows of Hercules. 3d. That they should carry off from Troy the Palladium, a statue of Minerva, which was placed in the temple of that goddess at Troy. 4th. That they should prevent the horses of Rhesus from drinking the waters of the Xanthus. 5th. That Troilus, the son of Priam, should die, and that the tomb of Læomedon should be destroyed. 6th. That the Greeks should have in their army Telepheus, the son of Hercules, and king of Mysia. What efforts did the Greeks make to obtain possession of the city? They had besieged the city ten years, and having been overcome in their repeated attacks, they determined to have recourse to stratagem. By the advice of Pallas, they constructed a wooden horse as high as a mountain, and filled it with soldiers; they then pretended to have taken their departure, having first proclaimed this a peace-offering to Minerva. After this they retired to the island of Tenedos, opposite to Troy, and from thence watched the effects of their stratagem. What did the Trojans do? Thinking themselves delivered from their enemies, they had this immense horse brought into their city, and placed at the porch of the temple of Minerva. The following night, while the Trojans were sunk in drunkenness and sleep, the soldiers came out of the horse and opened the gates to the Grecian army, who soon reduced the city to ashes, after a ten years' siege, in which had perished a hundred thousand Greeks, and almost as many Trojans. Who were the principal among the Greeks? Agamemnon, king of Argos, who had the command of the Grecian forces; Menelaus, his brother; Achilles and his friend Patrocles; Pyrrhus, his son; the two Ajax; Diomedes, Philocteus, Nestor, Protesilaus, Idomeneus, Palamedes, Ulysses, etc. Who were the principal on the Trojan side? Priam, king of Troy; Hector and Paris, his two sons; Laocoon; Rhesus, king of Thrace; Memnon; Eneas. Who were Agamemnon and Menelaus? They were the sons of Plesthenus, king of Argos, and brother of Atreus, from whom they were named the Atrides, How did Agamemnon recover his throne? Having been dethroned by Thyestes, his uncle, he took refuge at the court of Tyndarus, king of Sparta. Aided by this prince, he drove Thyestes from Argos, killed Tantalus, the son of the usurper, and married Clytemnestra, the wife of Tantalus and daughter of Tyndarus, by whom he had two daughters, Iphigenia and Electra,

and a son, Orestes. What event caused the Trojan war? Menelaus married Helen, the sister of Clytemnestra, and succeeded his father-in-law Tyndarus on the throne of Sparta. Helen having been carried off by Paris, all the Grecian princes took up arms to revenge the affront, and the command of the army was given to Agamemnon. What sacrifice was imposed on Agamemnon? The fleet in which the expedition against Troy set sail, assembled at Aulis, a maritime city of Beotia, where it was detained by contrary winds. The soothsayer, Calchas, declared that Diana, being angry with Agamemnon for having killed a doe which was sacred to her, refused the Greeks a fair wind, and that nothing would appease the goddess but the blood of Iphigenia, the daughter of the king. Iphigenia was bound for the sacrifice, when Diana, appeased by this submission, put a doe in her stead, and carried off the young princess to Tauridus, to be her priestess. Did the Atrides distinguish themselves at the siege of Troy? Agamemnon showed only pride and folly; but Menelaus, on the contrary, displayed much valor, and proposed to Paris to end the quarrel by a duel between them, agreeing that Helen should be the prize of the conqueror. This combat took place under the walls of Troy, in presence of both Grecians and Trojans. Menelaus had the advantage, and Paris owed his life to Venus, who carried him off in a cloud to save him. Menelaus then demanded the prize, which the Trojans refused. This perfidy reanimated the ardor of the Greeks.

What became of Helen? After the capture of Troy, the Greeks restored her to her husband; he at first determined to sacrifice her to the manes of those who had perished in the war, but finally allowed himself to be overcome by her tears and penitence, and became reconciled to her. What became of Agamemnon? On his return he was put to death by Egistheus, who married his widow, Clytemnestra, immediately after. Relate the misfortunes and crimes of Orestes. Egistheus would have put him to death, to secure the crown to himself; but his sister, Electra, saved his life by sending him to Strophius, king of Phocidia, the brother-in-law of Agamemnon. After twelve years of exile, Orestes returned to his native country, and killed, with his own hand, his mother, Clytemnestra, and Egistheus. Soon after he had Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles, put to death, to punish him for having carried off Hermione, the daughter of Menelaus, whom he intended to marry. How does the history of Orestes end? From this moment Orestes was given over to the power of the Furies, who unceasingly tormented him for

his crimes. The oracle having declared that he would never know peace until he went to Taurica to bring away the statue of Diana, he went there, accompanied by Pylades, his cousin, and the faithful companion of all his dangers. They were seized, and the custom of the country commanded that they should be sacrificed to the goddess. From this arose the generous contention which of the two should sacrifice his life for the other. On whom did the lot fall? On Orestes. Fortunately, at the moment he was about to be sacrificed, he was recognised by Iphigenia, his sister, now the priestess of Diana, who saved his life. From this time the Furies ceased to torment him. He married Hermione, and gave his sister Electra to Pylades. After a long and peaceful reign, he died from the bite of a serpent,

Give an account of the birth and education of Achilles. Achilles was the son of Thetis and Peleus, and one of the descendants of Æacus, the king of the island of Egina, and judge of the infernal regions. His mother, who tenderly loved him, plunged him into the Styx, the waters of which rendered him invulnerable in all parts of his body, except the heel, by which she held him. He was brought up by the Centaur Chiron, who, it is said, employed a lioness and tigress to nurse him, which created in him that extraordinary courage and strength which he displayed in all his combats. Why was Achilles sent to the court of Lycomedes? The oracle having predicted that Troy would not be taken without Achilles, but that he would perish beneath its walls, Thetis, to prevent the accomplishment of this mournful prediction, sent her son, dressed as a woman, to the court of Lycomedes, king of Scyros. Achilles was beloved by Deïdamia, the daughter of the king; he married her secretly, and had a son by her, named Pyrrhus. How did Ulysses discover Achilles? Having found out his retreat, he went there disguised as a merchant, and offered the ladies of the court, jewels, &c.; among these things he mixed swords, a casque, and other arms, on which Achilles, as Ulysses had foreseen, immediately made choice of the arms, and by this means discovered himself. He then eagerly followed Ulysses to the siege of Troy, clothed with invulnerable armor, which Thetis had induced Vulcan to forge. He soon became the first among the Grecian heroes; but unhappily a quarrel which occurred between himself and Thetis, deprived the Greeks for a long time of his aid. What was the cause of this quarrel? Agamemnon having carried off Chryseis, the daughter of Chryses, a priest of Apollo, this god devastated the camp of



the Grecians by a pestilence. Achilles undertook to appease the wrath of the god by returning Chryseis to her father. Agamemnon was obliged to submit to the sacrifice; but to avenge himself on Achilles, he obliged him to give up the young Briseis, whom this hero passionately loved. Much distressed and angered, Achilles retired to his tent, and would not fight. This was favorable to the Trojans, who derived many advantages from it; and Hector, the son of Priam, killed Patrocles, the friend of Achilles. Why did Achilles again take up arms? To revenge the death of Patrocles. After having been inactive for a year, he again took up arms, and in single combat killed Hector, and afterwards fastened the body to his chariot and drew him three times round the walls of Troy. He at length gave it up, softened by the tears of Priam. How did Achilles die? Love occasioned his death. He had, during a truce, seen Polyxena, the daughter of Priam, and the beauty of this princess inspired him with the most ardent love. He asked her in marriage, when, at the time of the nuptials, the perfidious Paris threw a poisoned arrow at the heel of Achilles; this was thought to have been guided by Apollo. After the sacking of Troy, the Greeks immolated Polyxena on the tomb of her lover. What honors were paid him after death? Thetis, having learned the death of her son, came from the watery caves, accompanied by a train of nymphs, to weep over his body. The nine Muses also wept for him, and the oracle of Dodona decreed divine honors to him. Alexander the Great, on seeing his tomb, offered a crown to it; and said that he envied Achilles for having, while he lived, a friend like Patrocles, and, after death, a poet like Homer. What is said respecting the youth of Pyrrhus? He was the son of Achilles and Deïdamia, and was brought up at the court of Lycomedes, his grandfather. After the death of Achilles, the Greeks, in accordance with the declaration of the oracle, that Troy could not be taken unless among the assailants there should be a descendant of Æacus, sent to Scyros in search of Pyrrhus, who was then only eighteen years old. Did he avenge himself of the death of his father? He was one of the most terrible enemies of the Trojans, by the efforts he made to avenge the death of Achilles. It was he who killed the unfortunate Priam, and threw the young Astyanax, the son of Hector, from a high tower; he also demanded the sacrifice of Polyxena to the manes of Achilles. What was the cause of his death? In the partition of slaves, after Troy was taken, he had for his share Andromache, the widow of Hector, whom he loved better than his own wife, Hermione

Having gone one day to offer sacrifice to Apollo, Orestes killed him in the temple, as much to gratify the jealousy of Hermione, as to revenge himself on Pyrrhus for having carried her off, whom he, Orestes, intended for his own wife. Who was Philoctetes? He was one of the most celebrated Grecian heroes. As the friend of Hercules, he inherited his arrows, but he swore never to reveal where they were hidden, with the ashes of the son of Alcmena. But as it was one of the "fatalities" attending the taking of Troy, that this could not be effected without these arrows, the Greeks sent deputies to Philoctetes to ascertain from him where they were hidden. He, not wishing to break his vow, and still less to deprive the Greeks of the advantages which these would ensure to them, pointed with his foot to the place. Was this punished? This falsehood cost him dear; for as he was on the way to Troy, one of the arrows fell on the foot with which he had pointed to the place, and produced an ulcer, from which such an unpleasant odor was exhaled that the deputies were obliged to leave him in the isle of Lemnos, where he suffered, for ten years, the most horrible pain. The necessity which the Greeks had for those arrows obliged them to send again for him, and he took them to Troy. What use did he make of them? No sooner had he arrived, than Paris sent to challenge him to single combat, and received his death from one of the arrows thrown at him by Philoctetes. The wound was mortal, as the arrows had been dipped in the blood of the hydra. By whom was Philoctetes cured? After the taking of Troy, he was cured of his ulcer by Machaon, the son of Esculapius.

Who was Diomedes? The son of Tyndarus, one of the chiefs of the expedition against Thebes. He was brought up at the school of the celebrated Chiron, with all the other Grecian heroes. At the siege of Troy he distinguished himself so highly, that he was considered the bravest in the army, after Achilles, and Ajax, the son of Telamon. How does Homer represent him? As the favorite of Pallas. It was by her assistance that he seized the horses of Rhesus, carried off the Palladium, killed several kings with his own hand, and escaped with honor from all the single combats with Hector, Eneas, and other Trojan princes; and that, at last, he wounded Mars and Venus, who came to aid her son Eneas, and who could only save him by covering him with a cloud. What vengeance did Venus take on him? She brought disorder on his household. On his return from Troy, not being able to live with Egialia, his wife, he was obliged to fly to Daunus, king of Illyria, where he

and his companions were changed into herons. This fiction applies to the audacious valor of Diomedes.

Who was Nestor? The king of Pylos; one of the twelve sons of Neleus and Cholsis. He alone escaped from Hercules, who killed his father and brothers for having assisted the Argives. Relate the exploits of Nestor. He made the voyage to Colchis with the Argonauts. He was at the nuptials of Pirithous; and fought against the Centaurs. He was very old when he went to the siege of Troy, but by his wisdom and counsels he rendered great service to the Greeks. Agamemnon said that if he had ten Nestors in the army he could easily take the city. How long did he live? Apollo decreed that he should live three hundred years, or what the poets call the three ages of man. Who was Protesilaus? He was the first to land on the Trojan shores. This generous Greek, seeing that none of his companions, not even Achilles, would quit their vessels, because the oracle predicted that the first who landed should lose his life, sacrificed himself for his countrymen; and no sooner had he landed than he was killed by Hector. Who was Laodamia, and what was her fate? The wife of Protesilaus, who was separated from him the day of her marriage; she heard of his death, and asked to see his shade, and then died embracing it. Who was Idomeneus? He was the son of Deucalion, and grandson of Minos, king of Crete; and distinguished himself by his bravery at the siege of Troy. Why did he sacrifice his son? After the city was taken, he was returning to Crete, when he was overtaken by a storm. To escape the danger, he vowed that should he return to his kingdom, he would sacrifice to Neptune the first object which presented itself to him on the shores of Crete. The tempest ceased and he arrived safely, when his son, who had heard of his arrival, came to the port to meet him; and being the first object that presented itself, the unfortunate father, to keep his vow, sacrificed his son to the sea-god. What was the fate of Idomeneus? The Cretans, filled with horror at this act, rose against him and obliged him to quit his kingdom. He then retired to Hesperia, where he founded Salentum. He caused the wise laws of Minos to be observed in his new city, and obtained from his subjects divine honors after his death. Who was Ajax? He was the son of Telamon and Hesione, and was, next to Achilles, the most valiant of the Greeks; and like him was proud, and invulnerable except in one small spot on the breast, known to himself alone. Why had he been rendered invulnerable? Hercules (who visited Telamon, and to whom he complained that he had no children)



prayed Jupiter to give his friend a son, with a skin as impenetrable as that of the Nemean lion, which he wore. As soon as he was born Hercules covered him with the lion's skin, which rendered him invulnerable, except in that spot where the lion had been wounded by Hercules. Relate his exploits. Ajax distinguished himself during an entire day against Hector; at length, charmed with each other, they ceased fighting, and exchanged presents, among which was the baldric, which in the end served to fasten Hector to the car of Achilles. What dispute arose between Ajax and Ulysses? After the death of Achilles, Ajax and Ulysses both laid claim to the arms of that hero. It was settled that the arms should be thrown among the enemy, and be given to him who went in search of them. Ulysses, who was much less brave than Ajax, disliked this proposal; and, by his eloquence, so charmed the chiefs that they at length decided in his favor. What effect did this injustice produce on Ajax? His rage threw him into such a state that he was deprived of reason; in his fury he threw himself on a herd of swine, whom he put to death, thinking he was revenging himself on Agamemnon and Menelaus, who had decided against him. When he recovered, he was so much ashamed of himself, that he pierced his own breast with his sword. What flower was produced by his blood? The flower called the Hyacinth; on which it is supposed that the first two letters of his name, AJ, are to be seen. Was there not another Ajax? Yes, the son of Oileus, king of Locris. He was also a Grecian hero, and fought against Troy; he distinguished himself in all athletic exercises, and also by his impiety. It is said that Minerva, to punish him for his sacrilege, raised against him a violent tempest as he returned from Troy; having saved himself by reaching a rock, he exclaimed, "I am saved in spite of the gods." Neptune, enraged at this, struck the rock with his trident, which it split, and he was swallowed up in the waves. Who was Ulysses? He was the son of Laertes and Anticlea, king of the small island of Ithaca, in the Ionian sea. Why did he pretend to be deranged? His wife, Penelope, was as much renowned for her beauty, as for her prudence and virtue; and the love he bore her, tempted him to affect derangement, to avoid going to the siege of Troy. To carry this out he pretended to plough the sand on the shore and sow it with salt instead of corn; but Palamedes, suspecting him, placed his son Telemachus, then a child, on the line of the furrow. Ulysses, that he might not hurt his son, raised the share of the plough, and thus proved that his folly was only a pretence, and he was

obliged to go to the siege of Troy; but he at last revenged himself cruelly on Palamedes. What services did he render the Greeks? He was an eloquent man, cunning, and full of artifice, and contributed by the powers of his mind as much to the taking of Troy, as the other Greeks by their valor. Homer has compared him to Jupiter for prudence. Here follow the services which he rendered to the Greeks. What was the first mentioned? The discovery of Achilles, without whom, as one of the descendants of *Æacus*, Troy could not have been taken. The second? Aided by *Diomedes*, he carried off the *Palladium*; this was a statue of *Minerva*, guarded most religiously by the Trojans, who believed it to have fallen from heaven. What was the third? *Rhesus*, king of *Thrace*, having come to the assistance of the Trojans, arrived in the night, and only awaited the morning to enter the city. *Ulysses* and *Diomedes* surprised his camp, killed *Rhesus*, and carried off the horses before they drank the waters of the *Xanthus*. What was the fourth? He prevailed on *Telephus*, the son of *Hercules*, to take part with the Grecians. This was an undertaking of much difficulty, for this prince, who was king of *Mysia*, had his kingdom ravaged by the Greeks, and had been himself severely wounded by *Achilles*. *Ulysses*, having learned from an oracle that the wound could only be cured by the iron which caused it, made an ointment with the rust which he found on the lance of *Achilles*, and with this cured the wound, when, in gratitude, *Telephus* joined the Greeks. What was the fifth? He persuaded *Philoctetes*, though he was his enemy, to carry with him, to the siege of Troy, the arrows of *Hercules*. Did the adventures of *Ulysses* end with the Trojan war? No; after the ten years' siege, he had to encounter, for as many more years, difficulties and dangers before his return home, which form the subject of the *Odyssey* of Homer, as the siege of Troy forms that of the *Iliad*.\* What misfortunes did he encounter? Having been for a long time driven about by tempests, he was at length cast upon the possessions of the Cyclops, on the coast of Sicily, when *Polyphemus*, the son of *Neptune*, the most terrible of the Cyclops, shut him up in his cave with his companions, to devour him. How did he escape from this danger? To effect his escape, he made *Polyphemus* drunk, and then with a stake which he heated, put out the eye he had in the middle of his forehead. He then desired his

\* The translation of these works by Mr. Pope, should be read by all young persons immediately after the study of Mythology.

companions to fasten themselves under the large sheep belonging to the flock of Polyphemus, and thus saved them all as well as himself, passing the giant who felt the backs of each as they went out to pasture. What present was made to him by Eolus? From Sicily Ulysses betook himself to Eolus, the god of winds, who received him kindly and presented him with all the adverse winds shut up in a bag. His companions yielding to curiosity, opened the bag and the winds escaped, causing a furious tempest, and they were again thrown on the coast of Sicily among the Zestrigons, a barbarous people, by whom they were almost all devoured. What adventures befell him in the island of Cæa? After having lost eleven of his vessels in the tempest, the one in which he was, was driven on the island of Cæa, where Circe, the daughter of the Sun and Persia, dwelt. This goddess, who was a sorceress as well, employed all her arts to detain Ulysses and his companions; these last she changed into swine, and he was only preserved from a similar fate by means of an herb which had been given to him by Jupiter. By the advice of this god also, he constrained her, sword in hand, to restore his companions to their original forms. He became reconciled to her after this, and she had a son by him, Telegone. Where did he go after this? He descended to the infernal regions to consult the famous soothsayer Tiresias, who hearing the dangers which menaced him, predicted that he would perish by the hand of one of his sons. From thence he directed his course again to Ithaca, and was so fortunate as to escape with his companions the seductions of the Sirens. Did he not encounter another tempest? Yes, after being so fortunate as to escape the gulfs of Scylla and Charybdis, he was again overtaken by a tempest which Neptune raised against him, for having deprived his son Polyphemus of sight. Ulysses then witnessed the destruction of his last vessel and all his companions, and was himself cast upon the island of Ogygia, over which the nymph Calypso reigned. How was he received by this goddess? She received him very kindly, and he remained seven years upon the island. She promised him immortality if he would marry her; but Ulysses preferred Penelope and his little island of Ithaca to these inducements, and Jupiter having desired Calypso not to detain him, she sent him away on a raft. He had much difficulty in gaining the island of the Pheacians, now Corfu, where Alcinous reigned, in whose brilliant and voluptuous court he was detained some time. At length he departed, loaded with presents, and reached Ithaca, after an absence of twenty years.



What did he do on his arrival? As many of the neighboring princes, during his long absence, had made themselves at home in his house, and even wished to force Penelope to take another husband, Ulysses was obliged to disguise himself to surprise them. What did Penelope tell him? Taking him for a friend of Ulysses, she told him all she had done to escape the importunities of her suitors; and that she had promised to select one from among them so soon as a piece of tapestry work, on which she was engaged, should be finished; but that she took out at night all she had done in the day, to put off the accomplishment of her promise. She added, that not being able to put them off longer, she had determined, by the advice of Minerva, to select the one, the very next day, who should be able to hold the bow of Ulysses, and make the arrows pass through several rings suspended for that purpose. What next did he do? Ulysses approved of this expedient, and after all the suitors had tried in vain to stretch the bow, Ulysses, still disguised, requested to be allowed to try his skill, and having bent the bow without difficulty, he drew upon the suitors and killed every one in turn. What was the end of Ulysses? Re-established in his kingdom, there was no drawback to his felicity except the prediction of Tiresias; to avoid this misfortune he was about retiring to some solitude, when Telegone, the son whom he had by Circe, came to do him homage. As they repulsed him, being a stranger, he raised a tumult at the door of the palace, which Ulysses coming out to quell, was shot by his son (who did not know him) with a poisoned arrow. Who was Palamedes? He was the son of Nauplius, king of Eubœa. He commanded the Eubœans at the siege of Troy, where he was much thought of for his military talent. What was his fate? His unfortunate end was brought about by Ulysses, to avenge himself for Palamedes having obliged him to join the Greek forces. He accused him of holding intercourse with the enemy, and forged letters which were placed in his tent, with a sum of money, which they said had been sent to him by Priam. Believing these evil tidings, his soldiers revolted, and stoned him. Was his death revenged? The death of Palamedes raised in the breast of Nauplius a great desire of vengeance. After the taking of Troy, the Grecian fleet, on its return, was surprised during the night by a violent tempest. Nauplius then lighted fires among the rocks surrounding his island, with the design of attracting the Greeks, and seeing them perish among them. Fortune aided Nauplius; the vessels were torn to pieces among the rocks, and the Grecians all perished in the wrecks, with the exception of a small

number, among whom was Ulysses, the principal object of Nauplius' hatred. What invention is attributed to Palamedes? It is said that he taught the Greeks to form battalions: they also attribute to him the use of the watchword; and also the invention of several games, such as dice and chess, which served to amuse the Greeks during the fatigues and annoyances of a long siege.

What was the history of Priam? He was king of Troy, and succeeded his father Laomedon. He rebuilt the city, which had been destroyed by Hercules, and rendered his empire the most flourishing in the world. The carrying off of Helen, by Paris, put an end to his prosperity, as the Greeks destroyed the city and brought a miserable end on Priam and his whole family. How did Priam perish? He was killed by Pyrrhus; surrounded by his gods, and while he was clinging to the altar, the son of Achilles tore him from the arms of his wife and passed his sword through his body. What became of Hecuba? She only escaped death to fall into slavery. She became the property of Ulysses, who, having long searched for her, found her at last among the tombs of her children, who had almost all perished before her eyes. Taken by Polymnestor, king of Thrace, to whom Priam had confided the care of his youngest son Polydor, with immense treasures, she found on the banks of the river the body of her son, whom Polymnestor had killed. She entered the palace of the murderer and put out his eyes, with the assistance of the Trojan women; and killed with her own hands the king's two children. Into what animal was she changed? Stoned by the guards of the king, she is said to have bitten those who opposed her; at length the gods took pity on her and changed her into a she-bear. This story is no doubt founded on the imprecations which she uttered against the Greeks. Relate the exploits of Hector? He was the son of Priam and Hecuba, and the bravest of the Trojans. After having covered himself with glory in several combats with the Greeks, he drove them from all the ports they occupied; and taking advantage of Achilles' absence, set fire to their fleet. What was the end of Patrocles? Wishing to oppose the progress of the victor he took the arms of his friend Achilles, and defied Hector to single combat, but perished by his hand. What was Hector's end? The desire of revenging the death of his friend recalled Achilles to himself, and he placed himself at the head of the troops once more. The sight of this terrible warrior filled Priam and Hecuba with alarm, and they implored Hector not to fight with him, but he was

inexorable; and after having performed prodigies of valor, he was killed by Achilles, and given over to the Greeks, who made him drag the inanimate corpse three times round the walls of Troy and the tomb of Patrocles. Who demanded his body? Priam, and all who remained of his family, with rich presents tried to soften the wrath of the conqueror, and implored him to give up the body of his son, which he at length was induced to do; and after Troy was rebuilt, the Trojans paid divine honors to Hector. Who was his son? Hector left one son, whose name was Astyanax. As the soothsayer Calchas had predicted that if he lived he would be still more brave than his father, and some day would avenge his death, Andromache, his mother, to conceal him from the fury of his enemies, hid him in the tomb of Hector. But the tenderness of this afflicted mother, who could not keep her eyes off the tomb, betrayed the place of his concealment. Ulysses discovered Astyanax, and threw him from the walls of Troy. What became of Andromache? After the taking of Troy she became the slave of her husband's murderer, who carried her to Epirus, and there married her; after his death, she became the wife of Hector's brother, Helenus, with whom she dragged out a miserable existence, never being able to console herself for the death of Hector, or her dear son, Astyanax.

Who was Paris? The son of Priam and Hecuba. Before he was born, his mother dreamed that she had borne, instead of a son, a firebrand. The soothsayers predicted, from this, that her son, when born, would one day cause the destruction of Troy. To avoid this, Priam commanded one of his servants to put him to death; but Hercules' prayers prevailed, and the servant committed him to the care of some shepherds on Mount Ida, where he soon became famous for his beauty, wit, and address. What took place at the nuptials of Thetis? At these nuptials the goddess of discord, to revenge herself for not having been invited, appeared on a cloud, and threw among the goddesses a golden apple, on which these words were written—"To the most beautiful." It required no more to disturb the peace of Olympus; and though all the goddesses pretended to be the most beautiful, the prize of beauty was most vehemently contested between Venus, Juno, and Minerva. How did Jupiter end the dispute? He sent the three ladies to Mount Ida to be judged by Paris, when each tried the force of argument to induce him to decide in her favor. Juno promised him power and riches; Minerva, wisdom and virtue; and Venus, the most beautiful woman in the world. How did Paris act? Seduced



by the beauty of Venus, and still more by her promises, he gave the apple to her; and from that moment Juno and Minerva, enraged at not having obtained the prize, swore the destruction of Troy. Did not Paris carry off Helen? Yes; having been acknowledged as the son of Priam, he was sent to Salamine to reclaim Hesione, the sister of Priam, who had been carried off by Hercules. At the instigation of Minerva, Juno, and Venus, all excited by different motives, he stopped on his way at the court of Menelaus, king of Sparta, under the pretext of sacrificing to Apollo. This prince had married Helen, the daughter of Jupiter and Leda, a princess of incomparable beauty. Abusing the hospitality of Menelaus, Paris obtained the love of Helen, and carried her off to Troy, in the absence of her husband. This event caused the ten years' siege and utter ruin of Troy. What were the exploits of Paris? During the siege he fought with Menelaus, and only escaped by the interposition of Venus. He wounded Diomede, Machaon, Palamedes, and treacherously caused the death of Achilles. How did he die? He was mortally wounded by one of the arrows of Hercules, which was thrown at him by Philoctetes. He then had himself carried to Mount Ida, under the care of the nymph C  none, whom he had loved while a shepherd, and on whom Apollo had bestowed the knowledge of medicinal herbs. Notwithstanding the infidelity of her lover, C  none tried all her skill to cure him, but in vain, the arrow with which he was wounded had been poisoned. Paris expired in the arms of this nymph, who died of grief for his loss. What was the fate of Cassandra? Cassandra, the sister of Paris and Hector, obtained from Apollo, who loved her, the knowledge of future events; but this god, enraged at her insensibility to his love, and being unable to take from her the gift he had bestowed, caused her to pass for an insane person, so that no one believed what she foretold. Having predicted the misfortunes of her father, and the whole city, she was confined in a tower, where she never ceased singing the miseries of her country. Agamemnon, who received her with his portion of slaves after the destruction of the city, touched by her merit and beauty, took her with him to Greece. In vain she foretold to this prince the unhappy end which awaited him, she was not believed; and Clytemnestra, after the death of Agamemnon, caused her to be murdered, with two children whom she had borne to that prince. Who was Laocoon? He was the son of Priam and Hecuba, and the priest of Apollo and Neptune. He made every effort to dissuade the Trojans from bringing into the city the wooden horse which the Greeks pre-

tended to have abandoned, saying that it was some artifice to ensure their destruction; and to prove the truth of what he said, threw his javelin against the flanks of the animal, and the sound of arms within was plainly heard: but the Trojans were blinded by the belief that it was an offering to Minerva. What was the fate of Laocoon and his sons? Two frightful serpents came out of the sea, and threw themselves on his sons; and when Laocoon, hearing their cries, rushed to their assistance, the serpents, having torn the sons to pieces, strangled Laocoon in their enormous folds. Has not this catastrophe been represented in sculpture? Yes; it is the subject of a masterpiece of Grecian art, which still exists, and is in the palace of the Vatican at Rome. It was the work of three celebrated artists—Polydore, Atenodore, and Agesander, natives of Rhodes, who cut it from one solid block of marble. Who was Eneas? The son of Venus and Anchises, and had married Creusa, the daughter of Priam. After Helen had been carried off, Eneas, seeing the misery which this would bring on the country, wished to have Helen given up, to obtain peace. But though his counsels were peaceful, he did not conduct himself with the less courage, and Homer has celebrated Hector alone, among the Trojans, as more courageous than he. What did Eneas do after the siege of Troy? On the fatal night of the destruction of the city he fought valiantly; but being unable to resist against such odds, he took on his back Anchises, his father, and his Penates, or household-gods, and leading the young Ascanius, his son, by the hand, he retired to Mount Ida, with all the Trojans whom he could collect. It was at this time he lost his wife, Creusa; some time after she appeared to him, and told him that Cybele had carried her off to assist in her worship. Where was Eneas thrown by a tempest? Having constructed a fleet of twenty vessels, and coasted along the shores of Thrace, Greece, and Epirus, he was thrown upon the coast of Africa by a tempest, which Juno had raised from her continued hatred of the Trojans. He was received at Carthage by Dido, whom Venus had disposed in his favor. Who was Dido? The daughter of Belus, king of Tyre. She fled from that city to escape the cruelty of her brother, Pygmalion, who had assassinated Sicheus, her husband, to obtain his riches. Arriving in Africa, she purchased from Iarbè, one of the kings of the country, as much land as the hide of an ox, cut into strings, could encircle; and on this site she founded Carthage, which is sometimes called Byrsa, which means the hide of an ox. Go on with the adventures of Dido and Eneas. The Trojan hero having touched the

heart of Dido, gave himself up for some time to the pleasure of her society ; but at length Mercury was sent by Jupiter to snatch him from this snare, which the hatred of Juno had spread for his glory, and ordered him to go into Italy to seek the kingdom which was promised to his race. Dido could not survive the departure of Eneas, and, in despair, mounted a funeral pile, which she had ordered to be erected, and plunged into her heart the poniard which she had at one time given to the Trojan prince. What course did Eneas pursue? Another tempest threw him on the island of Sicily, and there Eneas celebrated funereal games in honor of the death of Anchises, who had died in that island the preceding year ; and afterwards went to Italy, where he consulted the Cumean Sibyl, to know how he should descend to the infernal regions. The Sibyl commanded him to take with him a golden oar as a present to Proserpine. Eneas obeyed, descended to the infernal regions, and visited the Elysian fields, in which he saw his father and the Trojan heroes, from whom he learned his own destiny and that of his posterity. Where did he at length rest? On his return from the infernal regions, he encamped on the banks of the Tiber, where Cybele changed his vessels into nymphs ; and knowing that the gods intended him to take up his abode there, he went to Latinus, king of Latium, who, warned by an oracle, received him favorably, and gave him his daughter Lavinia in marriage. Turnus, king of the Rutulii, who pretended to the hand of this princess, took up arms to sustain his rights. The Rutulii were overcome in two battles ; and at length, in single combat with Eneas, their king Turnus was killed, and lost at once his life, his wife, and his kingdom. What became of Eneas? After a peaceful reign of four years, the Rutulii having again made war, Eneas disappeared during the battle, carried off, it was said, by Venus. Who succeeded Eneas? Ascanius, his son, succeeded him, and built Alba. The descendants of Eneas, to the number of fourteen, reigned over the Latins, to Numitor, the grandfather of Romulus, the founder of Rome. What celebrated poet has related the adventures of Eneas? Virgil, a celebrated Latin poet, who lived in the time of Augustus, has sung the adventures and misfortunes of Eneas, in a poem called the Eneid. It has been objected to this poem, that Virgil committed an anachronism in making Eneas a contemporary of Dido, when he lived three hundred years before her ; but Virgil only imagined the love of Eneas for Dido, to describe the interests which, for such a length of time, divided Rome and Carthage.

Tell the birth of Orion. It is said that Jupiter, Neptune, and



Mercury one day visited a villager of Beotia ; this poor old man killed his only ox to provide them with food, and Jupiter, to reward him, promised to give him whatever he might desire. The old man, who had neither wife nor child, asked for a son, and from the hide of the ox which he had slain, Orion stepped forth. He was afterwards celebrated for his knowledge of astronomy, which he taught to Atlas, and by his passion for the chase, which, as the poets say, he still preserves in the Elysian fields as a mighty hunter. What further is said of him ? That he was one of the handsomest men of his time ; he was so tall that he is represented as a giant, who could cross the sea with his head above the waves. Diana, on one occasion, seeing this head, and wishing to prove her skill with the bow in the presence of Apollo, let fly a shaft, which struck Orion and wounded him mortally. Others have related his end differently, by saying, that having offended Diana, she sent a scorpion which stung him to death. But Diana very soon regretted the death of Orion, and implored Jupiter to place him among the constellations, where he is now to be seen among the most beautiful and brilliant.

Tell the story of Baucis and Philemon. They were two aged people, who, when Jupiter and Mercury, travelling through Phrygia disguised as common mortals, were refused admittance by the inhabitants of a village where they lived, received them hospitably. What recompense did Jupiter bestow upon them ? He ordered them to follow him to a high mountain ; from thence they looked down upon the valley and village which they had left, and saw it completely covered with water, with the exception of their house, which was changed into a temple. What promise did Jupiter make them ? To refuse them nothing. They desired to be priest and priestess of the temple, and not to die the one before the other. Their wish was accomplished ; they lived to be extremely old, when, one day, Philemon saw Baucis was changing into a linden-tree, and Baucis was astonished to find Philemon changing into an oak ; they then tenderly embraced, bade each other adieu, and long continued to shade the temple with their foliage. Who were Cleobis and Biton ? They were the daughters of one of Juno's priestesses, at Argos. On one occasion, when it was required that their mother should be drawn on a chariot to the temple, not having horses, Cleobis and Biton fastened themselves to her chariot and dragged her thither. The mother, overcome by this proof of filial love, implored Juno to bestow on her children the greatest blessing which could befall humanity. The next day they both died

suddenly, to prove that the greatest blessing which can befall human beings, is to be removed early in life from the troubles and anxieties we here endure. The inhabitants of Argos raised statues to their memory in the temple of Delphos.

Who was Niobe? Niobe was the daughter of Tantalus, and sister of Pelops. She married Amphion, king of Thebes, by whom she had fourteen children, seven daughters and seven sons. How did she incur the hatred of Latona? Boasting of her fruitfulness, she despised Latona, who had had but two children, Apollo and Diana. She went so far as to oppose the worship offered her, pretending to have a more just right to altars herself. How did Latona avenge herself? Latona charged her children to avenge this affront; accordingly Apollo and Diana shot the sons of Niobe with their arrows, and the daughters running to their brothers' assistance, shared the same fate. What was Niobe's fate? When the unhappy mother arrived, overwhelmed with grief and despair, she sat down by the bodies of her dear children, watering them with her tears, and appearing perfectly lifeless from her sorrow. She was changed into a rock. Where was she transported? A whirlwind carried her into Lydia, to the summit of a mountain, where she continued to weep, her tears turning into marble as they fell.

Who was Philomela? Philomela was the daughter of Pandion, king of Athens. She accompanied her sister Præne, wife of Tereus, king of Thrace, into that country. Relate her misfortunes. Tereus falling in love with Philomela, and finding her insensible to his persuasions, confined her in a close prison. Disturbed by the dreadful reproaches of his victim, he cut out her tongue. How did Philomela inform her sister of it? A year passed before she could do so; her sister meantime believed her dead: at last she managed to trace upon the curtains with a needle, her unhappy situation and the infidelity of Tereus. What was Præne's revenge? Præne, in the eagerness of her desire for revenge, released her sister, killed her own son Itys, and at a great feast served up his limbs to her husband. Philomela appeared at the end of the feast, and threw the head of the child on the table. Tereus, at sight of this, transported with rage, calls for his arms; but the princesses escaped, reaching a vessel which awaited them, and arrived at Athens. Into what were they metamorphosed? Ovid says that Philomela was changed into a nightingale, and Præne into a swallow. Tereus, who pursued them, was metamorphosed into a lapwing, and Itys into a goldfinch. Who was Pygmalion? Pygmalion was a famous sculptor, who had made an ivory

statue of Venus. He found it so beautiful, that he besought the goddess to give life to the work of his chisel. His prayer being granted, he married his statue, and by her he had a son named Paphus, who built the city of Paphos.

Who was Atalanta? Atalanta, daughter of Schœneus, king of Scyros, was a princess of extraordinary beauty, who should not be confounded with the Atalanta who married Meleager. The oracle having predicted that after her marriage she would cease to have a human form, she resolved never to marry. As she was so swift in races, which the most active men could not accomplish, she declared, to free herself from the importunities of a crowd of pretenders, that she would only give her hand to the one who should vanquish her in the course, and that she would destroy all those who should be defeated. By whom was she vanquished? Many had already failed, when Hippomenes, protected by Venus, presented himself. The goddess had given him three golden apples, plucked by Hercules in the garden of Hesperides. Relate the struggle. The signal is given; Hippomenes rushes first into the list, and letting his golden apples fall adroitly at some distance apart, Atalanta picks them up, and thus loses time. She is vanquished, and becomes the prize of the victor. Into what were they metamorphosed? A short time afterwards they offended Cybele. The angry goddess changed them into lions.

What does fable say of Pyramus and Thisbe? Pyramus, a young Assyrian, had become celebrated for his passion for Thisbe. As their parents prevented them from seeing each other, the two lovers fixed upon a rendezvous under a white mulberry-tree, near the city of Ninus. Relate the end of Pyramus and Thisbe. Thisbe arrived first at the appointed place. There she was attacked by a lioness with her jaws dropping blood. In her fright, the young girl fled with so much precipitation, that she dropped her veil. The beast threw herself upon it, tore it to pieces, and covered it with blood. Pyramus arrived at the rendezvous, found the veil, and not doubting but that Thisbe had been devoured, he pierced himself with his sword. Afterwards Thisbe came from her retreat, found Pyramus expiring, and put an end to her life with the same sword. What metamorphosis did the mulberry-tree undergo? It is said that the mulberry-tree was stained with the blood of these lovers, and that the mulberries it bore became red, although they had before been white.

Who was Deucalion? Deucalion, son of Prometheus and Pandora, had married Pyrrha, daughter of Epimetheus. He



reigned over Thessaly, near Parnassus, when the famous deluge which bears his name occurred. Who sent this deluge? Jupiter, indignant at the perversity of men, resolved to drown the human race. The surface of the earth was inundated, except one mountain alone in Phocis, called Parnassus. Who was spared in the deluge? Deucalion, the most righteous of men, and Pyrrha his wife, the most virtuous of women, alone escaped the flood. The little bark which bore them found a resting-place on Parnassus. Did they not consult Themis? As soon as the waters were withdrawn, they went to consult Themis, who gave his oracles at the foot of Parnassus, and who ordered them to veil their heads and cast behind them the bones of their mother. Deucalion, after having pondered a long time on the meaning of this oracle, understood that their common mother was the earth—the stones must then be the bones. They gathered together stones, therefore, and having thrown them behind them, those of Deucalion changed into men, and those of Pyrrha into women.

Were not the winds divinities? The winds were divinities, children of Heaven and Earth. The ancients placed the sojourn of these divinities in the Eolian isles, (Liparion,) and gave them Eolus for king, who kept them chained in vast caverns. What were the four principal winds? The four principal winds, among the Romans, were Boreas, or north wind; Eurus, or the east wind; Auster, the south wind; Zephyrus, the west wind. How is Boreas represented? Boreas is represented with a hard and troubled countenance, because he raises tempests and covers the earth with ice and hoar-frost. He is described enveloped in clouds when he passes through the heavens, and in dust on earth. Who were the wife and children of Boreas? Having carried off the nymph Orytha, daughter of Erectheus, king of Athens, Boreas took her into Thrace, and by her had two sons, Calais and Zetes, who took the voyage of the Colchis with the Argonauts. These two brothers had wings, which grew as their hair did. They were killed by Hercules, because they opposed the returning of the vessel of the Argonauts for this hero, who had left it to search for the young Hylas, whom the young nymphs had carried off as he was drawing water from a well. How is Eurus described? The moderns describe Eurus as a young man with wings, who sows flowers in his path with either hand as he passes. Behind him is the rising sun. Painters give him a black color, because he blows from Ethiopia, which is inhabited by negroes. How is Auster represented? Under the form of a winged man, treading the

clouds. He blows with inflated cheeks to show his violence, and holds in his hand a watering-pot, an emblem of the rain which he generally brings with him. How is Zephyrus described? Zephyrus, the husband of Flora, is represented by the poets as a mild and gentle-looking young man. He has butterfly's wings and a wreath of all sorts of flowers, symbols of his beneficent influence upon nature. Were not temples raised to the winds? In many countries temples were raised to the winds. At Athens an octagonal temple was consecrated to them, in each angle of which was placed a figure of one of the winds, corresponding to that point of the heavens whence it blows.

What was divination? Divination, a science whose object was the art of seeing into the future through superstitious means, formed a considerable part of the pagan theology. The most celebrated soothsayers among the ancients were Tiresias, Amphiaraus, and Calchas. Who was Tiresias? Tiresias owed his origin to one of the warriors born of the serpents' teeth, sown in the earth by Cadmus during the conquest of the Golden Fleece. One day he chanced upon two serpents entwined upon Mount Cyllene, he struck them with a stick, and immediately they became women. After having retained this sex for seven years, he found them again—two serpents in the same place; and striking them again with his stick, they became men immediately. Why did he become blind? As he pretended to know all the advantages and inconveniences of the two sexes, he was made the arbiter of a dispute which arose between Jupiter and Juno on the question as to which of the sexes is the most happy in marriage. Tiresias decided in favor of women. Juno, whose opinion was different, was so irritated, that she deprived him of sight. Jupiter, to make amends to him, made him one of the greatest soothsayers of his time, and prolonged his days beyond the length of five ordinary lives. Who was Amphiaraus? He was the son of Apollo and Hypermnestra, and, like Tiresias, was celebrated as a soothsayer, in the time of the Theban war. Having learned by his art that he should perish in this war, he hid himself, that he might not go to it. But Eriphyle, his wife, seduced by the present of a necklace, revealed the place of his retreat to Polynices. Amphiaraus was obliged to go, and he saw the destiny he had foreseen accomplished, as he was returning from the expedition. Jupiter precipitated him with his chariot into the bowels of the earth, with a thunderbolt. Was worship rendered him? He was placed in the ranks of the gods after his death, and the

Orapians, a people of Attica, built a temple to him, whose oracles became very famous. Say what is known of Calchas. Calchas received from Apollo the science of knowing the past, the present, and the future. He was high-priest and soothsayer in the Grecian army which fought against Troy. Nothing important was allowed to pass without his advice being taken; and it appears that he concerted the sense of his oracles with Agamemnon and Ulysses. The Fates had decided that he should die as soon as he should meet a more able soothsayer than himself. He actually died of grief in the forest of Clarus, (which was consecrated to Apollo,) because he had not been able to solve the enigmas of another soothsayer named Mopsus.

What is understood by the Sibyls? The ancients have given this name to certain women, to whom they attributed the knowledge of the future, and the gift of prophecy. The name, which signifies "inspired," was at first particularly applied to the prophetess of Delphos; but it afterwards became common to all women who delivered oracles. Ten sibyls are generally counted, of whom the principal were those of Delphos, the daughter of the soothsayer Tiresias; the Libyan sibyl, daughter of Jupiter and Lamia; and that of Cumæ, who resided in a city of that name in Italy. It was the latter who presented Tarquin with the sibylline verses. What of these books? They contained the destiny of Rome, and were consulted during great calamities. They were confided to the care of two priests, called duumvirs, who were forbidden, on pain of death, to let any one see them. This collection of oracles was consumed in the burning of the capitol, under Sylla's dictatorship. They were replaced by new books, composed of all the sibylline verses that could be gathered in Italy, Greece, and Asia; but these books never possessed the same influence over the minds of the people. Who was the most celebrated of the sibyls? The most celebrated of these sibyls was that of Cumæ, who was said to have been inspired by Apollo, and who delivered her oracles from the depths of a cave in the temple of this god. This cave had a hundred doors, whence proceeded the terrible voices which pronounced the replies of the prophetess. The verses given by the sibyl were carefully preserved here; from all parts she was consulted, and her oracles held in as great reverence among the Romans, as those of Delphos among the Greeks. What is related of this sibyl of Cumæ? This sibyl, born at Cumæ, was called Demophile, or Herophile, and was the daughter of Glaucus and a priestess of Apollo. It is related that this god, struck with her beauty, offered (to gain an influ-



ence upon her) to grant any wish she might ask of him. She asked to be allowed to live as many years as she had grains of sand in her hand. Apollo consented to it, and granted, besides, that she might always preserve her youth and freshness. The daughter of Glaucus refused this last gift, and a sad and languishing old age succeeded to her youth of bloom. In the time of Virgil, she had already lived seven hundred years; and to complete the number of grains of sand in her hand, she had yet three hundred more to live. After this time, her body, consumed by age and infirmities, by degrees wasted away, and she could be recognised only by her voice, which the Fates had endowed with eternal duration.

What are the fabulous divinities of other nations? Those of Egypt, Babylon, Persia, the Indies, Gaul, and Scandinavia, the most celebrated pagan nations after the Greeks and Romans. Who was Osiris? The most famous of the Egyptian deities; he was the son of Jupiter and Niobe, and was married to his sister Isis, who received as much honor from the Egyptians as her brother. Where did Osiris reign? He was king of Argos; but he left his kingdom to his brother Ægialeus, and went to Egypt, where he reigned jointly with Isis, taking particular care to civilize their subjects, to polish their morals, to give them good and salutary laws, and to teach them agriculture. Give some further account of him. After he had accomplished a complete reform at home, Osiris resolved to go and conquer the world, and left his kingdom with an immense army. He made his wife regent during his absence, and gave her Mercury to advise her, Hercules for her general, and Argus as minister; who, wishing to hear of his success, established in the principal cities a hundred officers, who were called the eyes of Argus. In a short time Osiris had conquered many nations, more by mildness and clemency, than the force of arms could have effected. What happened during his absence? Typhon, his brother, raised seditions, and endeavored to make himself popular. Osiris, on his return, tried to convince his brother of his ill conduct, but fell a sacrifice to the attempt. Typhon invited him to a banquet, and proposed to his friends to measure themselves in a coffer of the most elaborate workmanship, and whoever should be the same length, should receive it as a gift. Osiris, suspecting nothing, followed the example of his treacherous friends, and no sooner was he in it, than the conspirators closed the coffer, and threw it into the Nile. How did Isis act on hearing of this tragical event? She searched for the body, and fortunately found it on the coasts of Phœnicia, where it

had been conveyed by the waves; brought it into Egypt, and raised a beautiful monument to his memory. Who dethroned Typhon? Orus, the son of Osiris and Isis; but the Titans, who rose against him, put him to death. Isis obtained immortality for him, and taught him medicine and the art of divination. It is generally thought that Orus and Apóllo are the same person in mythology. What honors were paid to Osiris and Isis? As they had particularly instructed their subjects in cultivating the ground, the Egyptians chose the bull and cow to represent them, and paid the most superstitious adoration to those animals. What was the tradition concerning them? It was supposed their souls had taken their abode in the sun and moon, and sometimes these luminaries were worshipped as being Osiris and Isis. What is said of the bull Apis? The Egyptians believed the soul of Osiris had gone into the bull, because that animal had been of the most essential service in the cultivation of the ground. The bull that was chosen was always distinguished by particular marks, said to have been made when the animal was young. Describe the bull. His body was black; he had a square white spot on the forehead, the figure of an eagle upon the back, and his right side was marked with a whitish spot, resembling a crescent. How was he regarded? As an oracle: when he ate his food, it was considered a favorable answer; if he refused it, it was a very bad sign. At his death, the greatest cries and lamentations were heard in Egypt, as if Osiris was just dead, and the deepest mourning prevailed until he had a successor. What festivals were instituted in honor of Osiris and Isis? Those held annually: of these, the festival of Isis was the most celebrated; it occurred yearly, at the period when she had wept for the death of Osiris, and the Egyptians pretended that the annual and regular inundations of the Nile proceeded from her abundant tears. How is Osiris represented? With a cap on his head like a mitre, and with two horns; he held a stick in his left hand, and in his right a whip with three thongs. Sometimes he appears with the head of a hawk, as that bird, by its quick and piercing eyes, is a fit emblem of the sun. How was Isis represented? As a woman, with the horns of a cow, emblematic of the phases of the moon, holding a lute in the right hand, and a vase in the left. She is often described as wearing a veil, with the earth at her feet, and crowned with towers, like Cybele. Sometimes she has wings, a quiver of arrows on her shoulder, and a horn of plenty in her left hand, while her right holds a throne, on which are the helmet and sceptre of Osiris. Where was Isis wor-

shipped? Both in Italy and Gaul. Wise men have thought Paris received its name because it was built near a temple dedicated to Isis, "*para* Isidos." She was believed to protect Paris. It is said by some writers, that she arrived there in a vessel, and for this reason Paris has a vessel in its coat of arms. It is an extraordinary fact, that at Cholula, in Central America, there is a temple closely resembling those dedicated to Osiris and Isis in Egypt. Did not Egyptians worship other animals? Yes; the dog, the cat, the crocodile, etc. If one of these animals was killed, even by accident, it was considered a crime punishable with death; and in case of famine, the Egyptians would rather devour one another than touch one of them. Was this worship general? No, they did not agree in their worship; for at one place the crocodile was worshipped, at another the ichneumon, an enemy of the crocodile, etc. These differences in religion caused much unhappiness and many quarrels. What was the origin of this worship? It is said to have originated at the time when the gods, being pursued by the Titans, took refuge in Egypt, and, the better to conceal themselves, assumed the form of animals.

Who was the greatest divinity of the Babylonians? Belus, supposed to be the sun; his temple, at Babylon, was the most ancient and most magnificent in the world; it is believed to have been the famous tower of Babel. Who were their priests? The Chaldeans, who are highly commended for their skill in the science of astronomy; but they seem to have pursued this study no farther than it might tend to aid their own views, as they pretended to look into futurity by means of the stars. What was the Persian religion? It appears that the Persians believed but in one god, as no temples have ever been seen to lead us to form a contrary opinion. The sun, which they adored under the name of Mithra, and the sacred fire so carefully preserved, were considered as emblems of the divine power. What is said of their priests? They were called Magi, and possessed great influence, on account of their power and wisdom. Zoroaster was the founder of their sect. What were their religious tenets? They had two principles: one, Oromasses, was the source of every thing good; and the other, Arimanius, was evil, from whom sprang all manner of ills. The good principle was represented by light, the bad by darkness.



## THE DIVINITIES OF INDIA.

There are three great Indian divinities, worshipped as one; these are Brahma, Shiva, and Vishnu. What are the properties of each? The first is the creative power, the second the destructive, and the third the preserving. These three divinities are worshipped under the human form as a being with three heads. What is the origin of Brahma? The Indians imagine that from the agitation of the waves, a golden egg was produced more brilliant than a thousand suns, from which came forth Brahma, the father of mankind. Was he supposed to have formed the universe? Yes; after remaining many years in his egg, he divided it into two parts, with which he formed heaven and earth. He governed India with great wisdom, and gave his people the laws by which his sect is still guided. Name one of these laws. He commanded his worshippers to eat only fruits, and not to kill any living thing; believing in the doctrine of Metempsychosis, that the souls of men, after death, pass into the bodies of other animals. How is Brahma represented? With four arms and four heads; he holds in one hand a circle, the emblem of immortality; in another fire, which signifies power; and with the two others he writes on the "*Olles*," or Indian books. These are the symbols of legislative power. How is Shiva represented? He is also considered supreme, and is represented destroying or changing the figures of men. He is painted with three eyes. How is Vishnu described? This god is particularly celebrated by his nine metamorphoses, each of which is filled with absurdities. The Indians say that under these ridiculous stories are hidden profound mysteries, which cannot be explained to the profane. Describe one of these. The earth, oppressed by the weight of its mountains, was on the point of sinking into the abyss of waters, when Vishnu, in the shape of a tortoise, supported it on his back and destroyed the immense height of the mountains. Give another. A giant named Paladas, had carried the earth to the entrance of the infernal regions, when Vishnu, under the form of a hog, vanquished the giant, and replaced the earth in its proper position. The seven other metamorphoses are equally ridiculous with these.

Do they not believe that Vishnu will undergo still another metamorphosis? Yes, he will then take the form of a white horse with wings. This Indian Pegasus will only walk on three legs, carrying the other suspended in the air: when he puts this fourth foot to the ground, the world will be destroyed. While

awaiting this last transformation, Vishnu is sleeping tranquilly in a sea of milk, resting on a viper with five heads.

### THE DIVINITIES OF GAUL.

Which were the most celebrated of these? Those whom the Gauls worshipped with peculiar ceremonies, were Tentates, Hessus, and Taranes. Who was the principal among these? Tentates; in him they worshipped the active principle of life. His worship was celebrated at the full moon, on elevated places and in deep forests. Under what forms was he adored? Under various emblems: sometimes as an oak, portraying strength; and sometimes as a javelin, the emblem of victory. They sacrificed to this divinity, dogs, horses, and in calamitous times, human victims. Who was Hessus? He was looked upon among the Gauls as the god of battles; he is represented as half naked, and armed with an axe. What honors were paid him? They supposed he could be best appeased by human blood, and their barbarous situation often went to the length of sacrificing to him their wives and children. What of Taranes? Although he had power over celestial beings, he was not considered as the chief among the gods; but on the contrary, only the third in order. To him also they sacrificed human victims. Had the Gauls other gods? Yes, they had many whom they borrowed from the Greeks; such as Mercury, Minerva, Apollo, etc., whom they worshipped under different names, but with the same attributes as the Greeks. It is not difficult to recognise under the names of Hessus and Taranes, Mars and Jupiter. What god did they believe themselves to have descended from? Pluto; and from this belief they counted time, not by days, but nights. Did they not revere the oak? Yes; after their divinities, it was the first object of their adoration. It served the purpose of both god and temple, for Tentates was worshipped in the forests of oak. The mistletoe, a parasitical plant, which attaches itself to the oak, was held sacred by them. Every year the Druids, or priests, went with great solemnity to gather it; the chief Druid, accompanied by all the people, assembled beneath the tree, when the Druid, climbing up the branches, cut the mistletoe with a golden hook, which was distributed on the "*first day of the year*" as a precious gift, crying "Happy new year!" What were the functions of the Druids? They were not only the ministers of religion, but exercised great power over their civil affairs as well, and formed a large and powerful body, almost supreme in Gaul. What was the

employment of the Druidesses? They were the wives of the Druids, and regulated every thing relating to the sacrifices and other ceremonies of religion. They also had the reputation of seeing into futurity, and were consulted as prophetesses whose oracles were infallible. How were their sacrifices made? Human victims were enclosed, while still living, in a basket of wicker-work of immense size, and then burnt. What is understood by a sacred field? The fields where these religious ceremonies took place were held sacred; it was profane to cultivate them. To prevent their being tilled, they were covered with enormous stones. This is said to be the origin of the vast collections of enormous stones found in some parts of France, particularly near Carnac in Brittany. The same worship prevailed in England; the collections of stones on the plains there are, with more probability, supposed to be the ruins of Druidical temples, such as that called "Stone Henge," on Salisbury plain, near the city of Salisbury, in Wiltshire.

### SCANDINAVIAN DEITIES.

Who was Odin? The conqueror and legislator of the North, the most celebrated and ancient of the Scandinavian deities; a country which included Denmark, Sweden, and Norway. He was called the "Universal Father," because he was the father of their gods, as Jupiter was of the Greeks. He was also called Father of Battles, because he adopted as his sons all those who fell in battle, sword in hand; for this reason he is supposed to be the Mars of the Scandinavian deities. What sacrifices were offered to him? At first only the first-fruits of the earth, afterwards animals, and at length men; the children of kings, and sometimes even kings themselves. The usual method of sacrificing the victims was to lay them between enormous stones, where they were crushed to death, and from the greater or less force with which the blood poured forth, they judged of the success of the undertaking which was the object of the sacrifice. Where were the temples dedicated to Odin? He had a magnificent temple at Upsal, the altar of which was encircled by a chain of gold; and another in Iceland, where the assistants were watered with the blood of the victims. With what birds is he represented? Two crows are represented as seated on his shoulders, who whispered in his ears all that they saw or heard. Odin let them out every day, and when they had traversed the world they returned at the hour of the evening meal. This was said to be the cause of his univer



sal knowledge, and from this he is called the god of crows. What opinion did the northern nations entertain of the infernal regions, and the punishment for crimes? As the Greeks, and all the inhabitants of the southern countries, formed their ideas of punishment from the sufferings occasioned by heat, and represented their hell as abounding in flames and burning lakes, the natives of the north formed their opinion of eternal punishment and suffering from their own icebound coast and frozen regions. Their punishment consisted in being exposed to the rigor of mountainous waves, which fell upon the wicked in showers of hailstones of an immense size, or they were pressed to death between mountains of ice. What should we learn from this? Not to form our ideas of punishment hereafter from any such models, but believe that *our God*, the supreme ruler of the universe, who has in His hands all power and might, who alone is supremely just as well as good, will reward and punish us according to His own will, and in “ways *which are past finding out*,” and that by the merits of His Son, our Lord Jesus Christ, with the Divine and Holy Spirit, the blessed Trinity in Unity *alone*, we have hope, being all born in sin, of eternal happiness, if we obey his precepts and walk according to His laws, as laid down in the Holy Scripture. All these fables serve to show us what reason we have to be thankful that we live in an age when these monstrous stories are known to be false, and serve but to “point a moral or adorn a tale.”

---

AN ABSTRACT  
OF  
THE HEATHEN MYTHOLOGY.

---

JUPITER, the supreme deity of the heathen world.

Juno, wife to Jupiter, and queen of heaven.

Apollo, god of music, poetry, and the sciences.

Minerva, or Pallas, daughter of Jupiter, and goddess of wisdom.

Mercury, the god of eloquence, and messenger of the gods.

Æolus, god of the winds.

- Bacchus, god of wine.  
 Mars, god of war.  
 Diana, goddess of hunting, chastity, and marriage.  
 Esculapius, god of physic.  
 Venus, goddess of beauty, love, and marriage.  
 Aurora, goddess of the morning.  
 Cupid, son of Venus, and god of love.  
 Saturn, god of time.  
 Astræa, goddess of justice.  
 Autumnus, god of fruits.  
 Ate, goddess of revenge.  
 Bapta, goddess of shame.  
 Bellona, goddess of war, and sister to Mars.  
 Boreas, god of the north wind.  
 Agenoria, goddess of industry.  
 Angerona, goddess of silence.  
 Ceres, goddess of agriculture.  
 Collina, goddess of hills.  
 Comus, god of laughter and mirth.  
 Concordia, goddess of peace.  
 Cybele, wife of the god Saturn, and mother of the earth.  
 Discordia, the goddess of contention.  
 Eurydone, an infernal deity, who gnawed the dead to the bones, and was always grinding her teeth.  
 Fama, or Fame, the goddess of report.  
 Flora, the goddess of flowers.  
 Fortune, the goddess of happiness and misery; said to be blind.  
 Harpocrates, the god of silence.  
 Hebe, goddess of youth.  
 Historia, goddess of history.  
 Hygeia, goddess of health.  
 Hymen, god of marriage.  
 Janus, god of the year; he was called double-faced, and said to be endowed with the knowledge of the past and the future.  
 Lares, household gods among the Romans; they were also called Penates.  
 Mnemosyne, goddess of memory.  
 Momus, god of raillery.  
 Mors, goddess of death.  
 Nox, the most ancient of all the deities.  
 Pan, the god of shepherds.  
 Pitho, goddess of eloquence.  
 Pluto, god of hell.

- Proserpine, wife to Pluto, and queen of the infernal regions.
- Plutus, god of riches.
- Pomona, goddess of fruits and autumn.
- Proteus, a sea-god, said to have the power of changing himself into any shape he pleased.
- Psyche, goddess of pleasure.
- Sylvanus, god of the woods.
- Terminus, god of boundaries.
- Neptune, god of the sea.
- Thetis, goddess of the sea.
- Vacuna, goddess of idle persons.
- Vertumnus, god of the spring.
- Vesta, goddess of fire.
- Morpheus, god of dreams.
- Somnus, god of sleep.
- Vulcan, god of subterraneous fires, and husband of Venus, famed for his deformity.
- Fates, three sisters, intrusted with the lives of mortals; their names were Clotho, Lachesis, and Atropos.
- Furies, three sisters, armed with snakes and lighted torches; their names were Alecto, Megæra, and Tisiphone.
- Graces, three sisters, daughters of Jupiter, and attendants upon Venus and the Muses; their names were Aglaia, Thalia, and Euphrosyne.
- Gorgons, three hideous women, who had but one eye in the middle of their foreheads; their names were Euryale, Medusa, and Sthenyo.
- Muses, the nine daughters of Jupiter and the goddess of memory; they presided over the sciences, and were called Calliope, Clio, Erato, Euterpe, Melpomene, Polyhymnia, Terpsichore, Thalia, and Urania. Calliope was the muse of eloquence and heroic poetry. Clio, of history. Erato, of amorous poetry. Euterpe, of music. Melpomene, of tragedy. Polyhymnia, of rhetoric. Terpsichore, of dancing. Thalia, of comedy and lyric poetry. And Urania, of astronomy.
- Harpies, three monsters, with the faces of women, the bodies of vultures, and hands armed with claws; their names were Isis, Aëlo, and Ocypete; and Celæno was their queen.
- Hesperides, three sisters, who kept golden apples in a garden, guarded by a dragon; Hercules slew the dragon, and carried off the apples.
- Acco, an old woman, remarkable for talking to herself at the glass, and refusing what she most wished for.



**Acheron**, a river in hell.

**Achilles**, a Grecian, who signalized himself at the siege of Troy; and is said to have been dipped by his mother in the river Styx, which rendered him invulnerable in every part except his right heel, by which she held him.

**Actæon**, a famous hunter, changed by Diana into a stag, for disturbing her while bathing.

**Adonis**, a youth said to be extremely beautiful, and beloved by Venus.

**Æacus**, one of the judges of hell.

**Ægis**, the shield of Jupiter, and also of Minerva: the former was covered with the skin of the goat Amalthea; the latter bore on it the head of the gorgon, (Medusa,) which Minerva had cut off and placed there.

**Ambarvalia**, sacrifices in honor of Ceres.

**Ambrosia**, the food of the gods.

**Acis**, a Sicilian shepherd, extremely beautiful.

**Ægeria**, a beautiful nymph, worshipped by the Romans.

**Arachne**, a woman turned into a spider, for contending with Minerva at spinning.

**Argus**, a man said to have a hundred eyes, changed by Juno into a peacock.

**Atalanta**, a woman remarkable for her swift running.

**Atlas**, the son of Jupiter, said to have supported the heavens on his shoulders; afterwards turned into a mountain.

**Avernus**, a lake on the borders of hell.

**Briareus**, a giant, said to have had fifty heads, and one hundred hands.

**Caduceus**, the rod which Mercury carried, and the emblem of peace; it was borne by the Roman heralds when they went to proclaim peace.

**Castalides**, a name given to the Muses.

**Centaurs**, creatures, half men, half horses, said to have inhabited Thessaly.

**Castor and Pollux**, two brothers, who had immortality conferred upon them alternately by Jupiter; they make that constellation in the heavens called Gemini.

**Cerberus**, a dog with three heads, that kept the gates of hell.

**Charon**, the ferryman of hell.

**Charites**, a name for the Graces.

**Chiron**, a centaur, who taught Esculapius physic, Hercules astronomy, and was afterwards made the constellation Sagittarius.

**Circe**, a famous enchantress.

Cocytus, a river in hell, flowing from the river Styx.

Brumalia, feasts held in honor of Bacchus.

Cyclops, the workmen of Vulcan, who had only one eye in the middle of their forehead.

Delos, the island where Apollo was born, and had a celebrated oracle.

Dryades, nymphs of the woods.

Daphne, a beautiful woman, changed into the laurel-tree as she fled from Apollo.

Elysium, the paradise of the heathens.

Erebus, a river in hell, famed for its blackness.

Ganymede, a beautiful boy, made cup-bearer to Jupiter.

Genii, guardian angels; there were good and evil.

Gordius, a king of Phrygia, who was famed for fastening a knot of cords, on which the empire of Asia depended, in so intricate a manner that Alexander the Great, not being able to untie it, cut it asunder.

Gyges, a shepherd, who possessed a ring which rendered him invisible, when he turned the stone towards his body.

Hamadryades, nymphs said to have lived in oak-trees.

Hermes, a name for Mercury.

Hecate, Diana's name in hell.

Helicon, a famous mountain in Bœotia, sacred to Apollo and the Muses.

Hercules, the son of Jupiter, famed for his great strength and numerous exploits.

Hesperus, or Vesper, the poetical name for the evening star.

Hydra, a serpent with seven heads, killed by Hercules.

Ida, a famous mountain near Troy.

Ixion, a man who killed his own sister, and was fastened in hell to a wheel perpetually turning round.

Iris, the messenger of Juno, changed by her into the rainbow.

Lamiæ, a name for the Gorgons.

Lethe, a river in hell, whose waters had the power of causing forgetfulness.

Lucifer, the poetical name for the morning star.

Latona, a nymph loved by Jupiter; she was the mother of Apollo and Diana.

Medea, a famous sorceress.

Midas, a king of Phrygia, who had the power given him, by Bacchus, of turning whatever he touched into gold.

Minoš, one of the judges of hell, famed for his justice; he was king of Crete.

Nereides, sea-nymphs; there were fifty of them.

Naiades, nymphs of rivers and fountains.

Niobe, a woman said to have wept herself into a statue, for the loss of her fourteen children.

Nectar, the beverage of the gods.

Pactōlus, a river said to have had golden sands.

Olympus, a famous mountain in Thessaly, the resort of the gods.

Orpheus, the son of Jupiter and Calliope; his musical powers were so great that he is said to have charmed rocks, trees, and stones, by the sound of his lyre.

Pandora, a woman made by Vulcan, endowed with gifts by all the gods and goddesses; she had a box given her containing all kinds of evils, with hope at the bottom.

Pegasus, a winged horse, belonging to Apollo and the Muses.

Phaëton, the son of Apollo, who asked the guidance of his father's chariot, as a proof of his divine descent, but managed it so ill that he set the world on fire.

Phlegethon, a boiling river in hell.

Prometheus, a man who, assisted by Minerva, stole fire from heaven, with which he is said to have animated a figure formed of clay: Jupiter, as a punishment for his audacity, condemned him to be chained to Mount Caucasus, with a vulture perpetually gnawing his liver.

Pigmies, a people only a span high, born in Libya.

Python, a serpent, which Apollo killed; and, in memory of it, instituted the Pythian games.

Pyramus and Thisbe, two fond lovers, who killed themselves with the same sword; and turned the berries of the mulberry-tree, under which they died, from white to brown.

Pindus, a mountain in Thessaly, sacred to the Muses.

Philemon and Baucis, a poor old man and woman, who entertained Jupiter and Mercury in their travels through Phrygia.

Polyphemus, the son of Neptune, a cruel monster whom Ulysses destroyed.

Radamanthus, one of the judges of hell.

Saturnalia, feasts sacred to Saturn.

Satyrs, priests of Bacchus, half men, half goats.

Stentor, a Grecian, whose voice was as strong and loud as that of fifty men together.

Sirens, sea-monsters, who charmed people with the sweetness of their music, and then devoured them.

Sisyphus, a man doomed to roll a large stone up a mountain in hell, which continually rolled back, as a punishment for his perfidy and numerous robberies.



Styx, a river in hell, by which the gods swore; and their oaths were then always kept sacred.

Tempe, a beautiful vale in Thessaly, the resort of the gods.

Tartarus, the abode of the wicked in hell.

Triton, Neptune's son, and his trumpeter.

Trophonius, the son of Apollo, who gave oracles in a gloomy cave.

Tantalus, the son of Jupiter, who, serving up the limbs of his son Pelops in a dish, to try the divinity of the gods, was plunged up to the chin in a lake of hell, and doomed to perpetual thirst, as a punishment for his barbarity.

Zephyrus, the poetical name for the west wind.

---

THE

## ELEMENTS OF ASTRONOMY.

With what an awful, world-revolving power,  
 Were first the unwieldy planets launched along  
 The illimitable void ! thus to remain  
 Amid the flux of many thousand years,  
 That oft has swept the toiling race of men  
 And all their labored monuments away.  
 Firm, unremitting, matchless in their course,  
 To the kind tempered change of night and day,  
 And of the seasons ever stealing round  
 Minutely faithful. Such th' *all perfect Hand*  
 That poised, impels, and rules the steady whole.—THOMSON.

WHAT is meant by the heavenly bodies? The sun, stars, planets, and comets. What is the Solar System? The motion of the primary and secondary planets and comets round the sun, which is stationary, and which they all appear to respect. What is the sun supposed to be? An immense luminous body, which has the power of communicating light and heat to our universe: the distance of the sun from the earth is so great, that its light is said to be eight minutes in reaching us. How is it known that he revolves on an axis? From certain spots observed in his disk. What are the fixed stars? They are supposed, by astronomers, to be suns, like our own; each of them surrounded by a complete system of planets and comets: their distance from the earth being very great is the reason they appear so small.

What is the difference between the planets and fixed stars? The planets are always moving in circular orbits, and have no light of their own, but receive it from our sun; the stars, on the contrary, appear constantly in the same position, and shine by their own light. How have astronomers divided the planets? Into two classes: the first comprehends the primary planets, viz., Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, Ceres, Pallas, Juno, Vesta, Jupiter, Saturn, and the Georgium Sidus. The second class includes the satellites which revolve round some of the primary, such as the moon, attendant upon our earth; the four moons or satellites that revolve round Jupiter; the seven satellites of Saturn, and the six that encircle the Georgium Sidus: all these planets are supposed to be inhabited, and we know that one is so: Jupiter is the largest. In what order do the planets move round our sun? Mercury moves in the first and least circle, Venus in the next; these two are called inferior planets; then follows the earth, with its attendant the moon; next Mars; then the newly discovered planets Piazzi or Ceres, Pallas, Juno, and Vesta: afterwards Jupiter, who has four moons moving round him; Saturn is next, who has seven moons, and is surrounded also by a thin broad ring of light: lastly, in the largest circle, moves that planet called the Georgium Sidus, which has six moons; these last are called superior planets, because they do not move within the earth's orbit: the color of Mercury is a sparkling red; of Venus, a yellowish white; of Mars, a fiery red; of Jupiter, splendid white; of Saturn, dim red.

What is remarkable of Jupiter? Added to his four moons, he has faint light substances, called his belts, which, from the frequent changes observed in them, have been generally supposed to be only clouds. What is remarkable of Venus? When west of the sun she rises before him, and is called the morning star; when east of the sun she rises after he is set, and is then called the evening star; this appearance continues for 290 days alternately. What time do the planets take in moving round the sun? Mercury in 82 days, at the distance of 37 millions of miles; Venus in 224 days, at the distance of 68 millions of miles; Mars in 687 days, at a mean distance of 144 millions of miles; Jupiter in less than 12 years, at the distance of 493 millions of miles; Saturn is nearly 30 years in making his revolution; and the Georgium Sidus more than eighty years; this planet is also called Uranus: Piazzi, or Ceres, in 4 years 7 months and 10 days, at a mean distance of 260 millions of miles: Pallas in a period a little greater than the year of Ceres,

at a mean distance of 266 millions of miles; Juno in less than Pallas or Ceres, and 250 millions of miles from the sun. Vesta is similar in appearance to the Georgium Sidus, and is visible to the naked eye in clear weather.

How may you easily know the fixed stars? They are less bright, and always appear to be twinkling. What number of fixed stars is visible to the naked eye? About a thousand; there have been three thousand fixed stars discovered by the assistance of good telescopes, and there are probably many more. How are these fixed stars divided by astronomers? Into eighty constellations, or clusters of stars, under the names and figures of various personages celebrated in antiquity, and of fabulous animals and inanimate bodies; they are almost all placed in one or other of these, and the few stars which could not conveniently be brought into any of them are called unformed. Have all these stars names? No; only some of the most remarkable: and those which have not any name are distinguished upon the globe by the letters of the Greek alphabet,  $\alpha$  standing for the largest star,  $\beta$  for the second,  $\gamma$  for the third, and so on, according to their magnitude. What is meant by Galaxy, or Milky-way? It is a white track round the heavens, caused by an infinity of small stars, which may be seen with a telescope.

What are Comets? Luminous and opaque bodies, whose motions are in different directions, and the orbits they describe very extensive; they have long translucent tails of light turned from the sun: the great swiftness of their motion in the neighborhood of the sun, is the reason they appear to us for such a short time: and the great length of time they are in appearing again is occasioned by the extent and eccentricity of their orbits or paths in the heavens. How many comets are supposed to belong to our solar system? Twenty-one; but we only know when to expect the return of three; the first appears every 75th year, the second every 129th year, and the third every 575th year; this last will appear again in the year 2225: its rapidity is so great, that it has been calculated to fly at the rate of fourteen thousand miles in a minute. What is the cause of Eclipses? As every planet and satellite in the solar system derives its light from our sun, it follows that it will cast a shadow, or interrupt the sun's rays, when it comes directly opposite to it. How is the sun said to be eclipsed? It is so to the inhabitants of our earth when its light is intercepted by the moon coming directly between the sun and the earth; this can only happen at the time of new moon, because then



the sun and moon have not the earth between them. How is an eclipse of the moon caused? The earth then comes between the moon and the sun, and casts its shadow upon the moon, which obstructs the light; this can only take place when the moon is at full. How many kinds of eclipses are there, and how are they distinguished? Total, when the whole body is obscured; partial, when some part only is concealed.

---

## EXPLANATION

OF

### A FEW ASTRONOMICAL WORDS.

*APOGEE.* Spoken generally of the moon, which is said to be in her Apogee, when at the greatest distance from the earth.

*Aphelion or Aphelium.* That part of a planet's orbit in which it is at the greatest distance from the sun. See *Perihelion* and *Perigee*.

*Apsis* of an orbit is either its apogee or perigee, its aphelion or perihelion.

*Appulse.* The approach of the moon to the fixed stars.

*Acronical Stars.* Those which rise when the sun sets, and set when the sun rises.

*Astrolabe.* An instrument formerly used to take the distances of the sun and stars.

*Austral.* Southern.

*Centrifugal force.* That which impels any body to fly off from the centre.

*Centripetal force.* That which has a tendency to the centre.

*Cusp.* The horns of the moon.

*Culminate.* A star is said to culminate when it appears in the meridian.

*Cosmical.* Rising or setting with the sun.

*Conjunction.* There may be a conjunction of the sun and a planet, or of the planets with each other. When any two or more planets are in the same part of the Zodiac, they are said to be in conjunction with each other; a planet is in conjunction

with the sun, when it comes between the sun and the earth ; this is termed an inferior conjunction ; if the sun is between the planet and the earth, it is called a superior conjunction.

*Cycle of the Sun.* A revolution of twenty-eight years, which being elapsed, the Sunday letters in the calendar return to their former places, and proceed in the same order as before.

*Cycle of the Moon.* A period of nineteen years. Upon its completion, the new and full moons return on the same day of the month, though not at the same hour.

*Declination.* The distance of a star from the equator, whether north or south.

*Disk or Disc.* The face of the sun or moon, as they appear to us upon the earth.

*Digit.* One twelfth part of the sun or moon's surface : in a total eclipse of these luminaries the whole disk is obscured ; in a partial eclipse only one, or more parts, called digits.

*Emersion.* When the sun, moon, or star begins to appear after an eclipse.

*Epact.* The eleven days which the solar year contains more than the lunar one.

*Elongation.* The greatest distance at which any inferior planet is seen from the sun.

*Geocentric Place.* The appearance of a planet as seen from the earth.

*Heliocentric Motion.* The motion which a planet would appear to have if seen from the sun.

*Halo.* A circle which sometimes surrounds the moon.

*Horizon.* The rational horizon is that circle which is imagined to encompass the earth, exactly in the middle.

*Sensible or Apparent Horizon.* That circle of the sky which bounds our sight, by seeming to touch the ground.

*Horn.* The extremity of the decreasing or increasing moon.

*Hemi-Cycle.* Half of the sun or moon's cycle.

*Intercalary day.* That day which is added to the month of February every leap-year.

*Immersion.* When one of the planets comes within the shadow of another, as in an eclipse.

*Limb of a Planet.* The utmost border of the sun or moon's disk.

*Mazzaroth.* The Zodiac : this is a Hebrew term.

*Lunar Month.* The space of twenty-nine days, twelve hours, and forty-four minutes, in which time the moon completes her daily rotation on her axis.

*Solar Month.* The time in which the sun seems to pass through

one sign of the Zodiac, being thirty days, ten hours, and a half.

*Synodical Month.* The interval of time from one conjunction of the sun and moon to another.

*Occultation of a Planet.* The time in which it is hidden from our view by an eclipse.

*The Nodes* are the points where the orbits of the primary planets cut the ecliptic, and where the orbits of the secondary cut those of their primary. When the planet is passing northward it is called the ascending node, when southward the descending.

*Opposition.* When the earth is between the sun and any of the planets, that planet so situated is said to be in opposition to the sun; and planets are said to be in opposition to each other when in opposite parts of the Zodiac, or when the difference of their longitudes is 180 degrees.

*Occidental Planet.* One that sets after the sun.

*Oblate.* Flattened at the poles.

*Parallax.* The difference between the true and apparent place of a planet.

*Phases of the Moon.* Its different appearances according to the quarter it is in.

*Perihelion.* That part of a planet's orbit in which it is nearest the sun.

*Perigee.* That part of a planet's orbit in which it is nearest the earth.

*Parhelium.* A mock sun, caused by a reflection of the true sun in a cloud.

*Penumbra.* A faint shadow which, in an eclipse, is observed between the full light and the perfect shadow.

*Quadrature.* The first and last quarters of the moon.

*Quartile of the Planets.* An aspect of the planets when they are ninety degrees (or three signs of the Zodiac) distant from each other.

*Revolution of a Planet.* The time it takes to complete its course round the sun.

*Rotation of a Planet on its axis.* Its turning round like a wheel, at the same time that it moves forward in its orbit.

*Sextile of the Planets.* The distance of sixty degrees (or two signs) between two planets.

*Semi-Sextile.* The distance of thirty degrees, (or one sign.)

*Semi-Quadrate.* The distance of forty-five degrees between the planets.

*Transit of a Planet,*—is when, in a conjunction either of



Mercury or Venus with the sun, the planet in conjunction crosses any considerable part of the sun's face, appearing on its surface like a dark round spot.

*Trine.* An aspect of the planets, when one hundred and twenty degrees, or four signs of the Zodiac, asunder.

## NORTHERN CONSTELLATIONS.

CONSTELLATIONS.	ENGLISH NAMES.
Ursa Major, or Helice.....	The Great Bear.
Ursa Minor .....	The Lesser Bear.
Draco.....	The Dragon.
Cepheus..... [Chara]	
Canes Venatici (Asterion and	The Hounds.
Boötes .....	
Mons Mænalus.....	
Coma Berenices.....	Berenice's Hair.
Cor Caroli .....	Charles's Heart.
Corona Borealis.....	The Northern Crown.
Hercules, or Engonasi.....	
Cerberus .....	
Lyra, or Vultur Cadens....	The Lyre.
Cygnus.....	The Swan.
Vulpecula .....	The Fox.
Anser.....	The Goose.
Lacerta Stellio.....	The Lizard.
Cassiopeia .....	
Camelopardalus.....	The Camelopard.
Serpens, or Ophiuch.....	The Serpent.
Serpentarius, or Ophiuchus .	
Scutum Sobieski .....	Sobieski's Shield.
Aquila, or Vultur Volans....	The Eagle.
Antinous, or Ganymedes....	
Delphinus .....	The Dolphin.
Equulus .....	The Little Horse.
Sagitta.....	The Arrow.
Andromeda .....	
Perseus.....	
Pegasus .....	
Auriga .....	The Charioteer.
Lynx .....	

CONSTELLATIONS.	ENGLISH NAMES.
Leo Minor.....	The Lesser Lion.
Triangulum.....	The Triangle.
Triangulum Minus.....	The Little Triangle.
Musca .....	The Fly.

## CONSTELLATIONS IN THE ZODIAC.

CONSTELLATIONS.	ENGLISH NAMES.	NO. OF STARS
Aries.....	The Ram.....	46
Taurus .....	The Bull.....	109
Gemini.....	The Twins.....	94
Cancer .....	The Crab .....	95
Leo.....	The Lion.....	91
Virgo .....	The Virgin .....	93
Libra.....	The Balance .....	9
Scorpio.....	The Scorpion.....	94
Sagittarius .....	The Archer.....	48
Capricornus .....	The Goat.....	58
Aquarius .....	The Water-Bearer....	93
Pisces. ....	The Fishes.....	100

The first six are called the Northern signs, and the last six the Southern.

## SOUTHERN CONSTELLATIONS.

CONSTELLATIONS.	ENGLISH NAMES.
Cetus .....	The Whale.
Eridanus.....	
Phoenix .....	
Toucan.....	
Orion .....	
Monoceros .....	The Unicorn.
Canis Minor.....	The Lesser Dog.
Apus.....	The Bird of Paradise.
Hydra .....	
Sextans Uraniae.....	The Sextant of Urania.
Crater .....	The Cup.
Corvus .....	The Raven.
Centaurus .....	The Centaur.
Lupus .....	The Wolf.
Ara .....	The Altar.
Triangulum Australe.....	The Southern Triangle.
Pavo .....	The Peacock.
Corona Australis.....	The Southern Crown.
Grus. ....	The Crane.

CONSTELLATIONS.	ENGLISH NAMES.
Piscis Australis .....	The Southern Fish.
Lepus .....	The Hare.
Columba Noachi .....	Noah's Dove.
Robur Caroli .....	Charles's Oak.
Crux. ....	The Cross, sometimes Crosiers.
Argo Navis .....	The Ship Argo.
Canis Major .....	The Greater Dog.
Apis .....	The Bee.
Hirundo .....	The Swallow.
Indus .....	The Indian.
Cameleon .....	
Piscis Volans .....	The Flying Fish.
Xiphias. ....	The Sword Fish.

---

## QUESTIONS

ON

## COMMON SUBJECTS.

---

WHAT is Mineralogy? A science which treats of the solid and hard component parts of the earth; it assists in the discovering of mines, and forming a judgment of their various properties. Which are the principal metals? Gold, silver, platina, quicksilver, (or mercury,) copper, iron, lead, and tin: of these, gold is the heaviest; tin the lightest; and iron the most useful. Whence have we Gold? Chiefly from New Mexico, in North America; some parts of South America; and many places in the East Indies: gold was found in the county of Wicklow, in Ireland. Where is Silver found? Chiefly in the mines of Potosi, in South America; but there are some good mines in Norway and Sweden: it is combined with lead in most lead-mines, in a greater or less degree. Whence have we Platina? Platina, or platinum, is found only in South America: when pure, it resembles silver, though not so bright; its beauty, ductility, and indestructibility, make it little inferior to gold and silver: neither air nor water can act upon it.



Where is Copper dug? The best and purest comes from the Swedish mines; that worked upon Parry's Mountain, in the Isle of Anglesea, is said to be the largest yet discovered: extensive copper-mines are worked in the southwest of Ireland, and in the county of Cornwall; also in many parts of the United States, particularly in the upper part of the state of Wisconsin, on Lake Superior. There are three kinds of copper, the common, rose copper, and virgin copper; copper also, mixed with a large quantity of tin, makes what we call bell metal; with a smaller proportion, bronze for statues, etc.; and when mixed with zinc, pinchbeck.

Whence have we Iron? It is found in most European countries, and the United States: the best iron-mines in England are those of Colebrook Dale, in Shropshire; and those in the forest of Dean, Gloucestershire. Whence have we Lead? It abounds in England, and the United States; the best mines are in Cornwall, Devonshire, Derbyshire, Northumberland, Durham, in England, and various parts of North Wales; Ireland is particularly rich in lead-mines: Cumberland has a mine of the best black lead for pencils. The best mines in the United States are those at Galena, in Illinois, one of the western states.

What is Pewter? A composition made of brass, lead, and tin, mixed in different quantities. What is Brass? A compound metal, made of copper and the calamine stone, which renders it yellow and hard. Which are the perfect metals? Gold and silver; so called because they lose nothing from the heat of the fire. What is an imperfect metal? One which decreases by the heat of the fire, and can be easily dissolved or corroded by acids. Which are the different kinds of Iron? Forged iron, cast iron, and steel. What is forging iron? Beating it with hammers, when red-hot, till it becomes softer and more flexible. How is Steel made? By heating bars of iron with charcoal ashes and bone shavings; by this method the iron becomes harder and closer grained, and is also capable of bearing a very high polish. What is Quicksilver? An imperfect metal, resembling melted silver, found in Hungary, Italy, Spain, and South America: it is of great use in manufactures and medicine. What is White-Lead? Common lead corroded by the steam of vinegar: this is used by house-painters, to thicken and dry their paints, and it makes the smell of a new-painted house extremely prejudicial, white-lead being a slow poison.

Whence comes the Loadstone? It is found in iron-mines, in Germany, Hungary, England, Arabia, Bengal, and China.

What are its properties? It attracts iron, which, when rubbed with the loadstone, is capable of attracting any other piece of iron placed near it: every magnet or loadstone has two poles, one pointing south, the other north; and this circumstance has caused its great use in navigation. Where are Diamonds found? The best are in the mines of Golconda, part of the Mogul's empire. Whence have we the best Pearls? From the pearl-fishery, at the entrance of the Persian Gulf: divers are employed, in March, April, August, and September, to take the pearls from the inside of the oysters which adhere to the rocks: this is done by putting the oysters into pits, and throwing heaps of sand over them: not being in their own element, they soon open and are killed; the flesh then corrupts or dries, and upon searching the pits, the pearls are found at the bottom. How are they disposed of? When properly dried and cleaned, the sand is sifted, to collect all they can; the smallest are sold as seed pearls, the largest sometimes adorn the diadems of sovereign princes.

Whence have we the best Olives? From Italy, Portugal, and the southern parts of France: the oil of olives is esteemed the best and the sweetest.

What is Common or Train Oil? The fat of whales. Where is Rice principally grown? In Egypt, China, and the East Indies; the natives of these countries make it their chief food: also in the United States, particularly South Carolina. Whence have we Tea? From China; it is the well-known leaf of a tree growing in great abundance there, and was introduced into England in the reign of Charles II. What is Coffee? The berry of a tree, the leaves of which resemble the laurel; it is cultivated in Arabia, Turkey, and the West Indies: the Turks are passionately fond of this liquor. What is Chocolate? A composition made from the cacao-tree: its fruit grows as a kernel, twenty or thirty of them being enclosed in a rind, which resembles a cucumber in shape. These nuts are beaten into a paste, with cinnamon, and other aromatic spices, and then made up into little cakes called chocolate. Whence are Cocoa-Nuts procured? Large forests of the cocoa-nut tree grow in India, America, and most of the Oriental Islands: its branches, resembling those of large palm-trees, form a covering for the Indian huts: sails and cordage are made from the bark: the nut affords oil, a kind of milk, and a delicious fruit; and from the shell, spoons, cups, and bowls are made. How is the best Ink made? With gall-nuts, copperas, and gum Arabic. Whence have we India-Ink? From China, and other parts of the East Indies:

it is made of fine lampblack, and animal glue; but the secret of mixing these ingredients properly is unknown to the Europeans. An ink little inferior to this may be made of ivory black and charcoal black, ground down to the fineness required.

What is Rhubarb? The root of a tree growing in Turkey in Asia, and Arabia Felix; used for medicinal purposes. What is Ipecacuanha? The root of a tree found only in Brazil, used also medicinally. What is Peruvian Bark? This valuable medicine is the bark of the quinquina-tree, growing only in Peru; it was discovered by the Jesuits, whence it is frequently called Jesuit's bark. What is Manna? A gum which flows from the ash-tree, in the southern parts of Sicily; the most famous is that of Arabia, which is a kind of condensed honey that exudes from the leaves of trees, which may be gathered when it has become concreted. What are Cantharides? Spanish flies, used for raising blisters. What is Camphire? A kind of white gum; brought from the Turkeys and Arabia. What is Opium? A narcotic juice, extracted from the white poppy, thickened and made up into cakes; it is brought chiefly from Turkey, Egypt, and the Indies: and is useful both in medicine and surgery. What is Castor Oil? It is extracted from a tree, called by the Americans palma-christi, growing in the West Indies, and the southern States; this oil is very strong, and valuable in medicinal cases.

What is Fuller's Earth? An unctuous kind of marl; of great use in cleansing and preparing wool: it abounds chiefly in Bedfordshire, Worcestershire, and Shropshire. What is Logwood? A plant, which is originally a native of Honduras in America, and many parts of the Spanish West Indies: it is of essential service in manufactures, as it dyes the best black and purple. Whence have we Ginger? Both from the East and West Indies; it is a root which requires no cultivation, and its warm, pungent qualities make it particularly valuable. What is Millet? A grain used for puddings, which grows naturally in India; but is cultivated in Europe, very successfully. Whence have we Pepper? Chiefly from the isles of Java, Sumatra, and the coast of Malabar; it grows upon a shrub, and the difference between the black and the white pepper is caused by stripping off the outward bark of the black pepper, both kinds growing on the same shrub.

What are Sponges? Marine substances, which are found sticking to rocks and shells, when covered by the sea-water: they are supposed to be the habitation of some animal, and are brought chiefly from Constantinople, the states of Barbary, and



some of the isles in the Archipelago. Sponges are used both in the arts and surgical operations. Where does the Tamarind Tree grow? In both the Indies: tamarinds are used by the Asiatics as a sweetmeat; by the Europeans as a medicine. What is Parchment? The skins of sheep or goats: vellum is made from the skins of young calves; the manufacture of these useful articles has been brought to great perfection by the French. Whence have we the best Capers? From the environs of Toulon and Lyons; they grow upon a small shrub without any cultivation, and are generally found to flourish most near ruined walls and edifices, or in the cavities of rocks. They are pickled, and then exported.

What is Gum Arabic? A gum which flows from the acacia, in Egypt and Arabia: there are other kinds of gum, but inferior to this in quality. What is Cinnabar? A red mineral substance, found in the isle of Borneo. Whence have we the best Saffron? From Essex: this plant is used both in food and medicine. Where are Hops chiefly cultivated? In Essex, Kent, Worcestershire, and Herefordshire: they produce a flower which strengthens beer: they flourish most in rich soil, and grow to a great height, twining around long poles. What is Malt? Malt is made of barley, steeped in water and fermented; afterwards dried in a kiln. Pearl barley is merely barley freed from the shell or husk. What is Indigo? A plant produced in the warm regions of Asia, Africa, and America: the blue extracted from it is used by painters in mixing their colors, and by dyers. What is Flax? A beautiful plant, cultivated only in rich ground, with slender stalks, small leaves, and blue blossoms; it is sown in April, and is valuable for its seed, called linseed, (from which excellent oil is made,) and for the fibres of its stalks, which are manufactured into linen. What is Hemp? A useful plant, resembling the common nettle; it is sown in April, and, like flax, will flourish best in rich ground: the outward covering or peeling of the stalk is the part made into cloth and cordage. What is Tow? The refuse of hemp, after it has been dressed: this thick gross part, when separated from the stem, is frequently spun into a kind of yarn, of which packing-cloths are made; it is useful in stopping the effusions of blood, and in lighting matches for cannon. Whence have we Cork? From the cork-tree; which is a species of large green oak, growing in Italy, Spain, and Gascony: it is the bark of this tree which we find so useful after being stripped from top to bottom in broad planks, which are first soaked in water, and then laid together, and packed up in bales, ready for sale; the

cork brought from Spain, when thoroughly soaked, is placed over burning coals, which gives the outside a black appearance. What is India-Rubber? A remarkable resin found in Asia and America, very pliable and elastic: this substance oozes like a liquid from the tree in which it is produced. How does it acquire consistence? As this liquor dries, it takes the appearance and solidity of leather. The savage nations catch it from the tree, and make it into bottles, goblets, etc. How are these bottles made? By forming moulds of clay in the shape desired, and covering them with thin coats of this resin, one upon another; when thick enough, and well dried, they break or take out the moulds, and the resin appears in the state the Europeans receive it. What is Cochineal? An insect, which lives upon the plant called opuntia, growing in New Spain; it sucks the crimson juice of the fruit: these insects have in their inside a beautiful red dust, which is used for dying scarlet, crimson, and purple: they are sent dried to Europe in great quantities.

Where do Nutmegs grow? In the Banda Islands: the Dutch, to whom these islands are subject, sell the nutmegs to the other European nations. The harvest for them is in June. What is Mace? The shell of the nutmeg. What are Cloves? Small aromatic spices; the bud of the nutmeg before the fruit is formed. Where is Cinnamon cultivated? Chiefly in the isle of Ceylon: the fruit of the cinnamon-tree, when boiled down, and squeezed hard, affords a greenish sort of wax, which, after being whitened, is made into tapers. The bark of the tree affords the spice we use: the inner bark is the best; the outer is coarse.

What is Ivory? The teeth of elephants: that brought from the isle of Ceylon is the most valuable, as it never turns yellow. The shavings of ivory, boiled to a jelly, have the same restorative effect as those of hartshorn. What is Vermicelli? A composition made of flour, eggs, and saffron; used by the Italians chiefly in soups. What is Mohair? A stuff, or camlet, made from the hair of the Angora goat: there are two kinds of mohair; the one calendered, which has a glossy and watered look; the other rough and plain. What is Cotton? A down procured from the pod of the cotton-tree, which flourishes in the East and West Indies, and the United States, particularly Georgia and Florida. When its fruit, which is about the size of a walnut, is ripe, the shell bursts, the cotton is then gathered, and picked for use: its value in different manufactures, particularly in that of muslin, is well known. Whence is Sugar procured? From the sugar-cane, which is a beautiful plant, culti-

vated chiefly in the West Indies and Louisiana; it has long green leaves, and grows very much like Indian-corn, throwing out a beautiful bunch of lilac flowers at the top, which resemble a bunch of feathers; and the fields, when in bloom, present a most beautiful appearance. How is the sugar prepared? The long canes, which frequently grow to the height of twelve feet, are cut after blooming; the leaves, which grow only near the top, are chopped off, and serve as fodder for cattle and horses, when freshly cut. These canes are then carried to the mills and pressed between immense cylinders of iron, until the juice is entirely expressed, and the canes are then dried for fuel. What is done with the juice? It is conveyed to the "boiling-house" by gutters from the mill, and there boiled and skimmed, passing through five different boilers of copper, kept at different degrees of heat. When nearly boiled, a certain proportion of lime is added, which causes the sirup to granulate; and it is then discharged into large wooden receivers, and left to cool. What is next done? When *cool*, the sugar is carried to the hogsheads, which are placed on beams of wood traversing an apartment, beneath which is a large wooden cistern, to receive the molasses which runs from the sugar, through holes bored in the bottom of the hogsheads for that purpose; and here it remains until the molasses, or sirup, is entirely drained from it, when the hogsheads are tightly covered and made ready for exportation. How much does a hogshead contain? From sixteen to eighteen hundred weight. What is sugar when thus prepared called? Muscovada or Brown Sugar. How is White or Loaf Sugar prepared? The brown sugar is boiled over again and refined, by steaming, when the sugar becomes white and hard. How is Rum made? Rum is a liquor resembling brandy, made from the scum of the sugar, molasses, water, and a certain portion of the lees of former distillations of rum, called "*Dunder*." How is it prepared? The proper proportions being mixed, it is put in large cisterns, where it remains several days to ferment. After the fermentation subsides, the liquor is put into a large vessel called a "still," made of copper, and resembling an immense oil-flask, with a long tube attached, which passes through a cistern of cold water: it has a small opening at one end, leading into another vessel, or receiver. A fire is applied beneath the large end of the still, and the vapor which rises from it is condensed by passing through the cold water, and is poured through the tube into the receiver. This liquor is rum.

How are Gin and Brandy made. Gin, from the juniper-



berries, distilled like rum with brandy and malt spirits; and brandy is distilled from wine: an inferior kind may be procured from cider, or from raisins. What is Spermaceti? An oily substance found in the head of the sperm whale: the method used in preparing it is, to boil it over the fire, and pour it into moulds; this boiling is repeated till it becomes perfectly white and refined: it is then made into candles; the oil procured from the fat of the body is the best for lamps. What is Glass? A transparent brittle substance, made from sand, salts, lead, flints, or stones, and flints. Whence are the salts extracted? Generally from the ashes of a marine plant, called kali; but thistles, brambles, and other plants, are sometimes used, on account of the salts they contain. Which are the different kinds of glass? Crystal flint-glass, used for plate, coach-glasses, looking-glasses, and other optical instruments; crystal white-glass, which includes toys, crown-glass, vials, and drinking-vessels: the other kinds of glass chiefly used are green and bottle glass. Glass was first common in England in the reign of Henry II. ✕

How are Candles made? From fat, chiefly that of sheep and cows: the common candles are dipped in boiling tallow; the other kinds are made in moulds. The wicks are always of spun cotton. How are mould candles made? In tin tubes; the wick being fastened by a wire in the middle of the mould, the melted tallow is then poured into it: when filled, it is placed in the air to harden, when the tube is removed. Wax candles have generally a flaxen wick, which is covered with white or yellow wax: they have a particular mould for those called tapers, which are often used at funerals. What is Sealing-Wax? A composition made of gum lacca and resin; the red is colored with vermilion: sealing-wax was supposed to be first prepared in Europe by the Portuguese, who learned the eastern method in their Bengal settlements. What is Paper? A substance made, by Europeans, of rags; by the Chinese, of silk: the discoverer is unknown, but it was introduced into Europe towards the close of the tenth century. How is paper made? The rags are first sorted, then carried to the mill, and put into an engine placed in a large trough filled with water; this engine has long spikes of iron fixed in it, and by moving round with great swiftness, soon tears the rags every way, and reduces them to a pulp: moulds are then used, the size of a sheet of paper, which are dipped into this pulp, and shaken about till it becomes of the consistence the makers wish it to be. Several of these moulds are laid one upon another, with a piece of felt placed between each; and after being twice pressed, are hung

up to dry. What other process does it go through? When dry, the paper is taken off the lines, and rubbed smooth with the hand; it is then sized. How is the size made? Of clean parchment and vellum shavings; the size is strained through a fine cloth, which is strewed with powdered white vitriol and alum; the paper is dipped in this, and after being pressed a third time, it is separated sheet by sheet to dry, and then made up into quires and reams.

What is the use of common Oil? Its use in dressing wool, skins, thickening pitch, and preparing soap, is well known: painting, and medicine also, are indebted to it; and the inhabitants of the pole find it extremely serviceable in enlightening their gloomy regions, six months in the year. What is Soap? A substance made, when hard, from the lees of ashes, mixed with tallow; that called Castile or Spanish soap, is made from a mixture of olive oil with barilla; the green soft soap is prepared from the lees of lime and potashes, joined to a proper quantity of oil. The manufacture of scap was brought into England in the reign of Henry VIII. What is Tartar? An acid salt, which sticks to the sides of large vessels, or tuns, filled with wine, and is produced by the fermentation of the liquor: tartar is purified by boiling it in clear water, and then suffering the salt particles to fall to the bottom of the vessel. Cream of tartar is that part which, owing to the evaporation caused by the heat of tartar when purifying, crystallizes upon the liquor. Emetic tartar is composed of the acid of the tartar, mixed with antimony.

What is the Chinese Aloe, or Sandal Wood? A large tree, in shape like an olive, which is furnished with three singular barks. the outer one, called eagle-wood, is black and heavy; the second is brown, and very light—it has also the properties of a candle, and when burnt in the fire has an agreeable smell; the third bark, at the heart of the tree, is used as a cordial in fainting fits, and for perfuming clothes and apartments. This wood is so precious among the Chinese, that jewels are frequently set in it. What are the other uses of this tree? When incisions are made in its bark, a cooling liquor flows from it, which, when kept long enough, makes good vinegar; the branches, when eaten, are said to have the flavor of candied citron; the sharp points which rise upon the branches are used by the Indians for darts and nails; its leaves serve as a covering for their houses, and when dried, are shaped into dishes and plates; ropes are made of the roots, and the fibres of the leaves are manufactured into thread.

Whence is Mahogany procured ? From the island of Jamaica, from St. Domingo, and the bay of Honduras ; it grows also in the southern parts of East Florida ; but the wood is not so beautifully grained. What is common Salt ? Common salt, or bay salt, is a compound of muriatic acid and soda, and is procured by evaporation from sea-water, or from the produce of brine-springs. Rock salt is dug from the mines in Sweden, Russia, and Cheshire : in California there are plains of clear, firm salt, and also in some of the western States. Kentucky is famous for its salt ponds or licks, to which the cattle resort for that which is absolutely necessary to preserve life in all animals. What is common Glue ? The sinews and feet of animals, boiled down to a strong jelly. What is Isinglass ? A transparent jelly, made from the entrails of a fish. What is Granite ? A hard granular rock, found in the most elevated places : the Irish and Scotch granite possess remarkable durability ; but the English imbibes moisture easily, and soon goes to decay. What are Kermes ? Gall-nuts, taken from green oaks in the Pyrenees, used for dying scarlet. What is Brazil Wood ? A red wood brought from Brazil, in South America, used by dyers.

What is Sago ? Sago is produced from the pith of the landan-tree, which grows in the Moluccas, and resembles the palm : when cloven asunder and cut down, the pith is taken out, which is then by a pestle reduced to a powder resembling meal ; this is made up into a paste and then dried in a furnace, when it becomes fit for use.

What is Potash ? The lixivial ashes of those vegetables which abound in saline particles ; of these kali is esteemed the best : potash is of infinite use in the fulling of cloth, and manufacture of soap and glass.

What is Kali ? A marine plant used in making glass. From the name of this plant, those substances which ferment with acids are called alkalies ; the mixture of an alkali with unctuous substances makes soap ; with silicious (or flinty) earths, glass.

What is Gamboge ? A vegetable juice of the finest yellow color, brought to Europe, in a concrete state, from Cambodia, in the East Indies.

How is Birdlime made ? This viscous substance is procured from the holly bark.

What is Guaiacum ? Guaiacum (or *lignum vitæ*) grows both in Africa and America ; its wood is used by turners ; and its resin in medicine, on account of its warm stimulating qualities.

What is Putty ? A paste used by glaziers and house-painters, made of whiting, linseed oil, and white-lead. What is



**Turpentine?** A resin which flows either by incision or spontaneously from the larch, pine, and fir: turpentine is valuable in medicinal cases, and its oil, called spirits of turpentine, is useful in many different cases.

**What is Pounce?** Gum sandarac reduced to a fine powder, and used to prevent the sinking of paper after the erasure of writing.

**What is Emery?** A combination of iron and other substances, found in large masses, extremely hard and heavy: emery is prepared by grinding in mills; the powder thus procured is separated into three sorts, each kind differing in fineness; they are used by artificers, to polish and burnish iron and steel, and for cutting and scalloping glass.

**What is Ambergris?** Ambergris (or gray amber) is a perfume found in the intestines of the spermaceti whale, or floating on the sea; it is an unctuous solid body of an ash color: the Europeans value it only as a scent; the Asiatics and Africans use it in cookery.

**What are Resins?** They are thick juices oozing from pines and firs: mastic is the resin of the lentisk-tree, chiefly procured from the isle of Chios. Storax is also a medicinal resin, which flows from incisions made in a nut-tree of the same name; resins are distinguished from gums by being more sulphureous.

**Whence is Sulphur procured?** It is dug out of the earth in many places, but chiefly in Italy, Sicily, and South America; it is generally of a yellow color, hard, and brittle: sulphur vapors have the property of bleaching any substance.

**What is meant by Flours of Sulphur?** A fine powder into which sulphur is volatilized, by an exposure to excessive heat.

**What are Spirits of Wine?** Brandy rectified (or distilled) over again.

**What is Æther?** Æther is made by distilling acids with rectified spirits of wine.

**What is Manganese?** A metal found in great abundance in most parts of Europe, particularly in Sweden and Germany: its ore is used by glass manufacturers, to remove the greenish hue seen in white glass.

**What is Copal?** A gum of the resinous kind, the juice of a tree growing in New Spain; mixed with spirits of turpentine, it makes a well-known transparent varnish.

**How is Gunpowder made?** It is composed of saltpetre, sulphur, and charcoal. The saltpetre makes its strength, the sulphur serves to inflame the whole, and the charcoal prevents its too sudden extinction.

How is Starch made? By steeping wheat in water until the husk is softened; it is then pressed through canvass bags, and the liquid is allowed to subside, in shallow vessels. The water is then poured off, and the white powder which remains at the bottom is dried, and is *starch*. It was first used in England for stiffening linen in Mary's time: hair-powder is made from it.

Whence have we Musk? This perfume, used also medicinally, is produced from an animal about the size of a common goat, a native of Tonquin, China, Bantam, and also of Thibet: the musk of Thibet is esteemed the least adulterated.

What is Gas? An elastic aerial fluid, of which there are different kinds; some being acid, as carbonic acid; some alkalies, as ammonia, etc. Gas-light is produced by gas burning in lamps. The gas is conveyed away by pipes, and burnt at the orifice of escape: it is produced either from pit-coal or whale-oil.

What is Steam? A vapor that arises from the application of heat to water or any other fluid. The expansive force of steam has supplied a power to the mechanist, which is now applied to navigation, land-carriage, artillery, and every description of work requiring considerable power.

How is Arrow-root made, and what is it? It is a root which grows in the West Indies, the island of Madeira, the Bermudas, and some of the southern states. When fit for use, it throws up long shoots from the root, which grow higher than the other leaves of the plant, and as straight as an arrow, from which it takes its name. The roots are dug when ripe, ground in a mill, and then mixed with water until of the consistence of thin paste. This is then strained and wrung out perfectly dry, through canvass. The dry pulp is thrown away. The juice subsides as starch; the water is poured off, and the powder again mixed with water and strained: this is repeated several times, until the powder is perfectly white and pure, when it is dried and put up for sale. The best is from the West Indies, dried by the sun.

What is Wax? It is the farina or pollen of flowers, which is eaten by the bees, and is converted by an animal process into wax. All wax is one color, however variously colored the farina from which it is produced; and this whiteness is injured by age, and in time is altogether lost. When wax is simply melted, it is yellow. What is Cheese? Milk or cream warmed, and then curdled by the aid of rennet, which is the stomach of a calf, perfectly well cleaned and prepared. The milk or cream is thus divided into two parts; the curds, or thick, coagulated part, and the whey, or watery part. The curds are pressed as

dry as possible, salted, and then formed into large masses, which are put into moulds or vats, and then pressed down tightly to form the cheese. Whence is Saltpetre procured? It is found in earthy substances, but sometimes it is gathered native and pure. Large quantities are brought from the East Indies; it is considered as a distinct species of salt. What are its uses? It is used for preserving meat, as an ingredient in glass-making, and has the peculiar property of possessing a strong inflammable quality. What is Charcoal? It is wood half burnt, or charred; the wood is cut into proper lengths, then heaped up into piles, which are covered with turf, and then well coated with a plaster made of earth and charcoal-dust, leaving only a few vent-holes for the flames to issue from. At the end of two or three days, the wood is sufficiently charred, the holes are then stopped up, and the fire consequently goes out. What are the different uses of charcoal? It is used in making gunpowder, being first reduced to powder, and in all arts and manufactories where a strong fire is required without smoke. Its powder is useful in polishing, and makes the best tooth-powder known. What is Wine? The fermented juice of fruits: of these there is a great variety; but the wine made from grapes is esteemed the most valuable. What is fermentation? The state into which vegetable substances pass when deprived of the vital principle. There are three kinds of fermentation, that sometimes succeed one another: first, the vinous or spirituous; second, the acetous or acid; third, the putrid fermentation. The first produces wine, the second vinegar, and the third is when the substance, whatever it is, is spoiled. What is Cider? The expressed juice of apples, without any admixture of water, or any other ingredient. When first drawn from the fruit, the juice is perfectly sweet, but in a few hours it ferments; and a clear, vinous, or spirituous liquor is obtained. What is Arrack? It is procured by distillation from a vegetable juice, called toddy, which flows by incision from the cocoanut-tree. In Batavia, the same name is given to a spirit distilled from a mixture of rice, sugar, and water. What is the method of procuring Toddy? The Indians provide themselves with several round, earthen pots, and fasten them around the cocoanut-tree, making incisions near the mouth of each. The next morning the jars are found full of a sweet liquor, which, when allowed to stand, quickly ferments, and is then distilled into arrack. What is Amber? Its exact origin has not yet been ascertained: by some it is thought a mineral production; by others a vegetable gum. It is often found floating in the sea, and is continually dug from mines. It



has a very striking property, in its power of attracting all light substances, such as paper, which from a certain distance fly towards the amber, when heated by friction, and stick to it. What is Ambergris? It is found floating in the sea, but more commonly in the intestines of a particular kind of whale. It was formerly used as a medicine, but now only as a perfume; in its scent, it somewhat resembles musk. What is Musk? A dark-colored substance, obtained from an animal called moschus, or the musk. It is found in a pouch, under the tail. What is Alum? A mineral salt, extracted from certain clayey earths, by calcination, or burning. Near Whitby, in Yorkshire, the principal English alum-works are situated. The ore, or earth, is laid up in heaps, and burnt with wood, until it becomes white; it is then macerated, or steeped in water, for some time. This water is afterwards boiled for twenty-four hours, then allowed to stand, that all the gross parts may subside to the bottom; when clear it runs into coolers, where the alum crystallizes, or forms itself into a transparent substance. What are the principal uses of alum? It is used to fix the colors in dying; also in the process of tanning; is added to tallow, to give candles hardness; and is much employed in medicine. How is China-ware or Porcelain made? It is composed of two ingredients—a certain hard rocky stone, called silix, ground to a very fine powder, and mixed with a white earthy substance, or clay. These are thrown into a well-paved pit, and kneaded together, generally by the feet of the workmen; from this mass a small quantity is taken, and separately kneaded, till it comes to a proper state for moulding. This paste passes through the hands of some twenty workmen, each of whom assists in shaping it; artists then sketch and paint the outside of the vessel, in the manner directed: it is then placed in a small wooden frame, each article separate, and baked in the furnace. What are Bricks? They are formed from a composition of a rich yellowish earth, called loam, shaped in a wooden mould: next partially dried, by being placed in rows in the open air, and then piled up into separate heaps, and properly burnt. When used for building, they are joined together, or cemented by mortar. What is Mortar? A due mixture of lime and sand with water, to which some cut horse-hair is generally added, which serves to bind or connect the mortar. What is Leather? The skin of cattle; the hair is taken off by steeping the skin in lime-water, and then scraping it clean with a knife and pumice-stone: it is then stretched in a pit, covered with tan, or oak bark, and the pit filled with water; this process changes the

skin into leather. After tanning, it is sold to the currier, who, by various operations of scouring, greasing, waxing, sizing, and blacking, finishes it for the use of shoemakers, saddlers, etc. What is Morocco Leather? The skin of a goat, dressed in sumach; a shrub yielding a certain juice. What are Pens? The quills or strong wing-feathers of the goose. What sort of a plant is the Tobacco Plant? It is propagated by seed, and requires being frequently watered, and much sheltered from the excessive heat of the sun. When it has attained maturity, it is cut down, and hung in the shade to dry; when dried, the leaves are pulled off the stalks and made up into bundles; they are then steeped in sea-water, and afterwards formed into ropes, by winding them around a stick: it is then cut up for smoking, or dried and powdered for snuff. What is Coral? It is solely of animal origin, and produced by a species of polypus, which is supposed to form the coral for its habitation; and thus a constant supply of this admired substance is continually forming. Where is it found? On rocks at a considerable depth in the sea, where it is regularly gathered by established collectors, who call themselves coral-fishermen. The principal coral fisheries are at Marseilles, in France, and the straits of Messina. What are Needles and Pins made of? Needles are made of steel, and Pins of brass wire, afterwards whitened, by lying in a solution of tin and lees, or dregs of wine. What is Allspice? It has obtained its name from being supposed to possess the flavor of all the spices; its proper name is pimento, and it grows in large quantities in Jamaica, and in most other parts of the West Indies. What is Liquorice? The juice of a plant of the same name, that is cultivated in England; it is planted by slips, in April or May, and at three years old is considered fit for being dug up: from the long sticky roots the sirup is extracted, and formed into small cakes.

What is the Butter-tree? A remarkable plant found in the interior of Africa, yielding from its kernels, by pressure, a white, firm, rich butter, which even in that climate will keep well for a year without salt. What is Assafoetida? A gum-resin obtained from the root of a plant growing in Persia, used medically. What is Papier-Maché? A name given to articles manufactured of the pulp of paper, or of sheets of paper pasted or glued and powerfully pressed together, so as to acquire, when dry, the hardness of board: tea-trays, waiters, etc., are thus prepared, often beautifully ornamented by figures and landscapes, and occasionally inlaid with mother-of-pearl. The chief papier-maché manufactories are in England. What is Tar?

A dark-brown liquid obtained by heating the wood of the fir-tree; when boiled, it is converted into pitch. What is Emery? A mineral characterized by excessive hardness; brought from Cape Emeri, in the island of Naxos. Its powder is used for cutting and polishing glass, gems, and all hard substances. What is Cobalt? A brittle metal, of a reddish gray color, found in the Swedish mines; when diluted by fusion with glass or borax, a blue color is produced, permanent at a very high temperature, which renders it an invaluable article in the manufacture of porcelain and pottery. What is Marble? A name given to the varieties of granular stone susceptible of a very fine polish. The most valuable sorts used by the ancients were the Pentelican, which was white, and obtained from Mount Pentiles, in Africa; and the Parian, also white, from the island of Paros. The black marbles most used were the Numidian. The quarries of Carrara now almost supply the world with white marble. What is Sepia? A species of pigment prepared from a black juice secreted by certain glands of the septia, or cuttle-fish, which the animal ejects, both to darken the water when it is pursued, and as a direct means of annoyance. It was used as an ink by the ancients, and when prepared with caustic ley, forms a beautiful brown color, with a fine grain, and has given name to a species of drawing, now extensively cultivated for landscapes, and other branches of the fine arts. What is Verdigris? A blue-green pigment, originally prepared in the south of France, by covering copper plates with the refuse of the grape after the expression of the juice for wine. What is Guano? A substance found upon certain small islands in the South sea, which are the resort of large flocks of birds, and chiefly composed of their excrement: it is said to form beds fifty to sixty feet in thickness, and is an excellent manure. What is the Telescope? An optical instrument for viewing distant objects: this invention, to which practical astronomy is indebted for its most important discoveries, has been ascribed to various persons, though many agree that Roger Bacon was the inventor; it was afterwards improved by Galileo, who first made a practical use of it. Telescopes are of two kinds, refracting and reflecting; the former depending on the use of proper lenses, through which the rays of light pass, and the latter on the use of specula, or polished metallic mirrors, which reflect the rays; an inverted image of the object being formed in both cases, in the focus of the lens or mirror. What is the Telegraph? The name given to a mechanical contrivance for the rapid communication of intelligence by signals.



# QUESTIONS

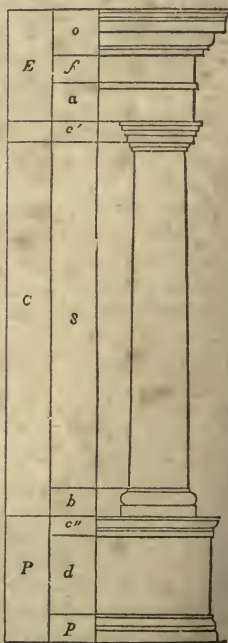
## ON

### ARCHITECTURE.

---

WHAT is Architecture? Architecture is that science which teaches us to construct buildings according to established rules. Almost every nation has its own manner of arranging the parts of those buildings required for residence or worship; and it is to designate these different parts that we are about to study the terms applied to them. Which is the first style of architecture to be noticed? The Grecian, in which there are three orders; the Doric, Ionic, and Corinthian. What do the names of these orders signify? The Doric denominates strength, the Ionic beauty and elegance, the Corinthian luxuriance and grace. What is the first thing to be understood? The names of the different parts of a column. How are these divided? First, into three parts: the entablature, the column, and the pedestal; and each of these three parts into three others, as shown in the diagram, (Fig. 1.) The entablature (*E*) consists of the cornice, (*c*), the frieze, (*f*), and the architrave, (*a*.) The column (*C*) is divided into the capital, (*c'*), the shaft, (*s*), and the base, (*b*.) The pedestal (*P*) is made up of the cornice, (*c''*), the die, (*d*), and the plinth, (*p*.) All of these divisions consist of two or more mouldings, the forms of which are suited to the order in which they are introduced. It is of the greatest consequence that the column, entablature, and pedestal, should be so formed as to have a uniform character. When was architecture studied by the Romans? At an early period of their history. When was the temple of Jupi-

Fig. 1.



ter commenced? The ancient temple of Jupiter, in the Capitol, was commenced during the reign of the elder Tarquin, by Etruscan workmen. Did the Romans adopt the three orders of Grecian architecture? Yes, and they also introduced two others; the Tuscan, a slight alteration from the Doric, and the Composite, a slight alteration from the Corinthian; thus making the five orders of architecture generally spoken of. What may be said if we compare the architecture of the two nations? That the Grecian was remarkable for the beauty of its proportions and the simplicity and elegance of its decorations; the Roman for the redundance of its ornament.

What is the form of the Doric column? It is represented in figure No. 2. The Grecian Doric is almost universally made without a base; but the Roman has one in nearly every instance. What

was the first style of architecture used in Greece? The Doric, said to be so called from Dorus, son of Helena, king of Achaia and Peloponnesus; or from the Dorians, a Grecian tribe living to the north of the gulf of Corinth. What fable is told to account for the dimensions of this column? A party of Greeks having been sent under Ilion to colonize that part of Asia before inhabited by the Carians and Seleges, built the cities of Ephesus, Miletus, and others. They then determined to erect a temple to Apollo; and wishing to

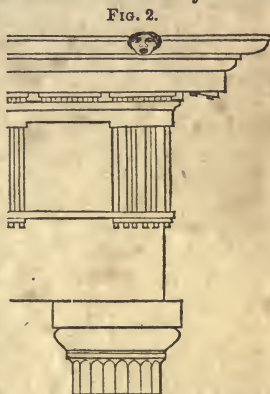


FIG. 2.

Doric Capital and Entablature.

build it with columns, of which they did not know the proper proportions, they measured a man's foot, and finding it the sixth part of his height, they gave the column a similar proportion; that is, they made its height, including the capital, six times the thickness of the shaft measured at its base. Thus the Doric order obtained its proportions, strength, and beauty, from man, the perfection of creative power and wisdom. Describe the Doric order. The shaft is sometimes quite plain, and sometimes fluted at the top and bottom, but more frequently through its whole length. The frieze is ornamented at intervals, with two whole and two half channels, called (*a a*) triglyphs. The interval between the triglyphs is called a metope, (*b.*) How is the metope ornamented? It is sometimes left plain and sometimes ornamented with sculptures. What were the sculptures

used for this purpose? The skull of an ox, pateras, garlands, and gladiators, were commonly introduced by the ancients. What is a Patera? It is the representation of a cup or goblet, executed in bas-relief; that is, sculptured work projecting less than half its proportion from the surface. Which is the most ancient Doric temple with which we are acquainted? That at Corinth; but the most beautiful is that of Minerva, called the Parthenon, at Athens. Describe it. It is of a rectangular form, 288 feet in length, and 108 feet in breadth. It has eight columns in front, and seventeen on each side, including those at the angles. It was built during the time of Pericles, and under the direction of Phidias. What is the Tuscan order? It is a modification of the Doric. It was invented, or rather devised, by the Romans. When was Roman architecture at its highest pitch of excellence? In the days of the emperor Augustus, who boasted that he had found the capital a combination of buildings formed of clay, and transformed them into marble. When did it degenerate again? In the reigns of Tiberius, Caligula, and Claudius; and Nero, though he erected a building called the Golden Mansion, had no idea of any other kind of beauty than that of gaudy decoration. When did it again revive? During the reign of Trajan. Apollodorus, who lived at this time, was one of the most celebrated Roman architects; and if we may judge from Trajan's column, deserved these honors. Describe this column. It is formed of Parian marble, and, including the pedestal, is 125 feet high. The blocks are of immense size, as may be imagined, for the pedestal consists of only seven, and the column of nineteen; each of the whole diameter. How is this column ascended? By steps within, cut out of the solid marble; on it was a statue of the emperor, but this has been removed. The pedestal is ornamented with trophies and arms, and crowned with festoons supported by eagles. Which is the most perfect specimen of the Tuscan order in England? The portico of St. Paul's church. What is the most characteristic feature of the Ionic order? The capital: it consists of four spiral projections, called volutes, (*a a*) Fig. 4; two of which are placed in front and two at the

FIG. 3.

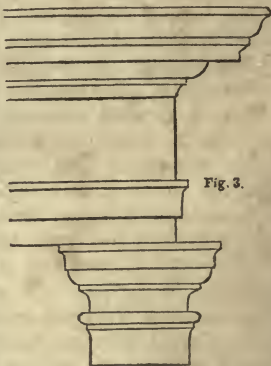
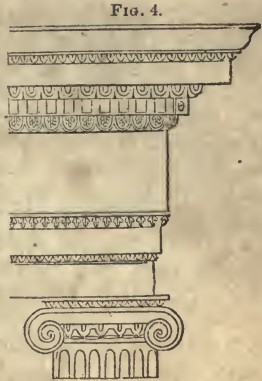


Fig. 3.

Entablature and Capital of the Tuscan.



back of the column. The capital was more or less decorated by the ancients according to the taste of the architect, or the purpose to which the building was to be applied. To whom is the invention of the Ionic order attributed? To the Ionians, who, desiring to erect a temple to Diana, required a lighter and more elegant style than the Doric: seeking a new proportion, they used the female figure; and to produce a more lofty effect, made the height of the column eight times the thickness. Under it they placed a base, in the manner of a shoe to the foot; they also added volutes to the capital, like



Entablature and Capital of the Ionic.

graceful curling hair on each side; and the front they ornamented with cymatia and festoons in the place of hair. On the shaft they sunk channels, which bear a resemblance to the folds of a garment. Where was there a famous temple of this order in the days of the apostles? At Ephesus, dedicated to Diana, to whom the Ephesians paid idolatrous worship. What were its dimensions? It is said to have been 425 feet long, and 220 feet broad; and the columns were 60 feet high. It was designed by Ctesiphon, and was four hundred years in building; the expenses being paid by a tax upon all the Greek cities in Asia. Where are the finest specimens of the Ionic? The temples of Ilissus and Minerva Pallas, and the aqueduct of Hadrian, at Athens; the temple of Bacchus at Teos; and the temple of Minerva at Pirene.

Describe the Corinthian order. The capital of the Corinthian order consists of two rows of eight leaves each, attached to a bell-shaped mass, with angular volutes; between the volutes are placed two small spirals or helices. This is by far the richest of the Grecian capitals, and the other parts are made to correspond with it. The shaft is fluted, and the frieze is often enriched with sculptures. The cornice also is decorated, and the corona (a) is supported by carved medallions, with an ornamented scroll on each side, (b.) What is the Corinthian order said to have been suggested by? The Corinthian capital is said to have been suggested to Callimachus, its inventor, by observing the form in which an Acanthus plant had thrown itself. Repeat the story. A Corinthian young lady fell a victim to a violent disorder and died. After her burial, her

nurse collecting in a basket those articles to which she had a partiality when alive, carried them to her tomb, and placed a tile on the basket for the preservation of its contents. The basket was accidentally placed on the root of an Acanthus plant, which, pressed by the weight, shot forth in the spring of the year its stems and large foliage, and in the course of its growth, reached the angles of the tile, and thus formed volutes at the extremity. Callimachus happening to pass by was pleased with the graceful arrangement of the form, and from the hint thus received, he constructed the Corinthian capital. How is the Corinthian distinguished from the Ionic? By its capital and its proportions. Which are the best examples of the Corinthian? The Temple of the Winds, and the Arch of Hadrian at Athens. The Temple of Minerva, at Tegea, was built in this order, and was a superb building; but the city and its monuments were entirely destroyed.

What is the Composite order? It was never considered by the ancients as a distinct order, but as a modification of the Corinthian. How does it differ from the Corinthian? Chiefly in the form of the capital, which is a union of the volutes of the Ionic, with the foliage of the Corinthian. What has now been explained? The five orders of Architecture as they are called, though in fact there are but three.

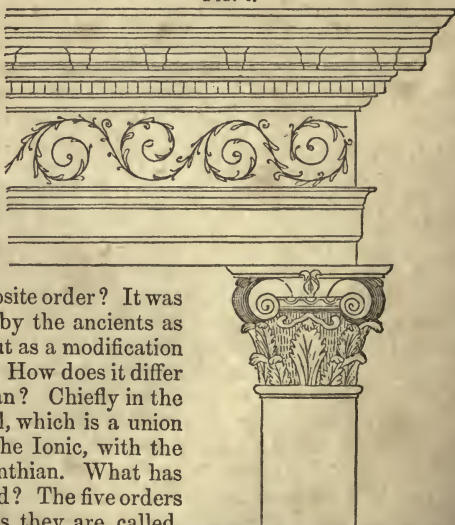
We shall now go on to an alphabetical list of some of the

FIG. 5.



Entablature and Capital of the Corinthian.

FIG. 6.



Entablature and Capital of the Composite.

principal technical terms used in Grecian architecture, so as to enable the pupil to name the several members, before we describe the Gothic style.

DEFINITION OF TERMS USED IN GRECIAN ARCHITECTURE.

*Abacus*.—The upper member of the capital of a column. It is sometimes square and sometimes curved, forming on the plan segments of a circle, an ornament being introduced in their centres. In Gothic pillars it has a great variety of forms.

*Amphiprostyle*.—A building having a portico at both ends.

*Amphitheatre*.—A theatre of an elliptical form, or in other words, a double theatre, produced by building two, end to end.

*Ancones*, or *Trusses*.—Ornaments in the cornice of an Ionic doorway, resembling medallions placed vertically.

*Annulet*.—The mouldings at the lower part of the echinus in Doric capitals. A small square moulding used to separate other mouldings.

*Antæ*.—Square pillars, or pilasters attached to a wall. They have capitals different from those of the columns to which they are attached.

*Apophyge*.—The small fascia by which the shaft is attached to the fillet of the base.

*Apteral*.—A temple which is built without columns at the sides.

*Areastyle*.—An arrangement of columns when four diameters are allowed between them.

*Architrave*.—The lowest member of the entablature; also, mouldings round doors and windows.

*Archivolt*.—The interior face of an arch, between the imposts.

*Arris*.—The meeting of two surfaces producing an angle.

*Area*.—An open space within a building.

*Astragal*.—A semicircular moulding.

*Attic*.—A small height of panneling above the cornice; also, the upper story of a house, when the walls are perpendicular.

*Balcony*.—A projection from the face of a wall supported by columns or consoles, and usually surrounded by a balustrade.

*Balustur*.—A small pillar, the form of which may be altered at pleasure; used in balustrades.

*Band*.—A moulding with a square profile.

*Bandelet*.—A very narrow moulding of the same form as a band.

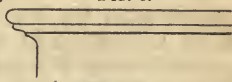
*Base*.—That part of the column on which the shaft rests. The term is also used to signify the lower part of a wall.

FIG. 7.



Abacus.

FIG. 8.



Astragal.



*Battlement.*—A notched or indented parapet.

*Blocking Course.*—A course of masonry above a cornice.

*Bracket.*—A projection from the face of a wall to carry sculpture, or support some weight.

*Branches.*—The ribs of a groined roof.

*Cable.*—A twisted moulding representing a cable.

*Caissons.*—Sunk panels in ceilings, or in soffits.

*Campana.*—That part of a Corinthian capital on which the leaves are placed.

*Cantilevers.*—Trusses under the modillions of a frieze.

*Capital.*—That part of a column which rests on the shaft.

*Cartouches.*—Modillions or blocks, supporting the eaves of a house.

*Casement.*—The frame of a window or light; also, a moulding the same as the scotia.

*Cavetto.*—A hollow moulding, one-quarter of a circle.

*Channel.*—A canal or groove sunk in the face of any work.

*Colonnade.*—A row of columns, supporting an entablature.

*Column.*—A round pillar having a shaft and capital, and generally a base.

*Coping.*—A sloping stone on the top of a wall to throw off rain-water.

*Corbel.*—A projection from the face of a wall to carry a weight, and generally ornamented.

*Cornice.*—The upper division of an entablature composed of several members, and varying according to the order.

*Corona.*—A large square member of a cornice between the cymatium and bed-mouldings. It is intended to protect the parts beneath it, and has a considerable projection. It is sometimes called the *larmier*, but more frequently the *drip*.

*Cyma-recta.*—A compound moulding, hollow in the upper, round in the lower part.

*Cyma-reversa.*—A moulding the reverse of the cyma-recta.

*Cymatium.*—The upper moulding of an entablature.

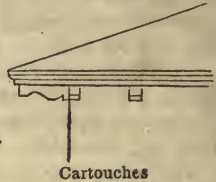
*Dando, or Die.*—The plain part of a pedestal.

FIG. 9.



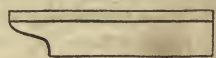
Battlement.

FIG. 10.



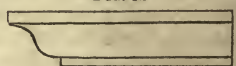
Cartouches

FIG. 11.



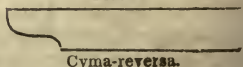
Cavetto.

FIG. 12



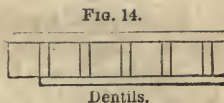
Cyma-recta.

FIG. 13.



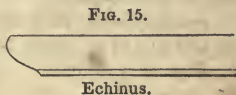
Cyma-reversa.

*Dentils.*—Square, projecting blocks, in the bed-mould of the Ionic, Corinthian, and Composite entablatures. They are so called from a fancied resemblance to a row of teeth.



*Dodcastyle.*—A building with twelve columns in front.

*Echinus.*—An egg-shaped ornament in the Ionic capital.



*Entablature.*—The uppermost division of a column, supported by the shaft.

*Enstyle.*—Two and a quarter dimensions between the columns.

*Façade.*—The elevation or front view of the principal front of any building.

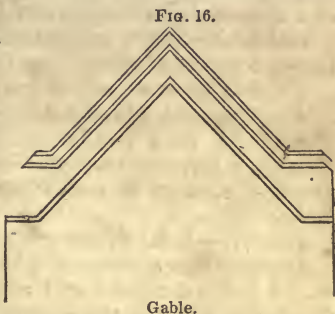
*Fascia, or Facia.*—A broad flat member, in an architrave, cornice, or pedestal.

*Fillet.*—A small square member, dividing mouldings.

*Flutings.*—Perpendicular channels in the shaft of a column.

*Frieze.*—The middle division of an entablature.

*Gable.*—The triangular masonry or wood-work at the end of a roof. Some of the old gable-ends are curiously carved.



*Glyphs.*—Vertical channels in the Doric frieze.

*Guttæ.*—Ornaments resembling drops, under the mutules of the Doric entablature.



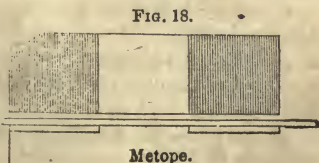
*Heptastyle.*—A building with seven columns in front.

*Hexastyle.*—A building with six columns in front.

*Impost.*—The abacus which crowns a pilaster or pier, and from which the arch springs; also, the capital of a pilaster which sustains the arch.

*Intercolumniation.*—The distance between one column and another.

*Metope.*—The interval between the triglyphs in a Doric frieze, often ornamented with sculptures.



*Modillion*.—An ornament in the Corinthian and Composite orders, resembling a bracket.

*Mutule*.—Small block ornaments, under the corona in the Doric order.

*Ovolo*.—A convex moulding, a quarter of a circle, and sometimes called the quarter round.

*Parapet*.—A wall about breast-high, at the top of a house, or on a bridge, intended as a defence. It is sometimes ornamented, and sometimes plain.

*Patero*.—An ornament in a frieze, resembling a goblet.

*Pedestal*.—A square piece of masonry, supporting the base of a column, and consisting of a base, die, and cornice.

*Pediment*.—The triangular form above the columns, in the front and back of a building; also the same over windows and doors.

*Pentastyle*.—A portico of five columns.

*Peripteral*.—A temple having columns all around it.

*Pier*.—A solid pilaster or column, from which an arch springs, or carrying a weight; also, the solid mass between the doors or windows of a building, or between the arches of a bridge.

*Pilaster*.—A flat square projection, attached to a wall.

*Pillar*.—This term is not synonymous with the word column. In the latter, a regular and almost undeviating proportion is maintained between the several parts; but in the former, the same arrangement of parts is not adopted.

*Plat Band*.—A square member with a projection less than either the height or breadth.

*Plinth*.—A solid mass under the base of a column.

*Podium*.—A running pedestal, supporting a series of columns around a building.

*Portico*.—A horizontal projection in the front of a building, supported by columns.

*Rustic*.—Stone or composition work, channelled vertically and horizontally.

*Scotia*.—A hollow moulding, chiefly used in the base of the Ionic column.

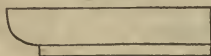
*Scroll*.—A spiral; the volute of an Ionic capital.

*Shaft*.—That part of a column between the base and capital.

*Tetrastyle*.—A building with four columns in front.

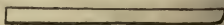
*Torus*.—A semicircular moulding.

FIG. 19.



Ovolo.

FIG. 20.



Torus



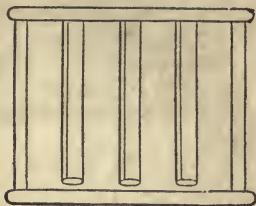
*Triglyphs.*—The vertical channels in a Doric frieze.

*Tympanum.*—The triangular surface enclosed by the pediment. In the ancient temples, it was frequently decorated with sculptures.

*Vestibule.*—A large hall, or passage.

*Volutes.*—The spirals upon an Ionic capital.

FIG. 21



Triglyph.

Before proceeding to a description of Gothic architecture, we give the alphabetical list of the terms peculiarly adapted to it, with the hope that this arrangement will render it easy to continue the study with the account of Gothic architecture.

DEFINITION OF TERMS USED IN GOTHIC AND CHURCH ARCHITECTURE.

*Aisles.*—The spaces on each side the nave.

*Almery.*—A niche, or closet, introduced in the walls of churches or cathedrals, intended for the keeping of valuable articles belonging to the religious service.

*Almonry.*—The building in which alms are distributed.

*Amb.*—A pulpit, or raised platform.

*Arch-Buttress, or Flying-Buttress.*—An arch introduced for the purpose of supporting, or appearing to support, a spire, or one springing over the roof of an aisle, and abutting against the wall of the clerestory.

*Aspersorium.*—The holy-water basin.

*Auditorium.*—The nave, or body of the church, where the people meet for worship.

*Baptistry.*—The place in which the rite of baptism is performed.

*Bartizan.*—A turret over the roof, and within the parapet of a building.

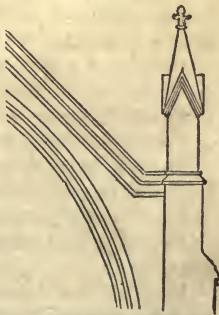
*Battlement.*—An indented and sometimes perforated parapet.

FIG. 22.



Almery.

FIG. 23.



Arch-Buttress, or Flying-Buttress.

*Bay*.—The space between the ribs of a groined roof; also, the part of a window between the mullions.

*Bay Window*.—A projecting window rising from the ground, or basement, in a semi-octagon, semi-hexagon, or polygonal form.

*Belfry*.—A tower provided with bells.

*Benetier*.—A vessel for holy-water, usually placed at the entrance of a church.

*Billet-Moulding*.—Cylindrical blocks, placed at a short but equal distance from each other, in a hollow moulding.

*Bass*.—A carved ornament at the intersection of the ribs, in a groined roof.

*Brasses*.—Brass plates let into the pavement of ecclesiastical buildings, over or near tombs. All of these have an engraving of some sort, and many of them are admirably designed and elaborately engraven.

*Buttress*.—A projection from the wall, built between the windows and at the angles of a building, having the double purpose, in Gothic architecture, of strength and ornament. They are of various forms, according to the style of architecture.

*Cable-Moulding*.—A moulding used in Norman architecture, and deriving its name from its form, resembling a cable, or large rope.

*Canopy*.—An ornamental projection over doors, windows, and niches, chiefly introduced in the decorated and perpendicular English.

*Carol*.—A small closet in a cloister.

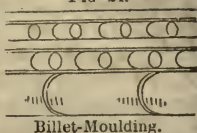
*Catharine-Wheel Window*.—A circular window, usually with a rich radiating tracery.

*Chapels*.—Small buildings attached to cathedrals and large churches. Many of these are executed in a splendid manner. That of Henry VII., at Westminster, is a fine example.

*Chantry*.—A small chapel at the side of a church.

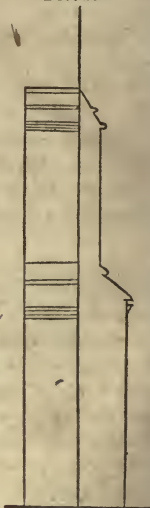
*Choir*.—The space eastward of the cross in churches having that form, and between the nave and high altar.

FIG. 24.



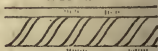
Billet-Moulding.

FIG. 25.



Buttress.

FIG. 26.



Cable-Moulding.

FIG. 27.



Canopy.

*Chevron, or Zigzag.*—A moulding characteristic of Norman buildings.

FIG. 28.



Chevron, or Zigzag

*Cinquefoil.*—An ornament representing the leaves of a flower, or leaf, used in Gothic architecture.

FIG. 29.



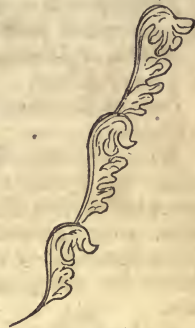
Cinquefoil

*Clerestory.*—The upper story or row of windows in a Gothic church.

*Cloisters.*—Covered passage-ways to different parts of an ecclesiastical building.

*Crocket.*—An ornament representing a bunch of flowers, or foliage, chiefly used at the angles of pinnacles and canopies.

FIG. 30.



Crocket.

*Crypt.*—A vaulted chamber under a church, generally under the eastern end; and used either as a place of sepulture, an oratory, or baptistry.

*Cusps.*—The ornaments at the points of the tracery in Gothic windows; or, according to some, the small arcs which the ornaments terminate.

*Donjon, or Keep.*—A massive tower in ancient castles, usually in the centre, to which the garrison retired as their last defence, when the outworks were taken.

*Dovetail-Moulding.*—A characteristic Norman moulding.

FIG. 31.



Dovetail-Moulding.

*Dungeon.*—The vault for prisoners, usually the basement of the donjon.

*Embrasure, or Crenelle.*—A splayed opening in a wall; an opening in a battlement.

*Feathering, or Foliation.*—Small arcs, or foils, in the tracery of Gothic windows. According to the numbers uniting, they are called trefoils, quatrefoils, cinquefoils, or multifoils.

*Finial.*—The ornament which crowns a pinnacle or canopy.

*Font.*—The vase used for water, in baptism.

*Gablet.*—A small gable in screens, etc.

*Gargoyle.*—A projecting water-spout, generally ornamented with the head of a man, a monster, or some appropriate emblem.

FIG. 32.



Gargoyle.

*Groin.*—The lines formed by the intersection of two or more vaults.

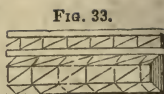
*Hatched-Moulding.*—A moulding used in Norman architecture, with ornaments of a



triangular form, and having the appearance of being cut with a hatchet.

*Hovel*.—A niche, or canopy, for a statue.

*Jube*.—A gallery, or rood-loft, over the choir, to the front of which the pulpit was generally attached.



Hatched-Moulding.

*Keep*.—The most elevated and innermost tower of a castle.

*Knob*.—The boss at the crowning of a groin.

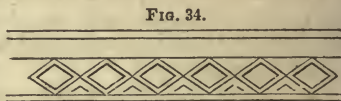
*Label, or Hood-Moulding*.—The outer moulding over doors or windows.

*Lavatory*.—A stone basin attached to the altar, used by the Romish priests during mass, to dip or wash their hands in.

*Lettern, or Lectern*.—A reading-desk, commonly of brass, and of a fanciful form.

*Lozenge-Moulding*.—A moulding used in Norman architecture particularly.

*Machicolations*.—The perpendicular openings left between the corbels of a battlement, over gateways and doors, intended to afford facilities for annoying assailants.



Lozenge-Moulding.

*Merlon*.—The solid part of an embattled parapet.

*Misereres*.—Shelving seats, in the stalls of churches and cathedrals.

*Mullions*.—The upright shafts dividing a window into separate parts, or lights.

*Nave*.—The central division of a church between the aisles.

*Oratory*.—A private chapel for prayer.

*Oriel*.—A window projecting from a wall.

*Panel*.—A small compartment enclosed with mouldings, and generally decorated with an ornament or sculpture.

*Pendent*.—An ornament hanging from a roof.

*Perches*.—Brackets in churches for images or candlesticks.

*Pix*.—The shrine to hold the *host*, or consecrated wafer; in the shape of a candlestick, surmounted by a circular glass case, with gilt rays diverging from it.

*Porch*.—A small covered entrance into a building.



Oriel.

*Pinnacle.*—A small spire or pointed termination to towers, turrets, and buttresses, generally with four sides, and more or less ornamented.

FIG. 36



Pinnacle.

FIG. 37.



Quatrefoil.

*Quatrefoil.*—An ornament representing four leaves of a flower, formed within a circle.

*Rood.*—A cross with a figure of the Saviour on it.

*Rood-Loft.*—A gallery, generally over the screen, or at the entrance of the choir, in which a rood was in former times placed.

*Spire.*—The pyramidal structure crowning a tower or turret.

*Spandril.*—The triangular space between an arch and the right angle above it.

*Stalls.*—Elevated seats on the side of a choir in cathedrals, with canopies over them appropriated for ecclesiastics.

*Stancheon.*—The upright bar, or mullion, which divides a window into bays.

*Steeple.*—A tower rising above the roof of a church.

*Tabernacle.*—A stall, or niche, detached from the wall, with a canopy above it.

*Tablet.*—A projecting moulding, more particularly that under a window.

*Transept.*—That part of a church or cathedral which runs north and south, forming the arms of a cross.

*Tracery.*—The framework and ornament in the head of a window or screen.

*Transom.*—The horizontal bar dividing lights or panes.

*Trefoil.*—An ornament representing three leaves of a flower, formed within a circle.

FIG. 39.



Trefoil.

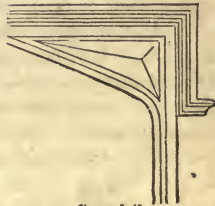
*Tudor Flower.*—An ornament much used in the time of the last two Henrys, (who were Tudors,) and frequently employed for open parapets.

*Undercroft.*—The crypt, or vault of a church.

*Weepers.*—The statues of grief, at the base of a tomb.

*Zigzag.*—See *Chevron*.

FIG. 38.



Spandril.

## GOTHIC ARCHITECTURE.

How is Gothic architecture distinguished from the Roman and Grecian? By the form of the arch, the irregularity of detail, and the want of constant proportions or decorations in the columns. In what other respect do they differ? By the lines: in Grecian architecture they are nearly all straight; in the Gothic they are nearly all curved. What is the difference of opinion about the origin of Gothic architecture? There have been so many different opinions that it is almost impossible to decide which has most claims to our belief. The term Gothic, or early English, as it is now more frequently called, is said by some to have been introduced by the Crusaders, and by them procured from the Saracens. Others assert it was brought by the Moors into Spain. What remains are there which would give color to this belief? There are some Gothic arches in Palestine, but they are supposed to have been erected by Europeans. Dr. Milnor accounts for the pointed arch on the supposition that the form was derived from the intersection of two semicircular arches. What styles should we remark on previous to speaking of the varieties of Gothic architecture? Of the Saxon and Norman, which immediately preceded the Gothic. Are there many remains of the Saxon buildings? No, there are very few, and those so dilapidated that it is difficult to form any precise opinion with regard to their style. Of what nature are those which now remain? Only huge square towers, without windows, battlements, or decorations of any kind; they are much larger at the bottom than at the top. Of what form were the Saxon churches? They consisted of a rectangular nave, with a portico at the western end; the eastern end was similar in form to the place of the tribune in the Basilica, and the nave was divided into three parts by two arcades, above which were galleries. Of what form were the arches? They were semicircular, and rose immediately from the capitals of the columns. The shafts of these were very massive, and generally cylindrical, though other forms were used. Which are the best examples of the Norman style in England? In London, the vestibule of the Temple church, the chapel of the Tower, and parts of St. Bartholomew's, Smithfield; Cherley church, in Derbyshire, Iffley church, and the nave of Rochester cathedral. What others are mentioned as particularly worthy of notice? The vestibule of the Chapter-house at Bristol, and the staircase leading to the registry of Canterbury cathedral. Where are



there other specimens of Norman architecture? The churches of some parts of Germany and France, erected during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. What is the Norman style said to have been derived from? The Romanesque, or Lombard, and to have received its distinct and permanent character about the year 1000. How are the peculiar characters described by Mr. Whewell? "The pier is a column or a mass of wall, not broken into shafts or vertical parts; the arch is cut square in the wall, with perhaps only one square face, but with no oblique group of mouldings, nor any correspondence between the parts of the archivolt and the pier—the former being, in fact, an architrave; and the window above is a perforation in the wall, with no necessary relation to the members below." How were the Norman churches usually erected? A square tower was usually built at the western end, which was the principal entrance. They were frequently ornamented with tiers of arches, occasionally intersecting each other, though commonly separate. When did Gothic architecture come into use in England? At the close of the twelfth century, in the reign of Henry the Second. How is this style divided? Into three classes, or orders, if they may be so called; the early English, the decorated English, and the perpendicular English. When was the second introduced? In the reign of Edward the First, in the beginning of the fourteenth century; and the third was introduced at the close of the same century, in the reign of Richard the Second. How is the Gothic characterized? By the pointed arch; by pillars which are extended so as to lose all trace of classical proportions; by shafts which are clustered together, of different thicknesses, side by side. What further peculiarities has it? Its mouldings, cornices, and capitals, have no longer the classical shapes and members; square edges, rectangular surfaces, pilasters, and entablatures, disappear; the elements of building become slender, and assume forms implying ease and variety. What further? The openings become the principal parts of the wall, and the other portions are subordinate to them. The pier is, in the most complete examples, a collection of vertical shafts, surrounding a pillar, the edges of which are no longer square. What peculiarity has the archivolt? It consists of members corresponding more or less to the members of the pier, and consequently is composed of a series of rounds and hollows, and loses all traces of its original rectangular section. How is the early English distinguished? By its pointed arches and long narrow windows, without mullions. When the style was first introduced, how was it mixed? It was mixed and debased

by the Norman; the buildings were massive, and the sharp, lancet-shaped windows were formed in rows, with rude columnar piers of the former period between them. Where is there an example of this? In Romsey church, Hampshire. What was the improvement after? As the second period advanced, the buildings became more florid, and assumed much of the character of the decorated English; the lancet windows and arches being carried by clustered columns with rich capitals and moulded bases: the nave of Lincoln cathedral, and the Northampton cross, erected to the memory of Queen Eleanor by Edward the First, are examples. What marks the best specimens of the first period? Neither mullions nor tracery are introduced. The towers are generally surmounted by a spire; flying-buttresses, and buttresses in diminishing stages are also characteristics. Which is the finest specimen of early English in that country? Salisbury cathedral, which, unlike any other building except Bath abbey, was commenced and finished in the same style; it is a perfect model of the architecture of the first period. What other fine specimens are there? Beverly minster, the fronts of Ely and Lincoln cathedrals, the transept of York minster, and a great part of Westminster, are of the same period. How are lancet-windows sometimes combined? Two, or more, are sometimes placed together, and the division between them is so small that they appear as one. There is a splendid example of this in the Chapter-house at Christ-church, Oxford. When did the second period of Gothic architecture commence, and how long did it continue? From the reign of Edward the First, at the beginning, to the reign of Richard the Second, at the close of the fourteenth century. How is it characterized? By the form and tracery of its large windows; the arches are divided by mullions, and the tracery is thrown into graceful curves, forming circles, and other curved figures. What is another peculiarity? Triangular canopies, crotched and finished, are also characteristic. What is another? The buttresses are singularly various, for they sometimes gradually diminish in size, and sometimes are the same throughout; sometimes they finish under the cornice, and again they are carried through and surmounted by pinnacles. Buttresses with triangular heads are very characteristic. What of the arch? The form of the arch cannot always be depended on; but the most characteristic is that formed on an equilateral triangle. What of the pinnacles? The pinnacles are generally square, and ornamented with crotchets and finials. What of the spires? The spires, when introduced, are similar to those of the earlier period, but

more enriched ; the parapets are pierced, or embattled. Which are the best specimens in England of the decorated or perfect English ? The nave of York minster, Beverly minster, and the interior of Exeter cathedral. When did the third period of Gothic architecture, or perpendicular English, commence ? At the close of the fourteenth century. Describe the characteristics. The mullions of the windows and the ornamental pannelings run in parallel lines, and form a complete distinction from the last style. From this it takes its name of perpendicular English. What objections are there to this name ? Some writers object to the term, as it gives no idea of the increased expansion of the windows, nor of the gorgeous fan-like tracery of the vaultings, nor of the heraldic description of the enrichments, which peculiarly distinguish this period. What of the arch ? The arch is generally formed of the segments of ellipses, and is consequently struck from four centres. What of the doors ? The doors, whatever the form of their arched heads may be, are inscribed in a square frame, with spandrels. The ribs of the groined ceilings are profusely decorated with rich tracery. What is another ornament peculiar to this style ? The figure of an angel with expanded wings, supporting a shield, or as a corbel, or a row of them as a cornice. What also occurs ? The rose and portcullis of Henry the Seventh also very frequently occurs ; the ornament called the Tudor flower, resembling an oak or strawberry leaf, is also frequently found as a finish to the cornice of rich screen-work, or over niches, as in St. Mary's church, Oxford. Which are among the beautiful examples in England ? Among the many beautiful examples of perpendicular English, or florid Gothic, may be mentioned the front of Westminster hall, St. George's chapel at Windsor, Henry the Seventh's chapel at Westminster, and King's College chapel, Cambridge. What of the Gothic buildings of the present day ? They are for the most part very imperfect specimens of the style, and too often we find the characteristics of two, if not of three styles, blended together. Is this a good style ? No ; as well might the architect place a Corinthian capital on a Doric shaft, as attempt to unite the characters and ornaments of the Gothic style ; and yet, from modern buildings, one might almost imagine that nothing was necessary in designing a Gothic church or house, but to make something very different from the Roman and Grecian.



## QUESTIONS

### ON HERALDRY.

---

WHAT is Heraldry? It is the science which teaches how to *blazon*, or explain in proper terms all that belongs to coats-of-arms; and how to *marshal*, or dispose regularly on a field, or *shield*, as the space (Fig. No. 1) is called on which the arms of a gentleman or nobleman are placed, or delineated. Is Heraldry of ancient origin? Yes, for we find from Homer, Virgil, and Ovid, that the ancient heroes had different figures on their shields, by which their persons were distinctly known; and Alexander the Great, desirous to honor those of his captains and soldiers who had done any glorious action, granted them certain badges to be borne on their armor, pennons, or banners, which should distinguish them from others; and these were handed down to their children, and any other person forbade to adopt them. Were not kingdoms and states, in the earlier ages, distinguished by particular symbols or signs? Yes, the Egyptians bore an ox, the Athenians an owl, the Goths a bear, the Romans an eagle, the Franks a lion, and the Saxons a horse, which still forms a portion of the arms of England. Who first among the more modern nations established family arms, or hereditary marks of honor? The emperor Henry l'Oiseleur, or the Fowler, who was raised to the imperial throne of the West in 920; and this science is better understood and observed to this day in Germany than elsewhere. Do we not hear of it earlier than this? Yes, Charlemagne and Frederick Barbarossa, as early as 800, digested it into an art and subjected it to rules. What does Menestrier assert with regard to tournaments and arms? He says that with tournaments came "*coats-of-arms*," which were a sort of livery made up of lists, fillets, or narrow pieces of stuff of different colors, displayed across the shield borne by the knights in those encounters; and from these came the *fess*, the *bend*, the *pale*, etc., which were the original *charges* of family arms, and which will be described in the plates. What may be concluded from this? That Heraldry, like most human inventions, was insensibly introduced and established; and that after having been rude and unsettled for ages, it was at last methodized, perfected, and fixed, by the

crusades and tournaments. Why were these marks of honor called "arms?" From their being principally worn in war and in tournaments, by military men, who had them engraved, embossed, or depicted, on shields, targets, banners, or other martial implements. Why are they also called "*coats-of-arms*?" From the custom of embroidering them on the *coats* worn over their armor, as the heralds do at this day. What are *Heralds*? It is a term supposed to be derived from "*Heer*," an army, and "*Healt*," a champion. The principal employment of heralds, in early times, was to demand redress of injuries from foreign powers, carry messages of amity or defiance, and proclaim war or peace;\* whence they came also to record or emblazon armorial bearings, and marshal or arrange great public ceremonies. When were they first introduced into England? In the days of chivalry; they were introduced from France, where they were in high repute, as also in Rome, and they soon became equally honored in England and Scotland. What was the chief of them called? King-of-arms, and was crowned at his installation to office by the sovereign himself; and as the sovereigns and lords had their *armiger*, or armor-bearer, so every herald had his *signifer*, or ancient, or, as he was called from the French, "*pursuivant*,"—that is, follower, or attendant. When were the Heralds of England incorporated into a college? By King Richard the Second, in 1450. The Earl-marshal of England is the superior of the college, and has the right of appointing the members of whom it consists, viz., three kings-at-arms, six heralds-at-arms, and four pursuivants. The kings are called Garter, Clarencieux, and Norroy. By whom were these instituted and created? Garter by King Henry V., to attend on the order of the garter. His color is *blue*; that of the provincial kings, as Clarencieux and Norroy are called, is *purple*. Clarencieux was ordained by King Edward IV., to arrange processions, etc., on the south side of the river Trent; and Norroy to the same office north of that river. What are the six heralds called? They are styled of York, Lancaster, Chester, Windsor, Richmond, and Somerset. What are the pursuivants called? Blue-Mantle, Rouge-Croix, Rouge-Dragon, and Port-Cullis; they bear their symbols on their coats. The meetings of the Heralds' college are called chapters, and matters are determined therein by a majority of voices. What is their employment at

\* For the manner in which these things were conducted, the ceremonies attending the introduction of a herald, etc., the student is referred to the admirable description by Sir Walter Scott, in "*Quentin Durward*," where the Duke of Burgundy sends his herald to Louis XI. of France.

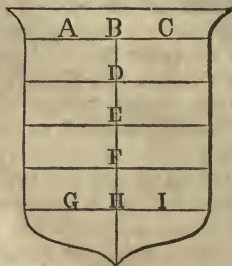
the present time, and how are they paid? They arrange all processions and ceremonies attending royal funerals, coronations, etc.; and each receives a salary from the crown. In the Heralds' office is kept a register of all the coats-of-arms of the royal family, the nobility, and gentry of England; and any person having a right by birth to a coat-of-arms, by proving his ancestry and name, may obtain a correct one, should he not have one in possession, by applying at the Heralds' office. While a herald or pursuivant has authority, should he see the coat-of-arms of any family emblazoned on a carriage, etc. belonging to a person not entitled to bear it, to erase it, wherever met with. How many kings-of-arms are there in Scotland? Only one, called "*Lyon*," from the cognizance of Scotland; and as early as 1371, at the coronation of Robert II., we find Lyon king-at-arms called in, with attendant heralds; and indeed it would seem that heralds are of greater antiquity in Scotland than in England. How are arms distinguished? By different names, to denote the causes of their bearing; such as arms of Dominion, of Pretension, of Concession, of Community, of Patronage, of Family, of Alliance, of Succession. Describe the first. Arms of Dominion, or Sovereignty, are those which emperors, kings, and sovereign states constantly bear, and which are, as it were, attached to the territories, kingdoms, and provinces they possess. Thus the three lions are the arms of England, the fleur-de-lis those of France, etc. Describe the second. Those of Pretension are those of kingdoms, territories, provinces, etc., which a prince or lord has some claim to, and which he adds to his own, although these kingdoms, etc. are possessed by a foreign prince, or other lord. Thus the kings of England have quartered the arms of France with their own ever since Edward the Third laid claim to the kingdom of France, in 1330, as the son of Isabella, sister to Charles le Beau, who died without issue. Describe the third. Arms of *Concession*, or augmentation of honor, are either entire arms, or else one or more figures, granted by princes as a reward for some extraordinary service. Thus we read that Robert Bruce, king of Scotland, allowed the Earl of Wintoun's ancestor to bear in his coat-of-arms a crown supported by a sword, to show that he and the clan Seaton, of which he was the head, supported his tottering crown by their swords; and Queen Anne granted to Sir Cloudesley Shovel, rear-admiral of England, a cheveron between two fleur-de-lis, in chief, and a crescent in base, to denote three great victories which he had obtained over the French and Turks. Describe the fourth. Arms of Community are those of bishoprics,



cities, universities, etc., which belong to the place, whoever may be at their head. Describe the fifth. Arms of Patronage are such as governors of provinces, lords of manors, patrons of benefices, etc., add to their family arms, as a token of their superiority, rights, and jurisdiction. These arms have introduced into Heraldry castles, gates, wheels, ploughs, rakes, etc. Describe the sixth. Arms of Family, or paternal arms, are those which belong to one particular family, and which no other persons have a right to assume. Describe the seventh. Arms of Alliance are those which families, or private persons, take up and join to their own, to show the alliances they have contracted by marriage. This sort of arms are *impaled*, or borne in an "*escutcheon of pretence*," by those who have married heiresses. Describe the eighth. Arms of Succession are such as are taken up by those who inherit certain estates, or manors, either by will, entail, or donation, and which they either impale or quarter with their own arms. These are the eight classes under which arms are generally arranged; but there is a sort which *blazoners*, or those who paint the coat-of-arms, call *assumptive arms*; being those which are assumed from mere caprice or fancy, without any right so to do. This is considered a great abuse of Heraldry, and is only allowed in Britain, or the United States; and never permitted on the continent of Europe.

What do we next proceed to? The escutcheons, tinctures, charges, and ornaments. What is the Escutcheon? It is the shield on which the figures which make up a coat-of-arms are represented, as seen in Fig. 1. (See plates.) These marks of distinction were originally put on bucklers or shields, before they were placed on banners, flags, etc.; they have been, and still are, of various shapes, according to the usages of different times and nations. What was the ancient form? Some were almost like a horse-shoe, others triangular; sometimes it had seven sides: the first of this shape is said to have been used by the famous triumvir, Marc Antony. That of knights *bannerets*, now called *Baronets*, was square like a banner. How are modern escutcheons generally formed? Those of the Italians, particularly ecclesiastics, are generally oval; but among the English they are generally formed as Fig. 1. How are the escutcheons of unmarried women and widows formed? In the shape of a lozenge. (See Fig. 2.) How do amorists distinguish the several points or parts of an escutcheon? By dividing them into several parts, as described here. *A* is the dexter chief; *B* the precise middle chief; *C* the sinister chief; *D* the honor point; *E* the ~~fez~~ point; *F* the nombril point;

*G* the dexter base; *H* the middle precise base; and *I* the sinister base. It is very necessary to remember these points, as arms are described by them; as, for instance, "a lion in dexter chief," "a fleur-de-lis in sinister chief," "three martlets in dexter base," etc.; you would understand that a lion is placed where the letter *A* is in the shield, etc.; always remembering that the dexter side of the escutcheon is opposite the left hand of the person who looks at it; the sinister opposite the right hand. What is meant by the *tinctures* of a coat-of-arms? The difference of color of the shields and their *bearings*, or what is drawn on them. How many of these are there? According to French heralds, only seven, of which two are metals, and the other five colors. What are these? The metals are gold and silver; but these, as well as the colors, are always known by their French names in heraldry: thus, *or*, *argent*, *azure*, *gules*, *vert*, *purpure*, and *sable*—gold, silver, blue, red, green, purple, and black. When natural objects are depicted on the shield, they retain their own colors, and are then expressed by the word *propre*. Are there others besides these ever used? The English writers allow two others; orange, termed Tenny, and blood-color, called Sanguine. But these two are rarely to be found in English armorial bearings. How are these colors represented in engravings and drawings when not colored? By dots and lines, as shown in the plates. They are the invention of the ingenious Silvester de Petra Sancta, an Italian author of the seventeenth century. How is this done? Gold, or *or*, by dots, (Fig. 3, Plate II. ;) silver, or *argent*, needs no mark, and is therefore left plain, (Fig. 4 ;) blue, or *azure*, by horizontal lines, (Fig. 5 ;) red, or *gules*, by perpendicular lines, (Fig. 6 ;) green, or *vert*, by diagonal lines from the dexter chief to the sinister base points, (Fig. 7 ;) purple, or *purpure*, from the sinister chief to the dexter base points, (Fig. 8 ;) black, or *sable*, by horizontal and perpendicular lines crossing each other, (Fig. 9 ;) orange, or *tenny*, from the sinister chief to the dexter base points, traversed by horizontal lines, (Fig. 10 ;) bloody, or *sanguine*, by lines crossing each other diagonally from dexter to sinister, and from sinister to dexter, (Fig. 11.) What is said of Furs in Heraldry? Furs represent the hairy skins of certain beasts, prepared for the doublings or linings of robes and garments of state; and as shields were anciently covered with furred



skins, they are used in Heraldry not only for the linings of mantles and other ornaments of the shields, but also in the coats-of-arms themselves. How many kinds are in general use? Three, namely, *ermine*, which is a field argent, or silver, powdered with black spots, the tails of which terminate in three points, (see Fig. 12 in plate II. ;) *counter-ermine*, where the field is sable and the powdering white, (see Fig. 13. ;) and *vair*, which is expressed by blue and white skins, cut into the forms of little bells, ranged in rows opposite each other, the base of the white ones being always next to that of the blue ones, (Fig. 14.) Are there more known in England? The English multiply the furs, as well as the names of the tinctures. Thus they give us white, which is the natural color of the ermine; *erminees*, which is the same with the contra-ermine; *ermineois*, where the field is *or* and the powdering sable, (Fig. 15. ;) *pean*, where the field is sable and the powdering *or*, (Fig. 16.) Are escutcheons ever divided into compartments of different tinctures? Yes, those which are of only *one*, are said to have such a tincture *predominant*; but in those which have more than one, the field is divided by lines, which, according to their different forms, have different names. There are fourteen different kinds of lines, viz: 1. The engrailed; 2. The invected; 3. The wavy; 4. The embattled, or crenelle; 5. The nebule; 6. The regule; 7. The indented; 8. The dancette; 9. The dovetail; 10. The grafted; 11. The embattled aronde; 12. The battle embattled. 13. The patée, or dovetail; 14. The champaine. (See plate II., Fig. 17.) When shields are thus divided, how are they said to be parted? If a division consist of two equal parts, divided by a perpendicular line, it is called parted *per pale*, (Fig. 18. ;) by the horizontal line, parted *per fess*, (Fig. 19. ;) by the diagonal dexter, parted *per bend*, (Fig. 20. ;) by the diagonal sinister, parted *per bend sinister*. If a field be divided into four equal parts, by any of these lines, what is it then said to be? *Quartered*, or parted *per cross*, which is made by a perpendicular and horizontal line crossing each other at the centre of the field, (Fig. 21. ;) 2. *Quartered* or parted *per saltier*, which is made by two diagonal lines, dexter and sinister, crossing each other in the centre of the field, (Fig. 22.) What do armorists call a *charge*? Whatever is contained in the field, whether it occupy the whole or only part thereof: these are distinguished by the names of *honorable ordinaries*, *subordinaries*, and *common charges*. Describe them. Honorable ordinaries are made of lines only, which, according to their disposition and form, receive different names; subordinaries are ancient heraldic figures, which



are also distinguished by proper names; and common charges are composed of natural, artificial, and even chimerical objects, or figures; such as planets, creatures, vegetables, instruments, etc. How many honorable ordinaries are there? Nine; the chief, the pale, the bend, the bend sinister, the fess, the bar, the cheveron, the cross, and the saltier. What is the chief? The chief is determined by a horizontal line; it is placed in the upper part of the escutcheon, and contains in depth the third part of the shield, (Fig. 24.) What is the pale? It consists of two perpendicular lines drawn from the top to the base of a field, and contains the third middle part, (Fig. 25.) What is the bend, and the bend sinister? The bend consists of two diagonal lines, drawn from the dexter chief to the sinister base, and contains the fifth part of the field, if *uncharged*; but if charged, then the third. The bend sinister is the same, but drawn the contrary way, or from sinister chief to dexter base, (Fig. 26.) Describe the fess, and bar. The *fess* is formed by two parallel lines, drawn horizontally across the centre of a field, and contains in breadth the third part of it, (Fig. 27.) A bar contains only the fifth part, (Fig. 28:) a shield can only have one fess, though it may have many bars. What is a chevron? It represents the two rafters of a house well joined together, or a pair of compasses half open, and occupies the fifth part of a field, (Fig. 29.) What is a cross? It is formed by the meeting of two perpendicular with two horizontal lines in the fess point, where they make four right angles. There is so great a variety of crosses used in Heraldry, that it is impossible to name them; but we give a few. (Figs. 30, 31, etc.) What is a saltier? A saltier is formed by a bend and a bend sinister crossing each other at right angles. In Scotland, this is called a St. Andrew's cross, (Fig. 31.) What is said of the representation of living creatures and other symbolical figures? That in all ages men have made use of them to distinguish themselves in war, and that they consist of the greatest variety, composed of figures, some natural and some artificial, etc. The sun, moon, and stars have been introduced, to denote glory, grandeur, etc.; lions, tigers, serpents, stags, etc., to denote swiftness, courage, strength, prudence, etc. What is said of the external ornaments of escutcheons? They were introduced to denote the birth, dignity, or office of the person to whom the coat-of-arms belonged. Those which are most in use consist of ten sorts, viz., crowns, coronets, mitres, helmets, mantlings, chapeaux, wreaths, crests, scrolls, and supporters. Describe the crowns. The first crowns were only diadems,

bands, or fillets; but afterwards they were composed of branches of various trees, and then flowers were added to them. Amongst the Greeks, the crowns given to those who carried off the prizes at the Isthmian games, were of pine branches; at the Olympic of laurel; and at the Nemean of parsley. The Romans also had various crowns to reward martial exploits, and extraordinary services done to the government. What are modern crowns used for? As ornaments, which emperors, kings, and independent princes put on their heads in great solemnities, both to denote their sovereign authority, and to render themselves more imposing to their subjects. Those most used in Heraldry are, 1. The imperial crown, which is made of a circle of gold, adorned with precious stones and pearls, heightened with fleur-de-lis, bordered and seeded with pearls, and raised in the form of a cap, voided at the top like a crescent. From the middle of this cap rises an arched fillet, enriched with pearls, and surmounted with a mound on which is a cross of pearls. What is the second? The crown of the king of Great Britain, which is a circle of gold, enriched with precious stones and pearls, and bordered with ermine; heightened up with four crosses patée, and four large fleur-de-lis, alternately: from these rise four arched diadems, adorned with pearls, which close under a mound, surmounted with a cross like those at the bottom, (Fig. 37.) What is the third? The crown of the kings of France, which is a circle enamelled, adorned with precious stones, and heightened up with four arched diadems, rising from as many fleur-de-lis, which conjoin at the top, under another double fleur-de-lis, all of gold.

What of the crowns of Spain, Portugal, Poland, etc.? They are all three of the same form. The Grand Seignior bears over his arms a turban, enriched with pearls, diamonds, etc., and the Pope of Rome bears a tiara, or long cap of golden cloth, from which hang two pendants, embroidered and fringed at the ends "*Leonée*," with crosses of gold. What of coronets? They are of different forms, and vary according to the rank of the bearer. That of the Prince of Wales, or eldest son of the king or queen of Great Britain, was anciently a circle of gold, set round with four crosses patée and as many fleur-de-lis, alternately; but since the restoration it has been closed with one arch only, adorned with pearls, surmounted by a mound and cross, and bordered with ermine like the king's. What of mitres? The archbishops and bishops of England and Ireland place a mitre over their coats-of-arms. It is a round cap pointed and cleft at the top, from which hang two pendants fringed at both ends.

What of the helmet? The helmet was formerly worn as a defensive weapon, to cover the bearer's head, and is now placed over a coat-of-arms as its chief ornament, and the true mark of gentility. Several sorts have been distinguished; 1. By the matter they are made of; 2. By their form; and 3. By their position. Describe these. The helmets of sovereigns were of burnished gold, *damasked*, or engraved with figures; those of princes and lords, of silver figured with gold; those of knights, of steel adorned with silver; and those of private gentlemen, of polished steel: those of kings, the royal family of England, and noblemen, are open-faced, and grated, (Fig. 38;) the number of bars serves to distinguish the bearer's quality, (Fig. 39.) The open-faced helmet, without bars, denotes baronets and knights, (Fig. 40;) the close helmet is for esquires and gentlemen, (Fig. 41.) What else is said of them? Their position is a mark of distinction, as seen by the plates: the grated in front belongs to the sovereign princes; the grated in profile to all of inferior rank, as far as baronets; the helmet standing direct, without bars, and the bearer a little open, denotes baronets and knights; lastly, the side standing helmet, with the bearer closed, is peculiar to gentlemen. What are mantlings? They are pieces of cloth jagged or cut into leaves, which now serve as an ornament for escutcheons; they were the ancient coverings of helmets, to preserve them or the bearers from the effects of the weather; but their shape has undergone a great change, and they may now be called *flourishings*. Sometimes skins of beasts, as lions, bears,\* etc., were thus borne, to make the bearer look more terrible; and that gave occasion to the doublings of mantlings with furs. What are chapeaux in Heraldry? A chapeau is an ancient hat, or rather cap of dignity, worn by dukes, lined and turned up with fur. What is a wreath? A kind of roll made of two skeins of silk, of different colors, twisted together, which ancient knights usually wore as a head-dress when equipped for tournaments. The colors of the silks were always taken from the principal metal and colors in the coat-of-arms. They are still accounted one of the ornaments of escutcheons, and are placed between a helmet and a crest. What is a crest? It is the highest part of the ornament of a coat-of-arms. It is called *crest* from the Latin word *crista*, which signifies comb, or tuft, such as many birds have upon their heads, as the peacock,

\* Sometimes the skin of the head was left on, and drawn up over the helmet. Scott gives a particular description of this, in speaking of William de la Marcke, commonly called the Boar of Ardenne, from a wild-boar skin which he wore drawn over his helmet. (See "Quentin Durward," vol. 2.)



pheasant, and others. They were formerly great marks of honor, because they were only worn by heroes of great valor, or by such as were advanced to some superior military command. Are they of ancient origin? Yes, they are spoken of by Homer and Virgil, and among the heathen gods and goddesses are described. The crest to Minerva's helmet was an owl. They were formerly always placed on the helmet. The crest is frequently a part of either the *supporters* or of the charge borne in the escutcheon. What is the scroll? It is the ornament placed above the crest, or beneath the shield, containing a motto, or short sentence alluding thereto, or to the bearer's name. Thus the motto of the Earl of Cholmondely\* is "*Cassidatissima virtus*," or "Virtue is the safest helmet;" alluding to the helmet in the coat-of-arms. The motto of Lord Fortescue is "*Forte scutum, salus ducum*," "A strong shield is the safety of the commander;" alluding to the name of that family. The motto of the Lawrences is "*In cruce salus*," "Safety in the cross"—from the cross in their arms. The motto of the royal arms of England is "*Dieu et mon droit*," "God and my right," introduced in 1340, by Edward the Third, when he assumed the arms and title of King of France; and that of the Prince of Wales "*Ich dien*," "I serve," which his son Edward the Black Prince took with the crest, a plume of feathers, from the King of Bohemia, at the battle of Cressy. What are supporters? They are figures standing on the scroll, and placed at the side of the escutcheon, and are called supporters because they seem to support the shield. What is the origin of supporters? They are traced by Menestrier to ancient tournaments, in which the knights caused their shields to be carried by servants or pages, in the disguise of blackamoors, lions, bears, griffons, etc. They were formerly taken from such animals, birds, etc., as were borne in the coat-of-arms; and sometimes in allusion to the names of the family. The supporters of the arms of Great Britain, since the accession of James I. to the throne, are a lion rampant guardant crowned or, on the dexter side, and a unicorn argent, crowned, armed, unguled, maned, and gorged with an antique crown, to which a chain is affixed, all or, on the sinister, (Royal arms, Plate III.) The first is the emblem of England, the second of Scotland, and James the First united them. How are different branches descending from the same family distinguished? By different figures represented in the coat-of-arms, not forming a part of the charge, but placed in the escutcheon to distin-

\* Pronounced "*Chumley*."

guish the different sons of the first house and their descendants, again called the second house, and so on. These are all engraved and marked on the plates. (See Plate I.)

What is the Regalia of England? It consists of the crown called St. Edward's crown; the crown made for King George the Fourth; the new crown, or that with which Queen Victoria was crowned; the cartana, or sword of mercy; the golden sceptre with the cross; the sceptre with the dove; St. Edward's staff; Queen Mary's sceptre; the ivory sceptre with the dove; the coronation ring; the queen consort's coronation ring; the golden orb or globe; the queen consort's circle, etc. All these are covered with precious stones, and of the most beautiful workmanship. They are kept in the Tower of London. What other crown-jewels are there? The regalia of Scotland, consisting of the crown supposed to be the same with which Robert Bruce was crowned in the year 1306, the old regalia having been taken away at the degradation of Baliol, in 1296, by King Edward the First; the sceptre, which is a slender rod of silver, with three figures at the head, of the Virgin Mary, St. Andrew, and St. James, surmounted by a ball of rock-crystal, which is extremely beautiful. The sword of state is also of beautiful workmanship, and was presented to James the Fourth of Scotland, by Pope Julius the Second.

## DESCRIPTION OF PLATE FIRST.

### FIRST HOUSE.

For the heir of the family, the Label.....	Fig. 1.
“ second son.....the Crescent.....	“ 2.
“ third son.....the Mullet.....	“ 3.
“ fourth son.....the Martlet.....	“ 4.
“ fifth son.....the Amulet .....	“ 5.
“ sixth son.....the Fleur-de-lis ....	“ 6.
“ seventh son.....the Rose.....	“ 7.
“ eighth son.....the Cross Moline...	“ 8.
“ ninth son .....	the Double Quatrefoil “ 9.

### SECOND HOUSE.

First or eldest son, the Crescent with the Label on it.

The Crescent on the Crescent for the second son of the second son; and so on through the different houses. (See Plate I.)

# PLATE FIRST.

## DISTINCTIONS OF HOUSES.



What are the orders of rank in which the nobility of England are marshalled? It is unnecessary to enter here into all the minute particulars; it is enough to say that the sovereign takes precedence of all the nobility and gentry, and next follows the Prince of Wales; then all the younger sons of the sovereign, in order of their age; next the princesses, (the eldest is called the Princess Royal;) then the brothers and uncles of the sovereign, etc.,—all in fact who are of the blood royal. Who come next in order of rank? The dukes. The first duke in England, properly so called, was Edward the Black Prince, eldest son to Edward the Third, whom his father, in 1337, created Duke of Cornwall; and thus the eldest son of the king or sovereign is



Duke of Cornwall by inheritance. Duke is said to be so called from *Dux*, a leader, or captain. After the Duke of Cornwall come all the other dukes in order of their creations, or the date at which they received their titles. All dukes' eldest sons are called Marquises, and the younger sons Lords, with the addition of their Christian name, as Lord John, Lord Thomas, etc.; and all the daughters Ladies, as Lady Mary, Lady Susan, etc. Who are next in order of rank? The marquises. The term Marquis is of Saxon derivation, and was called "*markeurce*," which signified a governor or ruler of marches and frontiers; but it has been a title of honor only of later years, the first being Robert Vere, Earl of Oxford, created Marquis of Dublin by Richard II., in 1387. The eldest son of a marquis is called an Earl, and his younger sons and daughters Lords and Ladies. What is the next degree of honor? The Earl, taken from the Saxon *Eaorl*. An earl has the title of Lordship, and being written to is called Right Honorable, by the courtesy of England. An earl's eldest son is a Viscount, and his daughters are Ladies; but his younger sons have no title of peerage, and are simply styled the Honorable John, Thomas, etc. What is the next title? That of viscount, which was anciently an office under an earl. The title of a viscount is *Lord*. His eldest son has no title of peerage, but is styled Honorable, as are all the other sons and daughters. Who come next in rank? The two archbishops and the bishops. The archbishops are over the bishops, and the Archbishop of Canterbury, or Primate and Metropolitan of England, takes precedence of all others—even the Archbishop of York, who is Primate of England, and Metropolitan of his *province*. The archbishops and bishops are all called "My Lord," as My Lord of Canterbury, My Lord of London, etc. Who come next? The barons are next in rank to the bishops, and have also the title of Lord; after the barons come the baronets, and then knights, the lowest order of rank, though all peers are *knights* of some particular order of knighthood, of which the most honorable is the order of the garter. Describe the origin of this order. According to the most authentic accounts, this ancient and honorable order was instituted by King Edward III., A. D. 1350. Having engaged in a war with France, to which he laid claim in right of his mother Isabella, he allured to his party all such as were brave men and eminent commanders, with the view of exciting a spirit of emulation and military genius among his nobility. To this end he erected a round table at Windsor, in imitation of King Arthur's; and here the numerous guests were exercised at tilt and tourney, and

royally entertained. On his return victorious from France, he rewarded those knights who had served him valiantly with this distinguished badge, or order; the total number being twenty-six, of which his Majesty himself was one. Is there not another story told of the institution of this order? Yes, a romantic story is told of the fair Countess of Salisbury, who in dancing with the king let fall her garter, which the king took up and tied around his own leg; this garter was blue, like that of the order: the queen being jealous, and the courtiers smiling, the monarch restored it to its fair owner, saying, "*Honi soit qui mal y pense*," or "Evil be to him who evil thinks of it;" and that he then instituted the order of the garter with this motto. Which story must we give credence to? Most probably the order of knighthood had been instituted as before related, and that the king, to prevent all remark, attached the blue riband and motto to it, giving it then for the first time the name of "Order of the Garter." Is it considered a very honorable order? The most so in the world, as King Edward was a most brave and chivalric prince, and its first knights all men of renown: kings and princes, of all nations, have from that time deemed it the greatest honor to be invested with it; and the sovereigns of England have invested some of the other potentates with it, when they have most desired to do them honor. What are the habit and insignia of the order? They consist of garter, surcoat, mantle, hood, George, collar, cap, and feathers. The *garter* is of dark-blue velvet, edged with gold, bearing the motto "*Honi soit qui mal y pense*," in letters of gold, with buckle and pendant of gold; it is worn below the left knee. What of the mantle? It is of blue velvet, lined with taffeta; on the breast is embroidered the star. The surcoat is of crimson velvet, lined with taffeta. The hood is also of crimson velvet. The hat is of black velvet, lined with white taffeta, and adorned with a large plume of white ostrich feathers, with a tuft of

Collar, Badge, and Garter.



black heron's in the centre, affixed to the hat by a band of diamonds. Describe the collar. It is of gold, composed of twenty-six pieces, for the twenty-six knights, each in the form of a garter, enamelled blue, with the motto. To this is appended the badge, or figure of St. George on horseback, (Fig. p. 368.) The jewel is worn in common attached to a broad blue riband over the left shoulder. What of the order of the Bath? It is so called from part of the ceremony at the installation. In the reign of Henry the Fourth, there was a degree of knighthood specified under this title. That king, on the day of his coronation, in the Tower of London, conferred the honor on *forty-six* esquires, who had watched their armor all the night before, and had "*bathed*" themselves. Charles the Second allowed the chapel of Henry the Seventh, in Westminster Abbey, to be the chapel of the order, and directed that each knight's banner, with plates of his arms and style, should be placed over the several stalls in like manner as those of the knights of the Garter, in St. George's chapel at Windsor. To these have been added two inferior grades of the order, called "Knights Commanders" and "Knights Companions" of the Bath. These last take precedence of esquires or simple gentlemen, but are not entitled to the appellations of knight, or sir. The badge of the order is worn pendent by a ring to a broad red riband over the right shoulder. The motto is "*Tria jūcta in uno*"—"Three in one." Are there any other orders of knighthood in England? There are several other noble orders of knights; those of St. Andrew, St. Patrick, etc. The first of these is of Scottish origin, and is supposed to have been instituted by King Achaus, on the occasion of a cross, similar to that on which St. Andrew was crucified, appearing in the heavens to him and Hungus, king of the Picts, on the night previous to the battle gained by them over Athelstan, king of England. It was revived by James V. of Scotland, and again by James II. of England. The motto in reference to the thistle, the emblem of Scotland, which appears in the collar, is "*Nemo me impure lacessit*." What of the order of the Thistle? It was instituted by George the Third, in 1783.

Are there any orders of rank in the United States? Being a republic, there are no orders of nobility; but all members of the United States senate, all the secretaries, judges of the supreme court, etc., are called "*Honorable*." There is also one hereditary order, that of Cincinnatus, which was instituted at the close of the revolutionary war, and consisted of seventy-six members, General Washington being the first president; and



from the time of his death the eldest member of the society has always been president up to the time of his death, when it was transferred to the next in age, and so on. The members were at first all men who had served their country at that time, and it has since descended to their eldest sons, grandsons, or nephews. The riband is light-blue, bordered with white, and worn in the button-hole, with a small enamelled eagle attached. The badge is very beautiful, and was presented by Marie Antoinette, the beautiful and unfortunate queen of Louis XVI., king of France, to General Washington. It consists of the American eagle in diamonds, holding in his mouth a branch of laurel composed of emeralds and rubies, which surrounds the eagle. On the reverse is a beautiful enamel, in colors, of Cincinnatus called from the plough by the ambassadors from Rome, with the motto, "*Virtute et Labore*," in letters of gold. The badge is attached to a broad light-blue riband, with white edges, and is worn by the president alone, across the right shoulder, when the Cincinnati meet; all others wearing the simple enamelled badge.

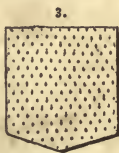
PLATE SECOND.



Shield.



Lozenge.



Or—Gold.



Argent—White.



Azure—Blue.



Gules—Red.



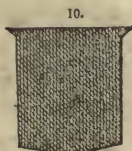
Vert—Green.



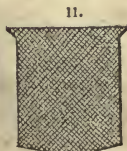
Purpure—Purple



Sable—Black.



Tenne.



Sanguine.



Ermine.



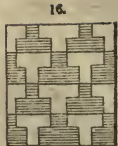
Ermines.



Vair.



Ermineois.



Potent.

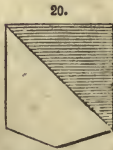
- Engrailed ..... 17.
- Invecked .....
- Wavy .....
- Nebule .....
- Embattled .....
- Raguly .....
- Indented .....
- Dancette .....
- Dovetail .....



Party-per Pale.



Party-per Fess.



Party-per Bend.



Party-per Cross.



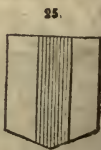
Party-per Saltire



Party-per Chevron



Chief.



Pale.



Bend Sinister



Fess.



Bar.



Chevron.



Cross.



Saltire.



Pierced.



Raguled.



Degraded.



Cercelee.



Crampon.



Crown of State.



King.



Nobility



Knight.



Esquire.



## PLATE THIRD.

ROYAL ARMS.



1.



Passant Gardant.

2.



Rampant.

3.



Rampant Gardant.

4.



Rampant Regardant.

5.



Rampant Combatant.

6.



Saliant.

7.



Rampant Adorsed.

8.



Counter Passant.

9.



Counter Saliant.

10.



Counter Tripping.

11.



Sejant Adorsed.

12.



Passant Regardant.

13.



At Gaze

14.



Tripping.

15.



Springing

16.



Courant.

17.



Lodged.

18.



Cabossed.

19.



Close.

20.



Rising.

21.



Displayed.

22.



Volant.

23.



Demi-Volant.

24.



Indorsed.

25.



Erect.

26.



Inverted.

27.



Naïant.

28.



Hauriant.

29.



Respecting.

30.



Naïant Embowed.

31.



Demi-Lion Passant.

32.



Demi-Fleur-de-lis.

33.



Issuant.

34.



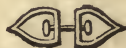
Rousant.

35.



Slipped.

36.



Tirret.

37.



Couped.

38.



Erased.

39.



Demi.

40.



Dormant.



## DEFINITIONS OF VARIOUS HERALDIC TERMS.

*Passant-Gardant.* A term for a beast when walking with his head *affronté*, or looking full-faced, as example No. 1, Plate III.

*Rampant.* A term for lions, bears, tigers, etc., when standing erect on their hind leg. *A Lion Rampant*, No. 2.

*Rampant-Gardant* signifies a beast standing on his hind leg, looking full-faced, as example, *A Lion Rampant-Gardant*, No. 3.

*Rampant-Regardant.* A term for a beast standing upon its hinder leg, looking towards its tail; namely, *A Lion Rampant-Regardant*, as No. 4.

*Rampant-Combatant.* A term for beasts fighting, or rampant face to face, as the example, *Two Lions Rampant-Combatant*. See No. 5.

*Saliant.* A term for beasts of prey when leaping or springing forward, as the example No. 6.

*Addorsed* signifies beasts, birds, or fish turned back to back, as the example, *Two Lions Rampant Addorsed*. See No. 7.

*Counter-Passant*; for two beasts, as lions, etc., when walking different ways, the one to the dexter, the other to the sinister, as the example No. 8.

*Counter-Saliant.* A term for two beasts when leaping different ways from each other, as the example, *Two Foxes Counter-Saliant in Saltire, the dexter surmounted of the sinister*, No. 9.

*Counter-Tripping.* This term is given when two rams, deer, etc., as the example, are tripping; the one passing one way, and the other another. See No. 10.

*Sejant Addorsed.* A term for two animals sitting back to back, as the example No. 11.

*Passant-Regardant.* A term for a beast when walking with its head looking behind, No. 12.

*At Gaze.* The stag, buck, or hind, when looking *affronté*, or full-faced, is said to be *At Gaze*, No. 13. All other beasts, when in this attitude, are termed *Gardant*.

*Tripping.* A term which signifies a stag, antelope, or hind, etc., when walking, as No. 14.

*Springing.* This term is used for beasts of chase, in the same



sense as *Saliant* is for beasts of prey, No. 15. This term is likewise used for fish when placed in bend.

*Courant*. A term for stag, horse, or greyhound, or any other beast, represented running, as the example No. 16.

*Lodged*. This term is for stags, etc. when at rest, lying on the ground, No. 17. Beasts of chase are said to be *Lodged*; beasts of prey, when lying down, are termed *Couchant*.

*Cabossed*. This term is used to express the head of the stag or other animal placed full-faced, and without any part of the neck being visible, No. 18.

*Close*. This term is for the wings of birds (of flight) when they are down and close to the body, No. 19; but must not be used to the peacock, dunghill-cock, nor to any others that are not addicted to flight.

*Rising*. A term for birds when in a position as if preparing to fly, as No. 20.

*Displayed*. This term is used for the wings of eagles, and all other birds, when they are expanded, as No. 21.

*Volant*. Thus we term any bird that is represented flying, as No. 22.

*Demi-Volant*. A term for a single wing, No. 23.

*Indorsed*. A term for wings when placed back to back, as No. 24.

*Erect* signifies any thing perpendicularly elevated, as the example; namely, *Two Wings conjoined and erect*—that is, the points of the wings are upwards—No. 25.

*Inverted*. This example is the reverse position of the former, the points of these being downwards; namely, *Two Wings conjoined and inverted*—No. 26.

*Naïant*. A term for fish when borne horizontally across the field as swimming, as No. 27.

*Hauriant* signifies the fish to be erect, as the example No. 28.

*Respecting*. A term for fish, or birds, when placed upright, and apparently *looking* at each other, as No. 29.

*Naïant Embowed*. This term is used for the dolphin, to signify the crookedness of his motion when swimming, as the example No. 30.

*Demi-Lion Passant* is one-half of a lion in a walking position, as No. 31.

*Demi-Fleur-de-lis* is the half of a fleur-de-lis, as No. 32.

*Issuant*, or issuing, signifies coming out of the bottom of the chief, as the example No. 33.

*Rousant* signifies heavy birds, as if preparing to fly, with the wings indorsed, as No. 34.

*Slipped.* A term for a flower, branch, or leaf, when plucked from the stock, and not cut off, No. 35.

*Tirret.* A modern term, derived from the French, for *manacles*, or handcuffs, No. 36.

#### CHARGES, AND THEIR VARIOUS HERALDIC TERMS.

*Couped.* A term for any charge in an escutcheon that is borne cut evenly off, as the example; namely, *A Lion's Head Couped*, No. 37.

*Erased.* A term for any thing torn or plucked off from the part to which nature had fixed it. The part torn off must be expressed jagged, as the example; namely, *A Lion's Head Erased*, No. 38.

*Demi* signifies the half of any thing; namely, *A Demi-Lion*, No. 39.

*Dormant*, or sleeping; namely, *A Lion Dormant*, with its head resting on its fore paws, as No. 40.

*Couchant*; lying or squatting on the ground, with the head upright; namely, *A Lion Couchant*. See No. 41.

*Sejant.* A term for any beast sitting in the position of the example; namely, *A Lion Sejant*, No. 42.

*Passant.* A term for any beast when in a walking position; namely, *A Lion Passant*, No. 43.

*Statant.* A term for a beast standing, with all four legs on the ground, as No. 44.

---

### EXPLANATION

OF

### SUCH WORDS AND PHRASES AS ARE SELDOM ENGLISHED.

*A. C. Ante Christum.* Before Christ.

*Ad absurdum.* Showing the absurdity of a contrary opinion.

*Ad honores.* For decency's sake.

*Ad patres.* Death: or the abode of the just.

*Alias.* Otherwise.

*Alibi.* Elsewhere: or being in another place.

*Alma mater.* Chaste mother. The University.

*Alternis horis.* Every other hour.

*Ana.* Of each ingredient an equal quantity.

*Anno mundi.* In the year of the world.

*Argumentum ad hominem.* A convincing argument.

*Argumentum ad ignorantiam.* A foolish argument.

*Bona fide.* Without fraud or deceit.

*Ceteris paribus.* The rest, or other things, being alike.

*Caput mortuum.* The thick matter which remains after distillation.

*Cranium.* The skull.

*Cura ut valeas.* Take care of thy health.

*Credenda.* Things to be believed.

*D. O. M. Deo optimo maximo.* Dedicated to the Almighty.

*Delineavit.* Drew it.

*E. G. Exempli gratia.* For example.

*Felo de se.* A self-murderer.

*Inter nos.* Between ourselves.

*In vacuo.* In empty space.

*Ipse dixit.* He said it: or, an assertion without proof.

*In statu quo.* As it was before.

*Locum tenens.* One who officiates for another.

*Major domo.* One who lays in provisions for a family.

*Mutatis mutandis.* Changing words that require it.

*Multum in parvo.* Much in a little.

*Nem. con.* Without opposition.

*Ne plus ultra.* To the utmost extent.

*Noctambuli.* Persons who walk in their sleep.

*Nolens volens.* Without consent, not willing.

*Non compos mentis.* Not sound in mind.

*Posse comitatus.* The collective force of a county or shire.

*Post meridiem.* Afternoon.

*Pro aris et focis.* For civil and religious rights.

*Probatum est.* It is tried, and proved.

*Pro rata.* In proportion, or according to what one can afford.

*P. P. D. Propria pecunia dedicavit.* With his own money he dedicated it.

*Quam diu se bene gesserit.* As long as he or she shall conduct themselves with propriety: the condition upon which situations in law courts, &c., are usually granted.

*Quantum sufficit.* Enough, sufficient.

*Quasi dicas.* As if you should say.

*Scripsit.* Wrote it.

*Sculpsit.* Engraved it.

*Summum bonum.* The chief good.



*Subpœna.* A summons to attend a court.

*Ultimatum.* A final answer.

*Verbatim.* Word for word, literally.

*Vice versa.* On the contrary.

*Videlicet.* Namely.

*Viva voce.* By word of mouth.

*Vox populi.* The voice of the people.

*Vox Dei.* The voice of God.

---

## QUESTIONS

ON THE

## HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

WHAT portion of duration is meant by the middle ages? That period in the history of Europe which begins with the final destruction of the Roman empire, and by some historians is considered to end with the Reformation; by others with the discovery of America; by others with the taking of Constantinople; and again, by some, with the invention of the art of printing: the propriety of selection is regulated by the object of each historian: in general the middle ages may be said to embrace that space of history in which the feudal system was established and developed, down to the most prominent events which led necessarily to its overthrow; although its consequences and influence are still observable in the states of Europe. What is meant by the dark ages? The first centuries of the middle ages, a name which they certainly deserve; still, however, the destruction of the Roman institutions, by the irruption of barbarous tribes, is often unduly lamented, and the beneficial consequences attending it overlooked. Mention some of the consequences that are to be regretted. Acquisitions, that had cost mankind ages of toil and labor, were lost in the general wreck, and only regained by the efforts of many successive generations; the flowers of civilization trampled under foot by barbarian warriors; the civil development of society shaken; and those nations to which Roman civilization had extended previous to the Teutonic invasion, thrown back into primeval barbarism.

Explain the nature and effects of the feudal system. This

system filled Europe with powerful barons, possessing vast landed estates, and commanding the services of numerous armed adherents. Proprietors of the soil, with arms perpetually in their hands, they were too proud to obey any laws but those of honor, which they themselves had enacted, and despised all engaged in peaceful occupations as ignoble and created to obey. In this state of society how were the classes not military enabled to preserve their independence? By union, which afforded them the means of mutual protection, and enabled them to exercise their various callings unmolested, and thereby acquire wealth in money and goods, which served as a counterpoise to the landed possessions of the barons: this necessity led to the foundation of cities. Describe the progress towards good order and security in those newly-formed communities. Small states gradually grew up into great ones; and many of their citizens became so bold as to acknowledge no superior, except the highest authority of the nation to which they belonged. Strong, high walls, impenetrable by the rude military implements of the time, secured, in conjunction with the valor of the townsmen, the freedom of those that dwelt therein, and protected them from the tyrants of the land; well-ordered civil institutions preserved peace and prosperity within, and both were secured by the wealth acquired by trade and manufacturing industry. How did the barons endeavor to retain their hold over the citizens? By establishing themselves within the walls, and expressing an ambition to become chief magistrates of these little commonwealths. In some instances they soon usurped the exclusive power, by flattery and apparent condescension; while in those states that were imperfectly organized, and where the pride of the nobles was excessive, the power and prosperity of the cities rose to such a height, that in Germany and Italy they became formidable even to the emperor; and the people, a third estate, was fully developed in Arragon as early as the twelfth century.

When did the third estate act a political part in England, and when in France? The cities united with the barons in wresting the Magna Charta from king John of England, in 1215; and their growth in France may be traced to the conduct of Louis Le Gros, and his successors, particularly Philip the Fair, two hundred years after him, who deemed it their wisest policy to protect them against the nobility, and thereby increase their own ability of resisting that powerful order. In what part of Europe did the cities acquire the earliest and the greatest pre-eminence? In Germany and Italy: what could not be accom-

plished by single towns in France and England, was effected by the unions or leagues of several in the great empire: the league of the Lombard cities in Italy; the Hanseatic, Rhenish, and Suabian leagues in Germany, appeared at the same time as great and formidable powers. Under the protection of such associations, and sheltered by embattled walls, all arts and trades, and every species of civilization, made rapid progress. Many of the important inventions, which we now value so highly, originated amongst the citizens of those small free states, or were suggested by their active, commercial, and manufacturing spirit.

In what did the modern free cities resemble the little states of ancient times? The same virtues and vices that adorned and disgraced Athens, Sparta, and Rome, had their existence in the free states of Italy, where even the climate resembled that of the republics that had perished 1,500 years before. What farther analogy may be traced between them? There was the same love of country, strict morals, and valor, the same party contests, the same changes of administration and ambitious intrigues, the same, though differently directed, love of arts and knowledge. To what political dangers were both equally exposed? To the overwhelming power of ambitious individuals, so dangerous to all free states: the oppressed portion of the citizens was again compelled to have recourse to the same means of relief that had originally given rise to the parent city, and generally bound themselves to each other by some formal contract, for the better protection of their rights. What consequences followed from this system of union? Such associations, usually formed amongst those of the same trade, and having for their object, next to security from external enemies, the maintenance of internal order in those stormy periods, were called corporations or guilds, and were under the direction of a master. What regulations were instituted to prevent the introduction of 'unworthy members into such corporate bodies? At first none were admissible who had not served an apprenticeship of years to some particular trade, and afterwards advanced through prescribed degrees: at a later period admission was purchased by individuals who did not follow the business of the members, but wished to share in the advantages of the association; and this was frequently the case in the fourteenth century, when the corporations became so powerful as to be able to obtain almost exclusive possession of the government of the cities, which, until this period, the nobility had mostly retained in their own hands: the corporations now taught them



that, as they contributed nothing to the prosperity of the place by their industry, it did not become them to govern it. How did this separation influence the conduct and habits of the nobles? As long as they continued in the cities, after this removal from power, they preserved themselves in close connection, and those who resided in the country formed confederacies against the power of the cities: associations, which to the best men appeared the only means of security against the disorders of the time, became so universal, that almost everywhere persons of the same trade or profession were closely united, and had certain laws and regulations amongst themselves: even knowledge itself, in the universities that were established, was obliged to do homage to the spirit of the age, and the liberal arts themselves, in the latter part of the middle ages, were fettered by the restraints of corporate rules.

Name the most remarkable and characteristic institution of the middle ages, and show how it is connected with the preceding system. Chivalry, which exhibits all the peculiarities of the corporate system; the profession of the nobles was war; no one of their order, who had not served as a knight, could bear a lance or command a troop of cavalry; and the service of years, as an attendant or squire, was necessary to entitle even one of the highest order to be dubbed a knight; but squire, knight, and baron, were all inspired with the same high romantic spirit of honor, pride, gallantry, and devotion. What actions, almost inconceivable to the cooler spirit of our time, were produced by the religious zeal of the middle ages? Hundreds of youths, of both sexes, were seen in the bloom of their age shutting themselves up within the gloomy walls of a cloister, or retiring to wild deserts, and there passing their lives in penitence and prayer; thousands of barefooted pilgrims were annually seen passing over sea and land, for hundreds of leagues, to pray and do penance at the tomb of the Saviour; hundreds of thousands flocked thither also, with the cross in one hand and the sword in the other, to free the Holy Land from the pollution of infidels. What advantage was taken, by the artful and ambitious, of this enthusiastic spirit, which would appear peculiarly suitable to soften the ferocity of the age? They established by its means intolerance, the destruction of the Jews and heretics, the luxurious splendor of the papal court, and the all-embracing system of the hierarchy. In opposition to the secular, which rested on the feudal system, and sustained only by armies of vassals, the pope formed from archbishops, bishops, priests, still more from the generals of religious orders,

provincials, abbots, and monks, an immense army, invincible through its power over the conscience, and through the spiritual weapons which belonged to it and to its head.

What was the extent of the pope's authority over the crowned heads of Europe? All the kings of the West acknowledged him as the living vicerent of Christ: many were his vassals, many tributary; almost all obedient and subject to him, and in a short time victims of a vain resistance. Why would such an influence as the pope then possessed have been beneficial, if properly exercised at that period? Because, as princes then were little restrained by constitutional laws, and the spirit of the times allowed them to dare whatever they had the strength to accomplish, it would have been an inestimable advantage if the pope had aided the people, for centuries, in opposition to their monarchs' usurpations.

Name some of the eminent and honest persons who declaimed against the luxury and ambition of the clergy, and their hostility to the diffusion of knowledge? Arnold of Brescia, the Waldenses, Wickliffe, and Huss, and their followers: they endeavored to overthrow the corrupt hierarchy by reminding the people of the simplicity and poverty of the primitive church; they found, unhappily, that their contemporaries, long accustomed to the supremacy of the church, were not yet ripe for freedom of mind, and their noble efforts, consequently, in a great measure failed. What new bulwarks did the hierarchy raise up against their enemies? Mendicant orders of friars, and the institution of the inquisition, prevented the dawning light of the thirteenth century from penetrating the regions of darkness: excommunications and interdicts held all christendom in terror; till at length, with the diffusion of a free spirit of investigation, the establishment of more rational order amongst monarchies, and the cooling of religious enthusiasm, the veil of darkness was drawn aside, the close of the middle ages approached, and Luther, the author of the reformation, arose, to free the mind from bondage.

Why should poetry be naturally revived, and much cultivated, in the ages just mentioned? Because the chivalrous knights of those times were particularly disposed to poetic views, by passing their lives in battle, in gallant deeds, in festive pomps, and religious exercises. Where did poetry first appear amongst the knights during the twelfth century? In the southern provinces of France; there chivalry first sprang up, and with it shot forth the first sparks of modern poesy. Who are considered to be the founders of modern poetry? The

Provençal troubadours, who principally sung at the court of Berengarius of Toulouse: soon after these the French trouvères, and the German minnesingers, poured out their lays in their mother tongue: the Italians, mistrusting their own, sang in the Provençal; and the English, from a similar apprehension, in the French tongue. To whom are the Italians indebted for their high poetic fame? To Dante, who brought the Tuscan dialect into honor, and enabled the minstrels to establish a national poetry. What was the character of Spanish poetry during the same period? In Spain the Catalonian poetry was the same as the Provençal, but the Castilian and Portuguese partook more of the Arabians'. Describe the difference between ancient and modern epic, as revived by the poets of the middle ages. The modern epic is distinguished from the poetic narration of the ancients by its majestic tone, its indefinite longing for something more elevated than the realities of earth, which have conferred upon it the title of romantic.

How are the subjects of the romantic epics limited? They are confined to three cycles or collections of stories: the first of these is the truly German nibelungen, the stories of Attila, and the heroes of the time of the general migration of nations; next to these rank the equally old tales of the British king Arthur, his round table, and the Sangraal, which, according to the old Welsh fables, was sung in France, and afterwards in Germany, and to which Tristan, the enchanter Merlyn, and others belong: to these a third collection is to be added, originally French, of Charlemagne and his peers, of Roland, the enchanter Malegys, and the four sons of Harymon: as to the famous romance of Amadis de Gaul, this belongs peculiarly to the Spanish, and not to one of the three collections here mentioned.

What other and different class of relations were adopted as subjects of epic song towards the decline of the middle ages? Historic events of ancient and modern times, particularly the exploits of Alexander the Great, the Crusades, scripture history, and the incidents of the ancient epics of Homer and Virgil, furnished subjects for their poetical works. To what causes is the decay of poetry at the close of this historic epoch attributable? To political opposition; to the downfall of chivalry; and to the increasing spirit of reflection that just then sprang up in Europe. Mark the gradual decline of poetry in the two last centuries of these ages. In the thirteenth century there was not a story in the three cycles, before mentioned, that was not eagerly sung by many poets, and upwards of 1400 songs,



written by 136 poets of this century, are contained in the Manesse collection alone: the voice of the minstrel was almost wholly silent in Germany, France, and Spain, in the fourteenth century: but Italy boasted of her Petrarch and Boccaccio, and England of her Chaucer: but after the fourteenth century, hardly a single poet appeared amongst the knights. By what species of literature were the epic poems of former times succeeded, and how was the lyric poetry preserved? The epic poetry was replaced by romances in prose, in which their stories were diluted; and the lyric poetry of France and Germany fell into the hands of the Master-singers, who, by a studied observance of rules, preserved its formal existence: so did it continue until the fifteenth century, when all were attentive only to the great events that were in preparation, and the struggles that preceded them; and, actuated by a spirit of thinking from which they proceeded, were far removed from that free flow of feeling which had given birth to the poetry of the past time. Who was Ariosto? The Italian Homer: he flourished at the close of the middle ages, when the early spirit of poetry lived only in remembrance, and took the stories of Charlemagne's Peers from the nursery, and gave them new dignity and grandeur.

In what countries particularly, and by what eminent men, was a new national poetry introduced? In England by Shakspeare, and in Spain by Cervantes. Point out the distinction between the two ages or schools of poetry. The moderns were creative geniuses, complete masters of their subjects, who poured forth their whole souls in poetic effusions, so that we know not which most to admire, the feeling which inspires, the fancy that adorns, or the understanding that regulates them; and whose tone of humorous irony proclaims them the offspring of modern times: the simple poets of the middle ages took the world as it was, and were rather the organs of the spirit of poetry in the people, than independent poets.

Which of the arts attained the highest degree of excellence in the middle ages? Architecture and Painting: in the noblest buildings of the ages that had long preceded, the form of the first rude dwelling-houses is not to be mistaken; they appear only as the ornamented forms of habitations which necessity had created, and can at most be called fine buildings: but the Gothic or pointed architecture of the middle ages was founded on a deep and great conception; this conception, which appears in the union of the grandeur of great masses with the finished delicacy of parts, was derived from the sylvan temple

of the first inhabitants, which was the representation of the natural world.

Where did the knowledge of painting flow from in these ages, and when did the art take root and flourish? Painting and other arts came from Greece, in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, into the Western kingdoms, and attained their greatest splendor in the middle ages, upon the Lower Rhine and in Italy.

What was the state of scientific learning at the period here spoken of? Almost wholly neglected; the chivalric spirit of the time, bent upon action, could not devote itself to a sedentary life and continued study. Did not Charlemagne encourage the growth of science, and endeavor to instruct the people? Yes: but his exertions hardly produced any effect beyond his life, for they were not in accordance with the spirit of the times; and even some centuries after his reign, the German tribes considered no knowledge of advantage, but that of managing the lance and steed. How far were the laity educated in those days? The most distinguished could scarcely read or write, and whoever obtained further learning, particularly in mathematics or natural science, exposed himself to the hazard of being burned as a sorcerer. How then was the learning of the ancients preserved through those ages, and handed down to us in the perfection in which we witness it? By the monks: this class of persons were enabled to do so by their retired situations, and the leisure they enjoyed, as well as by the necessity of some knowledge of the Latin language, which the Roman Catholic ritual enjoined: they were educated in the cathedral and monastic schools, and literature was their natural occupation. What was the extent of their literary labors? The copying of the old writers, particularly the fathers of the church, and registering passing events of the times in meager chronicles. For what then are succeeding ages indebted to these recluses? For the preservation of the valuable remains of antiquity, for the materials and stimulants to new improvements: our knowledge of the incidents and manners of the times is acquired from them: their adherence to Latin literature was particularly considerate, as that language was common to all the people of the West, not only in the affairs of the church, but in science and public transactions, and by producing an agreement in their general character, contributed to promote intercourse and improvement.

What period in the history of the Eastern empire is analogous to the middle ages of the West, in marking epochs of their history? The introduction of Mohammedanism and the Arabic literature. Did solid learning find no patrons, or were its votaries worthy of none, in the earlier part of the centuries here mentioned? In the eleventh century a partial taste for literature was given by the monks, and afterwards by the arts and industry that prevailed in the cities: learning was encouraged by Henry II. of England, by the Hohenstaufen, St. Louis, the Alphonso, and other intellectual princes; and from these times, the age of Lanfranc, Abelard, and John of Salisbury, the middle ages produced distinguished men, whom the coldness of their contemporaries, in the cause of science, only urged to a more ardent pursuit of it.

What species of scientific learning was most cultivated by those

philosophers, and to what important results did its practice lead? Dialectics, from whence the church dogmatics were formed; the foundation of philosophy, a disputatious spirit, awoke, that was not afterwards calmed until the theses of Luther in Wirtemberg contributed in a great measure to bring about the great Reformation, and thereby shed a new light upon science. Was the Reformation the sole cause and origin of high intellectual exertion and freedom of thought? No, not the only cause: but it materially assisted the striving after freedom of conscience, which originated some centuries before, with the flight of the Greek scholars from Constantinople, and both were aided in their operation by the invention of printing, which had been encouraged by the princes of Italy, and had shone forth in Germany, in the brotherhood of Deventer, in Wessel, Erasmus, Celtes, Reuchlin, and others; with the appearance of these men, with the rise of the sun of the new day, the romantic twilight of the middle ages faded.

Name the principal epochs in the history of the middle ages. The general irruption of the barbarians, which was succeeded by the formation of separate German states; and this was followed by the universal empire of Charlemagne: the idea of the unity of Christendom under a spiritual head, and under the temporal protection of the newly-revived Roman empire, arose from this. The fall of the Carlovingians was succeeded by new modifications of the European states, and by devastations of the barbarians in various parts; of the Saracens in the south, of the Normans in the north and west, of the Hungarians in the east; all of whom, however, became subsequently subject to the German empire: the spirit of chivalry next arose, sprung from the Normans, who colonized parts of France, Italy, Sicily, and England: discord and contention arose between the great secular and spiritual powers, which convulsed all Christendom, and which frustrated the crusades, a warfare wherein knighthood was ennobled. Name the principal epochs from the crusades to the Reformation. The origin of cities and of the third estate; commerce with the East, by means of Italy and the Hanse towns; corruption of the clergy, and institution of mendicant orders and the inquisition; the establishment of universities, and the pope humbled to the power of France; councils at Constance and Basle; subjection of the Greek empire, and formidable position of the Turkish power to the West of Europe; flight of the scholars from Constantinople, and consequent diffusion of learning; invention of the art of printing, discovery of the New World, and of a passage by sea to the East Indies; the Reformation.

THE END.




 PROF. LATHAM.

## A Hand-Book of the English Language;

For the Use of Students of the Universities and Higher Classes of Schools. 12mo. \$1 25.

THIS is an abridgment, or a compendium, by the author, of his large and celebrated work on the English language; and must prove an invaluable aid to every intelligent teacher of English Grammar. It is quite unlike any work that has heretofore been published among us, except it may be some that have borrowed largely from this treasure-house of information on the English language. It is divided into seven Parts. The first and second parts, occupying nearly 80 pages, are devoted to the history and analysis of the English language, designed to show the various elements of which this language is composed, and the manner in which these elements were introduced gradually into the language.

These parts contain the results of very extended and profound study, and furnish information of great value to the student. After this follows the grammatical parts of the work, strictly so called, in which the learned grammarian treats in Part III. of sounds, letters, pronunciation, and spelling, concluding with an historical sketch of the English Alphabet; in Part IV., of Etymology, under its various usual heads; in Part V., of Syntax; in Part VI., of Prosody; and in Part VII., of dialects of the English language. Such is the general plan of a work which cannot fail to receive a cordial welcome among the scholars of America, coming to them, as it does, with the seal of English approval on it, as *the* work of the age on English Grammar, and presenting, as it does, on its very face, the evidence of profound and patient scholarship and philosophical discrimination and analysis.

"We should be glad to see this excellent work introduced into all our colleges and higher schools of learning. The ethnology of the English language is too rarely understood. Most men of education seem to think their native tongue a vulgar study, and confine their researches to the dead languages, or to modern dialects, which are far inferior in variety and power to the noble idiom in which Milton sung and Addison wrote. Dr. Latham's profound and acute investigations have enabled him to throw a flood of light on the derivations of words, and the mutations of orthography. His larger treatises have given him a name among the most learned ethnologists, and this summary of the results of his labors will make him more widely known among general readers."—*Commercial Advertiser*.

"A work of great research, much learning, and to every thinking scholar, it will be a book of study. The Germanic origin of the English language, the affinities of the English with other languages, a sketch of the Alphabet, a minute investigation of the Etymology of the language, &c., of great value to every philologist."—*Observer*.

---

 G. F. GRAHAM

## English Synonymes, Classified and Explained;

With Practical Exercises. Designed for Schools and Private Tuition.  
With an Introduction and Illustrative Authorities, by HENRY REED,  
LL.D. 12mo. \$1.

"This is one of the best books recently published in the department of language, and will do much to arrest the evil of making too common use of inappropriate words. The work is well arranged for classes, and can be made a branch of common school study. The excellent and elaborate work of Crabb is adapted to the private study, and has been used by many scholars and professional men with great profit, but never could find its place in the school-room; consequently, this important department of study has been left to such means as common conversation and miscellaneous reading might afford.

"This work is admirably arranged. The Synonymes are treated with reference to their character, as generic and specific; as active and passive; as positive and negative; and as miscellaneous synonymes.

"A class in this book should be organized in every school."—*Teachers' Advocate*.

PROF. G. P. QUACKENBOS.

## *First Lessons in Composition,*

In which the Principles of the Art are Developed, in connection with the Principles of Grammar; embracing full Directions on the Subject of Punctuation: with Copious Exercises. 12mo. 45 cents.

\*\*\* This work has received the universal approbation of Practical Teachers and the Press of the United States.

*From the Principal, and assistant Teachers, of the Mechanics' Institute, N. Y.*

"With feelings of unfeigned pleasure, I have examined the 'First Lessons in Composition,' by G. P. QUACKENBOS.

"This work possesses the rare merit of combining what is new with what is already familiar in publications of the science upon which it treats. The matter which is comprised in the first fifty pages is invaluable. If the pupil be faithfully trained in these preliminary exercises, he will be amply prepared to appreciate the principles detailed in the latter part of the volume. It is, without question, the best treatise that has appeared on the subject which it professes to illustrate, as every part can be made available to pupils by the judicious teacher; and it appears to be admirably adapted to meet the present requirements of schools.

J. T. BERGEN, *Professor of Belles-Lettres.*

M. C. TRACY, *Principal of Mec. Inst. School.*

J. OVERACRE.

"This book presents an exceedingly simple method of learning the principles of Grammar, and it is so completely adapted even to the understanding of the youngest pupil, that it cannot fail to be a great assistant to the teachers of schools. It is prepared with much skill and judgment, and from the suggestions of long experience. It will be found to possess a more than ordinary intrinsic value."—*N. Y. Courier & Enquirer.*

PROF. JOHN W. S. HOWS.

## *The Shakspearian Reader;*

A Collection of the most approved Plays of Shakspeare, carefully revised; with Introductory and Explanatory Notes, and a Memoir of the Author. Prepared expressly for the use of Classes and the Family Reading Circle. 12mo. \$1 25.

"At a period when the fame of Shakspeare is 'striding the world like a colossus,' and editions of his works are multiplied with a profusion that testifies the desire awakened in all classes of society to read and study his imperishable compositions,—there needs, perhaps, but little apology for the following selection of his works, prepared expressly to render them unexceptionable for the use of Schools, and acceptable for Family reading. Apart from the fact, that Shakspeare is the 'well spring' from which may be traced the origin of the purest poetry in our language,—a long course of professional experience has satisfied me that a necessity exists for the addition of a work like the present, to our stock of Educational Literature. His writings are peculiarly adapted for the purpose of Elocutionary exercise, when the system of instruction pursued by the Teacher is based upon the true principle of the art, viz.—a careful analysis of the structure and meaning of language, rather than a servile adherence to the arbitrary and mechanical rules of Elocution.

"To impress upon the mind of the pupil that words are the exposition of thought, and that in reading, or speaking, every shade of thought and feeling has its appropriate shade of modulated tone, ought to be the especial aim of every Teacher; and an author like Shakspeare, whose every line embodies a volume of meaning, should surely form one of our Elocutionary Text Books. \* \* \* Still, in preparing a selection of his works for the express purpose contemplated in my design, I have not hesitated to exercise a severe revision of his language, beyond that adopted in any similar undertaking.—'Bowdler's Family Shakspeare' not even excepted;—and simply, because I practically know the impossibility of introducing Shakspeare as a Class Book, or as a satisfactory Reading Book for Families without this precautionary revision."—*Extract from the Preface.*

THOMAS ARNOLD, D. D.

## *The History of Rome.*

Reprinted entire from the last London Edition. Three volumes in one.  
8vo. \$3.

"Arnold's History of Rome is a well known standard work. Full and accurate as Niebuhr, but much more readable and attractive; more copious and exact than Knightley or Schmitz, and more reliable than Michelet, it has assumed a rank second to none in value and importance. Its style is admirable, and it is every where imbued with the truth-loving spirit for which Dr. Arnold was pre-eminent. For Colleges and Schools this History is invaluable; and for private, as well as public libraries, it is indispensable."

THOMAS ARNOLD, D. D.

## *Lectures on Modern History.*

Edited, with a Preface and Notes, by HENRY REED, LL. D. 12mo.  
\$1 25.

*Extract from the American Editor's Preface:*—"In preparing this edition, I have had in view its use, not only for the general reader, but also as a text-book in education, especially in our college course of study. \* \* \* \* The introduction of this work as a text-book I regard as important, because, as far as my information entitles me to speak, there is no book better calculated to inspire an interest in historical study. That it has this power over the minds of students I can say from experience, which enables me also to add, that I have found it excellently suited to a course of college instruction. By intelligent and enterprising members of a class especially, it is studied as a text-book with zeal and animation.

"These Lectures, eight in number, furnish the best possible introduction to a philosophical study of modern history. Prof. Reed has added greatly to the worth and interest of the volume, by appending to each lecture such extracts from Dr. Arnold's other writings as would more fully illustrate its prominent points. The Notes and Appendix which he has thus furnished are exceedingly valuable."—*Evening Post*.

PROF. FREDERICK KOHLRAUSCH.

## *A History of Germany;*

From the Earliest Period to the Present Time. Translated from the last German Edition, by JAMES D. HAAS. With a Complete Index, prepared expressly for this Edition. 8vo. \$1 75.

MESSRS. APPLETON:

"Gentlemen,—Having adopted Kohlrausch's History of Germany, as a text-book for an advanced class in history, I take great pleasure in stating that I have found no work, in a wide range of historical instruction, both ancient and modern, devoured with more avidity by my pupils, or resulting in their greater profit. Next to the history of our own country and that of England, I know of none so important to be familiarly understood by our American youth, as the History of Germany; in its bearings on modern civilization, the Protestant Reformation, the progress of literature, the advancement of the Arts and Sciences, and high classical scholarship, as well as also our own very origin and language.

"The history of a nation with whose past and present we especially, not to say the whole civilized world, have such vital connections, though unknown perchance to a great extent to our educated men of a preceding generation, ought now to be introduced every where at once into all our high schools, as an essential part of a course of liberal education.

"Yours, &c.,

"B. W. DWIGHT.

"BROOKLYN, Jan. 24th, 1852."



PROF. GEORGE W. GREENE.

## *History of the Middle Ages.*

For Colleges and Schools (chiefly from the French). 12mo. \$1 25.

"No portion of history has been less studied, either by old or young, than that of the middle ages. This is owing in a great degree, we believe, to the defective text-books which have hitherto been in use, for the period in question is itself one of the most interesting and important in the annals of mankind. It was the birth-time of modern society—the source and fountain of modern civilization—the period in which a large portion of the civil and religious institutions which we now most highly prize had their origin.

"The work before us, compiled principally from the French, by Professor Greene, of Brown University, is the fruit of much learning and research. It furnishes a brief, though clear and well digested, exposition of the leading revolutions of the middle ages, and is designed to introduce the student to an acquaintance with those various and complicated agencies which, out of barbarism and decay, slowly built up the nations of Modern Europe. The plan is judicious, and the execution is in the admirable literary taste which always characterizes the writings of Mr. Greene. The period embraced in the work reaches from the first general irruption of the barbarians at the beginning of the fifth century, to the fall of Constantinople, near the middle of the fifteenth—a period crowded with momentous changes in both the civil and ecclesiastical affairs of the world—marked by the rise and fall of numerous dynasties, and by the utter extinction of the ancient civilization and the formation of another entirely new.

"We hope to see this work generally adopted as a text-book in schools and colleges where History is made a part of the course of instruction, for we feel assured that both instructors and pupils will find it admirably suited to explain the interesting and important period to which it relates."—*Providence Journal*.

---

PROF. GEORGE W. GREENE.

## *Atlas of Mediæval Geography ;*

Designed to accompany the above. One volume 8vo. (*In press.*)

CONTENTS:—Map 1. The Roman Empire and Northern Barbarians in the Fourth Century. Map 2. Europe in the Sixth Century. Map 3. Europe in the times of Charlemagne. Map 4. Europe in the second half of the Tenth Century. Map 5. Europe in the time of the Crusades. Map 6. Europe at the end of the Fourteenth Century.

---

E. M. SEWELL.

## *The First History of Rome ;*

With Questions. 16mo. 50 cents.

"*Norfolk Academy, Norfolk, Va.*

"I must thank you for a copy of 'Miss Sewell's Roman History.' Classical teachers have long needed just such a work: for it is admitted by all how essential to a proper comprehension of the classics is a knowledge of collateral history. Yet most pupils are construing authors before reaching an age to put into their hands the elaborate works we have heretofore had upon Ancient History. Miss Sewell, while she gives the most important facts, has clothed them in a style at once pleasing and comprehensible to the most youthful mind.

"R. B. TSCHUDI, *Prof. of Ancient Languages.*"

---

E. M. SEWELL.

## *The First History of Greece ;*

With Questions, on the Plan of the First History of Rome. 16mo  
(*In press.*)

PROF. E. F. BOJESSEN.

## *A Manual of Grecian and Roman Antiquities.*

Translated from the German. Edited, with Notes, and a complete Series of Questions, by the Rev. THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A. 1 vol. 12mo. Price \$1.

"The present Manual of Greek and Roman Antiquities is far superior to any thing on the same topics as yet offered to the American public. A principal Review of Germany says:

"Small as the compass of it is, we may confidently affirm that it is a great improvement on all preceding works of the kind. We no longer meet with the wretched old method, in which subjects essentially distinct are herded together, and connected subjects disconnected, but have a simple, systematic arrangement, by which the reader easily receives a clear representation of Roman life. We no longer stumble against countless errors in detail, which though long ago assailed and extirpated by Niebuhr and others, have found their last place of refuge in our Manuals. The recent investigations of philologists have been extensively, but carefully and circumspectly used. The conciseness and precision which the author has every where prescribed to himself prevents the superficial observer from perceiving the essential superiority of the book to its predecessors, but whoever subjects it to a careful examination will discover this on every page."—*Southern Lit. Gazette.*

*From Professor Lincoln, of Brown University.*

"I found on my table, after a short absence from home, your edition of Bojesen's Greek and Roman Antiquities. Pray accept my acknowledgments for it. I am agreeably surprised to find on examining it, that within so very narrow a compass for so comprehensive a subject, the book contains so much valuable matter; and, indeed, so far as I see, omits noticing no topic essential. It will be a very useful book in Schools and Colleges, and is far superior to any thing that I know of the same kind. Besides being cheap and accessible to all Students, it has the great merit of discussing its topics in a consecutive and connected manner."

*Extract of a Letter from Professor Tyler, of Amherst College.*

"I have never found time till lately to look over Bojesen's Antiquities, of which you were kind enough to send me a copy. I think it an excellent book; learned, accurate, concise, and perspicuous; well adapted for use in the Academy of the College, and comprehending in a small compass more that is valuable on the subject than many extended treatises."

M. VICTOR COUSIN.

## *A Course of the History of Modern Philosophy.*

Translated by O. W. WRIGHT. Two volumes 8vo. Price \$3.

"This is the ablest and most popular of all Cousin's works. It contains a full exposition of Eclecticism, by its founder and ablest supporter; gives a collected account of the history of philosophy from the earliest times; makes a distinct classification of systems; affords brief yet intelligible glimpses into the interior of almost every school, whether ancient or modern; and a detailed analysis of Locke, which unanswerably refutes a sensualistic theory that has borne so many bitter fruits of irreligion and atheism."

"M. Cousin is the greatest philosopher of France."—*Sir William Hamilton.*

"A writer, whose pointed periods have touched the chords of modern society, and thrilled through the minds of thousands in almost every quarter of the civilized world."—*Edinburgh Review.*

"The most accomplished and acutest thinker of modern times."—*American Review.*

\* \* \* The above work has, in the original, for some time been a text-book of philosophy at Dublin University, and at Cambridge, England.

PROF. WILHELM PUTZ.

## *Manual of Ancient Geography and History.*

Translated from the German. Edited by the Rev. THOMAS K. ARNOLD,  
M. A. 12mo. Price \$1.

"At no period has History presented such strong claims upon the attention of the learned, as at the present day; and to no people were its lessons of such value as to those of the United States. With no past of our own to revert to, the great masses of our better educated are tempted to overlook a science, which comprehends all others in its grasp. To prepare a text-book, which shall present a full, clear, and accurate view of the ancient world, its geography, its political, civil, social, religious state, must be the result only of vast industry and learning. Our examination of the present volume leads us to believe, that as a text-book on ancient history, for Colleges and Academies, it is the best compend yet published. It bears marks in its methodical arrangement, and condensation of materials, of the untiring patience of German scholarship; and in its progress through the English and American press, has been adapted for acceptable use in our best institutions. A noticeable feature of the book, is its complete list of 'sources of information' upon the nations which it describes. This will be an invaluable aid to the student in his future course of reading."

---

PROF. WILHELM PUTZ.

## *Hand-Book of Mediæval Geography and His-*

*tory.* Translated from the German, by Rev. R. B. PAUL, M. A. 12mo.  
Price 75 cents.

"The characteristics of this volume are—Precision, condensation, and luminous arrangement. It is precisely what it pretends to be—a manual, a sure and conscientious guide for the student through the crooks and angles of Mediæval history. \* \* \* \* All the great principles of this extended Period are carefully laid down, and the most important facts skilfully grouped around them. There is no period of History for which it is more difficult to prepare a work like this, and none for which it is so much needed. The leading facts are well established, but they are scattered over an immense space. To reduce such materials to a clear and definite form is a task of no small difficulty, and in which partial success deserves great praise. It is not too much to say that it has never been so well done within a compass so easily mastered, as in the little volume which is now offered to the public."

---

PROF. WILHELM PUTZ.

## *Manual of Modern Geography and History.*

Translated from the German. Revised and corrected. 12mo. \$1 50.

"This volume completes the series of the author's works on geography and history. First came his consideration of ancient and mediæval geography and history; and this continues the subject, from the conquest of the Byzantine empire by the Turks, down to the present time. Every important fact of the period, comprehensive as it is both in geography and history, is presented in a concise yet clear and connected manner; so as to be of value, not only as a text-book for students, but to the general reader for reference. Although the facts are greatly condensed, as of necessity they must be, yet they are presented with so much distinctness as to produce a fixed impression on the mind. It is also reliable as the work of an indefatigable German scholar, for correct information relating to the progress and changes of states and nations—literature, the sciences, and the arts—and all that combines in modern civilization. The portion relating to our own continent has been carefully revised, so as to free it from mistakes which all foreigners are liable to make when speaking of our complex institutions of government. Appended to the work is a chronological table; and also an extended series of questions, designed to facilitate the use of the work in the schools."



W. C. TAYLOR.

## *A Manual of Ancient and Modern History ;*

Comprising—

I. ANCIENT HISTORY, containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the discoveries of Modern Travellers and Scholars.

II. MODERN HISTORY, containing the Rise and Progress of the principal European Nations, their Political History, and the changes in their Social Condition: with a History of the Colonies founded by Europeans.

By W. COOKE TAYLOR, LL. D., of Trinity College, Dublin. Revised with Additions on American History, by C. S. HENRY, D. D., Professor of History in the University of N. Y.; and Questions adapted for the Use of Schools and Colleges. One handsome vol. 8vo., of 800 pages, \$2 25; Ancient History in 1 vol., \$1 25; Modern History in 1 vol., \$1 50.

"This is by far the best text-book of History ever issued. It is intended mainly for the use of schools; but it cannot fail to be of the highest service to all who wish to study or read History *systematically*. It is in two parts; the first presenting the political history, geographical description, and social state of all the leading nations of antiquity; and the second giving, still more fully, an outline of modern history upon the same plan. It will be exceedingly useful to all classes. Those who wish to enter upon a thorough study of history, will find in it an invaluable guide to their researches. It will give them an admirable *framework* whereon to build their structure of historical knowledge. Those who wish merely to become familiar with the most important events in the annals of the various nations that have existed, or do still exist, will find in it all they wish to know, completely digested and well arranged.

"The work was originally prepared by Dr. Taylor, of Trinity College, Dublin, whose eminent qualifications for so important a task, are well known. A chapter on American History, to render it complete, has been added by Prof. C. S. Henry, of the University, in this city, who has also exercised a general editorial supervision over the work.

"The book is well calculated to introduce the study of history more generally into the colleges and higher schools of this country; and will do much, we doubt not, to excite a wider and deeper interest in this greatly neglected, but most important branch of education. It is well printed, and admirably calculated for universal circulation."

M. GUIZOT.

## *General History of Civilization in Europe,*

From the Fall of the Roman Empire to the French Revolution. With Notes, by C. S. HENRY, D. D. 12mo. 75 cents.

"To say any thing of the great value of this admirable work of Mr. Guizot is quite unnecessary. It is already well known to all the literary men of our country and the world, and its intrinsic merits have made it a text-book in many literary institutions of the United States. Written in a clear and lively style, it has every where proved highly attractive."—*Commercial Advertiser*.

"The present work was originally given to the world in a series of lectures pronounced at the old Sorbonne College in Paris; and from the date of its publication, ranked its author high among the greatest philosophic historians. His explanations of historical phenomena are beautiful, lucid and logical, and we do not know a better work than the present to guide the inquirer in his studies of the annals of nations—such a fine model does he here present of weighing, judging, and appreciating details."—*Courier & Enquirer*.

RICHMALL MAGNALL

*Historical and Miscellaneous Questions.*

From the Eighty-fourth London Edition. With large Additions embracing the Elements of Mythology, Astronomy, Architecture, Heraldry, &c. Adapted for Schools in the United States. By MRS. JULIA LAWRENCE. Illustrated with numerous Engravings. 12mo. \$1.

HEADS OF CONTENTS.

A Short View of Scripture History, from the Creation to the Return of the Jews—Questions from the Early Ages to the time of Julius Cæsar—Miscellaneous Questions in Grecian History—Miscellaneous Questions in General History, chiefly Ancient—Questions containing a Sketch of the most remarkable Events from the Christian Era to the close of the Eighteenth Century—Miscellaneous Questions in Roman History—Questions in English History, from the Invasion of Cæsar to the Reformation—Continuation of Questions in English History from the Reformation to the Present Time—Abstract of Early British History—Abstract of English Reigns from the Conquest—Abstract of the Scottish Reigns—Abstract of the French Reigns, from Pharamond to Philip I.—Continuation of the French Reigns, from Louis VI. to Louis Philippe—Questions relating to the History of America, from its Discovery to the Present Time—Abstract of Roman Kings and most Distinguished Heroes—Abstract of the most celebrated Grecians—Of Heathen Mythology in General—Abstract of Heathen Mythology—The Elements of Astronomy,—Explanation of a few Astronomical Terms—List of Constellations—Questions on Common Subjects—Questions on Architecture—Questions on Heraldry—Explanations of such Latin Words and Phrases as are seldom Englished—Questions on the History of the Middle Ages.

"This is an admirable work to aid both teachers and parents in instructing children and youth, and there is no work of the kind that we have seen that is so well calculated to awaken a spirit of laudable curiosity in young minds, and to satisfy that curiosity when awakened."—*Commercial Advertiser*.

---

MRS. MARKHAM.

*History of England ;*

From the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Queen Victoria. A New Edition, with Questions adapted for Schools in the United States. By ELIZA ROBBINS, Author of "American Popular Lessons," "Poetry for Schools," &c. One volume 12mo. Price 75 cents.

"There is nothing more needed in our schools than good histories; not the dry compends in present use, but elementary works that shall suggest the moral uses of history, and the providence of God, manifest in the affairs of men.

"Mrs. Markham's History was used by that model for all teachers, the late Dr. Arnold, master of the great English school at Rugby, and agrees in its character with his enlightened and pious views of teaching history. It is now several years since I adapted this history to the form and price acceptable in the schools in the United States. I have recently revised it, and trust that it may be extensively serviceable in education.

"The principal alterations from the original are a new and more convenient division of paragraphs, and entire omission of the conversations annexed to the chapters. In the place of these I have affixed questions to every page that may at once facilitate the work of the teacher and the pupil. The rational and moral features of this book first commended itself to me, and I have used it successfully with my own scholars.—*Extract from the American Editor's Preface.*

---

THOMAS KEIGHTLEY

*Mythology of Ancient Greece and Italy.*

For the Use of Schools. 16mo. 42 cents.

"This is a volume well adapted to the purpose for which it was prepared. It presents, in a very compendious and convenient form, every thing relating to the subject, of importance to the young student."

GEORGE R. PERKINS, A. M.,

*Professor of Mathematics and Principal of the State Normal School.*

## *Course of Mathematical Works.*

### I. PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. Price 21 cts.

The first part is devoted to MENTAL EXERCISES, and the second to *Exercises on the Slate and Blackboard.*

It has been received with more popularity than any Arithmetic heretofore issued.

### II. ELEMENTARY ARITHMETIC. Price 42 cts.

Has recently been carefully revised and enlarged. It will be found concise, yet lucid.

In this work *all of the examples or problems are strictly practical*, made up as they are in a great measure of important statistics and valuable facts in history and philosophy, which are thus unconsciously learned in acquiring a knowledge of the Arithmetic.

Wherever this work is presented, the publishers have heard but one opinion in regard to its merits, and that most favorable.

### III. PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC.

The Practical Arithmetic is designed not to supply the place of the Elementary Arithmetic, but is designed for the use of such institutions as require a greater number of examples than are given in that work.

### IV. HIGHER ARITHMETIC. Price 84 cts.

The present edition has been revised, many subjects re-written, and much new matter added; and contains an APPENDIX of about sixty pages, in which the philosophy of the more difficult operations and interesting properties of numbers are fully discussed. The work is what its name purports, a HIGHER Arithmetic.

### V. ELEMENTS OF ALGEBRA. Price 84 cts.

This work is an introduction to the Author's "Treatise on Algebra."

### VI. TREATISE ON ALGEBRA. Price \$1 50.

This work contains the higher parts of Algebra usually taught in Colleges; a new method of cubic and higher equations as well as the THEOREM OF STURM, by which we may at once determine the number of real roots of any Algebraic Equation, with much more ease than by any previously discovered method.

In the present *revised edition*, one entire chapter on the subject of CONTINUED FRACTIONS has been added.

### VII. ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY, WITH PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS. \$1.

The author has added throughout the entire Work, PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS, which, in the estimation of Teachers, is an important consideration.

An eminent Professor of Mathematics, in speaking of this work, says: "We have adopted it, because it follows more closely the best model of pure geometrical reasoning which ever has been, and perhaps ever will be exhibited."

### VIII. PLANE TRIGONOMETRY,

And its Application to Mensuration and Land Surveying. Accompanied with all the necessary Logarithmic and Trigonometric Tables. 1 vol. 8vo.

It is a commendable feature in all the mathematical works of this author, that they are prepared in such a manner as will lead the pupil to rely upon his own abilities in studying the principles they contain; commencing with the simplest elements he is led on step by step throughout. This volume is prepared upon the same logical system. It contains much that is new and valuable, especially on the subject of land-surveying.



PROF. ALEXANDER REID, A. M.

## *A Dictionary of the English Language;*

Containing the Pronunciation, Etymology, and Explanation of all Words authorized by Eminent Writers; to which are added, a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, and an Accented List of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names. With a Critical Preface, by HENRY REID, Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania, and an Appendix, showing the Pronunciation of nearly 3000 of the most important Geographical Names. One volume 12mo., of nearly 600 pages, bound in leather. Price \$1.

Among the wants of our time was a good dictionary of our own language, especially adapted for academies and schools. The books which have long been in use were of little value to the junior students, being too concise in the definitions, and immethodical in the arrangement. Reid's English Dictionary was compiled expressly to develop the precise analogies and various properties of the authorized words in general use, by the standard authors and orators who use our vernacular tongue.

Exclusive of the large number of proper names which are appended, this Dictionary includes four especial improvements—and when their essential value to the student is considered, the sterling character of the work as a hand-book of our language will be instantly perceived.

The primitive word is distinguished by a larger type; and when there are any derivatives from it, they follow in alphabetical order, and the part of speech is appended, thus furnishing a complete classification of all the connected analogous words of the same species.

With this facility to comprehend accurately the determinate meaning of the English word, is conjoined a rich illustration for the linguist. The derivation of all the primitive words is distinctly given, and the phrases of the languages whence they are deduced, whether composite or simple; so that the student of foreign languages, both ancient and modern, by a reference to any word, can ascertain the source whence it has been adopted into our own form of speech. This is a great acquisition to the person who is anxious to use words in their utmost clearness of meaning.

To these advantages is subjoined a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, which is of peculiar value to the collegian. The fifty pages which it includes, furnish the linguist with a widespread field of research, equally amusing and instructive. There is also added an Accented List, to the number of fifteen thousand, of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names.

### RECOMMENDATIONS.

Reid's Dictionary of the English Language is an admirable book for the use of schools. Its plans combine a greater number of desirable conditions for such a work, than any with which I am acquainted: and it seems to me to be executed in general with great judgment, fidelity, and accuracy.

C. S. HENRY,

*Professor of Philosophy, History, and Belles-Lettres,  
in the University of the City of New-York.*

Reid's Dictionary of the English Language is compiled upon sound principles, and with judgment and accuracy. It has the merit, too, of combining much more than is usually looked for in Dictionaries of small size, and will, I believe, be found excellent as a convenient manual, for general use and reference, and also for various purposes of education.

HENRY REID,

*Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania.*

After a careful examination, I am convinced that Reid's English Dictionary has strong claims upon the attention of teachers generally. It is of convenient size, beautifully executed, and seems well adapted to the use of scholars, from the common school to the university.

D. H. CHASE,

*Principal of Preparatory School.*

MIDDLETOWN, Ct.

After a thorough examination of "Reid's English Dictionary," I may safely say that I consider it superior to any of the School Dictionaries with which I am acquainted. Its accurate and concise definitions, and a vocabulary of the roots of English words, drawn from an author of such authority as Bosworth, are not among the least of its excellencies.

M. M. PARKS,

*Chaplain and Professor of Ethics, U. S. Military Academy, West Point.*

PROFESSOR CHAMPLIN.

*A Concise Practical Grammar of the English Language.* With Exercises in Analysis and Parsing. One vol. 16mo. 34 cents.

This Manual contains a more concise, more simple, more philosophical, and a better arranged and illustrated statement of the principles of English Grammar, than most of the Manuals in use.

PROF. J. JÆGER.

*Class Book of Zoology.*

Designed to afford to Pupils in Common Schools and Academies a Knowledge of the Animal Kingdom: with a List of the Different Species found in the State of New-York. The whole scientifically arranged. 18mo. 42 cents.

*From Prof. Tayler Lewis.*

"Your Class-Book of Zoology ought to be introduced into all the public and private schools of this city, and I should rejoice for your own sake, and for the sake of sound science, to hear of its obtaining the public patronage which it deserves."

*From Dr. T. Romeyn Beck, of Albany.*

The copy of your book of which you advised me last week, reached me this morning. I am pleased with its contents. Of its accuracy I can have no question, knowing your long and ardent devotion to the study of Natural History. It will be peculiarly useful to the young pupil, in introducing him to a knowledge of our native animals."

*From Rev. Dr. Campbell, Albany.*

"Your 'Class-Book' reached me safely, and I am delighted with it; but what is more to the purpose, gentlemen who know something about Zoology are delighted with it, such as Dr. Beck and Professor Cook, of our Academy. I have no doubt that we shall introduce it."

F. N. OTIS.

*Easy Lessons in Landscape.*

With Instructions for the Lead Pencil and Crayon. A Complete and Easy Guide from simple Lines through the intricacies of Foliage—Light and Shade Perspective—and *Sketching from Nature*; each being treated in an *original*, concise, and familiar manner, so that the Pupil is enabled successfully to pursue the Study of Drawing without the aid of a Teacher. Complete in Six Numbers, price \$1 75; bound, \$2 25.

F. N. OTIS.

*Studies of Animals.*

With Instructions for the Lead Pencil and Crayon. Composed of Spirited Sketches of Single Figures and Groups from Nature; with Choice Selections from some of the most distinguished Animal Painters: accompanied with copious Instructions. Complete in Five Numbers. In Numbers, complete, price \$1 75; bound, \$2 25.

ELEMENTARY DRAWING CARDS. Landscape, 12 Lessons; Animals, 12 Lessons. Price, each set, 25 cents.

EDWARD L. YOUMANS.

*A Class-Book of Chemistry;*

In which the Principles of the Science are Familiarly Explained and Applied to the Arts, Agriculture, Physiology, Dietetics, Ventilation, and the most Important Phenomena of Nature. Designed for the Use of Academies and Schools, and for Popular Reading. 12mo. 75 cent.

"No attempt has been made to popularize this important science, and to place it on the same favorable basis with geography and astronomy; hence, the idea is prevalent that chemistry is one of those dry and difficult subjects which belong exclusively to professors and lecturers, and which can not be successfully taught as a branch of common education. In the treatise now before us we are shown that the fundamental laws of chemistry are as definite, as clear and simple, and as capable of being understood by juvenile minds, as those of numbers, which are taught in every school.

"We regard this new Class-Book of Chemistry as one of the most valuable text-books that has been prepared for schools during many years. A knowledge of the science of which it treats is of great importance to every one, and is daily becoming more and more popular. This work popularizes to a greater extent than any other we have ever seen on this subject, and renders interesting to the minds of pupils, as well as to the general reader, one of the most useful of sciences.

"A peculiar and valuable feature of this treatise is its application of chemistry to the common occurrences of life, and its treating of familiar things, and presenting facts and truths alike valuable and entertaining, in a style free, as far as possible, from technicalities on the one hand, and puerilities on the other."—*Student*.

"An elementary work on Chemistry well adapted to either purpose, of affording an initiatory step towards a profound study of the science, or of giving that general knowledge deemed essential in ordinary education. No better illustration could be given of the progress of the science of Chemistry in these later years than the fulness of information in this elementary book on Organic and Animal Chemistry, branches of the science which but a few years ago were as sealed books even to the chemical philosophers themselves. The book is clear and demonstrative in style, and easily intelligible to the beginner and general reader."—*Tribune*.

EDWARD L. YOUMANS.

*A Chart of Chemistry;*

In which the Fundamental Laws and Facts of the Science, Affinity, the Composition and Decomposition of Bodies, combining Equivalents or Definite and Multiple Proportions, the Atomic Theory, Crystallization, Fermentation, Isomerism, the Nomenclature and Formulæ, are Illustrated to the eye in a clear and simple manner.

\*\* This Chart, which is adapted to the above Class-Book, is nearly four feet by five in size, and contains about one thousand diagrams, in sixteen different colors. That it may be brought within the reach of every school, it is sold at the low price of five dollars being the cheapest Chart, considering its cost, that is published in the United States.

The following distinguished Chemists and Educators have highly commended the Chart as a valuable auxiliary to all Students:—

Professors B. L. Silliman, Jas. R. Chilton, John W. Draper, Jas. B. Rogers, W. H. Hopkins, John Torrey, W. H. Ellett, Thos. Antisell, Gray, Hon. Horace Mann, Supt. McKeen, N. Y. City, Supt. S. S. Randall, Albany, Supt. T. L. Holmes, Brooklyn, Geo. B. Emerson, Boston, &c., &c.







BINDING SECT. APR 29 1964

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

D Mangnall, Richmal  
21 Historical and  
M3 miscellaneous questions  
1853 3d ed., rev. and cor.



